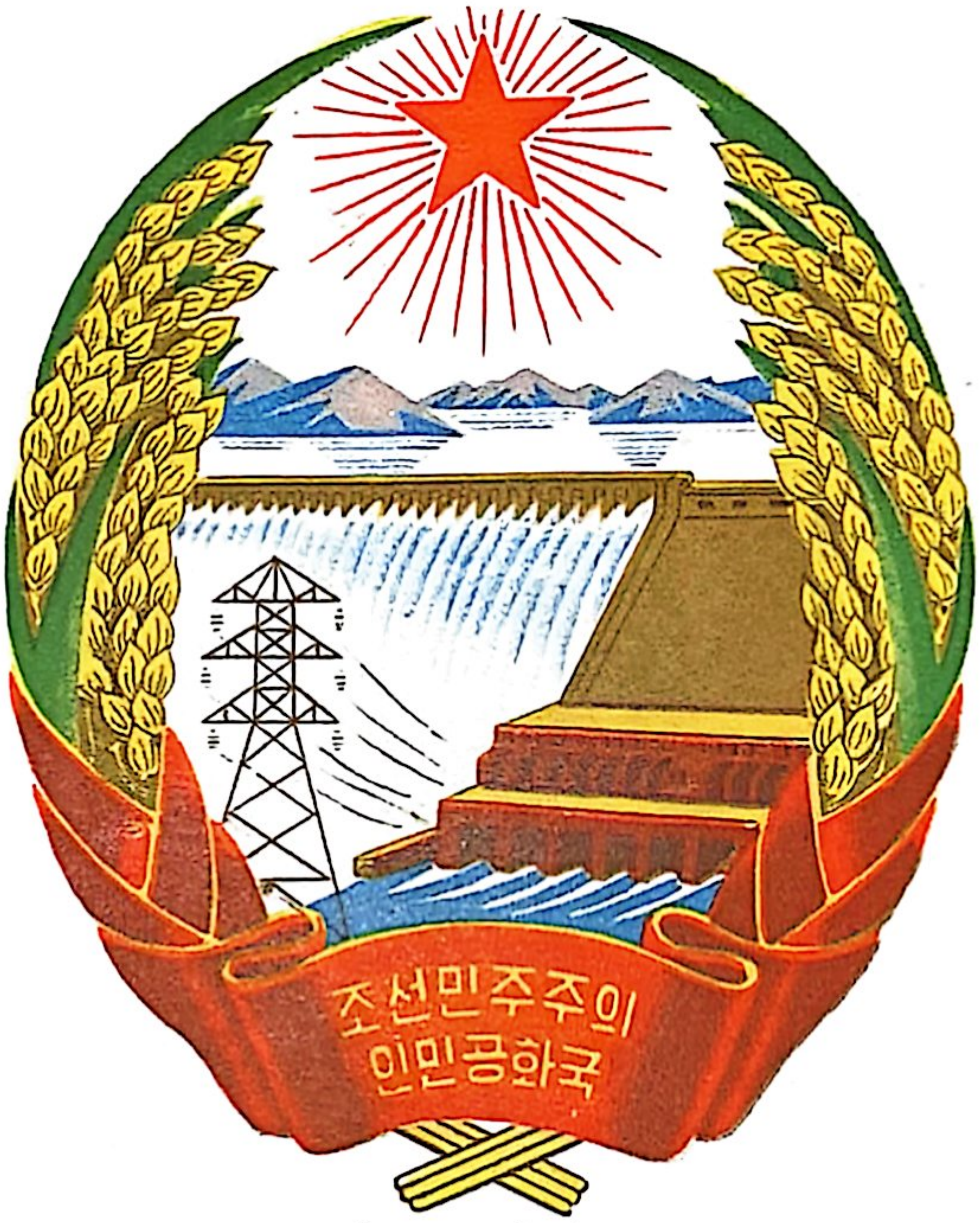
DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

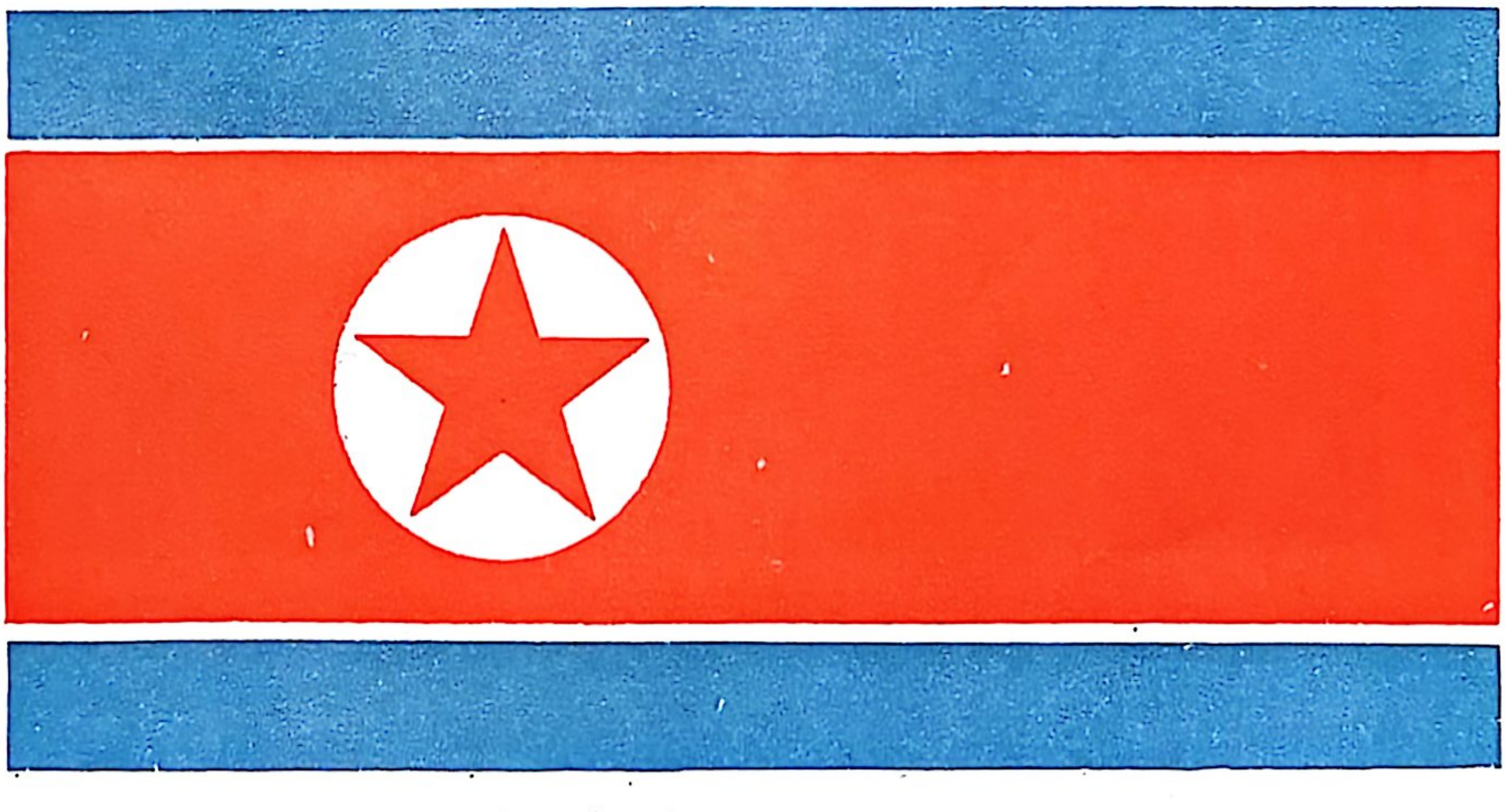
1958

*Publication in Honour of
the 10th Anniversary of the
Founding of the D.P.R.K.*

David Jardine Jr
7-X-1959


조선민주주의
인민공화국

State Emblem of the Democratic
People's Republic of Korea



National Flag of the Democratic
People's Republic of Korea

KIM IL SUNG
Premier of the Cabinet of the D.P.R.K.

DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

FOREIGN LANGUAGES PUBLISHING HOUSE
PYONGYANG, 1958

Printed in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea

FOREWORD

On September 9, 1958, the Korean people celebrate the tenth anniversary of the founding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, their glorious fatherland.

The Democratic People's Republic of Korea is a great gain achieved by the Korean people in the struggle against the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique who have divided the country into two parts and are trying to split a single people.

The founding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea was an epoch-making event for the sovereignty, independence and prosperity of our country and opened a new era in the historical development of Korea.

After liberation from the yoke of Japanese imperialism by the great Soviet Army, the Korean people, under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea, created a revolutionary democratic base in the northern part of the country. With the founding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea according to the general will of the Korean people, the people's democratic system was further consolidated and developed. In the period of peaceful construction, the Korean people, united firmly around the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, achieved outstanding labour exploits, which marked a new Golden Age.

However, the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique provoked war. In the just Fatherland Liberation War against the armed aggression of the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique the Korean people displayed unexcelled mass heroism. They won a glorious victory and defended the freedom and independence of the fatherland.

Following the correct policy and the wise guidance of the Workers' Party of Korea in the post-war period, the Korean people healed serious war wounds in a short space of time, and achieved a decisive victory of socialism in all fields. Thus socialist production, science and culture are at high tide such as never before experienced in Korean history. Today the Korean people are going forward on a winged horse toward socialism, with a view to building a paradise in this land of ours.

The international prestige of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea has been unprecedentedly enhanced.

Since the first day of its birth the D.P.R.K. government has pursued a peace-loving foreign policy on the basis of proletarian internationalism; contributed to strengthening the unity and solidarity of the socialist camp headed by the great Soviet Union and to securing lasting world peace; defended staunchly the Far Eastern outpost for socialism and world peace.

The revolutionary democratic base built up in the North is a reliable material force for unifying the country by peaceful means and is a powerful fortress for shattering the aggressive manoeuvres of the U.S. imperialists.

The tremendous achievements attained in socialist construction in the North and the consistent efforts exerted by the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the Republic for peaceful unification of the country serve to stimulate the South Korean people groaning under the reactionary rule of the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique to wage a more powerful struggle against the enemies. The ten years of history since the founding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea proves positively the superiority of the people's democratic system and its invincible virility, and demonstrated inexhaustible creativeness of the Korean working people who have taken the power into their hands.

The Democratic People's Republic of Korea is the glorious banner of freedom, happiness and national independence of the Korean people.

This book presents a comprehensive survey of all the achievements attained in all domains of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea for the ten years since her founding.

At the same time a general picture of the geography, history, literature and cultural traditions of our country is given under separate chapters.

Considerable space shall have been given to the situation in South Korea. But the detailed description is left to "South Korea Under U.S. Imperialist Occupation" to be put out later by this publishing house.

EDITORIAL BOARD

June 15, 1958

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. GEOGRAPHY 1
- GENERAL 1
- POPULATION AND ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISIONS 19

CHAPTER II. A BRIEF HISTORY OF KOREA 25
- ANCIENT PERIOD 25
- MIDDLE AGE 36
- MODERN AGE 52
- AFTER LIBERATION 77
  - Northern Part of the Republic, the Democratic Base 77
  - South Korea Under the U.S. Imperialists' Occupation 116

CHAPTER III. STATE SYSTEM 141

CHAPTER IV. POLITICAL PARTIES AND PUBLIC ORGANIZATIONS 161

CHAPTER V. THE NATIONAL ECONOMY 175
- GENERAL 175
- INDUSTRY 185
- AGRICULTURE 209
- TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS 227
- CAPITAL CONSTRUCTION 234
- HOME AND FOREIGN TRADE 238
- FINANCE 247
- MATERIAL AND CULTURAL WELFARE 257

CHAPTER VI. CULTURE 271
- EDUCATION 271
- SCIENCE 282
- KOREAN LANGUAGE 301
- PRESS AND RADIO SERVICE 306

THE POLICY OF THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA ON KOREAN LITERATURE AND ART 313
LITERATURE 320
PAINTING AND SCULPTURE 336
ARCHITECTURE 345
HANDICRAFTS 354
MUSIC 357
DANCE 365
DRAMA 369
CINEMA 374
POPULAR CULTURE 378
PHYSICAL CULTURE AND SPORTS 381

CHAPTER VII. THE STRUGGLE OF THE KOREAN PEOPLE FOR THE PEACEFUL UNIFICATION OF THE COUNTRY 385

CHAPTER VIII. KOREAN PEOPLE'S STRUGGLE FOR WORLD PEACE AND FOR FRIENDSHIP AND SOLIDARITY AMONG THE NATIONS 399

CHRONOLOGY 413

TOPOGRAPHIC MAP OF KOREA

126°
128°
130°
42°
40°
38°
36°
34°
PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA
U.S.S.R.
JAPAN
Onsung
Hoiryong
Moosan
Rajin
MT. BAIKDOO 2744
CHUNGJIN
MT. KWANMOBONG 2541
Ranam
Uhrang
HYESAN
Joonggang
Samsoo
MT. DOORYOO 2309
Kapsan
Kilchoo
Kimchaik
Dancheon
MT. BOOKSOOBYUK 2522
Manpo
KANGGYE
Rangrim
Chosan
Sakjoo
Boojun
Jangjin
Hamkyung Range
Machunryung Range
Boojunryung Range
KANGNAM MTS.
RANGRIM MTS.
MYOHYANG MTS.
MT. MYOHYANG 1909
SHINUIJOO
Kosung
Pukchun
Kaechun
Anjoo
Soonchun
Bookchung
Shinpo
HAMHEUNG
Heungnam
Kowon
MT. BOOKDAIBONG 1327
Yangduk
WONSAN
BAY OF EAST KOREA
BAY OF WEST KOREA
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
PYONGYANG
Kangsu
Onchun
Nampo
Songrim
Seungho
SARIWON
MT. KOOWUL 954
Jangyun
Shinchun
HAEJOO
Ongjin
Yunan
KAESONG
Tongchun
Kosung
MT. KEUMKANG (DIAMOND) 1638
Pyonggang
Chulwon
Hwachun
Yangyang
CHOONCHUN
MT. ODAE
Kangneung
KANGHWADO IS.
BAY OF KANGHWA
SEOUL
Inchon
Suwon
Ansung
Wonjoo
Chechun
MT. TAIBAIK 1561
WOOLREUNG DO IS.
CHUNGJOO
MT. SOKRI 1057
Andong
Yungduk
TAIJON
MT. KYERYONG
Yungdong
Kimchun
Kunsan
JUNJOO
TAEGU
Pohang
Kyungjoo
Woolsan
Milyang
Namwon
MT. CHIRI 1915
Jinjoo
Masan
Chinhai
PUSAN
KWANGJOO
Soonchun
Mokpo
Ryusoo
NAMHAI DO IS.
KOJE DO IS.
CHIN DO IS.
TSUSHIMA IS.
KOREAN STR.
TSUSHIMA STR.
YELLOW SEA
SOUTH SEA
CHEJU STR.
Cheju
MT. HANRA 1950
CHEJU DO IS.
Hukuoka
PANTOGRAPHY 1 : 3 350 000
0 25 50 75 100 125 150 KM
0 200 500 1000 2000 3000 4000 M
0 200 600 1000 1500 2000 3000 M

CHAPTER I

GEOGRAPHY

GENERAL

GEOGRAPHICAL POSITION AND TERRITORY

The Democratic People's Republic of Korea is a peninsula on the eastern part of the Asian Continent.

It lies between 33°6'40" S to 43°0'36" N and between 124° 11'0" E to 130°56'22". On the west, it faces China across the Yellow Sea and on the east, it faces Japan across the Sea of Japan. It borders the South Sea connected with the Pacific. It joins the Asian Continent on the north. The Yalu and Tuman Rivers rising in Mt. Baikdoo form the borderline between Korea and Northeast China and Maritime Provinces of the U.S.S.R.

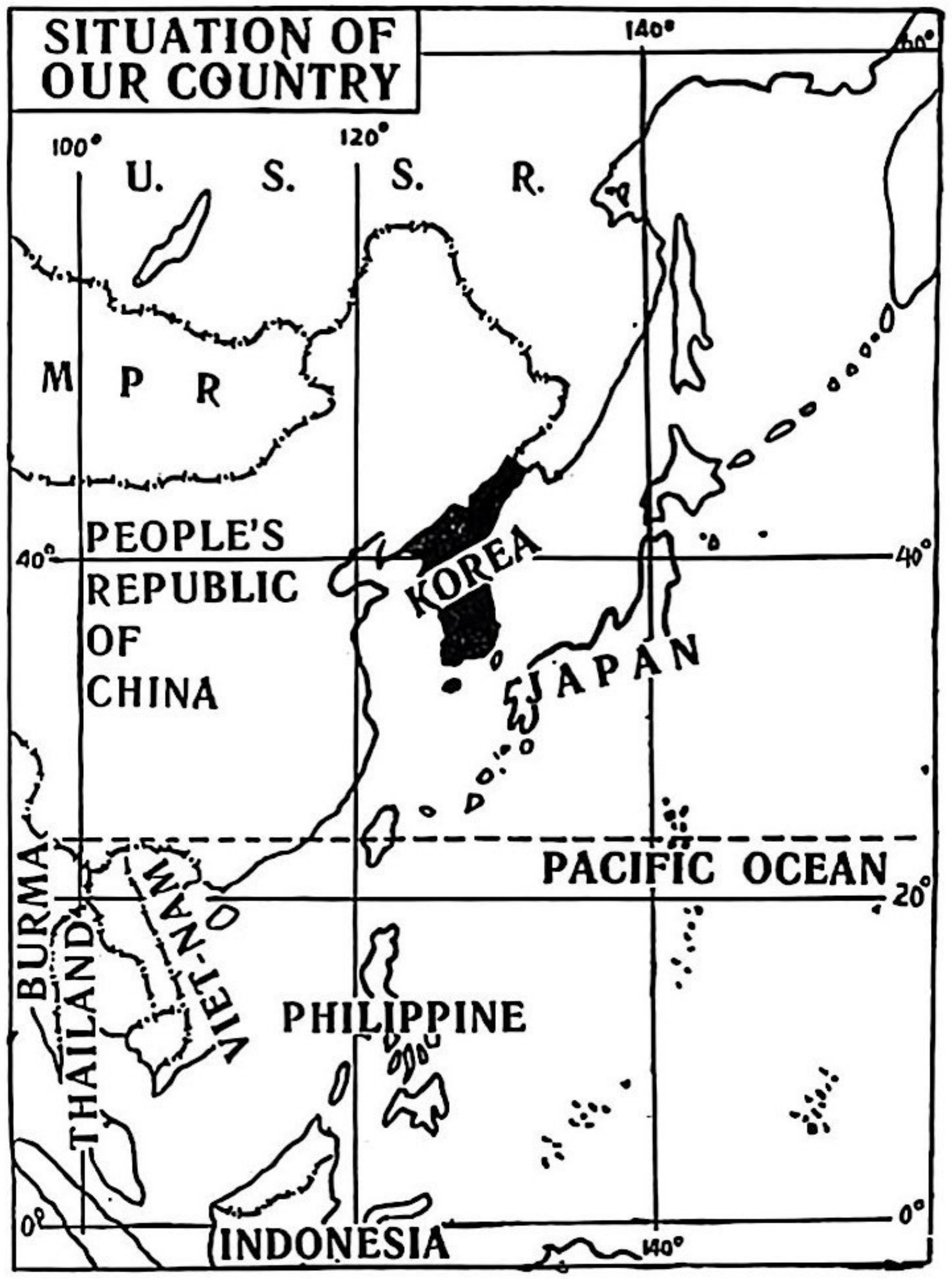
Korea is a large peninsula with 3,300 islands scattered about in her coastal waters. The peninsula stretches long from north to south, being comparatively narrow from east to west. The longest distance from north to south is 840 kilometres and the widest from east to west is 360 kilometres.

The borderlines of Korea including the land boundary total about 10,000 kilometres. The line girdling the east, west and south coasts is 8,700 kilometres. The line bordering the U.S.S.R. and China extends about 1,300 kilometres. The coastline makes up 87 per cent of the total length of her boundary and the land boundary 13 per cent.

The area of the D.P.R.K. is 220,739 square kilometres, of which the islands comprise 5,963 square kilometres, or 3 per cent of the whole territory.

PHYSIOGRAPHY

Korea is mountainous. The highlands occupy 75 per cent of



the whole territory. Korean mountains are formed of very old strata.

Through long geological eras they were subject to erosion and weathering. Few movements of earth crust have taken place since the Tertiary period, so mountains are generally not steep. Most of them are of the type (of mountain) formed in the Cenozoic Era.

The altitude of the mountains is on an average less than 1,500 metres above sea level. Mountains of more than 1,500 meters in height occupy only 4.4 per cent of the territory. And most of these lie in the northern and eastern districts.

Land in Korea may be classified as follows: highlands, hilly lands and lowlands.

To the north of the line extending from Mt. Myohyang to Hamheung lie the highest mountains, some rising 2,000 metres above sea level. To the east and to the south-west of the line connecting the Yungheung Bay with Woulsun stretches the Sobaik Mountain Range comprising mountains 1,500 metres above sea level. Lowlands lie along the west and south coast with low mountains no more than 500 metres above sea level.

The average altitude of Korean land is 482 metres. Of the whole area the highlands below 500 metres of altitude make up 65 per cent and those below 100 metres, 24 per cent. Korean mountains are characterized by undulation. And the mountain chains crisscross each other, but generally speaking, the slopes are gentle. Plateaux occupy a wide area, and numerous valleys and river basins are found.

Of the whole area of Korea the flat lands with a grade of 5 degrees are 19.5 per cent; the slopes from 5 to 15 degrees, 23.5 per cent; thus 43 per cent of the whole area is utilized for farming.

Korean mountain ranges start from Mt. Baikdoo (2,744 meters above sea level) situated on the border between Korea and China. The main ranges extend along the north and east boundaries. They branch out stretching toward the west sea and the south sea.

South of Mt. Baikdoo lie the Kaima Plateau, the highest land in Korea, and Baikmoo Plateau, which are surrounded by the Hamkyung, Boojunryung and Rangrim Ranges. The two plateaux are divided by the Machunryung Range. This area is connected with the mountainous districts in Northeast China. Here are about 60 high mountains, all with altitudes of 2,000 metres, including Kwanmo Mountains (2,541 metres high). But the mountains of the interior are relatively low and the slopes are gentle. The Rangrim ranges on the west, ragged with high and steep cliffs, form a watershed. They are rich in minerals, furs and fodder resources.

The Kangnam, Juckryung, and Myohyang ranges stretch from the western edges of the Rangrim in a northerly direction from the west end of the Kaima Plateau. In a southerly direction stretches the Booktaibong Range, from which the Myulak Range branches off, extending from east to west.

The north-western mountainous area comprises the Kangdong, Uhjin, and Jabi Ranges. These ranges run from east to west between the Myohyang and Myulak Ranges, and are comparatively low as a result of weathering. There are many gorges. The mountains have undulating surfaces.

In the northwestern mountainous area are the famous Myohyang Mountains (1905 metres high), the noted stalactite grottos, including Tongryong Grotto and Grand Baikryung Grotto, Changsoo and Koowul mountains.

In the southern part of Korea the largest mountain range is the Taibaik. The Kwangjoo, Charyung, Sobaik and Loryong Ranges run southwesterly and the Kyungsang Range extends in a southerly direction. All these ranges form the eastern and southwestern mountainous area.

Taibaik Range forms a back bone in Korea. It starts from near Wonsan, running along the east coast. Its eastern side drops sharply down to the shore of the East Sea, but the western side is gently inclined, forming the wide Lyungsu Plateau.

The world-famous Keumkang (Diamond) mountains form the northern part of the Taibaik Range. The highest peak, Birobong, is 1,638 metres above sea level.

The Sobaik Range which branches out from the Taibaik extending in the southwesterly direction forms a border between the Chulla and Kyunggi Provinces.

On the western slope of the Sobaik Range lies the Chinan Plateau formed by stratigraphic weathering. Here is Mt. Chiri, the highest in the southern part of Korea with an altitude of 1,915 metres.

Korea being mountainous, the flat lands occupy only 25 per cent of the whole territory. The plains stretch in the main along the lower reaches of rivers on the west as well as the south and along the coastal areas. The plains are formed by alluvial deposit, elevation of coastal land and weathering of highlands.

Few plains are found on the east coast, because mountain ranges extend close up to the coastline. Soosung, Uhrang, Kilju, Nongsung, Hamheung, Yungheung, Anbyun and Yungil plains are noteworthy.

On the west coast lie broad fields, a granary of Korea. Ryongchun, Wounjun, Jungjoo, Anjoo, Pyongyang, Onchun, Zairyong, and Yunbaik plains are the big crop-producing areas in the northern part of Korea. In the South, the well-known plains are Kimpo, Pyongtak, Ryedang, Naipo, Honam and Junnam. Along the south coast stretch the Kimhai, Jinju and other small plains.

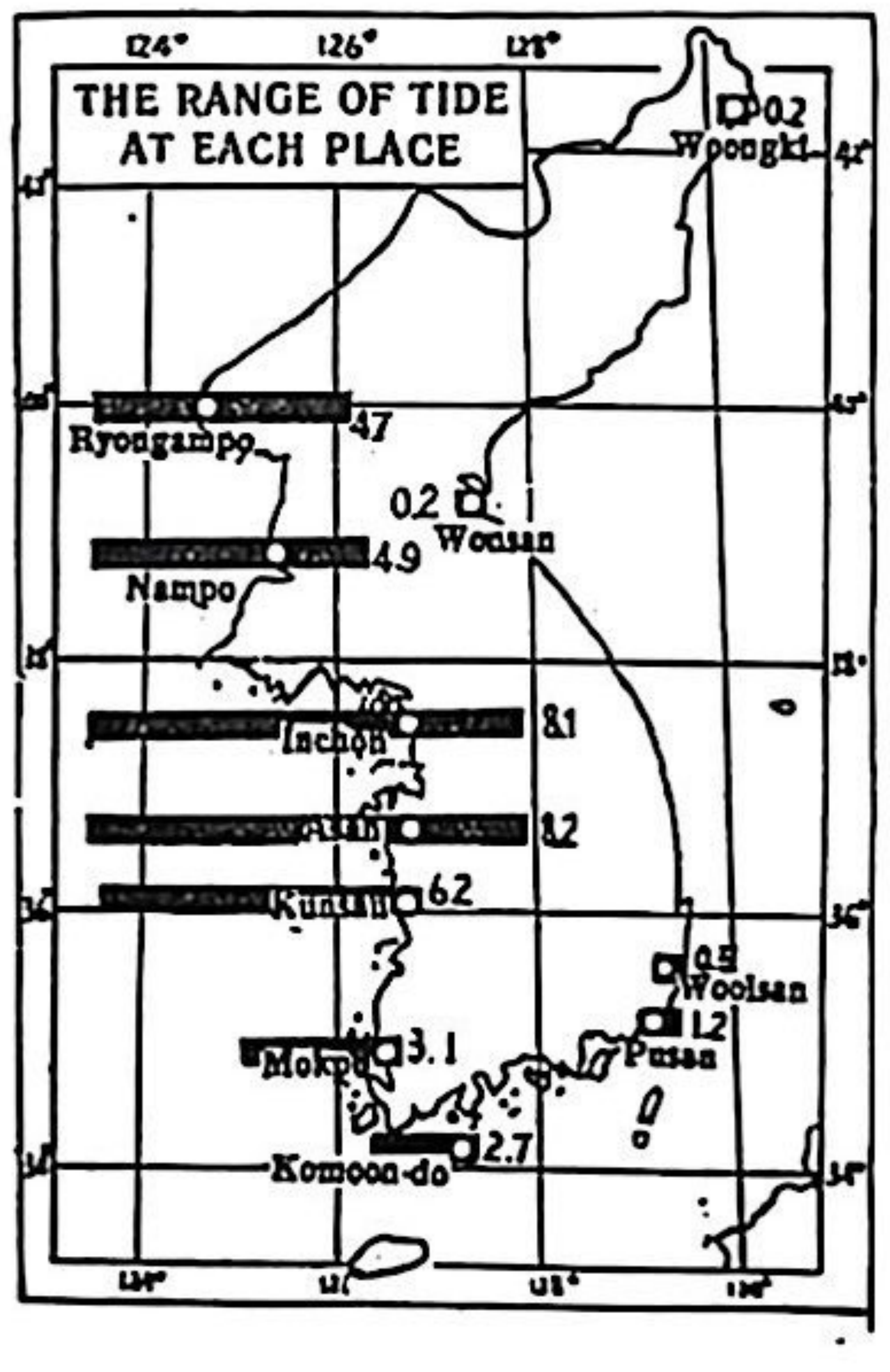
SURROUNDING SEAS

Korea is a sea country, surrounded by seas on three sides — the East Sea (the Sea of Japan), the Yellow Sea and the South Sea. The East Sea is the widest and deepest.

Even at places near the seashore the depth exceeds 100 metres. Farther out the depth is about 1,000 metres and over 3,000 metres in some places.

On the east coast are the bays of East Chosun, Yongil, Chosun, Kyungsung and Sungjin. And the shoreline is regular. The total length of the coastline is 1,727 km. But the distance is 890 km in direct line.

On the East Sea there are good ports such as Woungki, Rajin, Chungjin, Kimchaik, Shinpo, Twoijo, Heungnam, Wonsan and Pohang.



The range between ebb and flow on the east coast is small, showing only 50 cm. Into the East Sea flows the warm current through Chosun Straits and the cold Riman current through the Gulf of Tatary.

The current and other conditions favour the East Sea with fish in abundance. The biggest fishing grounds in Korea are found there.

The South Sea lies between the East Sea and Yellow Sea. The length of shore-line is 2,246 km, but the direct line is 255 km. In the South Sea there are about 2,200 islands. The depth of the sea is 150 metres (167 metres in the deepest place). The distance to Japan is about 150 km. There are good bays such as Chinhai, Kwangyang, Soonchun, Posung, and Kangjin. Pusan, Masan and Ryusoo are the largest ports.

The range between ebb and flow grows from Pusan westward; near Pusan it is 130 cm and near Mokpo 301 cm.

Along the south coast lie about 180,000 hectares of alkaline land, which provide good grounds for raising laver and breeding oysters and shell fish. The South Sea is rich in warm-water fish.

Of the many islands in the South Sea, Cheju Island is the biggest (1,859 square kilometres), and then Kojedo (376 square kilometres), Chindo (334 square kilometres) and Namhai (298 square kilometres).

The West Sea (Yellow Sea) is a shallow sea with an average depth of 44 metres. The west coast has many estuaries and indentations. The length of shoreline is 4,719 km.

Directly linked with the Continent, Korea is influenced by the monsoons. In winter the temperature drops to below zero in the coastal districts of North Hwanghai Province and the sea is covered with thin ice. But in summer it goes up as high as 24 degrees.

The west coast is known for high tides which sometimes reach 10 metres. Along the west coast lie about 520,000 hectares of alkaline land, of which 300,000 hectares belong to the northern part of the country. The D.P.R.K. government took measures to reclaim on a bigger scale the coastal lands in the northern part of North Hwanghai Province.

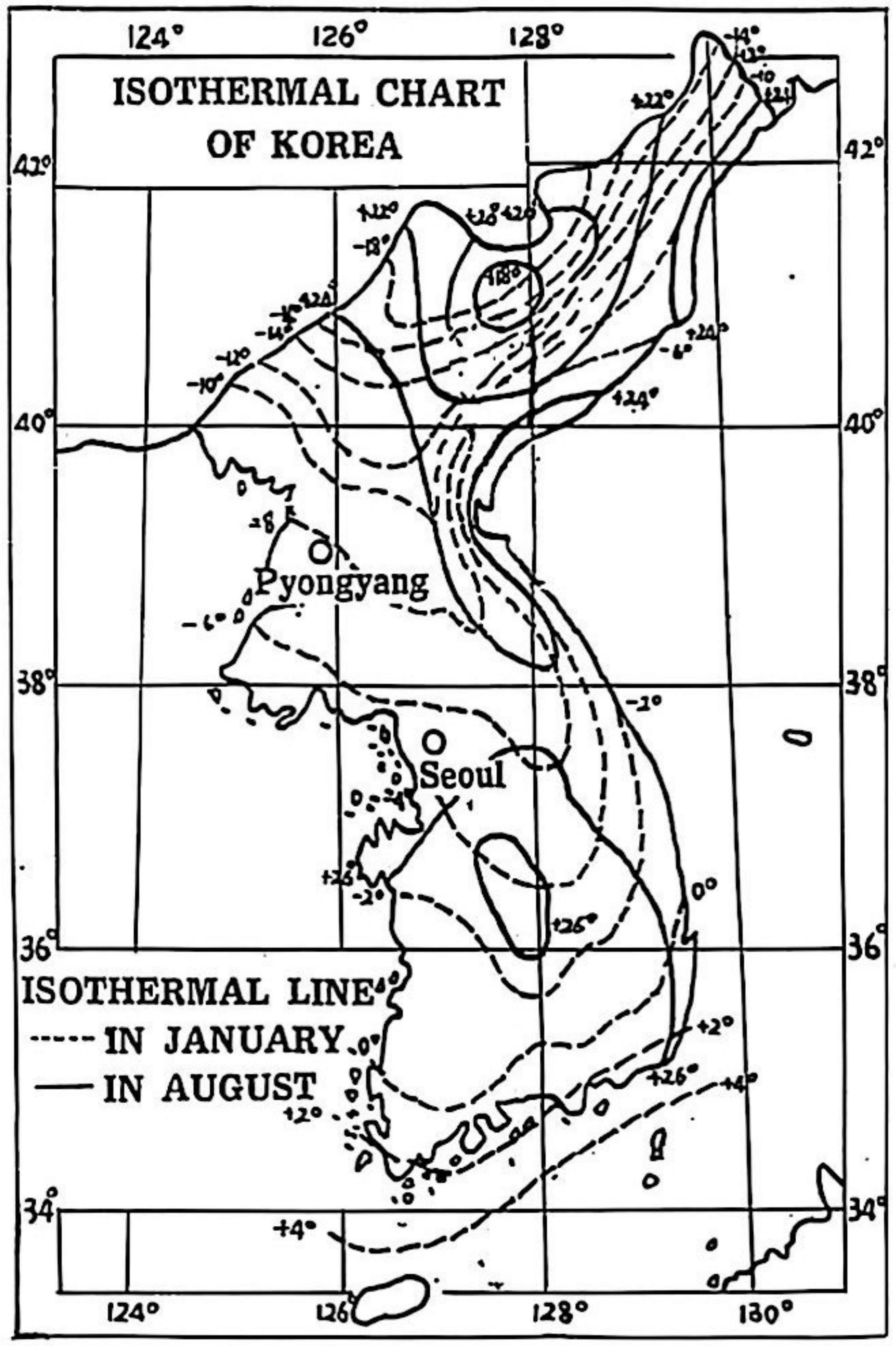
On the west coast lie the West Chosun, Kwangryang, Taidong, Haiju, Kanghwa, Chunsoo and Mokpo Bays, and the main ports are Nampo, Haiju, Inchon, Kunsan and Mokpo. The west coast provides a number of salt-fields, which are favoured with tidal and weather conditions. The sea abounds in fish, shell and seaweed.

CLIMATE

Korea is situated in the north temperate zone, in the path of the monsoons sweeping the east coast of the Asian Continent. It has a temperate climate. As the continental influence is

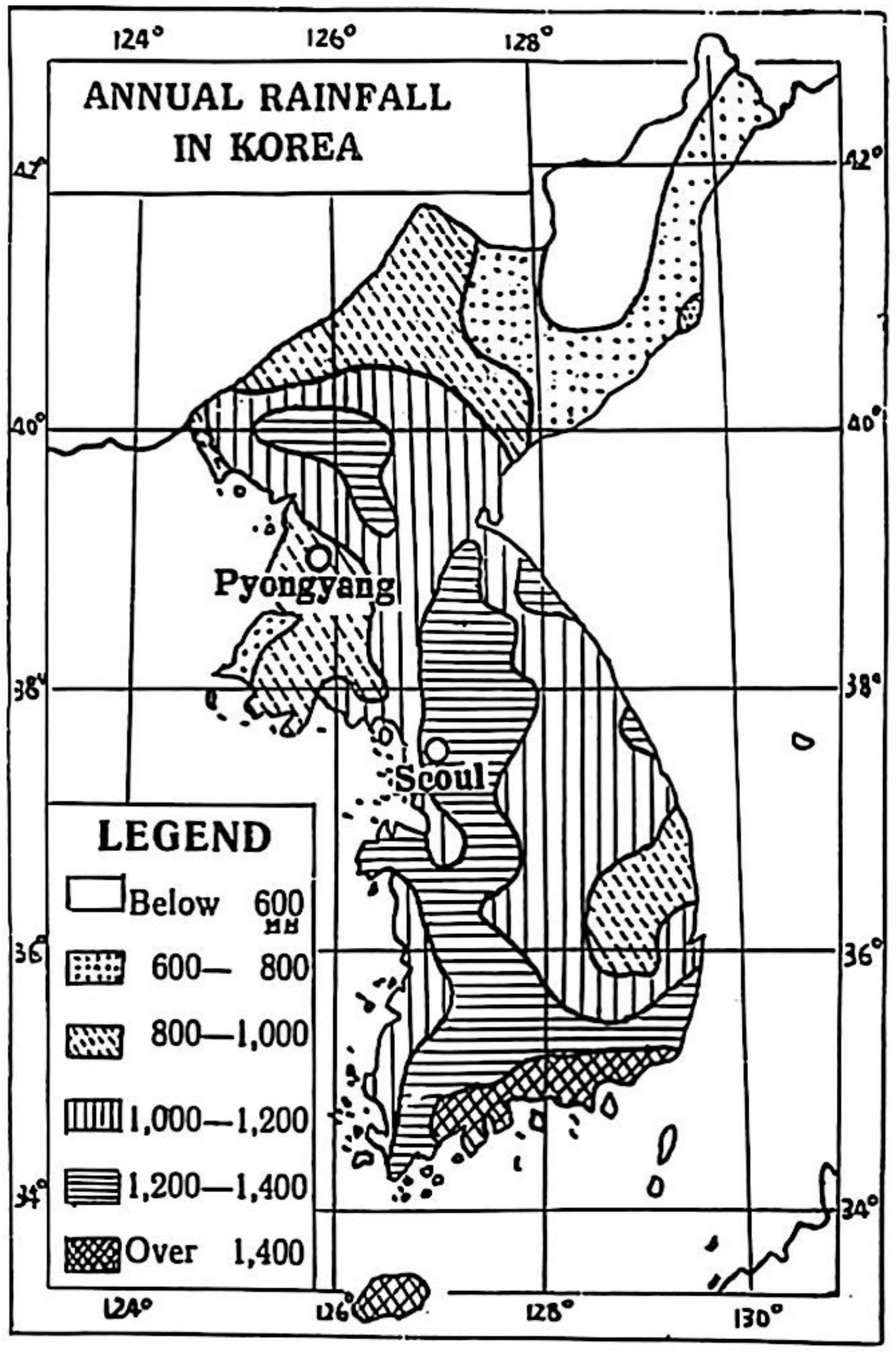
stronger, it is cold in the winter and the air is clear and dry. In summer it is damp, sultry and often cloudy, being under the oceanic influence.

There are four distinct seasons in Korea. Though there is a marked difference in the temperature between the plains and the mountainous areas lying between the east and west coasts, the climate is generally mild and equable. Though Korea is small, the weather has fluctuations.



Korea's annual average temperature ranges from 4° C to 15° C; in the northern mountainous districts 3.5° to 6°; in the central part of Korea 10° to 12°; in the southern part 12° to 15°.

When the monsoon blows in winter, it is very cold in the northern mountainous districts. In the northern part temperature drops to 21° C below zero. But in the southern coastal areas the average temperature in January is 2° C, the difference being 23°.



There is little difference in summer. The average temperature in August, the hottest month in Korea, is 24° to 26° C except the Kaima Plateau which runs around 18° to 22°.

There is much rainfall in Korea. The annual rainfall is 1,000 mm., differing according to the season and locality.

There is heavy rainfall along the south coast, in Wonsan, on the lower reaches of the Han and Chungchun Rivers and Woulung Island, ranging from 1,300 mm. to 1,500 mm.

There is comparatively little rain in the interior — North Hamkyung Province, Ryanggang Province and the northeast coast of South Hamkyung Province and near the estuary of the Taidong River. The annual amount of rainfall in these areas is between 500 mm. and 700mm.

The rainfall is heavier in the southern part, which is much more influenced by sea currents and monsoons than in the northern part.

The amount of rainfall in Korea varies periodically under the monsoon influence. As a whole, there is heavy rain in summer. 50 to 60 per cent of the annual rainfall comes in the three months of June, July and August. For half a year from October to March the amount of rainfall is only about 15 per cent.

Occasionally, a daily rainfall in July or August exceeds over 400 mm., which cause floods, while drought may continue for scores of days. After liberation river harnessing and planting of forest belt were extensively carried on in the northern part of the country.

The seasonal changes in Korea are distinct in every part of the country. But the seasons vary to some extent in different places.

Spring in the northern part comes about one and a half months later than in the southern part. While autumn comes about one month and a half earlier in the northern part. Springs and autumns grow longer, in accordance with the south latitudinal position of areas and vice versa springs and summers grow shorter, and winters longer towards the north.

GEOLOGY

Directly linked with the Asian Continent, Korea has a close relation in its geological structure with the Continent, especially with Northeast China, Siberia and part of the Soviet Maritime Provinces.

The geological structure north of the Sobaik Range is akin in many respects to that of Northeast China, Shantung peninsula of China and the eastern Siberian table-land, while the structure southeast of the Sobaik and on the middle and lower reaches of the Tuman River is similar to that of the Soviet Maritime Provinces.

Crystalline rocks and granite-gneiss of the Precambrian Period, make up about half of the geological structure. Granite of the Mesozoic Era is widely distributed all over the country, comprising about 30 per cent of the entire territory. Volcanic rocks constitute about 8 per cent, and typical moraine about 12 per cent. Alluvium formed in river valleys along the coasts of the Yellow Sea makes up about 4 per cent.

The structure according to geological eras is as follows:

1. **Archaeozoic Era:** The strata of the Archaeozoic Era in Korea is distributed mainly over the provinces of North Pyongan, Jagang and South Hamkyung and partially in the provinces of North Hamkyung, North Hwanghai, Kyunggi, Kangwon, South Choongchung and North and South Chulla Provinces, where grey granite-gneiss mainly constitutes the structure.

2. **Proterozoic Era:** The strata of the Proterozoic Era are found extensively in Korea with the exception of Ryanggang, Jagang and North and South Kyungsang Provinces.

3. **Palaeozoic Era:** The strata of the Palaeozoic Era can be classified into three — the Chosun, Chungsung-ri and Pyongan systems — in order from bottom to surface.

The period of the Chosun system corresponds to the Cambrian and Ordovician periods. This was formed of marine deposits over Korea, the northern part of China and eastern Siberia. These strata in Korea are found mainly in North and South Pyongan and North and South Hwanghai Provinces.

The strata of the Chungsung-ri system formed at the beginning of the Devonian period are found in Soonchun County, South Pyongan Province. The fossils of coral found there show that the strata were built up of the bones of animals living in lakes.

The period of the Pyongan system corresponds to the Carboniferous and Permian periods. The first stratum was formed in the Carboniferous period due to the erosion of the Mongolian geosync line. Later the terrestrial deposits were accumulated on the former marine deposits during the Permian period. These strata are found in South Pyongan, South Hamkyung and Kangwon Provinces.

4. **Mesozoic Era:** As to the strata of the Mesozoic Era, Korea has the Rampo system formed in the beginning of the Triassic period, the Taidong system formed in Jurassic period, and Kyungsang system formed in the Cretaceous period.

The Rampo system, which developed in the Rampo district of South Choongchung Province, is formed of conglomerate, sandstone, shale, clay-slate. Fossils of plants are also found there.

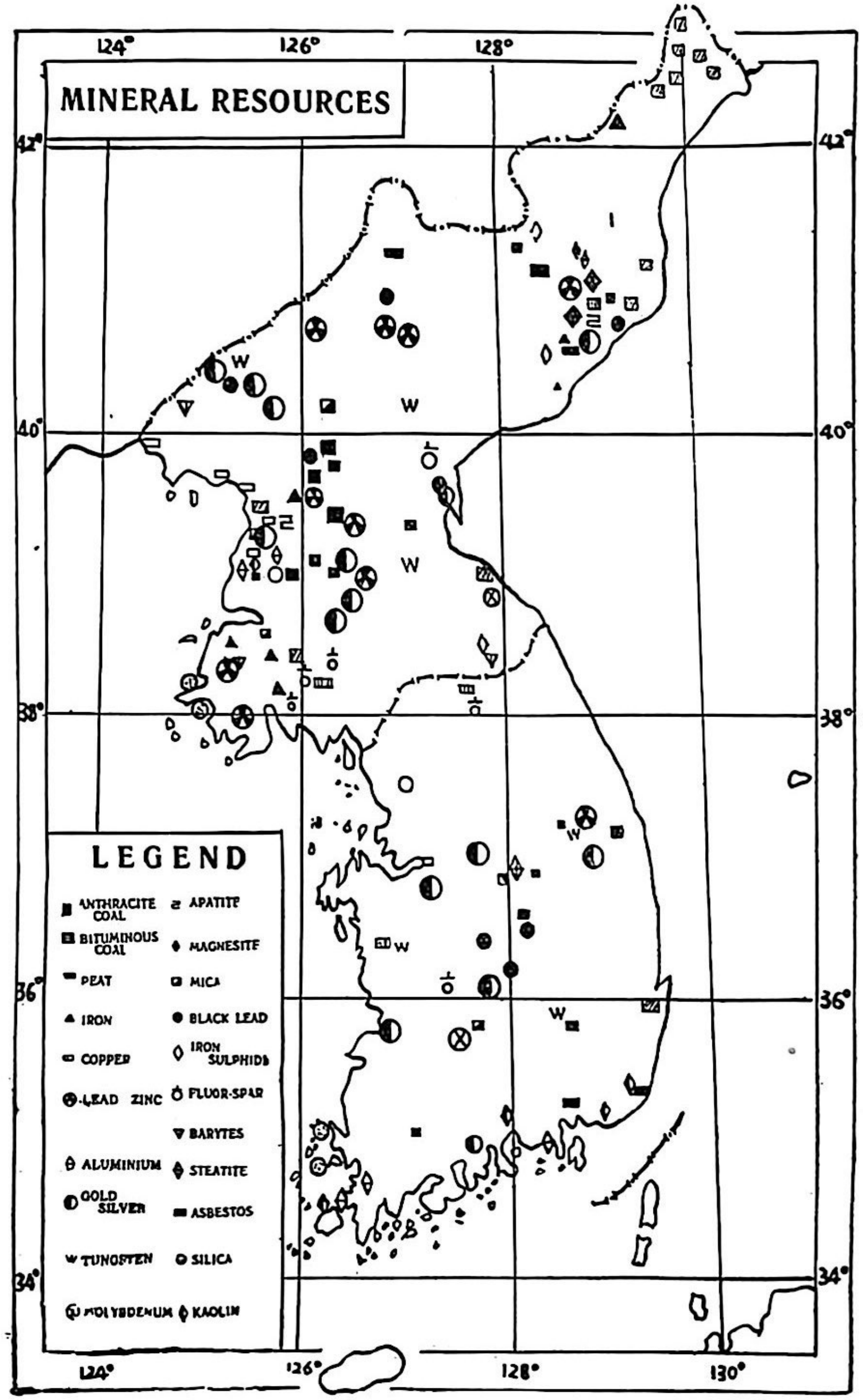
The strata of the Taidong system are found mainly near Pyongyang, Tongjin in Kyunggi Province, Nyungwol in Kangwon Province, Hamheung, Poongsan in Ryanggang Province. This area is small.

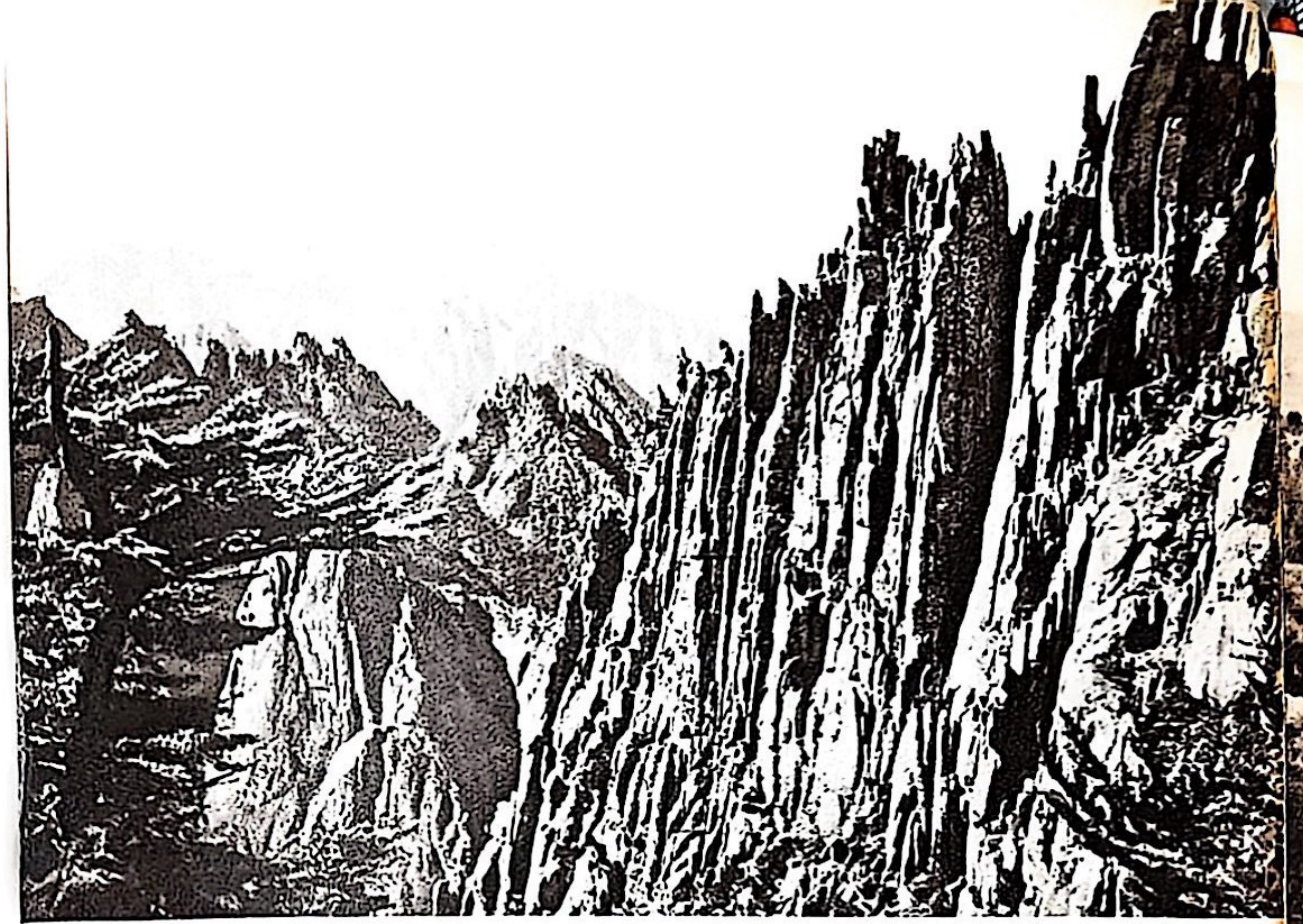
The strata of the Kyungsang system are widely distributed in North Kyungsang Province. The lower part of the strata consists of porphyrite, conglomerate, sandstone and shale along with many fossils of plants.

5. **The Cainozoic Era:** There has been the terrestrial elevation movement since the granite was formed around the end of the Cretaceous period. But it was from Eocene of Tertiary period that the strata began to change. The distribution of the strata is limited to certain areas including the basin of the Tuman River, Kiljoo, and Myungchun districts, Moonduk in South Pyongan Province, Bongsan in North Hwanghai Province, etc. The strata are composed of conglomerate, basalt, shale, with the brown coal veins interpenetrated.

MINERAL RESOURCES

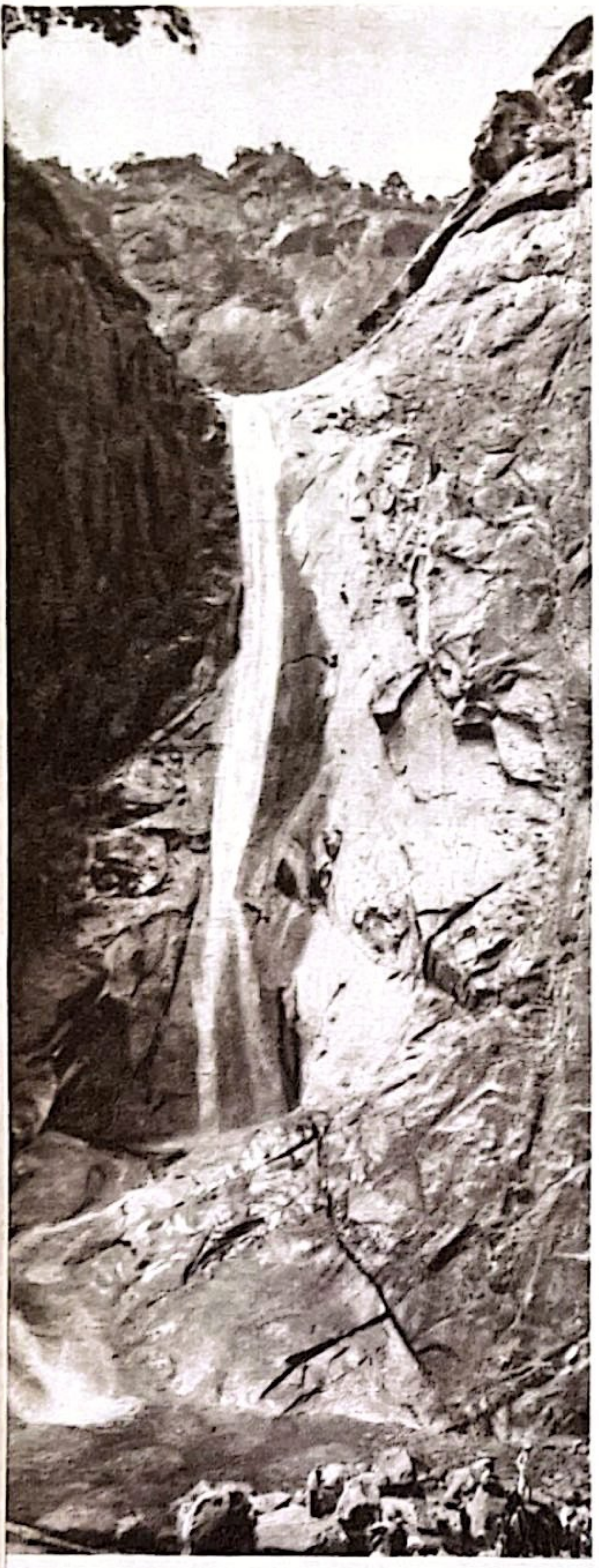
Korea is endowed with the deposits of almost every kind of valuable minerals. Prospecting is being made for exploiting mineral resources. The kinds of minerals found so far are over 300, of which 140 are of great economic value. The main minerals are classified as follows:


MINERAL RESOURCES
124°
126°
128°
130°
42°
40°
38°
36°
34°
W
LEGEND
ANTHRACITE COAL
BITUMINOUS COAL
PEAT
IRON
COPPER
LEAD ZINC
ALUMINIUM
GOLD SILVER
TUNGSTEN
MOLYBDENUM
APATITE
MAGNESITE
MICA
BLACK LEAD
IRON SULPHIDE
FLUOR-SPAR
BARYTES
STEATITE
ASBESTOS
SILICA
KAOLIN



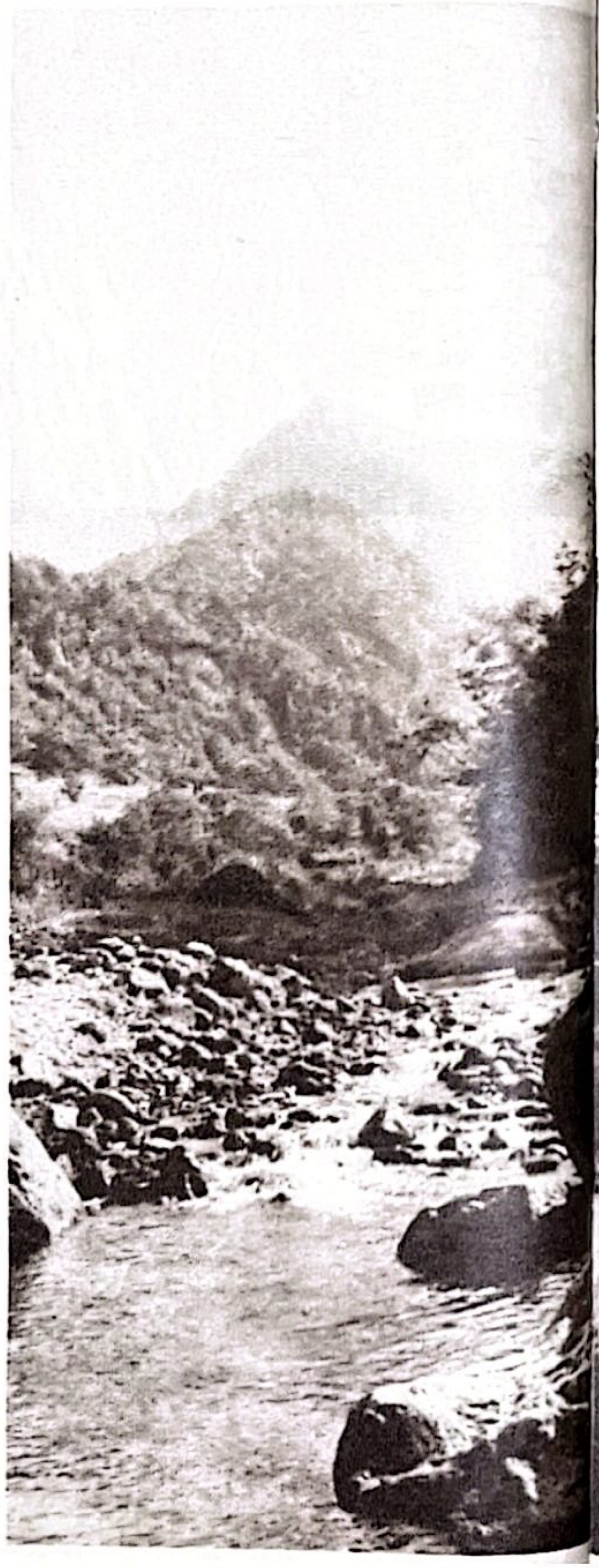
Chipsun Peak in Mt. Keumkang (Diamond)

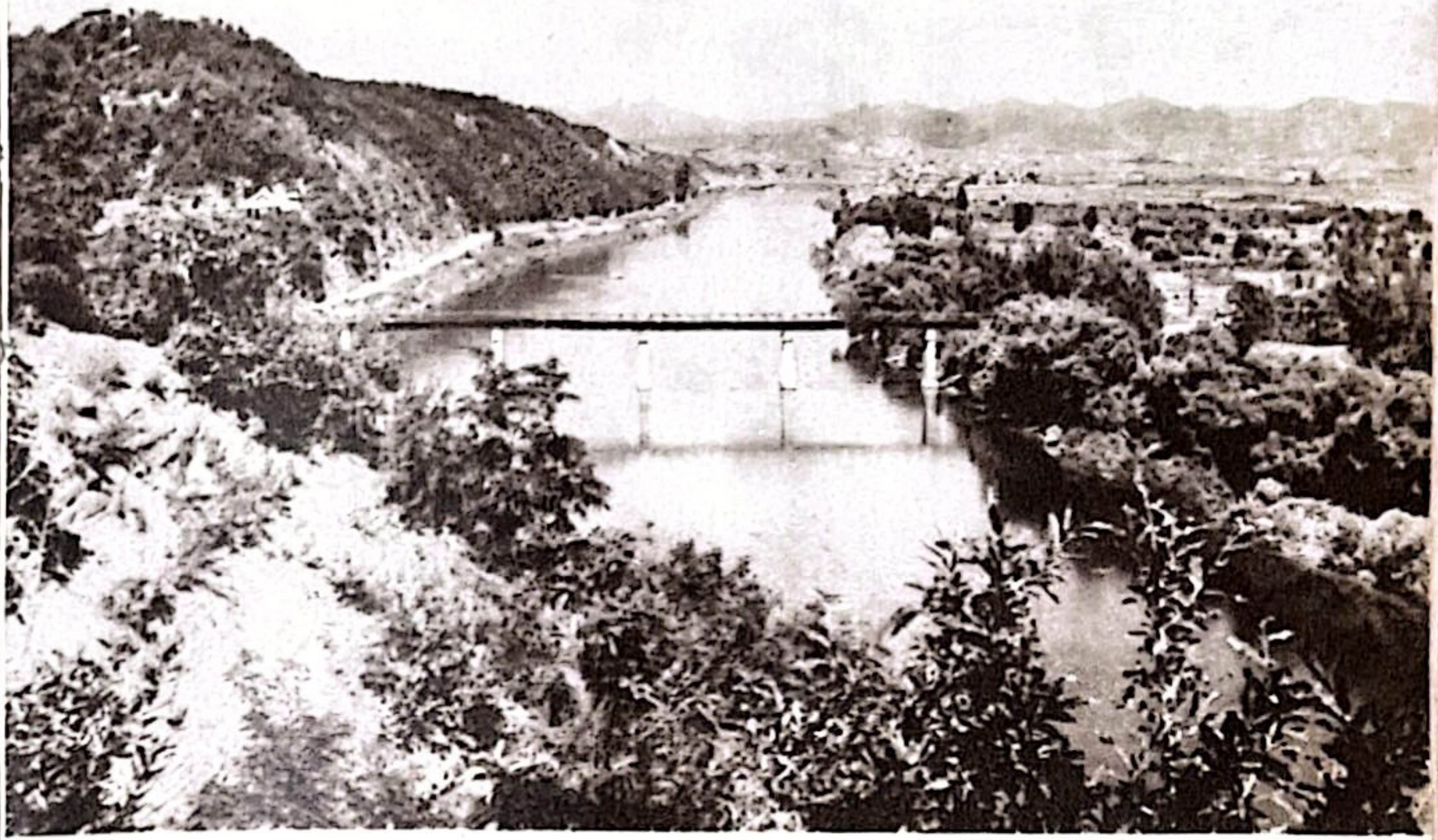
A series of Myohyang mountain peaks



Kooryong (Nine Dragons) Pool in Mt. Keumkang (Diamond)

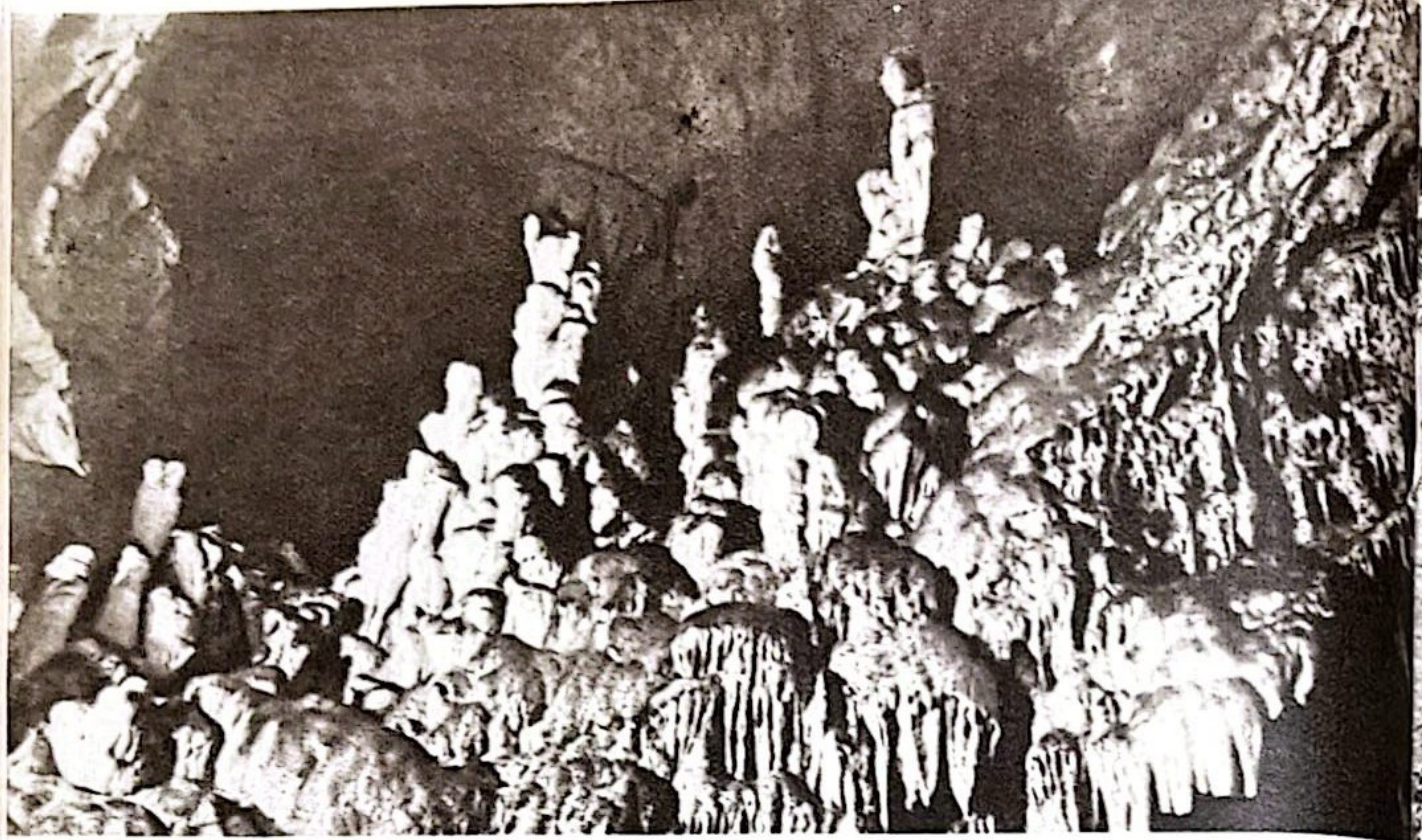
Ravine





The Taidong River

Jangjin Lake

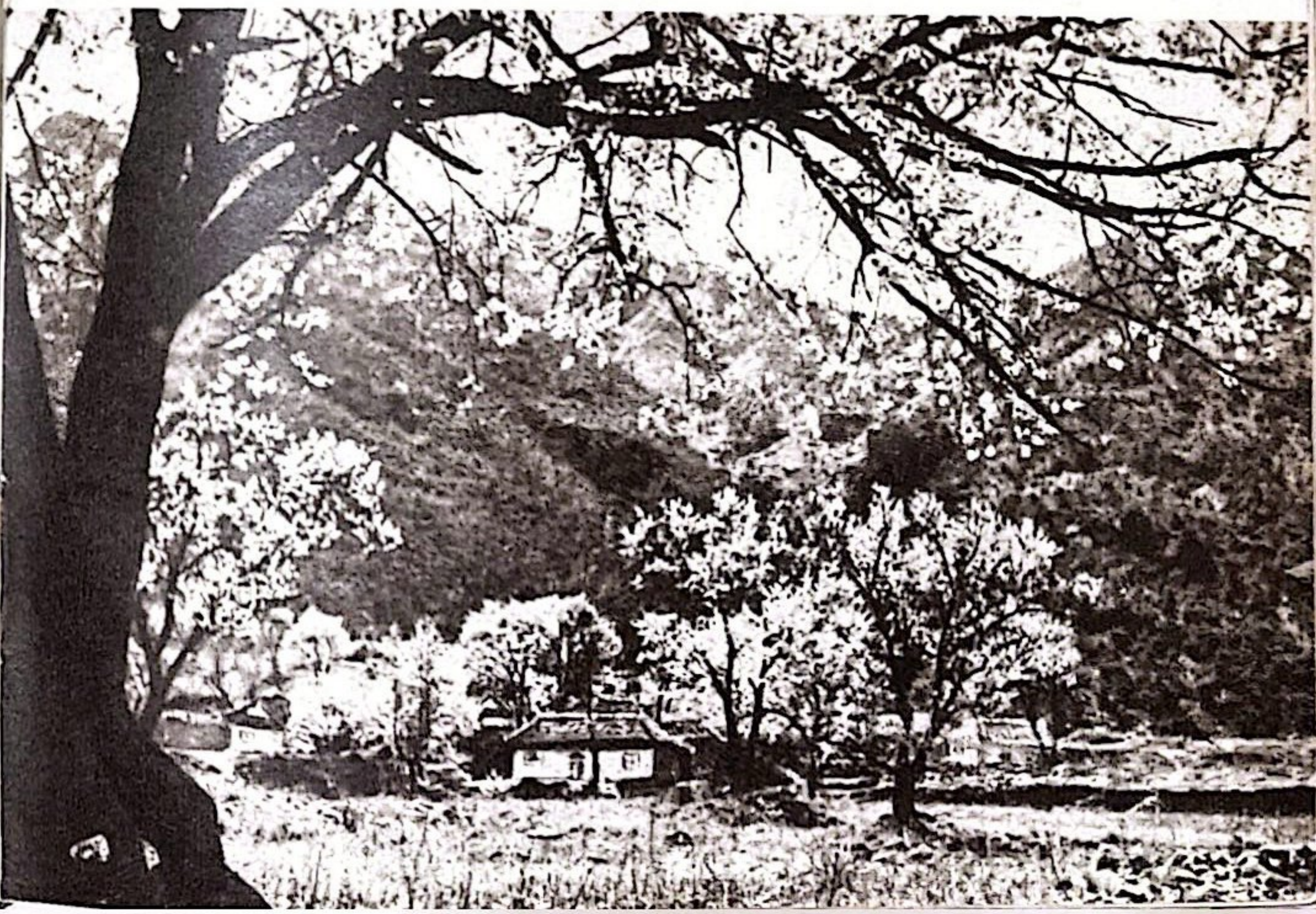


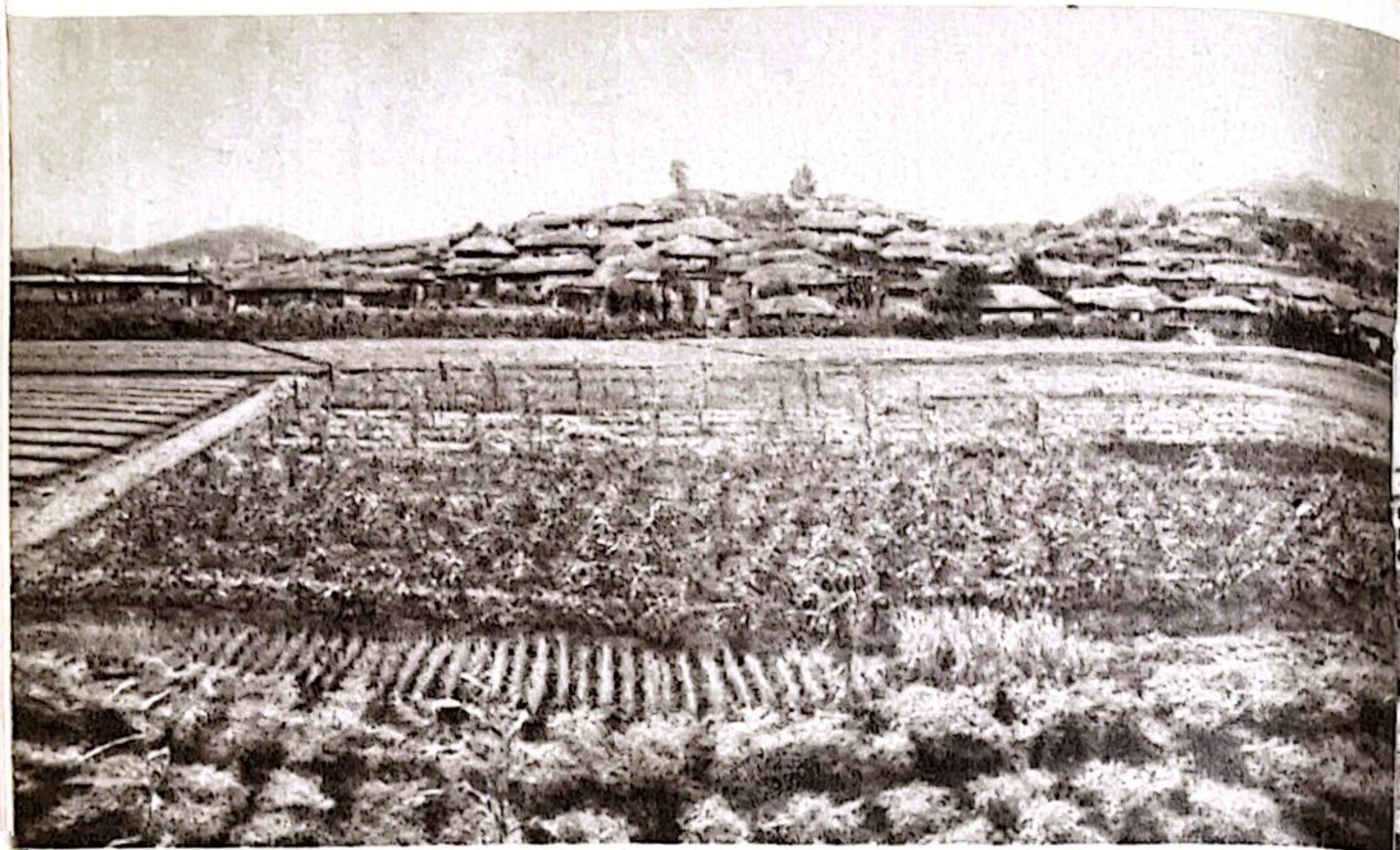
Stalactite Cave in the Paikryung Grotto

A scene of the east coast

A fishing village in the east coast

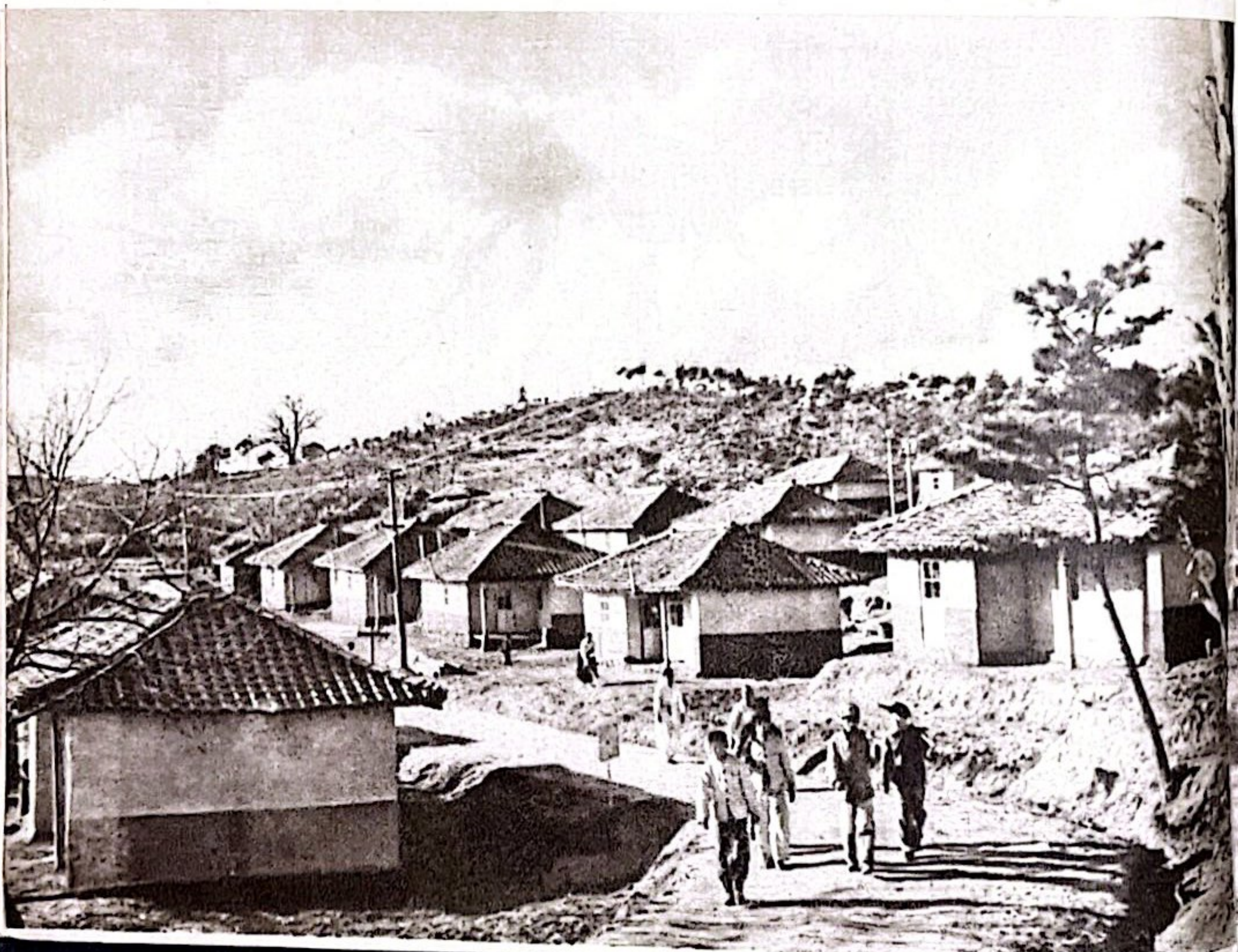
A mountain village

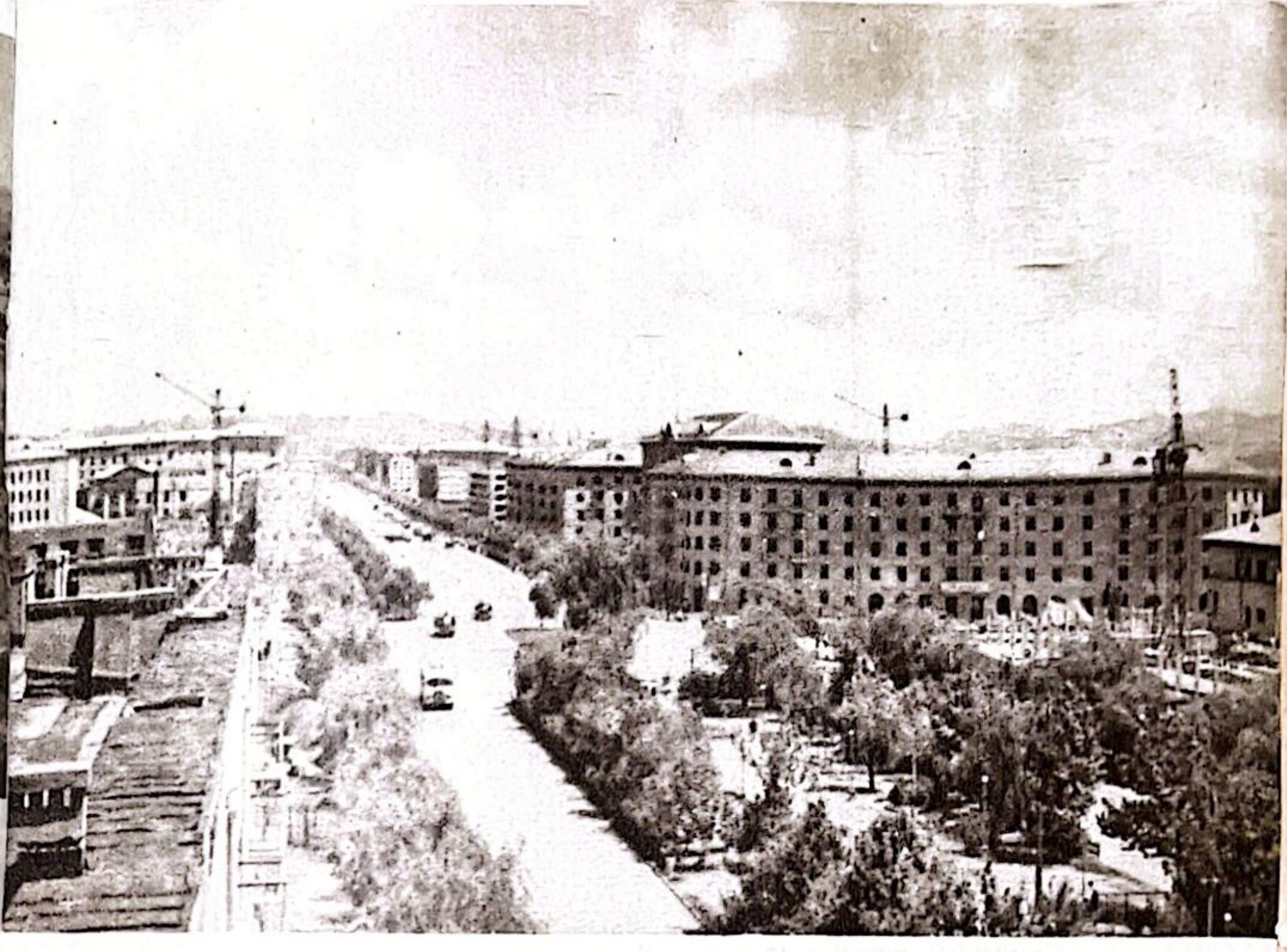




An old appearance of the countryside in the plain

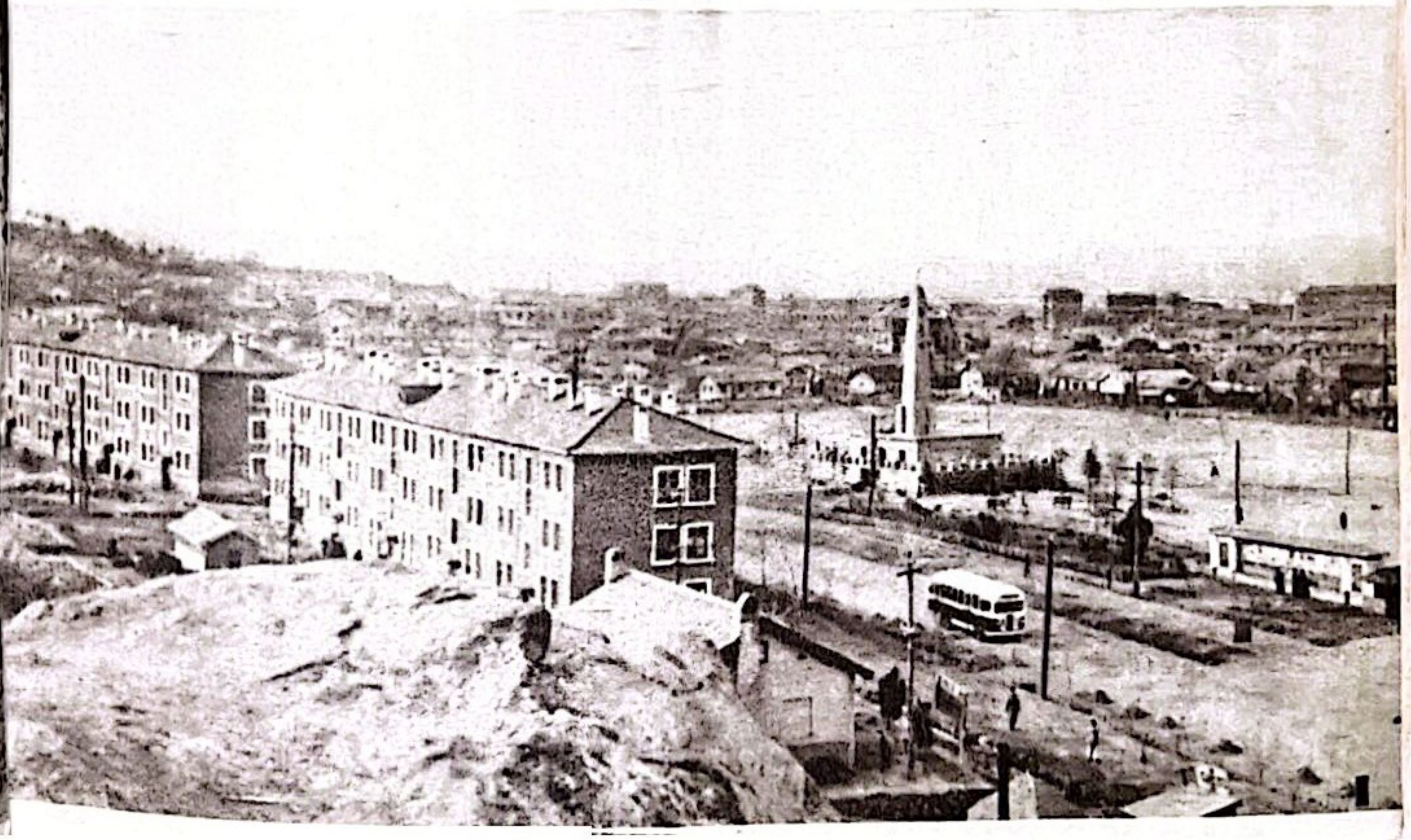
Newly built co-op modern housing estate





Newly built Stalin Street in Pyongyang

Wonsan, a port town, under reconstruction



Residential quarters in Kaesong

New workers' houses in Hamheung

According to incomplete data of 1940 the deposits of eight kinds of minerals—tungsten, molybdenum, magnesite, graphite, barytes, gold, mica and fluorspar—hold first to tenth places in the world.

1. **Fuel:** As for fuel, Korea has chiefly three kinds of coal — anthracite, brown coal and peat. The amount of coal deposits in Korea is estimated at about 2,500 million tons. Every province with the exception of North Chulla has coal deposits. The richest coal deposits are to be found in the northern part of the country.

90 per cent of the total deposits of brown coal is found in North Hamkyung Province and in some parts of South Hamkyung, South Pyongan, Kangwon and North and South Kyungsang Provinces.

Korea's brown coal is of superior quality. It is used not only for locomotives, motors and power generation, but also as petroleum and coke substitute.

Rich deposits of anthracite are found within the radius of 80 kilometres around Pyongyang, in the northern and southern parts of South Pyongan Province and in Koojang County, North Pyongan Province. In some parts of South Hamkyung, Kangwon, Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces anthracite is also deposited.

In South Korea deposits of anthracite are found in Samchuk, Nyungwol, some parts of North and South Choongchung, North Kyungsang, South Chulla and Kyunggi Provinces.

Peat is widely deposited along the coast of North Pyongan Province, in the southern part of South Hwanghai Province. It is also found in South Hamkyung, Kyunggi, South Choongchung Provinces and in the southern part of Kangwon Province.

2. **Ferrous Metal:** Korea has rich deposits of iron ore which provide a favorable condition for the development of ferrous metallurgical industry.

The biggest deposit of iron ore in Korea is found in the area of Moosan, North Hamkyung Province. It is estimated at about 1,300 million tons. The quality of ore is superior, containing 40 per cent iron.

Riwon and Tanchun of South Hamkyung Province, Yangyang and Samchuk of Kangwon Province, and areas along the west coast — Jairyong, Kaichun, Kangsu, etc. — are rich in iron deposits.

Most of the iron ore deposits are found in North Korea. Before liberation 99.9 per cent of Korea's iron ore came from North Korea. Abundant raw materials for alloy-metal are found in Korea. Tungsten, molybdenum, nickel, chrome, manganese, cobalt, zirconium, beryllium, tantalum, etc., are abundant.

The main deposit of tungsten is found in Shinpyong County, North Hwanghai Province. It is also deposited in Taiheung County of South Hamkyung Province, Yangduk of South Pyongan Province, Changsung of North Pyongan Province, Mt. Keumkang and Nyungwol of Kangwon Province, North and South Choongchung Provinces and North Kyungsang Province. Large deposits of molybdenum are located in North Hwanghai Province, North and South Hamkyung, Kangwon, South Chulla and North Kyungsang Provinces.

3. **Non-ferrous Metals:** Korea is rich in deposits of non-ferrous metals including copper, lead, zinc, etc.

Copper deposits are found in Kapsan of Ryanggang Province, Hoochang of Jagang Province, Tanchun of South Hamkyung Province and some areas of South Kyungsang Province. Conglomerate ores containing copper are found in quantities in South Pyongan and North Hwanghai Provinces. There are lead-zinc ore deposits in almost all parts of North Korea and North Kyungsang Province in South Korea. Korea is endowed with a huge deposit of light metal ores. About 3,600 million tons of magnesite are deposited in the areas around the Machunryung Mountain Range of North and South Hamkyung Provinces. In Korea there are also large deposits of alum-stone, nepheline, shale, cyanite, clay, etc.

4. **Precious Metal Ores:** Korea is rich in precious metal ores including gold and silver. Especially a considerable amount of gold is found, so Korea has been called a "country of gold" from olden times.

Of 6,513 mines in 1939, gold mines accounted for 64 per cent, producing 31 tons of solid gold in total.

Gold is mined in North Hwanghai, South Pyongan, North Chulla, Kangwon and South Choongchung Provinces. The biggest gold mine is in Woonsan, North Pyongan Province.

Silver is mined with gold and other non-ferrous metals. With the exploitation of non-ferrous metals the annual output of silver is increasing year after year.

5. **Raw Building-materials:** Various kinds of clay are found throughout the country. It is the basic raw material for porcelain, and used in the production of cement and bricks. A huge deposit of kaolin is found in North Hamkyung Province. Next come the areas around Pyongyang, South Pyongan Province, South Kyungsang Province, and South Chulla Province.

Silica necessary for manufacturing glass is deposited in great quantities in Mongkeumpo and Koomipo of South Hwanghai Province, in South Chulla Province and South Kyungsang Province.

Deposits of limestone are distributed in all parts of North Korea. In North Kyungsang Province, South Korea, large quantities are found. Korea is also rich in deposits of alabaster, steatite, felspar, and boron along with granite, marble, clay-slate, etc.

6. **Other Minerals:** Korea has an abundance of graphite. There are two kinds of graphite — aquamous and soil-like.

The former is found in Jagang, North Pyongan, North Hamkyung Provinces, and the latter in South Pyongan, South Hamkyung and North Choongchung Provinces. Most of graphite is in North Korea.

Rich deposits of fluorspar, barytes, mica and asbestos are found in North Korea. Sulphuric iron and apatite, important raw materials for the manufacture of chemical fertilizer, are found in abundance in North Korea.

RIVERS AND LAKES

Generally Korea's rivers take winding courses, narrow and short, but not deep. On the other hand, they have many tributaries, like fishbones.

Rivers more than 40 kilometres long number 138 with the length of 16,000 kilometres altogether. Among rivers of more than 500 kilometres in length are the Yalu, Tuman, Han and Rakdong. Taidong and Keumkang Rivers are each more than 400 kilometres long. There are about 20 rivers of more than 100 kilometres in length.

Korea is elongated in shape, and main watersheds are located in the east. Therefore, the rivers flowing toward the Yellow and South Seas are comparatively long and wide, while the rivers flowing eastward with the exception of the Tuman River are short. Most of rivers have usually swift currents, rapids and shoals in the upper reaches, which provide favorable conditions for power generation. But the lower streams are gentle, deep and wide, suitable for navigation.

One of the characteristics of Korea's rivers is the big seasonal change. In the recent geological era Korea underwent few earth-crust movements, volcanic action and big landslides and experienced no glacial period, so Korea has few large lakes.

There are 30 lakes with a circumference of 4 kilometres each and 22 with an area of over one square kilometre each.

The biggest lakes are Jangyun Lake on the lower reaches of the Uhrang River in North Hamkyung Province and Pakrokdam on the summit of Mt. Hanra in Cheju Island. Many lagoons are found along the east coast. The biggest one is Kwangpo Lake with an area of 13.4 square kilometres.

Artificial lakes, which are used as reservoirs in irrigation and in power generation, are superior in number and size to natural lakes.

The biggest artificial lake is the Soopoong which is made by harnessing the middle reaches of the Yalu River. Its surface covers about 180 square kilometres. The Jangjin and Boojun Lakes are also made for power generation. The former has an area of 53 square kilometres and the latter, 24 square kilometres.

Among the reservoirs used for irrigation purposes, the largest is the Yunpoong Reservoir with an area of 16 square kilometres. This reservoir has been built as part of the Pyongnam Irrigation Project undertaken by the D.P.R.K. government after the cease-fire.

SOIL

In Korea strata have horizontal and vertical structure. Granite and granite-gneiss are distributed in about 60 per cent of the territory. For a long time they have been weathered, and constituted a sandy soil.

On the other hand, in the areas where igneous rocks, basalt, clay-slate, shale, limestone, etc. are found the soil is of clayey texture.

The mountain-podzolic soil is prevalent in the northern highlands, such as Baikdoo lava area, Kaima and Baikmoo Plateaux. In other northern mountainous areas layers of red clay are widely distributed. Loess is common in the southern coastal regions and islands, where temperature is high and the air is damp.

In South Pyongan, North Hwanghai, and Kangwon Provinces where limestone is found in abundance, we find a layer of limestone covered with terrarossa which is red in colour and slimy.

Alluvium is found in the basins of rivers and coastal regions. Korean soil differs widely in its chemical aspects.

Generally speaking, paddy fields have stronger acidity than dry fields. The soil of South Korea contains more acidity than that of North Korea. Such condition of soil is largely attributable to the reckless exploitation of fertile soil by the Japanese imperialists.

Since liberation, in North Korea the work of analyzing soil in different districts has been carried on and steps have been taken to enhance its fertility.

PLANT LIFE

Korean plants are classified into three kinds — plants of cold, temperate and subtropical zones. In Korea there are 3,376 species known so far, of which 1,096 are forest plants.

Korean forest comes under the category of the temperate forest zone with the exception of those in the southern part of Chulla Province, the islands in the South Sea and the highlands in North Pyongan, Jagang, and Ryanggang Provinces. Pine and evergreen trees are common in Korea.

The belt of acerose trees runs through North and South Pyongan, Jagang, and North and South Hamkyung Provinces. They grow on the heights — 1,500 metre Mt. Hanra, 1,300 metre Mt. Chiri, 1,150 metre Mt. Keumkang, 900 metre Mt. Rangrim, 600 metre Mt. Baikdoo.

These trees with needle-shaped leaves form dense forests, sometimes mingling with deciduous and latifolate trees.

Forests of evergreen broad-leaved trees are found in South Chulla and on the southern coast and islands in the South Sea.

Korea has a wide forest area. Nevertheless afforestation was neglected due to the predatory policy of the Japanese colonialists.

Korea abounds not only in wild plants but also in cultivated plants. The chief grain crops are rice, maize, barley, wheat, beans, kaoliang, etc. And industrial crops are cotton, hemp, flax, ramie, tobacco, hops, castor-beans, sunflowers, ginseng, etc.

Apples, pears, peaches, grapes, persimmons, plums, and mandarin orange are the chief fruits.

Major vegetables are Irish potatoes, sweet potatoes, radish, cabbage, onion, garlic, red pepper, egg-plants, tomatoes, pumpkins and melons.

ANIMAL LIFE

Korean forests are inhabited with wild animals, birds and insects; in the seas and rivers fish and mollusc abound. Amphibious animals are also found.

Animals in the northern part are closely related to the species of the Asian Continent, originally having migrated from Siberia, Amur and Northeast China. In the central and southern parts are found animals native to Korea, similar to those of the Continent or of Japan, or their sub-species.

The species of Vertebrata including sub-species in Korea number about 1,088. Among them are 105 species of mammals, 419 birds, 27 reptiles, 15 amphibia, and 522 fish.

Being mountainous and rich in plants, Korea has many squirrels, foxes, badgers, hedgehogs, tigers, leopards, bears, wild boars, muskdeer, waterdeer, etc.

In Korea are found many domestic animals — cattle, horses, donkeys, pigs, sheep, and fowls such as chickens, ducks, etc.

Korea has abundant fish and mollusc including sea mammals such as seal and whale.

POLITICAL MAP OF KOREA

POLITICAL MAP OF KOREA

PYONGYANG
Provincial seats
Cities
County seats
Border lines
Provincial boundaries
Military demarcation line
Broad-guage Railways
Narrow-guage Railways
Electric Railways
Shipping routes
126°
128°
130°
42°
40°
38°
36°
34°
PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA
U.S.S.R.
JAPAN
NORTH HAMKYUNG PROVINCE
RYANGGANG PROVINCE
JAGANG PROVINCE
SOUTH HAMKYUNG PROVINCE
NORTH PYONGAN PROVINCE
SOUTH PYONGAN PROVINCE
NORTH HWANGHAI PROVINCE
SOUTH HWAGHAI PROVINCE
KANGWON PROVINCE
KYUNGKI PROVINCE
SOUTH KANGWON PROVINCE
NORTH CHOONG CHUNG PROVINCE
SOUTH CHOONG CHUNG PROVINCE
NORTH KYUNGSANG PROVINCE
SOUTH KYUNGSANG PROVINCE
NORTH CHULLA PROVINCE
SOUTH CHULLA PROVINCE
R. TUMEN
R. YALU
R. TAEDONG
R. HAN
R. KUM
R. NAKDONG
BAY OF WEST KOREA
BAY OF EAST KOREA
BAY OF KANGHWA
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
YELLOW SEA
SOUTH SEA
CHEJU STR.
KOREAN STR.
TSUSHIMA STR.
CHEJU DO IS.
WOOLREUNG DO IS.
TSUSHIMA IS.
NAMHAI DO IS.
KOJE DO IS.
CHIN-DO IS.
PYONGYANG
CHUNGJIN
HYESAN
KANGGYE
SHINUIJOO
HAMHUNG
WONSAN
SARIWON
HAIJU
KAESONG
SEOUL
CHOONCHUN
CHUNGJOO
TAIJUN
JUNJOO
TAEGU
KWANGJOO
PUSAN
Onsung
Kyungwon
Hoiryong
Rajin
Moosan
Yunsa
Ranam
Uhrang
Kilchoo
Myongchun
Kimchaik
Tanchun
Kwangchun
Pochun
Woonheung
Baikam
Samsoo
Kapsan
Poongsan
Joonggang
Jasung
Hoochang
Manpo
Wiwon
Junchun
Chosan
Byukdong
Sakjoo
Antung
Uijoo
Yongchun
Cholsan
Koosung
Taichun
Woonsan
Sunchun
Jungjoo
Pakchun
Nyongbyon
Kaichun
Koojang
Hulchun
Anjoo
Soonchun
Sungchun
Yangdok
Nyungwon
Dockchun
Maingsan
Jangjin
Taiheung
Oro
Hongwun
Bookchung
Shinpo
Jungpyung
Heungnam
Yodok
Yongheung
Kowon
Soonan
Kangsu
Onchun
Joonghwa
Sangwon
Nampo
Songrim
Hwangjoo
Sooan
Koksan
Anak
Sunryol
Shinchun
Shinkye
Suhheung
Jangyun
Jairyong
Pyongsan
Ongjin
Yunan
Keumchun
Anbyun
Tongchun
Kosung
Holyang
Changdo
Pyunggang
Kimhwa
Chulwun
Hwachun
Yunchun
Injie
Yangyang
Kapyung
Moonsan
Kangneung
Hongchun
Kangwha
Kimpo
Inchon
Suwon
Ryujoo
Wonjoo
Pyungchang
Samchuk
Ansung
Pyungtaik
Jechun
Tanyang
Choongjoo
Eumsung
Chunan
Yungjoo
Sohsan
Ryechun
Andong
Yungyang
Yungduk
Jochiwun
Kongjoo
Booyu
Ronsan
Suhchun
Sangjoo
Uisung
Okchuh
Yungdong
Kimchun
Pohang
Kunsan
Riri
Kimje
Keumsan
Moojoo
Waikwan
Yungchun
Kyungjoo
Kochang
Kuchang
Hyupchun
Woolsan
Milyang
Ryangsan
Namwun
Ryungkwang
Jangsung
Tamyang
Koksung
Kooryie
Hadong
Jinjoo
Uiryung
Masan
Chinhai
Najoo
Soonchun
Mokpo
Bosung
Kangjin
Hainam
Ryeso
Tongyung
Cheju
Suhkwipo
Dodong
PANTOGRAPHY 1:3 350 000
0 25 50 75 100 125 150 KM

POPULATION AND ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISIONS

POPULATION

According to statistics of 1942 the total population of Korea was about 26,360,000. Korea today is divided into two parts due to the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. imperialist army. Under the circumstances, no accurate data are available, but it is roughly estimated at about thirty million.

In the pre-liberation period the composition of Korean population was somewhat complex. Under Japanese imperialist rule in all fields — political, economic and cultural — the population consisted of the Japanese colonialists, their collaborators, landlords and compradors, and a small number of pro-Japanese intellectuals and officials on the one hand, and, on the other, workers, peasants and urban petty bourgeois constituting the overwhelming majority.

After the August 15 Liberation the composition underwent a radical change. With the advent of liberation Japanese imperialists were driven out and in North Korea the political power came into the hands of the people. And the political and economic system was radically reformed. As a result, landlords and pro-Japanese capitalists — the mainstay of the exploiting class at the time — were entirely liquidated. Workers and labouring peasants have become the basic ruling classes of a new-born society. There are also working intellectuals serving the interests of the basic classes and a small number of medium and small industrialists, traders and handicraftsmen.

The position of workers, peasants and intellectuals constituting the main forces of population fundamentally has changed. Workers have taken jobs in state or cooperative organs or enterprises; they constitute the leading class in administering the state.

Most of agricultural population, the powerful ally of the working class, is embraced in the agricultural cooperatives which belong to the socialist economic sector.

Intellectuals hold their proud position in socialist construction, and their ranks are being reinforced with sons and daughters of worker or peasant stock.

Medium and small industrialists and traders, and handicraftsmen, who constitute a part of urban population, join, on the voluntary basis, the producers' or production-marketing co-operatives, remoulding themselves into working people who take a direct part in socialist construction.

With the reform of politico-social system in North Korea the composition of industrial as well as agricultural population changed.

In the past, Korea was a backward agrarian country. Particularly, as a result of the 36-year colonial rule of the Japanese imperialists, the agricultural population was predominant in number. In the pre-liberation year of 1940, the urban population accounted for only 11.6 per cent of the total. However, due to the rapid reconstruction and development of industry in North Korea the number of the urban population, in particular workers, showed a marked increase. In 1957 the number of factory and office workers increased 3.3 times compared with 1946.

In the period of the post-war reconstruction many factories and mills have been rehabilitated and expanded; new industrial towns have risen. Today towns have taken on quite a new look. Town-folks are on the increase.

The distribution of the agricultural population is undergoing a gradual change. Formerly, it was characterized by dispersion, a result of the backward and small-scale farming. The dispersion was more pronounced in mountainous areas than in lowlands.

Following the welfare policy of the D.P.R.K. government, the poor peasants who had been scattered in the mountainous areas moved in a planned way to lowlands. Thus the regional dispersion of agricultural population was readjusted.

With the advance of the agricultural co-operative movement and new undertakings of land construction, the scattered agricultural population is being brought together so as to lead a collective life. Such collective distribution of people is accelerated under the vast plan for cultural construction in farm villages charted by the Workers' Party and the government.

With the establishment of the people's power and the enforcement of various democratic reforms in the northern part of the country, relations between the urban and rural population have undergone a radical change. New relations based on the solid worker-peasant alliance under the leadership of the working class have been formed. Now the town plays a guiding role in its relation with the countryside and renders help to the labouring peasants not only in their farming and cultural life, but also in the socialist transformation of agriculture.

The living standard of people is constantly being improved thanks to a number of proper measures taken by the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the D.P.R.K.

The promotion of material and cultural well-being of people is reflected in the increase of birth rate. In 1949 the rate increased 1.6-fold as compared with the last 15 years of the Japanese rule and the death rate markedly diminished. For example, in the period from the end of the three years' war to 1955, infectious diseases were reduced to one-fifth as against 1946.

ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISIONS

Pre-liberation Korea was divided into 13 *Do* (provinces), 218 *Gun* (counties), 2,202 *Myun* (districts) and 28,498 *Ri* (township).

After the occupation of Korea the Japanese imperialists set up divisions of administrative areas with a view to tightening their colonial rule. After liberation it was found that the colonial administrative system and territorial divisions instituted by the Japanese imperialists were unsuitable in North Korea.

The establishment of people's power and the enforcement of various democratic reforms made it possible to enlist the broad masses of the people in government administration, and provided conditions for bringing the national economy onto a higher level. A radical change of the administrative system and territorial divisions was necessitated. Such change was of great significance for strengthening the democratic base in the northern part, as the country is divided into two parts due to the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. imperialists.

When rearranging administrative divisions in North Korea, special attention was paid from the political point of view to drawing the masses of the people actively into state administration, strengthening the work of the central organs in guiding and controlling local organs and reinforcing the organs at the bottom level.

In the economic and cultural fields, emphasis was laid on the progress of the national economy in accordance with local peculiarities and on the promotion of the material and cultural well-being of the people.

In keeping with this line, some provinces with a wide area were divided and new provinces appeared. And the past administrative "districts" were abolished. New counties were set up by rearranging the former counties. Several small villages were incorporated into one big village. "Township" was set up in each seat of county. Each city and town is divided into divisions called "dong" (block). The factory, mining or fishing districts which comprise more than 400 wage earners each were organized into a workers' settlement.

The administrative divisions are as follows:

Administrative Divisions (in October 1956)

Provinces	Number of cities	Number of counties	Number of town-ships	Number of villages	Number of blocks	Number of workers' settle-ments
Pyongyang Special City	1	(5 districts)		14	103	
South Pyongan Prov.	1	26	26	617	15	6
North Pyongan Prov.	1	25	25	557	32	18
Jagang Prov.	1	17	17	285	22	7
North Hwanghai Prov.	2	15	15	350	29	4
South Hwanghai Prov.	1	18	18	422	16	3
Kangwon Prov.	1	16	16	414	36	3
South Hamkyung Prov.	2	23	23	530	57	14
North Hamkyung Prov.	2	18	18	349	41	15
Ryanggang Prov.	1	10	10	209	10	4
Kaesong	1	2	2	3	14	
Total	14	175 (including 5 districts)	170	3,750	375	74

Under the present condition in which our fatherland is not yet unified, Pyongyang is the democratic capital of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea. The seats of provincial government are as follows:

Pyongyang Special City	Pyongyang
South Pyongan Province	Pyongyang
North Pyongan Province	Shinuiju
Jagang Province	Kanggye
North Hwanghai Province	Sariwon
South Hwanghai Province	Haiju
Kangwon Province	Wonsan
South Hamkyung Province	Hamheung
North Hamkyung Province	Chungjin
Ryanggang Province	Hyesan
Kaesong City	Kaesong

CHAPTER II

A BRIEF HISTORY OF KOREA

ANCIENT PERIOD

THE PRIMITIVE COMMUNITY AND ITS END

Life of our ancestors in the prehistoric period can be learned from the historic remains and discoveries made in all parts of Korea. These historic relics and remains, unearthed so far, belong to the neolithic period.

Most of these discoveries were made in the hills and kitchen midden along the coast and river basins. Particularly, outstanding among them were kitchen midden found along the coastal regions of North Hamkyung Province and Kimhai of Kyungsang Province.

Crude implements used in primitive life, made of grindstones, carved bones, shells, and pottery, etc. were the main items unearthed. With these implements, the people formed a primitive community and matriarchy prevailed on the undeveloped working conditions.

The system of matriarchy is reflected in the mythologies of national origins and its traces were still to be seen even after the primitive community changed into the class society in the succession to the throne and in the customs and habits of the common people.

The fact that the primitive community existed in Korea for a long period is known through the historical remains and relics found in all parts of Korea.

From its natural-geographical conditions and the relations with the neighbouring gens, the production of implements progressed rapidly, and the primitive community quickly developed into the Bronze and Iron Ages. And, as the productive forces developed, changes began to take place within the matriarchy. When in the primitive society the matriarchal system was gradually replaced by the patriarchal, and the collapse of the old society took place, numerous clans and tribes were formed in Korea, thereby gradually changing into a class society.

In the north above the Han river to the area of Lyaotung and Lyaohsi there existed the old kingdoms of ancient Korea, Kokuryo, Pooyu, Yemaik, Okju, and Euproo while in the south below the Han there were Mahan, Jinhan and Pyunhan.

Throughout these periods many tribes used iron tools which increased their productive forces. And better weapons were made to protect themselves from other's attacks. Also various kinds of fabrics were woven, jade stones were cut and furs were produced, which were valued even in remote countries. Furthermore, the mode of life in general—the housing, clothing, and customs and manners were taken as examples by the neighbouring countries.

So far as the structure of the society was concerned, there were the ruling circles of Koonjang (the chieftain, or head master), and officials, then the peasants, slaves and serfs.

The governing system within the clans began to form and progressed rapidly into the system of a class society through contacts and wars with the neighbouring kingdoms, such as Yen and Tsin which existed in the northern part of China.

In 108 B.C., the Han Emperor occupied ancient Korea by subduing the chieftain Uku (a descendant of Wei Man) who was the most powerful among the neighbouring tribes, and set up the four commanderies in ancient Korea and bordering areas.

The commanderies were Rakrang, Jinbun, Hyundo, and Imtoon, of which Rakrang first covered the area of Lyaotung and then the Kwansuh area on the Korean peninsula but exact locations of other commanderies are not known.

At any rate many conflicts among the tribes of ancient Korea and others caused the slow disintegration of all these commanderies except Rakrang which was located in the area of Pyongyang. But in the first century, Han was driven away by the people of Kokuryo.

Período dos Três Reinos - Koguryo, Sil
e Paekje

THREE KINGDOMS—KOKURYO, SILLA, AND PAKCHE—AND TERRITORIAL EXPANSION WARS

From the period of the tribes, Kokuryo occupied Lyaotung and Lyaohsi, along the upper reaches of the Yalu River. In the course of wars, to drive out the influence of Han, Kokuryo unified such neighbouring tribes as Okju, Pooyu, Yemaik and formed a kingdom in the beginning of the first century, centering around Chian.

Kokuryo Kingdom became powerful as it conquered the entire ancient Korea by driving out the Rakrang commandery from Lyaotung area and its power extended south of the Yalu.

While this was going on in the north, the Pakche tribes established the Pakche Kingdom in the south unifying tribes of Mahan, the most powerful among the three Hans.

The Pakche tribes sowed the rich fields in the south to rice and carried out irrigation work on a national scale. Consequently the primitive community of tribes was dissolved rapidly.

In the area formerly occupied by Jinhan — one of the three Hans — a new kingdom Silla came into being centering around Kyungju, with the Saro tribes as the main force. And Silla sustained its governing power by using the community system practised in the tribal period.

The Three Kingdoms followed different paths of development. Nevertheless, they all forced tribute on their conquered tribes and suppressed the conquered, peasants and the people of humble class.

The conquered people in Kokuryo not only had to pay the regular tribute but heavy poll taxes. They were exploited and driven like slaves. And the picture was little different in Silla and Pakche. The peasants' life was no better than the conquered people. In all Three Kingdoms they were subjected to heavy taxes and forced labour. They were reduced to such state that there were only two alternatives, to become wanderers or slaves. The exploitation at the hands of the ruling class was too much to bear. Particularly, in the kingdoms of Kokuryo and Pakche a usury system, known as Jintae Law, was enforced to exploit further the peasants. And the status of the peasants was little better than that of the subjugated people or slaves. In this period there were many home slaves, as well as serfs. The latter was engaged chiefly in production, and the former did the household job. Besides, many naturalized people were treated as slaves. The slavery system existed for a long period. Even after Three Kingdoms it existed along with the feudal system. Which system was prevalent in the society of the Three Kingdoms remains as an academic issue.

The ruling circles of the Three Kingdoms exercised a centralized authority in order to sustain and enforce their ruling power.

To rule their kingdoms, in Kokuryo, there were 12 grades of officials with the Marichi at the top; in Pakche, 16 grades beginning with the rank of Chwapyung; and in Silla, 17 grades beginning with the rank of Kakgan. The king was the sovereign ruler in all Three Kingdoms.

For provincial organs all Three Kingdoms adopted the system of sikeup (fief). In Kokuryo, the provinces were ruled by the aristocrats, called Taika. The kingdom of Pakche was divided into 22 provinces which were ruled by royal clans, while in Silla, military commanders appointed by the king conducted military control of provinces which were subdivided into Chŏn, Hyang and Pukok.

About the end of the fourth century, the Three Kingdoms started territorial expansion wars against each other.

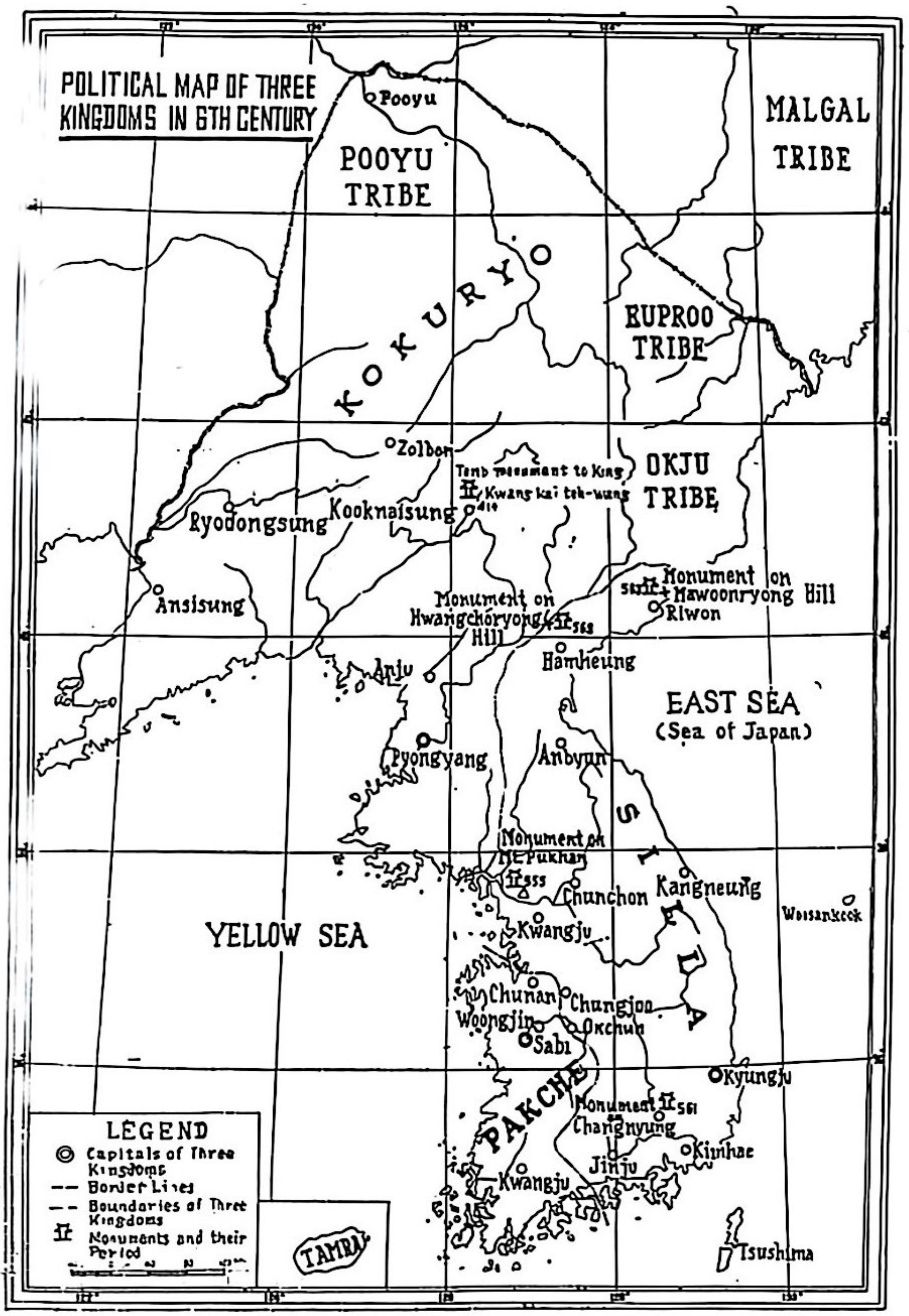
As Kokuryo, Pakche, and Silla were developing as a class state and strengthening a gentile constitutions, they attempted to solve by means of war the contradictions that began to rise.

During the third century Kokuryo expanded her territory to the Liaohsi area through repeated wars with the Wei and the Sunbee (Huns) tribes in the north. But with the turn of the fourth century her main attention was directed to the rich land of Silla and Pakche in the south.

In her southward march, Kokuryo reached its extreme in 391 when King Kwangkaitoh-wang took the throne. It was in this period that Kokuryo invaded Pakche and occupied many villages. Then the army of Kokuryo reached the bank of the Nakdong river where they defeated the Japanese invaders.

The southward march of Kokuryo continued even after the death of King Kwangkaitoh-wang, and in the year of 427, King Jangsoo transfered his capital to Pyongyang.

In the meantime, Pakche was making her own expeditions toward the north. And in 371 A.D. its army reached Pyongyang, but the invasion of her territory by King Kwangkaitoh-wang of


POLITICAL MAP OF THREE KINGDOMS IN 6TH CENTURY
Pooyu
POOYU TRIBE
MALGAL TRIBE
KOKURYO
EUPROO TRIBE
Zolbon
OKJU TRIBE
Tomb monument to King Kwangkaitoh-wang
Ryodongsung
Kooknaisung
Ansisung
Monument on Hwangchoryong Hill
Monument on Mawoonryong Hill
Riwon
Hamheung
Anju
EAST SEA
(Sea of Japan)
Pyongyang
Anbyun
SILLA
Monument on Pukhan
Chunchon
Kangneung
Woosankook
YELLOW SEA
Kwangju
Chunan
Chungjoo
Woongjin
Okchun
Sabi
Kyungju
PAKCHE
Monument Changnyung
Jinju
Kimhae
Kwangju
TAMRA
Tsushima
LEGEND
Capitals of Three Kingdoms
Border Lines
Boundaries of Three Kingdoms
Monuments and their Period

Kokuryo had weakened her. In order to avoid the brunt of the Kokuryo army Pakche moved its capital to Woongjin, further down south.

The kingdom of Silla kept a comparatively stable peace for a long period and her national strength was consolidated, even though from the fourth century she continued territorial expansion wars around the Han river .

In the sixth century, Silla, taking advantage of the conflict between Kokuryo and Pakche, extended its control northward. The territories of Silla in that period, judging from the writings on the monuments to King Jinheung, which stand on the Changnyung of South Kyungsang Province, on the Pukhan mountain in Seoul, and on the hills of Mawoon and Hwangchoryong in Hamkyung Province.

AGGRESSION OF SUI AND T'ANG, AND STRUGGLE OF THE PEOPLE OF KOKURYO

During the period of the territorial expansion wars among the Three Kingdoms, the Sui dynasty, which united China, in its attempt to get tremendous booties from the conquest of Kokuryo and solve the internal strife resulting from the repeated blunders in their domestic policies, took the line of warring with foreign countries.

In the year of 598, Sui with an army of 300,000 attacked Kokuryo whose power extended as far as the Liaohsi area. But Kokuryo repulsed the invaders at Ryoha. And again in 612 the Emperor of the Sui dynasty dispatched combat units of 1,130,000 strong (the total strength numbered 2,000,000 if rear servicemen were included) to attack Kokuryo. Nevertheless, the resistance of the patriotic people of Kokuryo, and the brilliant strategy of General Eulji Moonduk shattered the huge invading army on the banks of the Chungchun River while the invading sea force suffered the same defeat in the waters outside of Pyongyang.

The Sui dynasty never recovered from its defeat and was eventually replaced by the T'ang dynasty, as the internal contradictions became more acute.

Like its predecessor, the T'ang dynasty after its consolidation of central authority, suppressing its neighbouring states, looked for an opportune moment to attack Kokuryo. And Kokuryo, on its part, anticipating such danger, fortified some 1,000 ri from Nongan in northeast China to the Balhai Bay. The prolonged war the Kokuryo Kingdom had to fight against Sui in the north and against Pakche and Silla in the south, and the vast fortification work caused a general decline in its power. Internal contradictions also became intensified.

At last in the year of 645, T'ang started its invasion of Kokuryo under the pretext that Kokuryo resented the intervention of T'ang in the Silla-Kokuryo war. Mobilizing 200,000 strong on land and sea, along with 500 ships, T'ang attacked Kokuryo. However, the army of T'ang was repulsed by the stubborn resistance of the Kokuryo people in Ansi, Kunan, and Sinsung. And its navy was defeated at Liaotung.

T'ang, however, never abandoned its ambition to invade Kokuryo and on several occasions thereafter repeated military attacks against Kokuryo, which were all stopped by the people of Kokuryo. Thus, Kokuryo successfully protected the peninsula of Korea from alien invaders preserving the three independent countries in Korea. It must be pointed out, however, that a general decrease in the productive forces and sharp internal contradictions were brought about in the kingdoms of Kokuryo and Pakche from the many years of warfare against the armies of Sui and T'ang in the north and between Kokuryo and Pakche within the peninsula. Accordingly, the people's life greatly deteriorated and a grave political crisis was created.

UNIFICATION OF THE KOREAN PENINSULA BY SILLA

The protracted wars among the Three Kingdoms of the peninsula resulted in general deterioration of the people's life. Particularly, the social conditions in Kokuryo and Pakche were further aggravated due to the long years of war against Sui and T'ang on the one hand and between Kokuryo and Pakche on the other. Great numbers of people immigrated to Silla.

While Kokuryo and Pakche were engaged in conflict, Silla began to consolidate its power expanding its territories to the northwest from the seventh century. Military preparations were made to stage attacks on Pakche and Kokuryo.

Worn out by constant wars among the Three Kingdoms of the peninsula, which brought untold suffering and imposed an unbearable burden upon the populace, the people now longed for unification of Korea.

Taking advantage of the plans of T'ang to invade Kokuryo, Silla succeeded in utilizing T'ang's army in her unification of the Korean peninsula.

The kingdom of Pakche was facing a grave crisis. The internal situation had degenerated as the people's living became worsened and the dissatisfaction of the ruling circles against the ruler — King Eija — mounted.

In 660, the combined armies of Silla and T'ang started a military campaign against Sabisung, the capital of Pakche, on land and sea. Pakche was defeated and thus ceased to exist as a separate kingdom.

With the conquest of Pakche by Silla, Kokuryo lost its ally and its power gradually disintegrated politically and economically. And the internal contradictions became worse. At last in 667, again the combined forces of Silla and T'ang began to invade Kokuryo. In August, its capital, Pyongyang, was surrounded by the invading forces. However, the persistent resistance of the people against the enemy refused to yield. But the kingdom of Kokuryo fell due to the internal strife among the ruling circles. King Bojang with his followers surrendered.

With the conquest of Pakche and Kokuryo, the T'ang set about strengthening its rule in the former territories of Pakche and Kokuryo.

Nevertheless, throughout the peninsula people's volunteers rose against the alien army of T'ang. In Pakche volunteers were organized under the leadership of Boksin and in Kokuryo under Kummojang. These volunteers with the people of Silla fought against the T'ang army. The people throughout the peninsula fought against the army of T'ang. People were united to expel the alien army from the soil of Korea, and the unification of the peninsula was gradually realized by Silla as the unity of the people strengthened further.

The unification of the peninsula by Silla brought about the first unity of the Korean people and put an end to the war sufferings of long duration. And significant progress was made in culture and economy.

UNIFIED KOREA UNDER THE RULE OF SILLA

After its conquest of Pakche and Kokuryo, the kingdom of Silla introduced several new measures with a view to consolidating its feudal power.

A new feudal lord with Hwarang as the centre appeared and from the period of King Mooyol the right to the throne was not limited to Sungkol (the highest royal clan) but extended to Jinkol (the second highest royal clan). The entire nation was divided into Bongeup and Sikeup, and land was divided among the peasants under the system of Jungjun which was designed to chain the peasants to the land to collect rent and tribute.

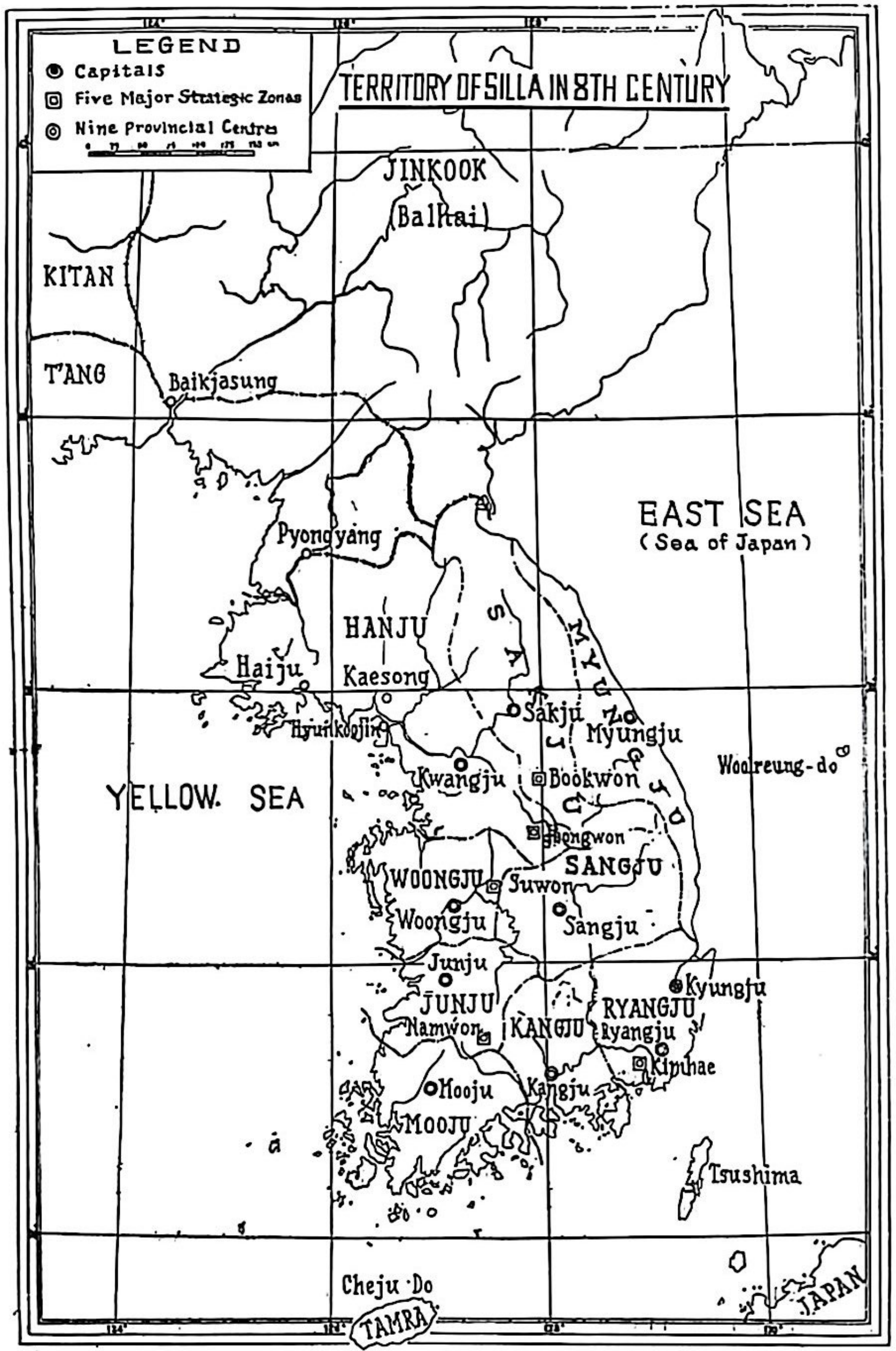
In order to secure its feudal central power for administrative purposes, Silla regrouped the country into nine Ju (provinces), five Kyong (cities), and some 400 Koon (counties).

The consolidation of the central power, however, caused dissatisfaction among the large landed conservative elements. Uprisings of the large-landed aristocrats continued for more than one hundred years (681-785) from the time of King Sinmoon to King Sunduk. Notwithstanding the dissatisfaction and actual resistance against the centralized feudal system, the large landed estate of new feudal lords increased and the productive forces showed an uptrend. Along with this, trade and handicraft made long strides, and Silla products went to T'ang and many other foreign countries.

However, the power of Silla began to disintegrate and its collection of taxes decreased from the beginning of the ninth century, as the aristocrats' landholdings, called Junjang, expanded further throughout the country.

As the Jangwon system intensified exploitation, the peasants revolted in many places. Particularly, the uprising of the peasants of Jukgo (Red Trousers) was an outstanding case. However, disintegration of power and financial difficulties had rendered the ruling circles impotent so they could not suppress the uprisings.

In the latter part of the ninth century the king's power was only in name. There was a sharp strife among the ruling cir-


LEGEND
Capitals
Five Major Strategic Zones
Nine Provincial Centres
TERRITORY OF SILLA IN 8TH CENTURY
JINKOOK
(Balhai)
KITAN
T'ANG
Baikjasung
Pyongyang
EAST SEA
(Sea of Japan)
HANJU
Haiju
Kaesong
SAKJU
MYUNGJU
Hyunkoojin
Sakju
Myungju
Wooreung-do
YELLOW SEA
Kwangju
Bookwon
Joongwon
SANGJU
WOONGJU
Suwon
Woongju
Sangju
Junju
JUNJU
Kyungju
RYANGJU
Namwon
KANGJU
Ryangju
Kimhae
Mooju
Kangju
MOOJU
Tsushima
Cheju Do
TAMRA
JAPAN

cles. Koongye and Kyunhwin with the revolting people established separate states respectively in north and south. Koongye named his territory Majin, while Kyunhwin called his territory Hoo-Pakche (Later Pakche). Thus Silla went to a downfall.

In 918, Wangkun drove out Koongye and set up the Koryu dynasty around Kaesong.

MIDDLE AGE

KORYU FROM 10TH TO 11TH CENTURIES

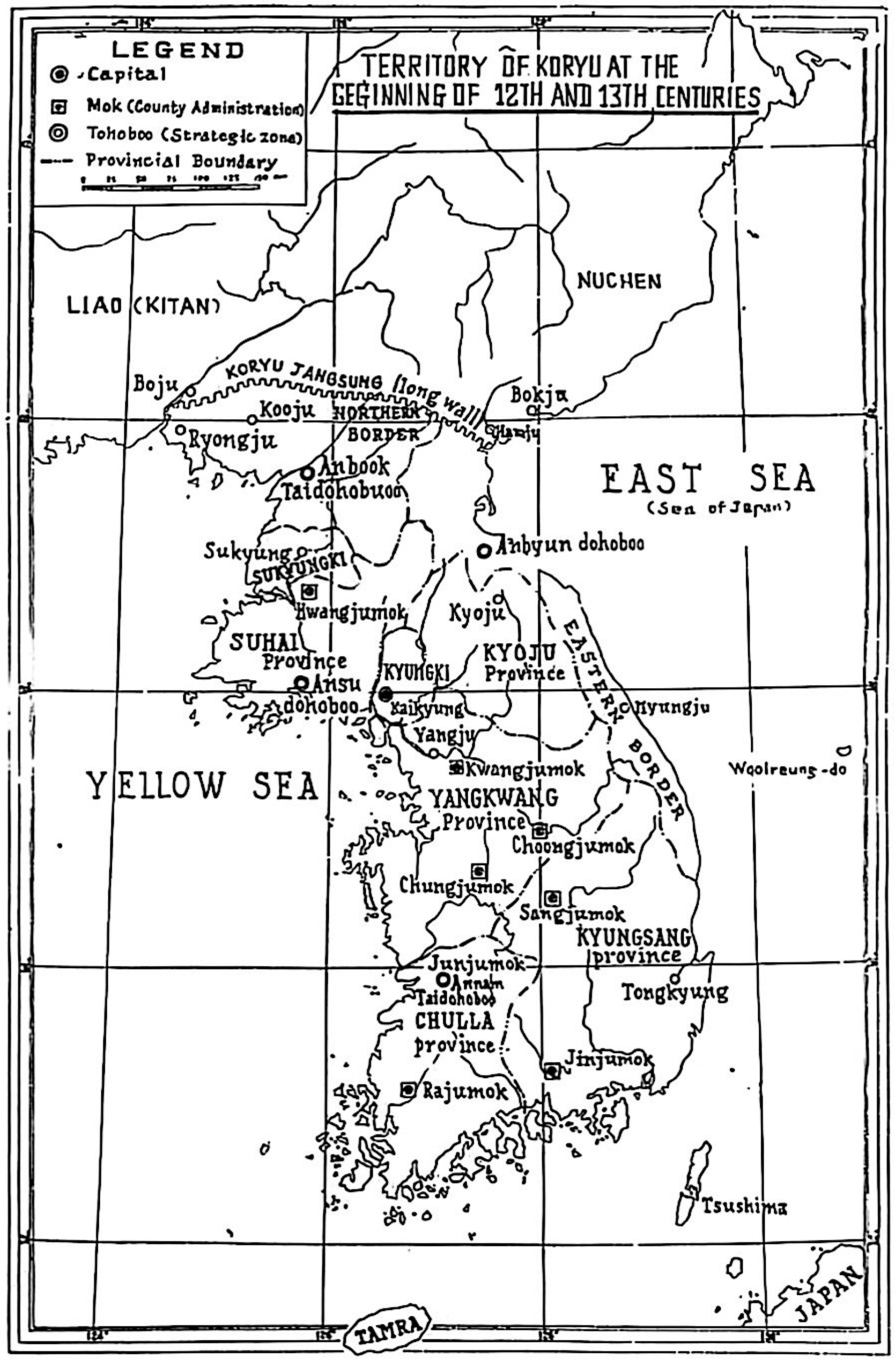
Koryu was in the main little different from its predecessor Silla so far as the feudal structure was concerned.

After establishing the capital at Songdo (Kaesong), Wangkun adopted several measures to strengthen his political power. In order to eliminate the old feudal lords, he appointed army generals of the former lords to rule feudal territories and suspended the collection of taxes for three years to appease the peasantry.

In the latter part of the tenth century the king of Koryu adopted the system of Junsikwa in 976 and put the farm land of the country under the direct control of the court. The system of Junsikwa was based on the land law which prevailed throughout the Koryu dynasty. It gave civil and military officials and nobles the right to collect the rent on land and irrigation fees in varied degrees. This land law strengthened further the central power. By the end of the tenth century during the reign of Sungjung the following administrative organs came into being: civil officialdom was graded into three Sung, six Kwan, and nine Shi. As for the military system, Jungbang was the highest organ: the army was consisted of two Koon, six Wi and 45 Ryong. Besides, there was Osadai, a state inspection organ, and the highest educational institute was Kookjagam. Furthermore, they adopted a system of national examination for civil service which was called Boksije (double examination system).

For local administration the land was regrouped into ten Do (provinces) and twelve Ju (counties). And such local officials as Sabyong, Sachang, Hojang and Hyangri were appointed. Towards the end of the tenth century the power of the Koryu dynasty increased and its territory was extended as far as the Yalu river. The population increased and its productive forces improved.

After its establishment the Koryu dynasty built protective walls along the Yalu to defend the nation from the Kitan tribe


LEGEND
Capital
Mok (County Administration)
Tohoboo (Strategic zone)
Provincial Boundary
TERRITORY OF KORYU AT THE BEGINNING OF 12TH AND 13TH CENTURIES
LIAO (KITAN)
NUCHEN
KORYU JANGSUNG (long wall)
Boju
Kooju
NORTHERN BORDER
Ryongju
Bokju
Anbook Taidohobuoo
Anbyun dohoboo
EAST SEA
(Sea of Japan)
Sukyung
SUKYUNGKI
Hwangjumok
Kyoju
SUHAI Province
KYOJU Province
Ansu dohoboo
KYUNGKI
Kaikyung
Yangju
EASTERN BORDER
Myungju
Woolreung-do
YELLOW SEA
Kwangjumok
YANGKWANG Province
Choongjumok
Chungjumok
Sangjumok
KYUNGSANG province
Junjumok
Annam Taidohoboo
CHULLA province
Tongkyung
Jinjumok
Rajumok
Tsushima
JAPAN
TAMRA

in the north. In 993 Kitan invaded Koryu with an army of 800,000 men but the people of Koryu successfully repulsed them and concluded a "peace treaty." However, breaking the treaty of peace Kitan again in 1010 attacked Koryu, taking advantage of the feud among the ruling circles of Koryu. The army of Kitan came down as far south as Songdo but they were repulsed by the patriotic resistance of General Kang Kam Chan and the entire people of Koryu.

However, Kitan, despite its repeated defeat, again in 1018 invaded the peninsula. But the people of Koryu again foiled Kitan's ambition. The Kitan army was defeated everywhere, in Heunghwajin, Jasan and Matan. And the fleeing army of Kitan was routed at Ryonjoo. At last Kitan after three defeats realized that Koryu could not be conquered, and established friendly relations with Koryu.

Though there existed friendly relations between Koryu and Kitan, Koryu never neglected to build defensive positions against the north. The Wooso Walls of 1,000 ri, built during the years of 1033 and 1044, was one of such measures taken by Koryu.

After repulsing the Kitan invasion, Koryu took several steps to restore the national power: cultivation of new farm land was greatly encouraged; draught animals and farm implements were loaned to the peasants; and when farm land was reclaimed people were exempted from taxes for a certain period in order to keep the peasants from leaving the farms.

In the capital Songdo and many other places markets were opened. In 1097—the second year of the reign of Sookjong—Haidong Tongbo, a new coin, was minted. Furthermore, large scale trade was opened with Soong, Kitan, Nyujin, Japan and many other countries as far away as Persia.

INTENSIFIED EXPLOITATION OF PEASANTS AND THEIR STRUGGLE IN THE 12TH CENTURY

With the turn of the 12th century the power of Koryu began to decline due to the extreme subjugation of peasants and wide practice of occupying large estates by aristocrats and bureaucrats. The king began to lose his power. To remedy the situation heavier taxes were imposed upon the peasants by the king, and the aristocratic class increased its exploitation of peasants. The tax was raised to two "doo" (one doo is equivalent to 7.5 kilograms) of rice per one "suk" (one suk is ten doo), which was originally seven "seung" (one seung is a tenth of one doo) during the period of Moonjong. One of the worst forms of exploitation of the peasants was usury. During the reign of Moonjong the interest on fifteen "doo" of rice doubled in three years. Such unbearably heavy tax burden and usury forced the peasants to leave the farms in numbers. Eventually uprisings were staged by the peasants.

The peasants' positive struggle lasted until the end of the 12th century throughout the peninsula with the Myochung insurrection which took place in Sukyong in 1135 as the signal.

The uprisings of peasants of Sukyong (Pyongyang) lasted about one year. In the years of 1176-1178 the peasants in southern provinces rose up. These were followed by many uprisings: in Kongjoo revolts by Mang-i and Mangso-i of Myonghakso, in Sukyong under Kim Dan and Kang Chook, in Woolsan and Woonmoonsan in North Kyungsang Province in the years of 1193-1194; the slaves' revolt in Kaesong in 1198; and the slaves' revolt in Milyang in 1201. The peasants' uprisings were carried out on a wide scale for almost a century, which shook the ruling circles of Koryu to the roots.

INVASION BY MONGOLS AND RESISTANCE BY PEOPLE OF KORYU

When the opportunity was ripe for expanding their territory after the conquest of Manchuria in 1231 the Mongols invaded Koryu.

But in Koryu the uprising peasants everywhere soon joined forces with the king's soldiers in driving back the invaders. The people's struggle in Jasan and Koojoo was specially heroic.

Because of this heroic resistance of the people of Koryu, Mongols agreed to accept the peace proposals made by Koryu.

Nevertheless, Mongols made exorbitant demands for tribute on grain and placed "political residents" (known as Talo hachi) in important cities, which meddled in the domestic policy of Koryu. The Mongols' interference was resented very much by Koryu, and in 1232, the militant government headed by the Chois did away with the "political residents" and fled to the Kanghwa island before another onslaught by the Mongols.

In December of the same year the Mongols again invaded Koryu and slaughtered people everywhere in retaliation. But the people of Koryu fought heroically everywhere against the foreign invaders. Especially the resistance of the people of Choongjoo made it impossible for the Mongols to enter the southern provinces.

However, almost 30 years of the Mongols' aggression turned the peninsula into a devastated land.

Meanwhile the government which had fled to Kanghwa island made peace with the Mongols in 1258 before returning to the capital city, Songdo.

However, Sambulcho Army, in particular, fought the invading Mongol Army and continued their fighting in the islands of Jin and Cheju until 1273 exhibiting clearly that the people of Koryu would never surrender to the enemy.

Despite the heroic battle of the people, the royal court of the Koryu kingdom submitted to the Mongols and the king himself became a son-in-law of the Emperor of Mongol. Moreover, the Mongols established Sangsung Chong Kwanbu (General Headquarters) in the north-eastern region and the Dongryongbu in the north-western region. The Mongols occupied the strategically and economically important areas by setting up these organs. Furthermore, their severe taxation became an unbearable burden to the people of Koryu.

From the latter half of the 13th century the Mongolian power began to decline because of the people's resentment and conflicts within.

King Kongmin who was on the throne in 1351 began to drive out pro-Mongol elements who had deeply entrenched themselves in the court, and recovered the lost territories, thus strengthening the state power. The king put new restrictions on the sizes of large estates owned by aristocrats, returning the land to original owners and freed the slaves.

However, such measures were met with opposition from the conservative officials who hindered the thorough enforcement of such measures. On the contrary, the large estate landownership became more common.

COLLAPSE OF KORYU DYNASTY

The feudal system of the Koryu dynasty began to decline owing to the protracted occupation by the Mongols and the sharpened inner contradictions. To make the situation worse, Koryu was ravaged by the Chinese Hongdookoon (Red Head Scarf Army) in 1359-60 and from around 1350, Japanese pirates rampaged the coasts of Koryu for nearly half a century.

By this time in China a new dynasty, Ming, had replaced the Mongols. And Ming too demanded tribute of Koryu. Furthermore, Koryu was asked by Ming to hand over Sangsung and Dongryong as in the days of Mongols, and the Ming dynasty eventually established a political organization called Chulryongwi in Kanggye.

The royal court of Koryu was divided into two factions; one advocating a stern policy towards Ming, by Choi Young, and the other a pro-Ming group led by Li Sung Kye. Eventually Li Sung Kye eliminated Choi Young and his group and secured his power. Li Sung Kye boldly abandoned the old land law, Sajun, and adopted a new system Kwajun (land rent collection under the central power's control). In 1392 he wiped out Jung Mong Joo and other opponents. Soon the Koryu dynasty was replaced by the Li dynasty. Li Sung Kye who held actually political power formally ascended to the throne, on the recommendation of Jung Do Jun and Joh Joon.

LI DYNASTY AND ITS POLITICAL SYSTEM

After the fall of Koryu the new Li dynasty renamed the country Chosun and established its capital in Seoul.

The political system was in the main the same feudalistic state. The Li dynasty enforced a series of measures to strengthen further its political power. Moreover, these steps reflected the desire of the people to a certain degree. It inherited the old land law of Kwajun. But many slaves, chained to the farm land owned by the aristocrats, were released; land belonging to temples and shrines was confiscated, which helped to consolidate the central power. And the productive forces increased greatly due to the new agricultural policy which called for cultivation of new farm lands and use of better farm implements and seeds.

With the development of agriculture, handicrafts and trade also made headway; the value of currency was raised; markets were opened in many localities and regular trade with foreign powers was opened.

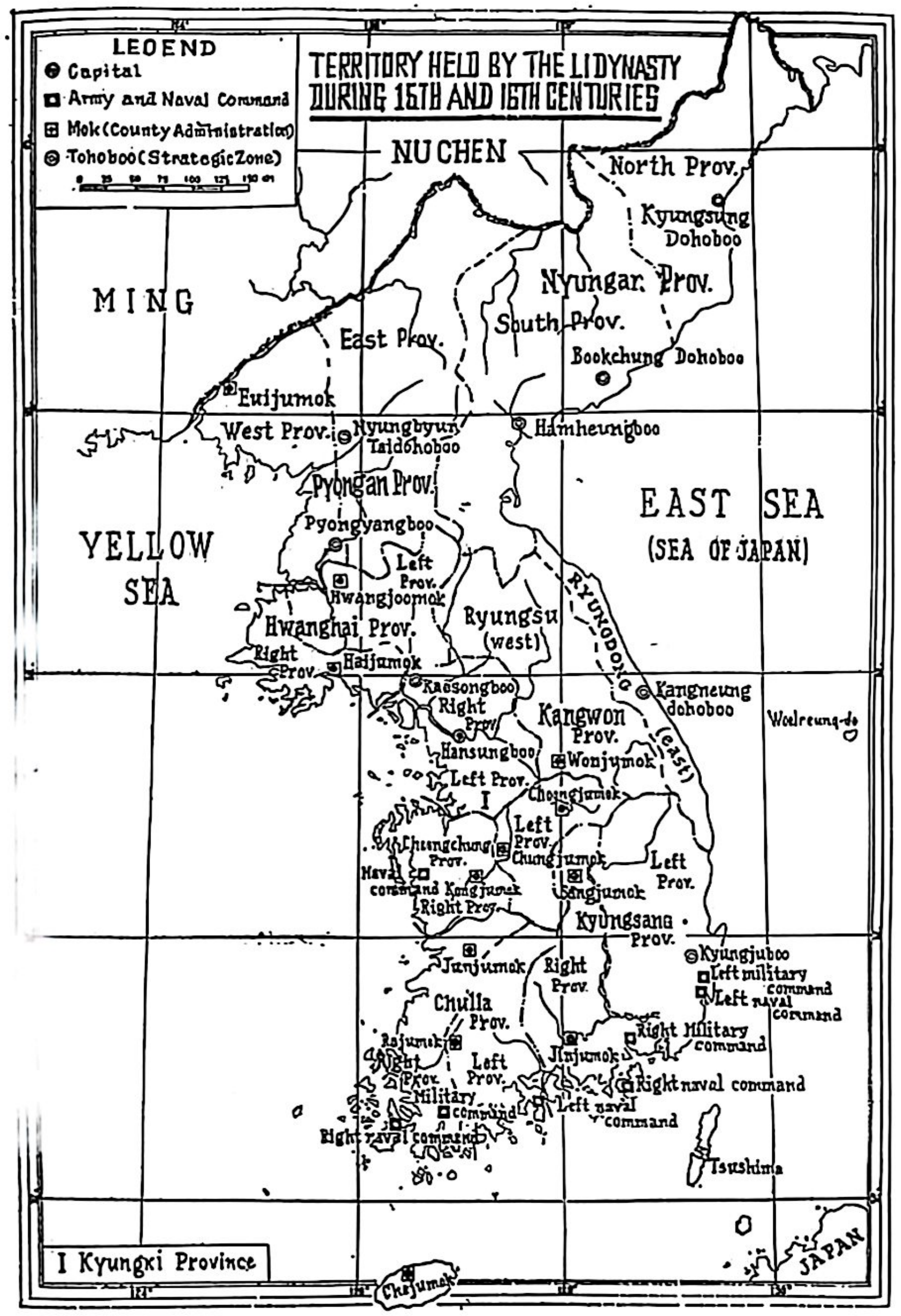
Furthermore, the new kingdom adopted an appeasement policy towards Nuchen in the north and dispatched expeditionary forces as far as south as Tsushima Island to wipe out the Japanese pirates. And relations with the Ming dynasty were brought to normalcy.

In 1469 it established a new political system casting off the old Koryu system. In that year the compiling of the Kyongkook Taijun—Law on the Administration of the State—was finished. This was used all through the period of the Li dynasty with only slight variations now and then.

To assist the king, the Euijungbu which was directly responsible to the king was established. Under it there were six Jo (ministries). There was also the Sahyunbu, an inspection organ. The country was divided into eight provinces and each province was subdivided into Joo, Pu, Koon and Hyun. The king personally appointed heads of the local administration, but both civil officials and military officers were chosen by a state examination.

The military system of the feudalistic Li dynasty was a system of reserves. It was not so much the establishing of a regular army as it was the giving of military training to every man. After a certain period men were released from the army.

When the governing system was put in order, the central power grew rapidly. In 1466 King Sejo abolished the old land law, Kwajun system, and adopted the new Jikjun system (under which government officials were empowered to collect land tax). At the same time he stopped the expansion of land holdings of the feudal lords. But the new land system, Jikjun, did not aim at lessening the burdens of the peasants. The Li Si Ai uprising which started in Hamkyung Province in the year of 1467 ignited the peasants' revolt against the feudal ruling class. The peasantry revolted against the attempts of the central authorities to increase taxes by resurveying land and by increasing contributions for the army. They rose against the king who attempted to collect


TERRITORY HELD BY THE LI DYNASTY DURING 15TH AND 16TH CENTURIES
LEGEND
● Capital
■ Army and Naval Command
⊞ Mok (County Administration)
◎ Tohoboo (Strategic Zone)
NUCHEN
MING
North Prov.
Kyungsung Dohoboo
Nyungar Prov.
South Prov.
East Prov.
Bookchung Dohoboo
Euijumok
West Prov.
Nyungbyun Taidohoboo
Hamheungboo
Pyongan Prov.
Pyongyangboo
Left Prov.
Hwangjoomok
YELLOW SEA
EAST SEA
(SEA OF JAPAN)
Hwanghai Prov.
Ryungsu (west)
RYUNODONG (east)
Right Prov.
Haijumok
Kaesongboo
Right Prov.
Kangneung dohoboo
Kangwon Prov.
Woolreung-do
Hansungboo
Wonjumok
Left Prov.
I
Choongjumok
Left Prov.
Chungchung Prov.
Chungjumok
Naval command
Kongjumok
Sangjumok
Left Prov.
Right Prov.
Kyungsang Prov.
Junjumok
Right Prov.
Kyungjuboo
Left military command
Left naval command
Chulla Prov.
Rajumok
Right Military command
Right Prov.
Left Prov.
Jinjumok
Military command
Right naval command
Left naval command
Right naval command
Tsushima
Chejumok
JAPAN
I Kyungki Province

tax in fabrics from everyone, which was originally imposed on Mookyuk (witches).

Even though the revolt was suppressed by the government forces, it softened to a certain degree the brazen policy of severe exploitation by the ruling class.

Yet in the latter part of the 16th century the number of parasitic officials increased, as the administrative apparatus grew larger. Moreover, they became big land owners driving peasants into slavery.

Through usury the feudal ruling class ruined the life of the peasants and turned them into slaves by taking away their lands.

Antagonism within the ruling circles of the time in their bid to grab more land from the peasants to extend their holdings resulted in repeated bloodshed. One of the outstanding of such conflicts was Sahwa (persecution of oppositionists).

WAR AGAINST THE JAPANESE INVASION (1592-1598)

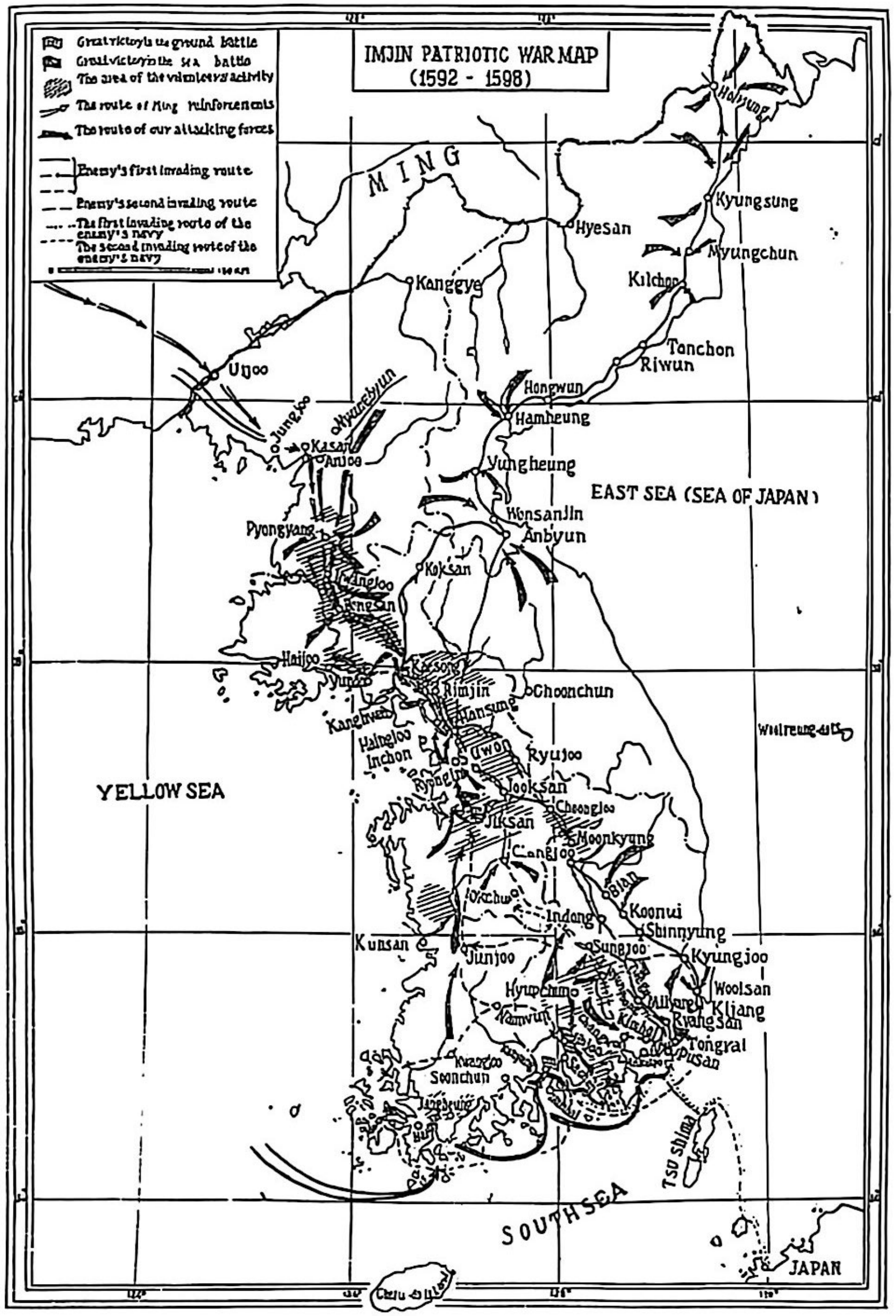
While the ruling circles of the Li dynasty engaged in factional strife, in April 1592, suddenly the Japanese army invaded Korea. And our country suffered severely in the first days of the war because the enemy was well prepared and well trained. Furthermore, the attack was so sudden.

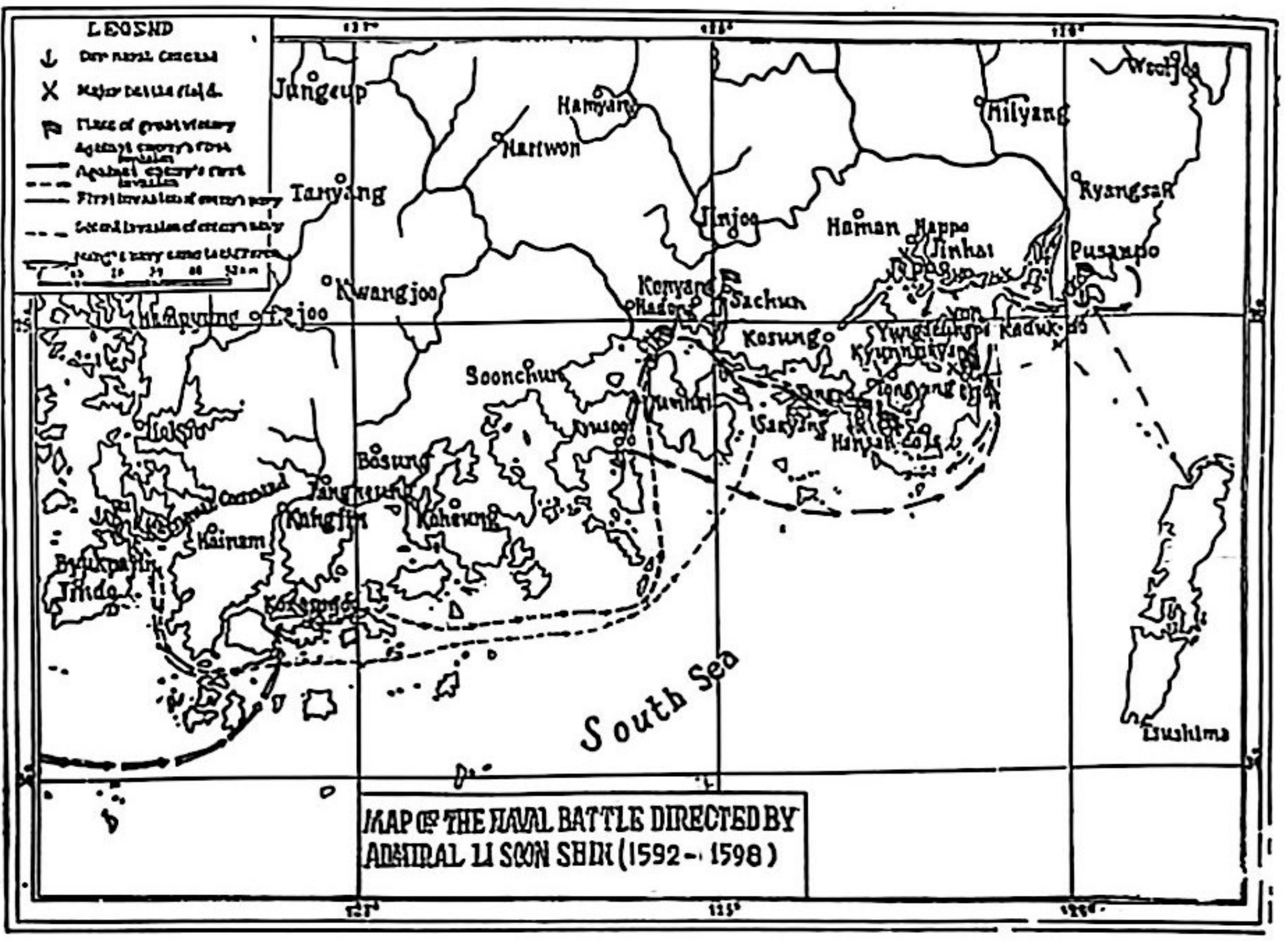
On the 13th of April, they landed in Pusan and occupied Seoul in 20 days. Soon Pyongyang also fell.

However, the Korean people were soon able to cope with the situation. Admiral Li Soon Shin smashed the main naval force of the enemy on the sea off Hansando in May and June, thus foiling the enemy's scheme to stage a land and sea offensive. This victory in the Hansando battle boosted the morale of the Korean people, and volunteers rose throughout the peninsula.

Though there were no government instructions or organizations, patriotic people throughout the country came forward voluntarily.

People's volunteers were formed under such leaders as Kwak Je Woo, Jung In Heung, Yang Duk Rok, Joh Ho Ik, Jo Hun, Li Jung Am, Won Ho, Jung Moon Bu and others. From Hamkyung Province in the north to Cholla and Kyungsang Provinces in the south, people's volunteers were formed. And also in


IMJIN PATRIOTIC WAR MAP
(1592 - 1598)
Great victory in the ground battle
Great victory in the sea battle
The area of the volunteers' activity
The route of Ming reinforcements
The route of our attacking forces
Enemy's first invading route
Enemy's second invading route
The first invading route of the enemy's navy
The second invading route of the enemy's navy
MING
Hoiryung
Kyungsung
Myungchun
Hyesan
Kilchoo
Kanggye
Tanchon
Riwun
Uijoo
Jungjoo
Kasan
Anjoo
Hongwun
Hamheung
Yungheung
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
Konsanjin
Anbyun
Pyongyang
Koksan
Hwangjoo
Bongsan
Haijoo
Yunan
Kaesong
Rimjin
Hansung
Choonchun
Kanghwa
Haingjoo
Inchon
Suwon
Ryujoo
YELLOW SEA
Jiksan
Jooksan
Cheongjoo
Moonkyung
Cheongjoo
Yungchun
Indong
Uisung
Koonui
Shinnyung
Kunsan
Jun joo
Sungjoo
Kyungjoo
Woolsan
Kijang
Ryangsan
Tongrai
Pusan
Namwun
Kimhai
Soonchun
Tsushima
SOUTH SEA
JAPAN
Cheju



MAP OF THE NAVAL BATTLE DIRECTED BY ADMIRAL LI SOON SHIN (1592-1598)

Choongchung, Kyungsang, Kyunggi, Pyongan Provinces people stood up. Together with government armies the people delivered a blow to the enemy, turning the tables of war in favour of our side.

And the Ming dynasty whose security was directly connected with Korea's gave military aid to Korea once the front reached around Pyongyang. In conjunction with the army of Ming, in January 1593, the Korean people routed the enemy force and liberated Pyongyang and eventually Seoul too.

Being pushed into the corner of the southern coast, the enemy regrouped its army under the cover of a truce and waited for another chance to attack. In January 1597, again with a huge army of 140,000 men, the treacherous enemy resumed hostilities.

But the men and officers of the national army together with the people's volunteers gave the enemy a crushing defeat in the areas of Woolsan, Sachun, and Soonchun. On the sea the regrouped navy under General Li Soon Shin's command destroyed the enemy everywhere.

When Hideyoshi, the chief schemer of aggression against Korea, died, the enemy, realizing their aggressive plan had failed, began to retreat.

Our officers and men gave the retreating enemy the disastrous blows on the land and sea, so the enemy could not plan another aggression against Korea.

The aftermath of this war was, nevertheless, very severe, because the war occurred when our country was suffering from feudalistic contradictions.

Yet the people's courageous resistance successfully defended the fatherland overcoming all the difficulties, thus leaving behind another such glorious record on Korean people's long-standing tradition.

INVASION BY NUCHEN AND CHING IN THE 17TH CENTURY AND INCREASING FEUDALISTIC CONTRADICTIONS

The feud among the factions which never ceased even during the war continued more fiercely after the war.

During this period King Kwanghai-kun was forced to step down from the throne, a coup d'etat in favor of King Injo and Li Kwal's rebel took place.

Subsequently Nuchen once again invaded Korea.

In January 1627, the Chieftain of Manchu (Later Chin) invaded Korea. The king fled to Kangwha when the enemy was at the door of Seoul. But the people rose everywhere and fought against the aggressors. The volunteer groups in Pyongan Province who fought under the leadership of Jung Bong Soo caused the enemy a great loss.

When the invading enemy could do little before the heroic people's resistance, they signed a peace agreement and withdrew from our country.

In 1636, the Manchu emperor renamed his imperial dynasty Ching and summoned a Korean mission. But this request was ignored by Korea.

Charging this as an insult, Ching attacked Korea again under the direct leadership of the monarch himself with an army of 100,000 strong.

Again, the people of Korea fought against the enemy in Nam

Han Sansung and on the Kanghwa Island. Nevertheless, it was difficult to stand against this seasoned army of Ching, and to make the situation worse, among the ruling circles opinions were divided on the question of war and peace.

In the end, the Li government surrendered to the army of the Ching emperor. But even after the people's volunteer forces dispersed, because of the government's betrayal to the enemy, Lim Kyong Up and other patriots attempted to take reprisal against Ching, though their efforts were unsuccessful.

Despite the loss people suffered through the two extensive wars, the ruling class intensified their exploitation of people. They imposed numerous kinds of taxes upon peasants and their plunder and exploitation increased day by day. Moreover, the amount of the embezzlement by the swindlers and the middle dealers was so great that it reduced the government revenue. The government, therefore, took steps to remedy the situation by abandoning the old system of collecting tribute and instead enacting a new law called Taidongbup, which was to collect 16 doo or mal (one mal is equivalent to 7.5 kilograms) of rice from every kyul (unit of area).

The application of the new law, Taidongbup, not only augmented the government revenue but decreased the burden of the people to a certain degree.

Furthermore, the enforcement of this new tax law aided the commercial development within the country, and invigorated the circulation of currency.

In the city of Seoul and in all other towns markets were opened regularly. Despite the official control many unauthorized markets mushroomed throughout the country. Thus the circulation of currency and goods became livelier.

As for foreign trade, international markets were opened regularly in such places as Hoiryung, Kyongwon and Jungkang. And the trade with Japan flourished. Gradually, the new economic trend began to sprout.

In the 18th century commerce and handicrafts showed progress and the circulation of currency became active.

Peasants' handicrafts were separated gradually from agriculture, and developed into a special field. Consequently, such works as pearl inlaid articles, brassware, porcelain, lacquer goods, bamboo articles, wooden-ware, stationeries, and accessories for people, were in wide circulation throughout the country.

Furthermore, from the beginning to the middle of the 18th century, silver trade and excavation of silver and gold mines became brisk and private mining was active.

Trade developed so rapidly that by the 18th century the number of markets in the countryside had reached one thousand. The merchants of Kaesong, Seoul and Uijoo engaged in trade with foreign nations.

Moreover, the Yakryongsi (medicine market) in Taegu, Chungjoo and Kongjoo accelerated the circulation of currency and merchandise which played an important role in the development of the economy.

During the period of 17th and 18th centuries, the new social and economic conditions brought about a new ideological trend. This is found in the appearance of the Practical School.

The intent of the Practical School was to develop the country into a strong and prosperous nation, expressing the patriotic thinking. It advocated a grasp of the realities of Korea and shunning vain logic and empty talk—the usual practice of the Confucian school of thought—thus replacing the old with the new. The scholars belonging to the Practical School tried to develop our country politically and economically by transplanting foreign culture on the soil of culture developed in the period of King Sejong. Furthermore, the influence of the European countries' natural sciences accelerated the rapid growth of this new school and helped to lay the theoretical foundation.

Hahn Paik Kyuem, the outstanding realist in the 17th century, left many excellent works on history and geography. And Ryoo Hyung Won criticising the old system strongly advocated the improvement of the people's living, the establishment of a politically, economically, militarily powerful and prosperous nation, and reformation in the field of education.

The well-known realist of the 18th century Li Ik was a natural scientist whose theories compared well with those of West Europe at that time. And his theories on the question of land distribution and abolishment of the hierarchal system have much in common with modern basical theories.

Other scholars—Hong Dai Yong, Pak Ji Won, and Pak Je Ga—made a study of foreign culture. Their struggle against foreign worship and feudal system was not only the fight against antiquated thought but for progress and advancement.

The splendid achievements made by Jung Yak Yong through his Books of Discussions and theoretical writings reached a new height in the struggle for new and renovation. His voluminous writings covered really a wide range—politics, economy, history, geography, philosophy, literature, music, engineering, architecture, medical science, mathematics, etc.

The Practical School confirmed independent identity of Korea; spoke for new ideas and development; and reflected the struggle of the peasants against the feudal system. Their ideological substance was found in solving the land problem, in abolishing hierarchism and in opposing the severe exploitation by the ruling class of the time.

DECLINE OF FEUDALISTIC SYSTEM AND THE STRUGGLE OF THE PEASANTS IN THE 19TH CENTURY

The new economic development—circulation of currency and goods—worked eventually to disintegrate the economic foundation of the feudal society. However, the ruling circles aggravated the situation by their attempt to utilize these new factors for their benefit.

At the turn of the 19th century when King Soonjo was on the throne political confusion was created along with the economic dislocation. The feudal government, in order to remedy the economic crisis, released the farm slaves and made them free farmers. They did this in order to collect taxes from them as free farmers and to force them to contribute fabrics for the army as well as repay the usurous government loan of food.

The ruling circles enforcing the system of Samjung exacted high taxes from the peasants. And the most cruel exploitation was imposed upon them by the ruling class and local officials. Moreover, the antagonism among the ruling circles intensified the social crisis. In Seoul and many other places came out Kwaisu (bills) condemning the ruling class. The peasants' uprising, commonly known as Hong Kyong Rai's revolt, which occurred in Pyongan Province in the years of 1811-12, was an expression of such social unrest and dissatisfaction of the angry peasants.

The peasants led by Hong Kyong Rai occupied the main cities and towns to the north of the river Chungchun in a short space of time. After occupying Sunchun, Rongchun and Chulsan, Hong Kyong Rai's army advanced to Songrim, where, because of a strategical error, they suffered defeat. Then they entrenched themselves in Jungjoo. The government mobilized a big army, ten times larger than Hong Kyong Rai's, which surrounded Jungjoo and renewed the attack. The peasants' army, fighting against great odds, resisted the government army. However, in the end, the fortress of Jungjoo fell and the government army massacred every male inhabitant in Jungjoo over 11 years of age.

Thus, the peasants' struggle in Pyongan Province ended in failure due to the weakness of the leaders who came from the upper class and their poor strategy. It must be pointed out, however, that the peasants' uprising shook the feudal system to the very foundation.

The struggle of the peasants continued. In 1862 the peasants in Jinjoo revolted. This was followed by uprisings in Iksan, Kenyong, Kongjoo, Eunjin, Ryunsan, Buan, Keumkoo, Chungjoo, Hoiin, Mooni, Jangheung, Soonchun, Sunsan, Sangjoo, Kuchang, Hamheung, Kwangjoo and Chejoo. Such uprisings clearly indicate the decay of the feudal system of the Li dynasty and the severity of the feudal plunder of the peasants in that period.

MODERN AGE

INROAD OF FOREIGN CAPITAL IN THE LATTER PART OF THE 19TH CENTURY

In the latter part of the 19th century peasants' uprisings took place and the political and social life was in confusion. Korea was faced with a new crisis caused by the penetration of foreign aggressive powers. In 1864 the regent Taiwonkoon held the power. He tried hard to check the downward trend of feudalism and to reorganize administration on the basis of centralism on the one hand, and, on the other, pursued the seclusionist policy in order to block the inroad of capitalism from abroad.

In 1866 the Korean people sent the U.S. pirate ship General Sherman to the bottom of the Taidong River; in the same year a French fleet invaded the west coast under the pretext that the Korean court had suppressed the Catholic believers, but was repulsed; in 1871 the U.S. Pacific Fleet raided the Kanghwa Island, but was driven back.

However, in spite of the heroic struggle waged by the people for repelling foreign aggressors, the incompetent feudal government of the Li Dynasty obediently opened the door to invasion of the capitalist powers in order to maintain their feudal rule. First, it concluded the Kanghwa Treaty with Japan in 1876 and later the treaties of friendship and commerce with the United States, Britain, and Germany.

The self-independent economy of Korea was hard hit by invasion of foreign capital, especially the militarist-feudalistic Japanese imperialism. Traditional handicraft had a hard time of it. The inflow of fereign capital accelerated the circulation of commodities and money. Thus Korea was gradually turned into a semi-feudal and semi-colonial country.

The hatred and hostility of the Korean people for exploiters and foreign capitalist aggressors mounted. Their struggle against the feudal class was linked with the struggle against foreign invaders.

The Im-o Soldiers' Incident, an uprising against foreign aggression and feudalism, took place in 1882.

After the conclusion of the Kanghwa Treaty, the Japanese aggressors exerted influence on the Korean army. And a new army was organized under the command of Japanese officers.

This caused discontent among the old Korean soldiers. In addition, the bureaucratic officials embezzled rice to be rationed for soldiers. Indignant at such foul dealings, the soldiers launched an uprising. They killed the villainous officials and Japanese officers and dashed into the court.

However, the rioting soldiers were weak in political consciousness, and had no definite target for their struggle. Taiwonkoon, who had been deprived of real political power by Queen Min, took advantage of this occasion for regaining his power. The rioting soldiers supported Taiwonkoon. Queen Min and her followers asked China (the Ching Dynasty) to send an army. The Ching government considered it a good chance to enhance its influence over Korea.

The Chinese soldiers cruelly suppressed the rioting Korean soldiers and returned the reins of government to Queen Min. The Ching army, which remained stationed in Korea, intervened in Korea's internal affairs and strengthened its position.

The Japanese aggressors forced unreasonable and outrageous demands on Korea on the charge of "incineration of the Japanese legation" and "massacre of the Japanese."

The Korean soldiers' uprising provided an opportunity for the Chinese and Japanese governments to station their armies in the Korean territory. This increased their political interference in Korea's internal affairs and prompted their economic encroachment, the Japanese aggression in particular.

After the suppression of the Korean soldiers' uprising, internal disruption became more pronounced within the corrupt and incompetent ruling circles of the feudal Li Dynasty. Antagonism became more acute between the "conservative group" under aegis of China and the "enlightenment group" which aimed at reforming the feudal system with the help of Japan.

In 1884 the latter led by Kim Ok Kyoon executed a coup d'etat. The "enlightenment group" assumed the reins of power with the help of the aggressive Japanese army, but their government ended with a three day's rule in face of the intervention of the Chinese army.

The "enlightenment group" intended to deliver the country from crisis on the strength of the aggressive Japanese forces. It was the first movement of progressive character for changing the feudal society into a modern society in Korea. But they were wrong in depending on the Japanese for carrying out the reforms.

In 1885 Japan concluded the Tientsin Treaty with China and withdrew her army from Korea. Overtly Japan ceased to interfere in Korea's internal affairs. However, in reality the contradiction between Japan and China became aggravated as the former continued the scheme to extend her influence in Korea.

As a consequence of the increasing corruption of the feudal rulers and their submission to the incursion of foreign countries, the life of the people became more deteriorated. In January 1894 thousands of peasants led by Jun Bong Joon rose in arms in Kobu. They seized the government grain storage and distributed the grain among the peasants. They also attacked the government armoury and armed themselves with the captured weapons. Thus the peasants' uprising assumed wide dimensions, and spread throughout the country.

The incompetent Li government was panic-stricken in face of the peasants' uprising. Unable to suppress it, the feudal rulers asked China for help in the early part of June 1894. China dispatched her army. This provided an opportunity for Japan to send a large army to Korea. Japan used her army for suppressing the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal struggle of the peasants.

Japan emerged victorious in the Sino-Japanese War (1894-95). The Japanese imperialists set up a pro-Japanese government in Korea and posted Japanese advisors in all government organs. Thus Japan began to lord it over Korea.

The Japanese imperialists, with the help of the U.S. and British imperialists, started a war against Russia in 1904-1905, and won victory. The Japanese imperialists pursued the policy of bringing Korea under their complete occupation. They forced the Korean feudal rulers to conclude Eulsa Treaty (Treaty of Protection) on November 17, 1905. By the treaty the Korean government was deprived of the right to supervise matters pertaining to diplomacy and national defence. Thus Korea became a protectorate of Japan.

With the conclusion of the Treaty, the Japanese Resident-General was stationed in Seoul. The Japanese imperialists carried out their outrageous colonial policy.

The Japanese imperialists dethroned King Kojong, and placed Soonjong on the throne. On July 24, 1907 the Japanese imperialists forced the Korean King to sign a treaty with Japan. By this treaty the Japanese imperialists seized the control of the central and local administration. In August of the same year, they disbanded the Korean army.

The indignation of the Korean people at this arbitrary actions of the Japanese imperialists exploded all over the country. The Righteous Army Struggle, which had been growing throughout the country since the end of 1890, became more intensified.

The Russian Revolution (1905-1907) gave a great impetus to the liberation struggle of the Korean people.

The disbandment of the Korean army added fuel to the struggle of the Righteous Army. From 1906 to 1907 the struggle spread far and wide. It was especially severe in Cholla, Choongchung and Kyungsang provinces. And the struggle led by Hong Bum Do and Cha Do Sun in Hamkyung Province was vehement. It was a great menace to Japanese imperialism and landlords.

However, the national liberation struggle at that time was of a spontaneous nature and devoid of revolutionary leadership. The struggle failed to strike root among the people. The strategy and tactics were primitive. Their arms and military arts were outmoded. The bulk of the Righteous Army was comprised of peasants.

The Japanese imperialists mobilized a huge armed force, and cruelly suppressed the country-wide anti-Japanese Righteous Army Struggle, drenching the Korean soil with blood.

In this period the Korean bourgeois nationalists, though weak, launched the cultural enlightenment movement in opposition to the Japanese imperialists and feudal rulers. They issued slogans such as "Independence" and "Restoration of Sovereignty". They contributed to some extent to stimulating the anti-Japanese patriotic spirit of the people. But the movement was weak, because it was not closely connected with the Righteous Army Struggle.

In collusion with the feudal bureaucrats such as the traitor Lee Wan Yong and the pro-Japanese association "Iljin Hwai", the Japanese robbers concluded the "Annexation Treaty" with the "Korean Emperor" on August 23, 1910. It was announced on August 29 of the same year that the Government-General rule was set up. Korea was turned into a complete colony of Japan.

JAPANESE OCCUPATION AND COLONIAL POLICY

The period of Japanese rule (1910-45) was that of colonial plunder and unheard-of oppression and exploitation of the Korean people by the Japanese imperialists.

The Japanese imperialists indulged in economic exploitation by combining capitalist methods with feudal ones. After the annexation of Korea the Japanese imperialists pursued the economic policy of setting up and strengthening a colonial and semi-feudal system of exploitation. They started seizing the land under the name of the "Land Survey".

Before annexation, they had already made preparation for a systematic investigation and survey of the land in Korea. From 1912 to 1918 they carried out in a full scale the "Land Survey". In this course they seized over 8.8 million jungbo (one jungbo is 2.45 acres) of land which they declared should fall under "state ownership", because the landowner had "violated procedure" or "had no proof of ownership".

The land and forests thus confiscated from the Koreans were transferred to the ownership of the Japanese organs and companies, the pro-Japanese landowners and capitalists. This accelerated the collapse of the rural economy and brought about a more acute class differentiation in farm villages.

The Japanese imperialists pursued the policy of obstructing the independent development of Korea's industry. Their basic aim was to allow Korea's industry to exist as an appendage of Japan's industry. They enacted the "Corporation Law" in 1910 with a view to protecting Japanese capital in Korea, ensuring monopolized exploitation and restricting Koreans' capital.

By this law Japanese monopoly capital was given full scope to monopolize Korea's industry, while Korean capital was given no opportunity for free investment. After the "Mining Law" was promulgated in 1915, the Japanese could with ease monopolize

the mining of iron, coal, copper, lead, zinc and tungsten. The Japanese imperialists also laid stress on the expansion of transport and communications so as to facilitate the marketing of their commodities and plundering of raw materials and their invasion of the Asian mainland.

In order to ensure their colonial plunder, the Japanese imperialists enforced a military police rule. By all conceivable vicious laws such as "Civil Law", "Criminal Law," "Newspaper Regulations" and "Security Law" they suppressed the national liberation struggle of the Korean people. They covered the country with the network of gendarmes, police and prisons. Their suppression and massacre of the Korean people became more and more terrible. The arrested people numbered 52,000 in 1912. In 1918 the number had increased to 142,000.

Colonial plunder and enslavement of the Korean people by the Japanese imperialists became harsher. The Korean working people were subjected to double and treble exploitation and cruel oppression by the Japanese colonialists and their lackeys, Korean landlords and dependent capitalists.

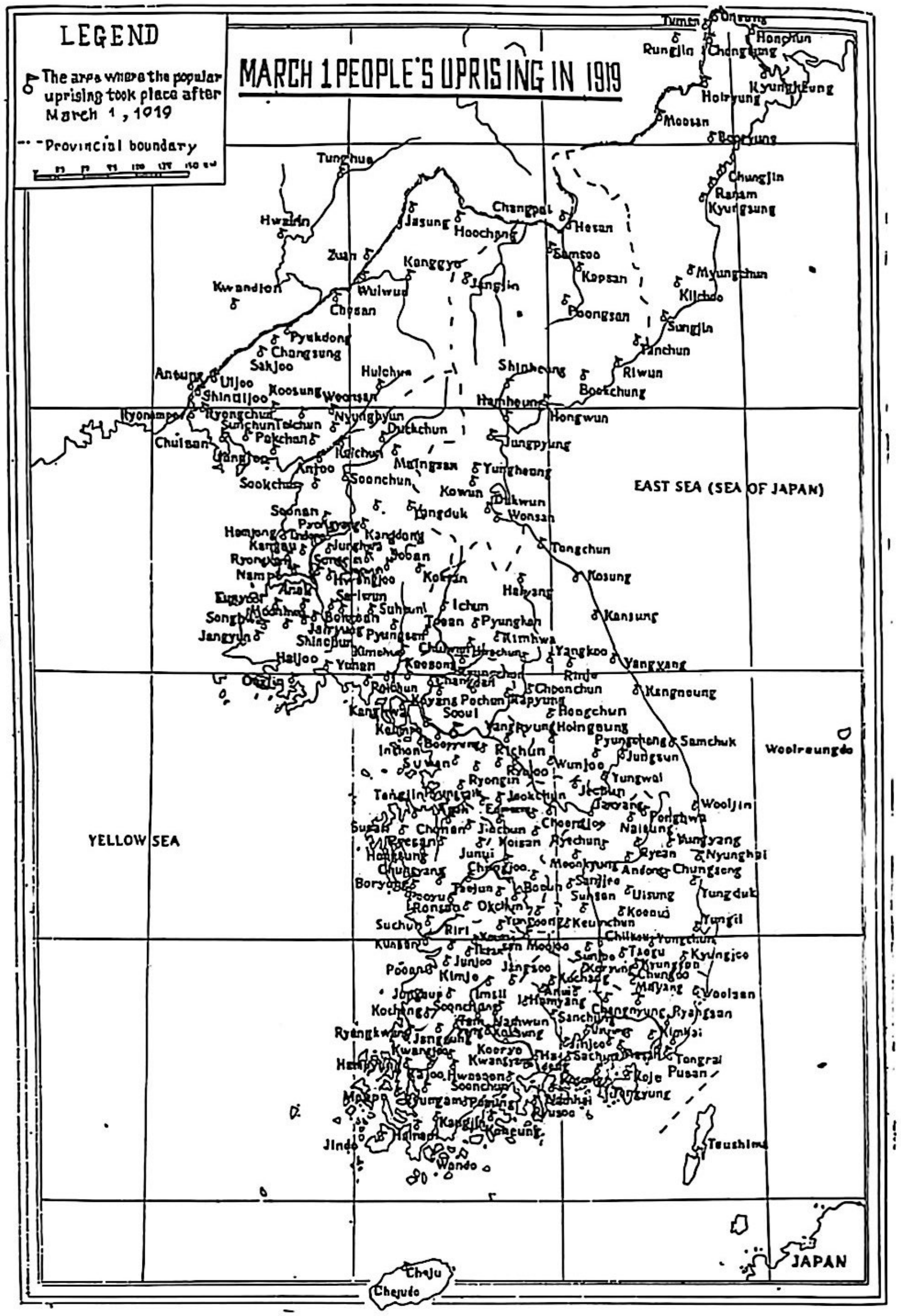
Most of peasants were deprived of their land by the Japanese imperialists. They became tenants of the Japanese and Korean landlords. Tenants were forced to pay rent amounting to from 50 to 80 per cent of all their harvest. In addition, they were exploited by usurers and merchants who dealt in Japanese goods.

Workers were forced to work for 12 to 16 hours in factories, mines, transport services, etc. They lived in mud huts. Food was pitifully meagre. They received a mere pittance for wage. They groaned under non-rights and poverty. However, the Korean people never ceased to wage struggle against political oppression and economic exploitation by the Japanese occupiers.

From 1910 on the Righteous Army Struggle spread far and wide, along with workers' strikes and peasants' tenancy troubles.

MARCH 1 UPRISING AND GROWTH OF WORKERS' AND PEASANTS' MOVEMENT

The great October Socialist Revolution, which ushered in a new era in human history, signified a decisive turning-point in our national liberation struggle.


LEGEND
The area where the popular uprising took place after March 1, 1919
Provincial boundary
MARCH 1 PEOPLE'S UPRISING IN 1919
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
YELLOW SEA
JAPAN
Seoul
Pyungyang
Wonsan
Hamheung
Sinuiju
Kaesong
Inchon
Taegu
Pusan
Cheju
Tsushima
Wooleungdo

With the upsurge of international revolution under the influence of the October Revolution, the anti-Japanese national liberation struggle showed an upward swing. In 1918 strikers numbered over 6,000, or more than the total number of strikers in 1912-17.

The revolutionary spirit of overseas Koreans was running high. The Korean emigrants in the Maritime Province of the Soviet Union, side by side with the Soviet people, took part in the partisan struggle in defence of the Soviet power. They fought the Japanese interventionists and the White Guards.

Internally the anti-Japanese mass movement was being carried on under the influence of the October Revolution. On March 1, 1919, a big scale uprising took place in Seoul.

Despite the treachery of the bourgeois nationalists and sanguinary suppression of the Japanese imperialists, the uprising spread all over the country in a short space of time. It also evoked reaction abroad.

About two million people—workers, peasants, students, intellectuals and petty townfolk—participated in the uprising. Out of 218 counties, 211 counties were involved in the uprising.

Many people sacrificed themselves. About 8,000 were killed; 16,000 seriously wounded; 52,770 arrested. But the people continued their struggle. At last the Japanese imperialists armed to the teeth suppressed the uprising. The failure of the uprising is to be explained by the fact that the working class was still young, and had no revolutionary party which could exercise a unified leadership.

With the March 1 People's Uprising as a divide the era of the bourgeois nationalist movement ended and a new stage opened in the national liberation movement led by the working class. As Kim Il Sung said, the uprising was "the first uprising for national independence in opposition to the Japanese plunderers". It is of great significance in the history of the national liberation struggle of the Korean people.

The uprising struck a blow at the Japanese colonial system. It forced the Japanese imperialists to invent a new method of rule. In the summer of 1919 they declared a "cultural administration" instead of their traditional "military rule". However, this did not mean that the exploitation of Korea by the Japanese imperialists was mitigated. It was their trickery. By the "cultural administration" they aimed at covering up the true nature of their "military rule", at deceiving the world public opinion and at paralysing the national awakening of the Korean people which had reached a high pitch.

In the 20's the Japanese imperialists pursued the infamous agricultural policy of "increased production of rice" with a view to taking away food from Korea to Japan.

On the other hand, they abolished the "Corporation Law" in 1919 to expedite their export of capital to Korea. And they expanded gradually their industrial facilities for increasing war supplies. Thus they elaborated the colonial system of exploitation.

Consequently, an abnormal colonial industry made development in Korea, and some industrial centres were created. This swelled the ranks of modern industrial workers, which accelerated the labour movement.

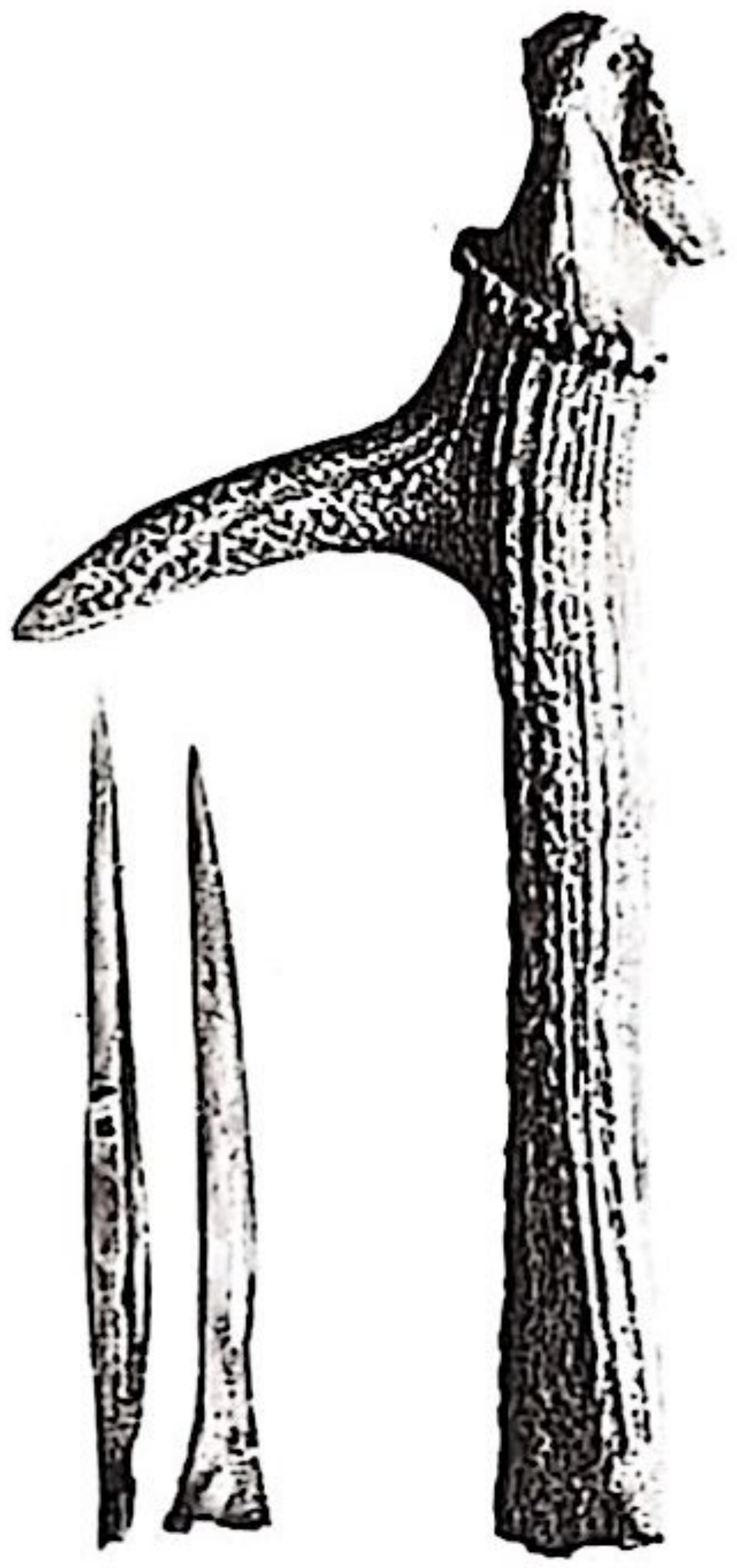
The first biggest strike was called by the workers headed by the longshoremen in Pusan in August 1921. The strikers numbered about 5,000. The strike spread to all parts of the country. In the course of the struggle, they felt more keenly the necessity of class unity and organization.

In April 1920, the "Workers' Mutual Help Society" was organized in Seoul. Under the influence of the growing workers' movement the peasants had their organizations such as "Tenants' Association" and "Tenants' Mutual Help Society".

The development of workers' and peasants' movement in the 20's was linked with the penetration of Marxism-Leninism from the Maritime Province of the Soviet Union. In the beginning of 1920 illegal Marxist-Leninist circles were organized by advanced workers and intellectuals in the industrial centres. Thus Marxism-Leninism went deep into the broad sections of workers and peasants.

Encouraged by Marxism-Leninism, the mass movement of workers and peasants gained in momentum. According to doctored data published by the Japanese imperialists, strikes numbered 45 with the participation of about 7,000 workers in 1924 alone.

In the same year there were 164 cases of tenancy trouble in which 7,000 peasants took part. In this period the struggle waged by the Korean people was directed not only at the Japanese imperialist rulers but also at their followers—the reactionary Korean landlords, capitalists and national traitors.

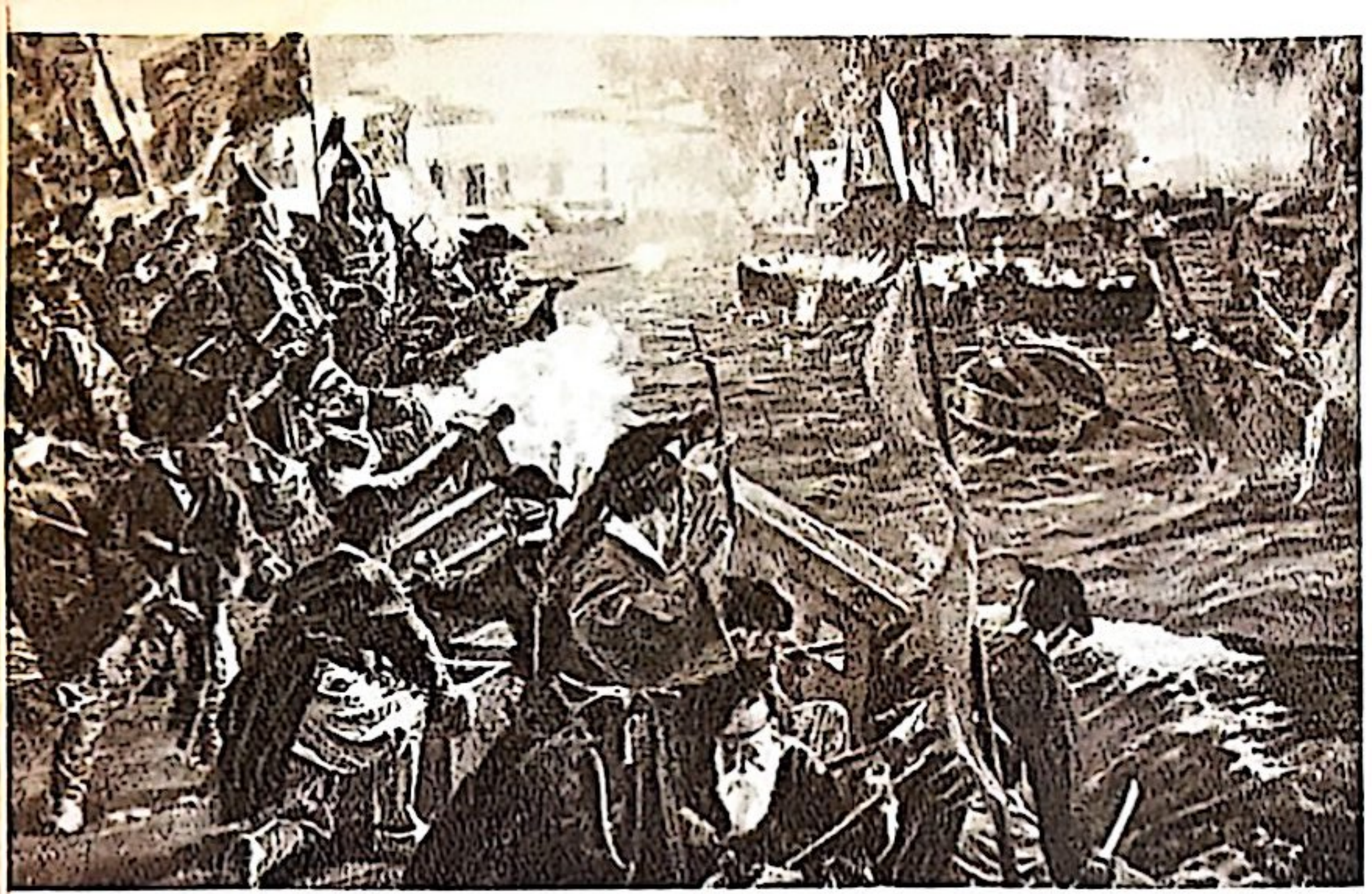


Bone-made pick and drill

Stone implement, ploughshare

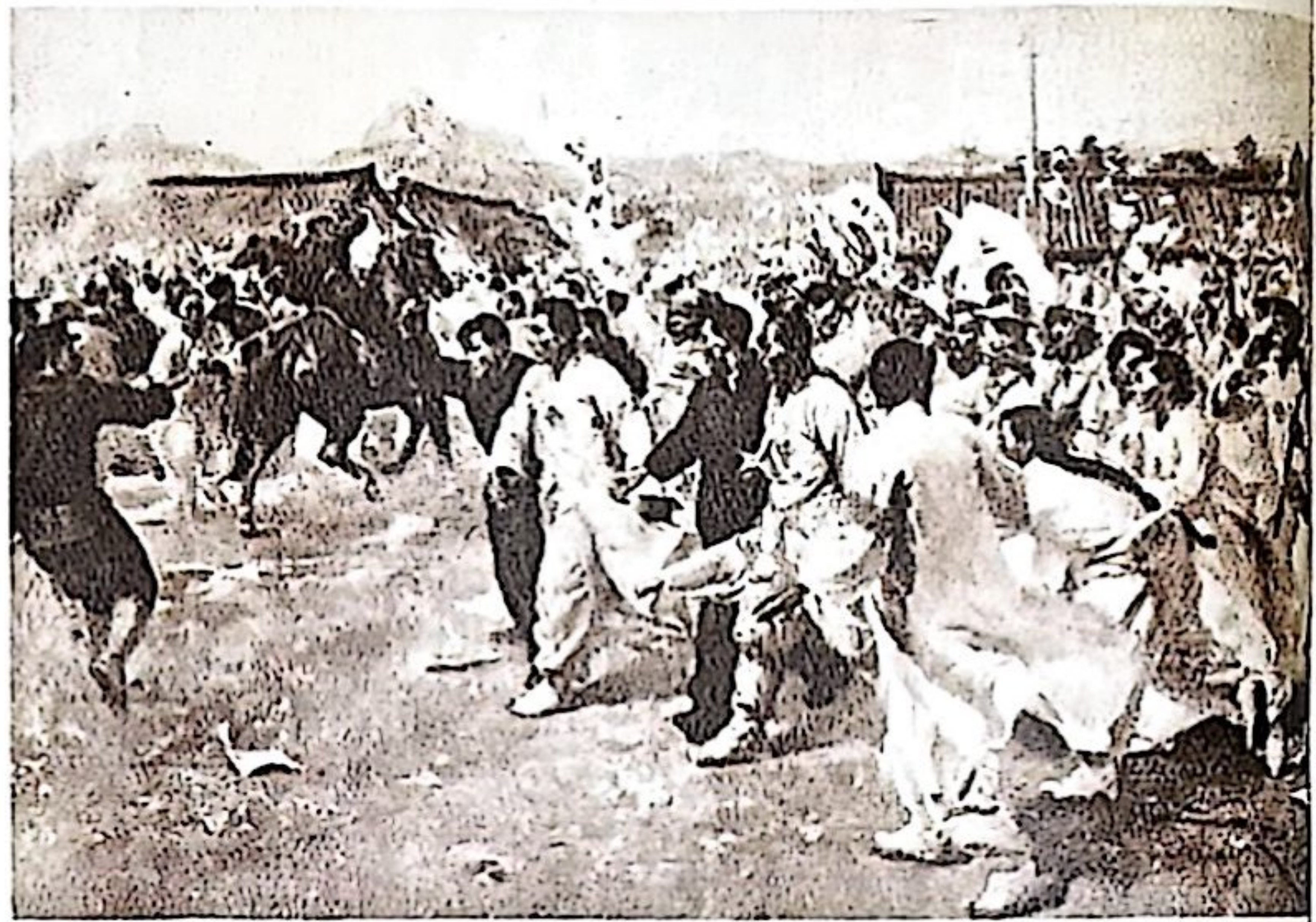
Earthenware with comb-teeth pattern

Bronze implement, spear

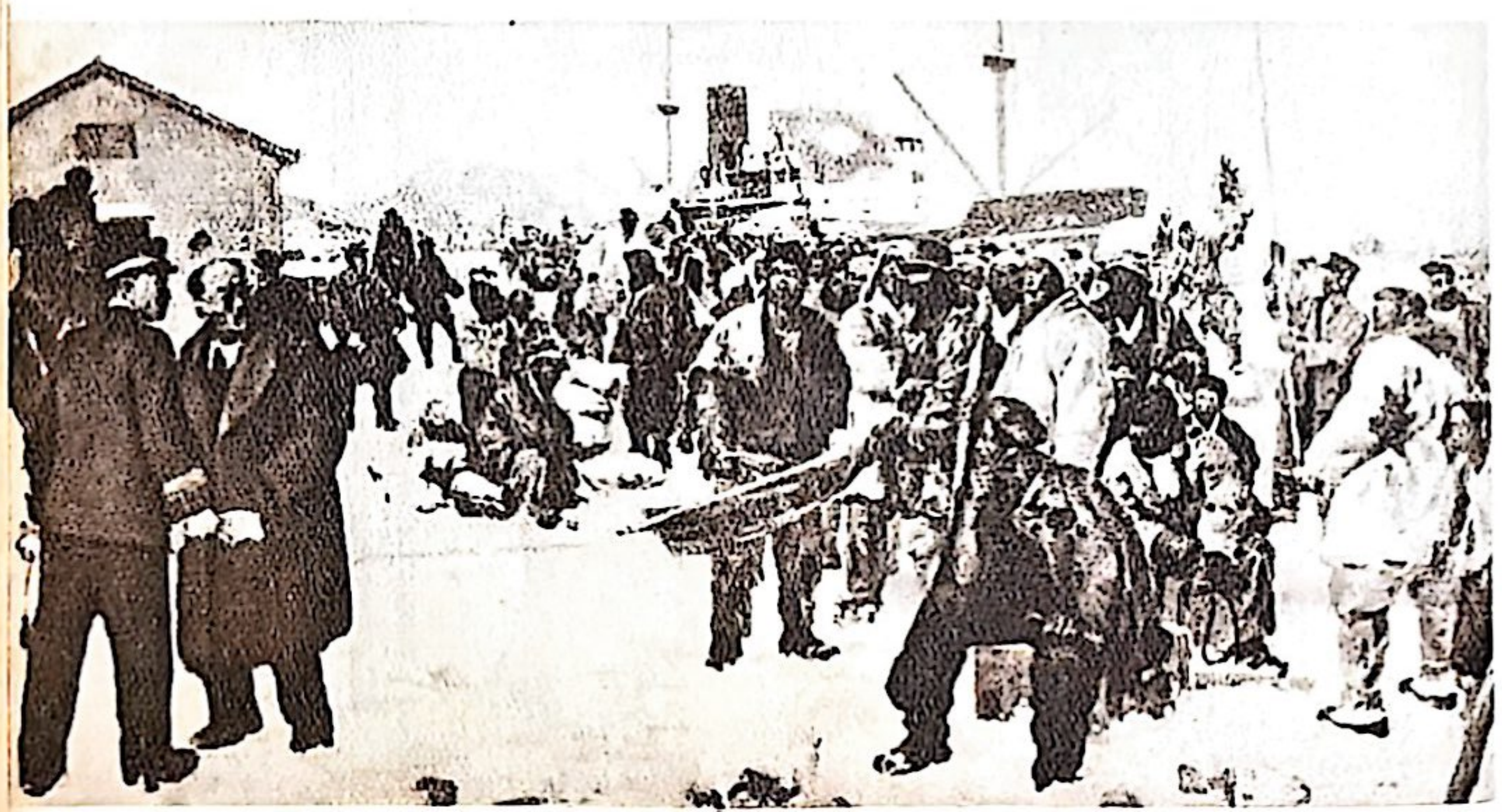


Hansan Island Battle (Imjin Patriotic War against the Japanese invaders in 1592) by *Jung Hyun Woong*

March First Uprising (1919) by *Li Kwoi Dai*



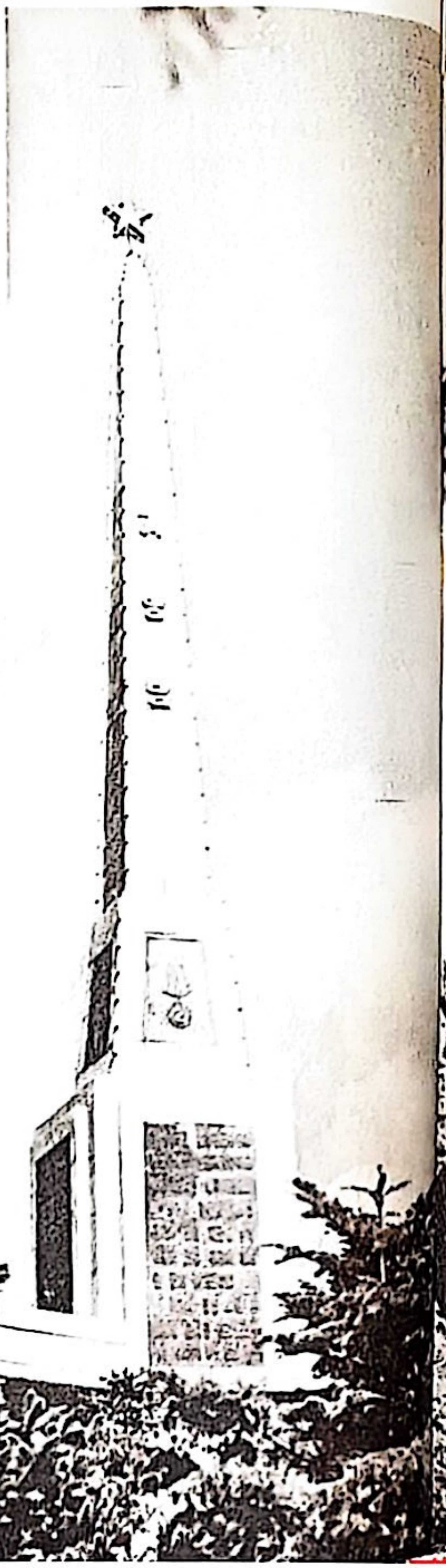
Wonsan General Strike (1929) by *O Taik Kyung*



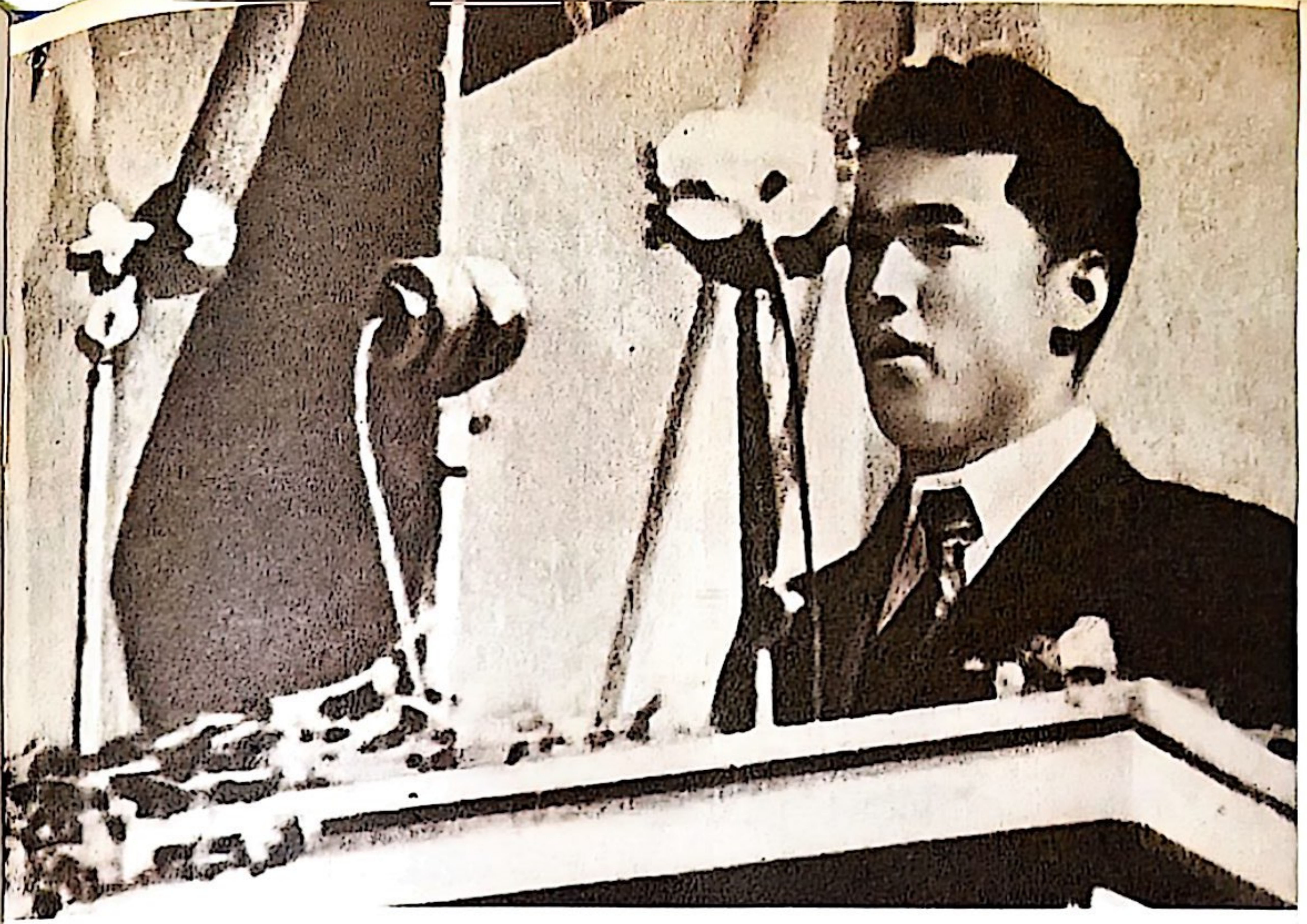
Comrade Kim Il Sung (left) and his comrades-in-arms in the period of armed struggle against the Japanese imperialists

Partisans in preparation for action in the secret army camp

Landing at Chungjin by the Soviet Army (August 1945)



Liberation Monument on Moranbong Hill, Pyongyang, in honour of Korea's liberation by the Soviet Army

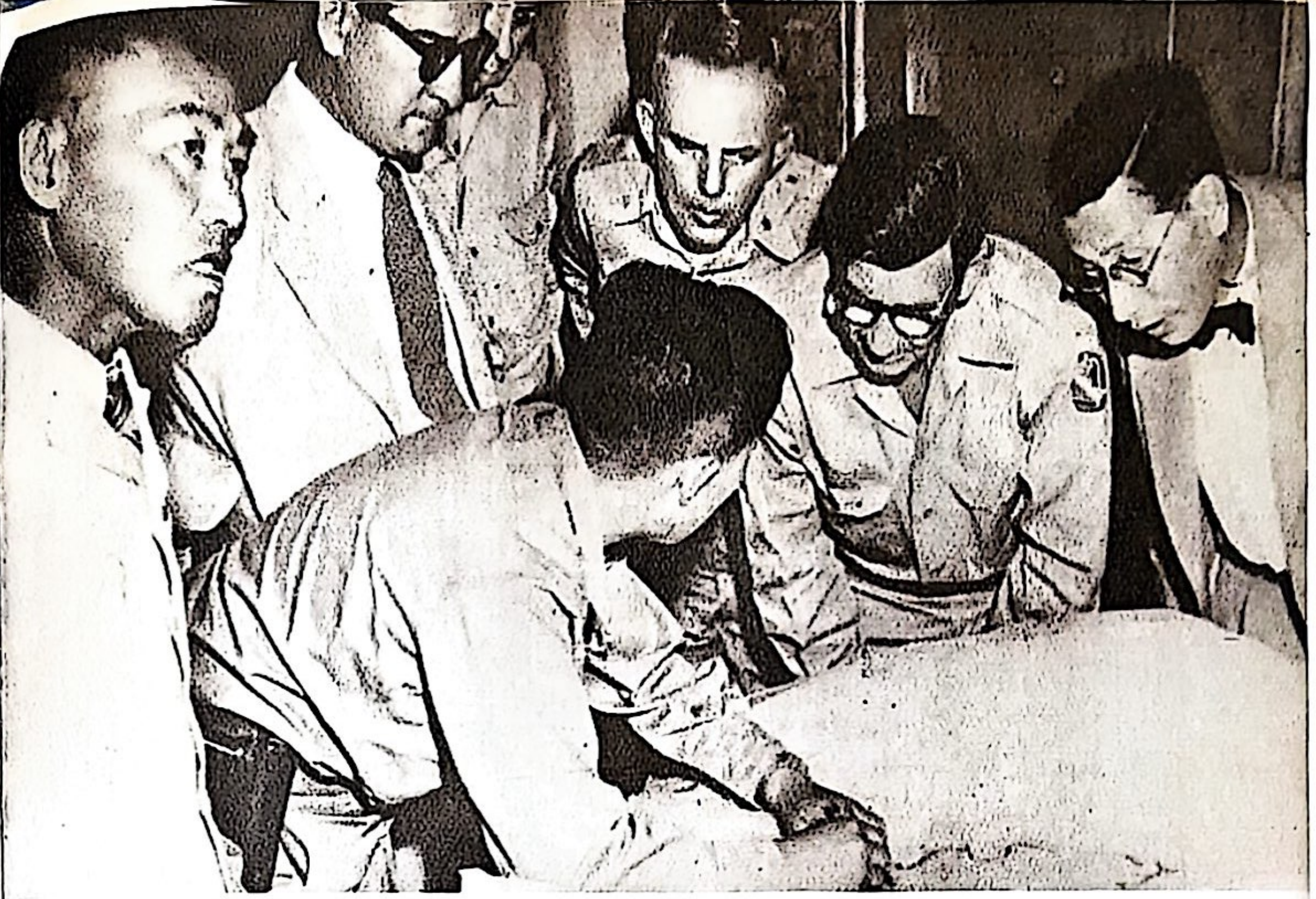


Comrade Kim Il Sung returned home in triumph (1945)

Peasants receiving lands by the land reform (March 1946)

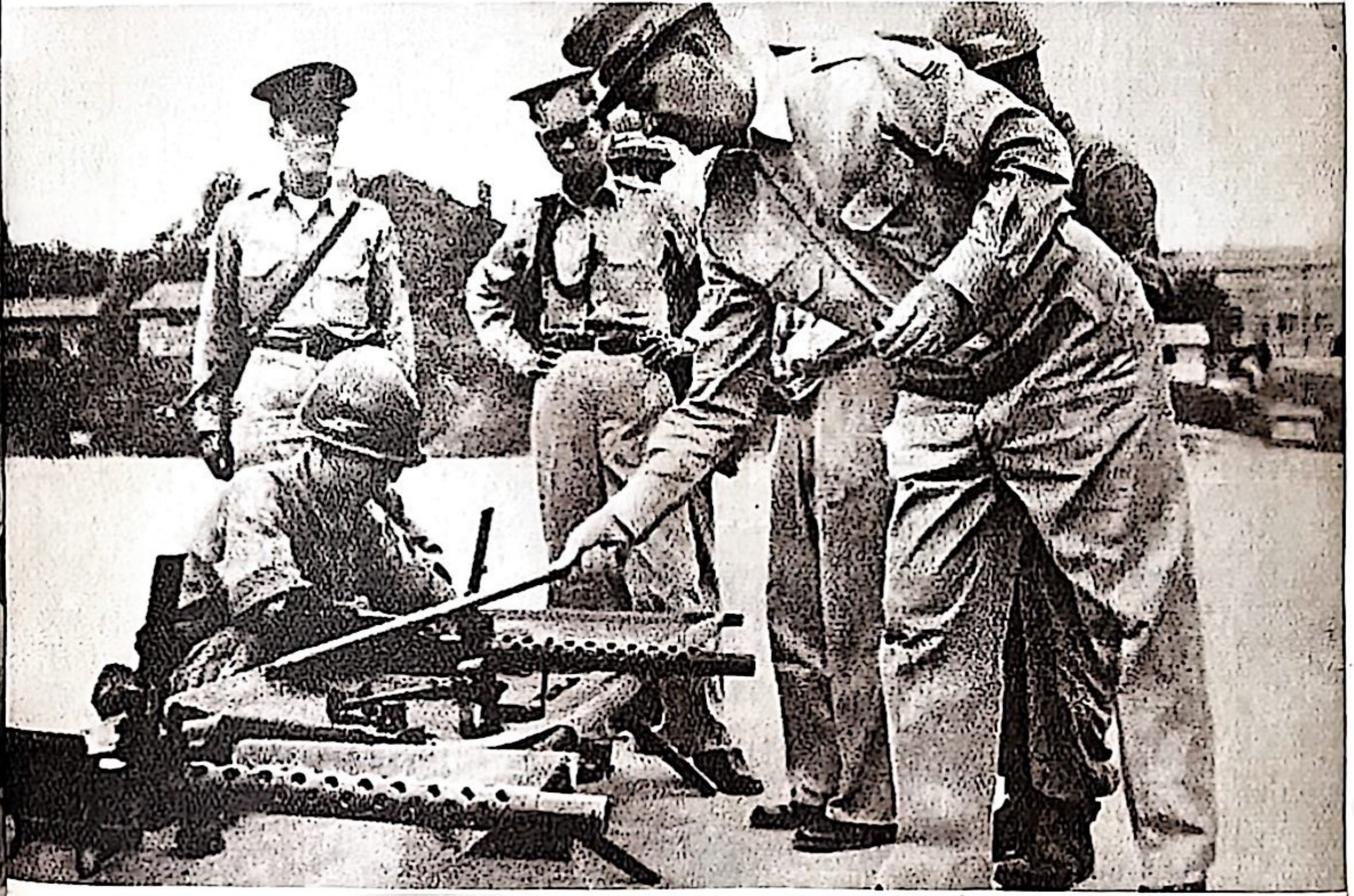
Mass rally in Pyongyang in celebration of the proclamation of the founding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea (September 1948)

Soviet Army withdraw from Korea receiving a grand send-off by the Korean people

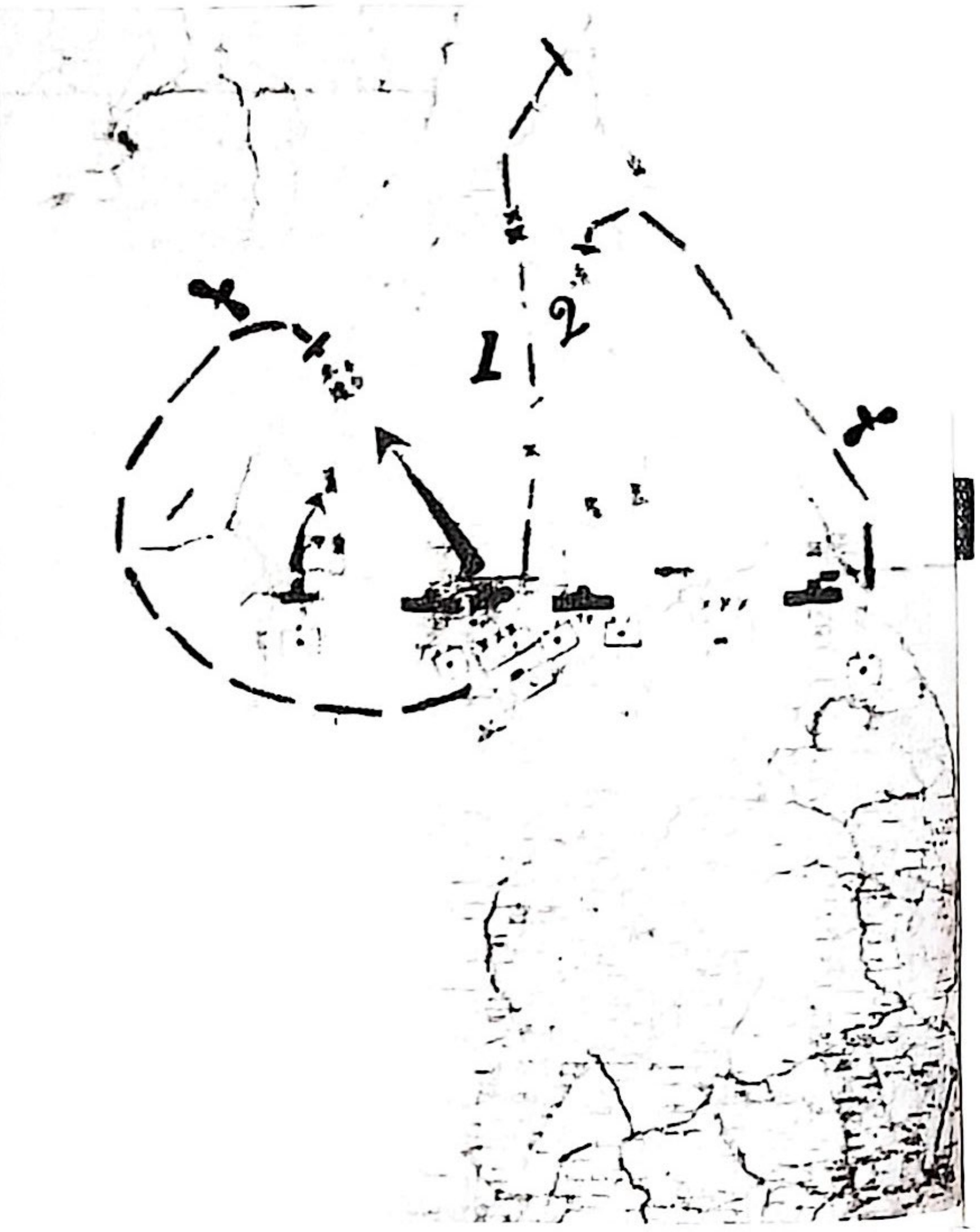


American imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique plotting the armed invasion against the northern part of the Republic (June 1950)

An American military adviser inspecting the preparation for action of the puppet army

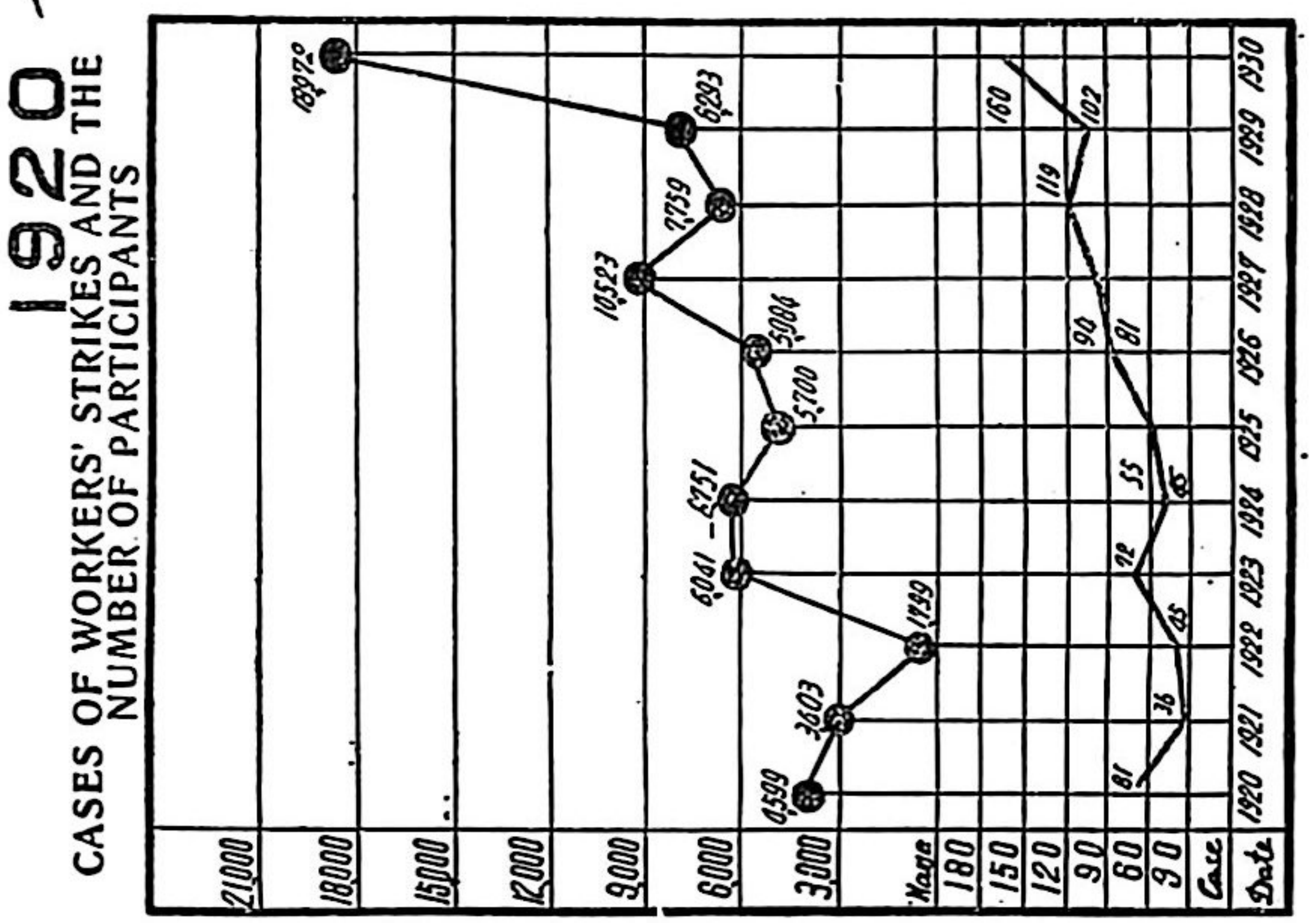


Dulles making a final inspection of the 38th parallel for the purpose of invading North Korea (June 1950)

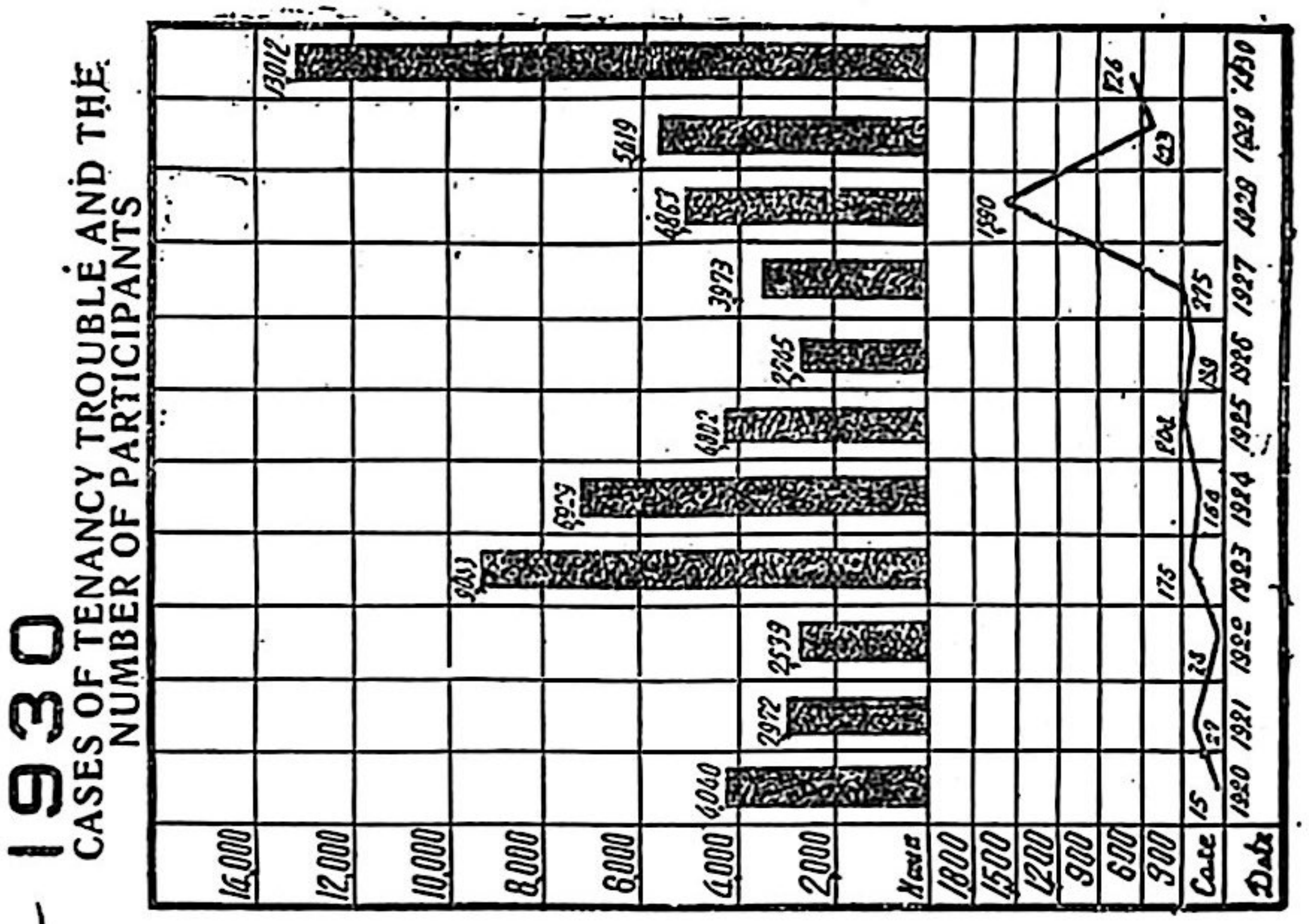


A map of the U.S. military operations to invade North Korea

1920 — 1930



CASES OF WORKERS' STRIKES AND THE NUMBER OF PARTICIPANTS



CASES OF TENANCY TROUBLE AND THE NUMBER OF PARTICIPANTS

The class consciousness of the working people was enhanced, and their activities assumed a more organized character. In 1924 the "All-Korea Worker-Peasant Union" was organized and shortly afterwards the "All-Korea Youth Union".

In 1920's the sectarian organizations (Ko-yu Communist Party, Han-in Socialist Party, Tuesday Group, Seoul Youth Society, etc.) were formed by petty bourgeois intellectuals, and their factional strife hindered the spread of Marxism-Leninism and exerted a baneful influence on the liberation struggle of the working class.

With the growth of the workers' and peasants' movement, necessary conditions were provided for forming a revolutionary party. In April 1925 the Korean Communist Party was organized as a vanguard of the Korean working class. The formation of the Communist Party gave an impetus to stepping up the Korean national liberation struggle.

The Party intended for class struggle, socialism and Communism, but failed to live up to Marxism-Leninism. Serious defects were that the Party had no link with the working class. Due to the dirty factional strife of sectarians in the leading centre of the Party, the Party could not ensure a Bolshevik leadership in the revolutionary struggle of the awakening masses.

On the occasion of the funeral ceremony of the last King of Korea, Soonjong, in 1926, the people launched the "June Tenth Movement" under the leadership of the Korean Communist Party. But the sectarians failed to lead the revolutionary advance of the people. The demonstrations of the people which took place in Seoul on June 10, 1926 was suppressed by the Japanese imperialists.

In 1927 the "Shinkan Hwai", an anti-Japanese organization, was formed by the nationalists. Later it degraded into the haunts of national reformists. Nevertheless the sectarians of M L group who held the reins of the Party came forward as the rightist capitulators to melt the Party down into the "Shinkan Hwai".

The Korean Communist Party could not unite its ranks due to the factional strife within the Party and terrorism of the Japanese imperialists, and at last ceased to exist as an organized force in 1928.

In this way the Party could not ensure a Marxist-Leninist leadership in carrying out the revolutionary task due to the factional strife of the sectarians. However, the workers regarded it as their own Party and gained much inspiration from the existence of the Party. After the formation of the Communist Party the labour movement grew in momentum. Between 1925 and 1928 strikes numbered 349 with the participation of 24,011 workers. The tenancy trouble numbered 2,267, in which 15,583 peasants were involved.

NEW STAGE OF NATIONAL LIBERATION MOVEMENT—ANTI-JAPANESE ARMED STRUGGLE

The Japanese imperialists were hard hit by the world economic crisis that broke out in 1929-33.

They tried to find a way out of the crisis by tightening their fascist rule in their homeland as well as in Korea and by launching an invasion on the Asian mainland. On September 18, 1931 they started a war without any declaration and occupied Northeast China. They set up the puppet "Manchukuo" government. They used Korea and Manchkuo as a bridgehead against the Soviet Union and Asian mainland. With a view to preparing for an aggressive war the Japanese imperialists expanded the munition industry in Korea from the beginning of the thirties.

And they made the most of Korean cheap labour power and plundered all available minerals, provisions and other agricultural raw materials.

The Japanese imperialists, Korean landlords and capitalists took various measures for recovering from the ravages of the economic crisis. In this respect the Korean people were the first to be sacrificed; the exploitation of labour became intensified; wages were reduced by 30 to 50 per cent in the period of crisis; an army of unemployed was roaming about the streets.

The peasants, too, were reduced to poverty. Almost all their harvests were taken away by the Japanese imperialists and landlords. They were deeply in debt. Class differentiation in the countryside became still more acute. The number of peasants who left the farms increased sharply.

Korean medium and small industrialists and traders went bankrupt, and were reduced to an industrial reserve army.

Along with the economic exploitation of workers and peasants, the Japanese imperialists expanded their police force and prisons. They intensified their fascist oppression of Koreans by extending the application of the "Law on Public Security."

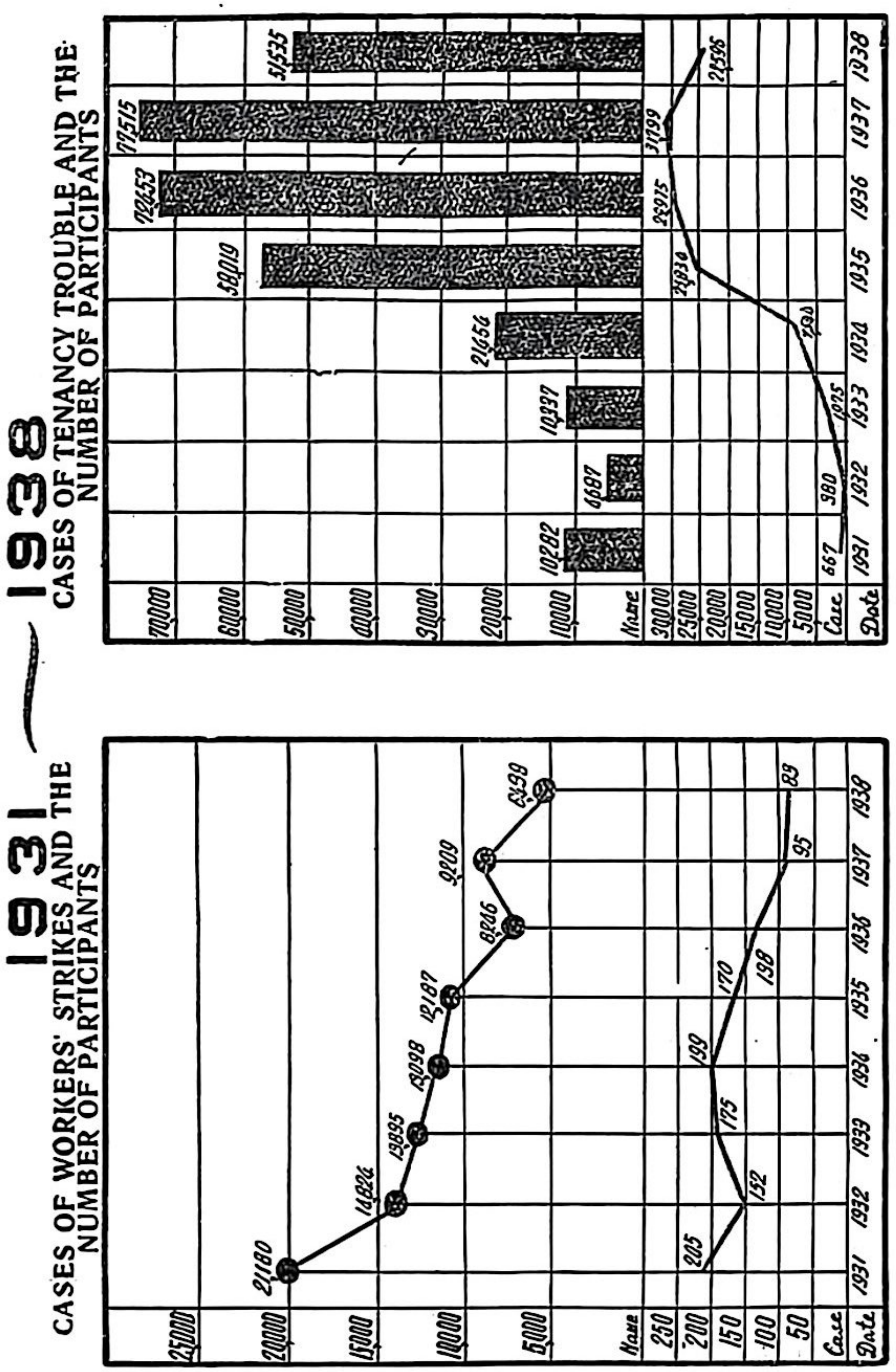
Under the circumstances, the bourgeois nationalists and opportunists who styled themselves as the "pioneers" of the national movement, submitted to Japanese imperialism. They became contemptible lackeys of the fascists and dregs of human society.

From the end of the 20's to the early 30's the struggle of workers and peasants led by the Communists showed an upward swing and assumed the character of mass uprising.

With the start of the strike of workers of the Rising Sun Oil Company in Moonpyong at the beginning of 1929, 3,000 workers in Wonsan called a general strike for over 80 days. The strikes spread far and wide. In 1930 the strikes of workers of the Pusan Textile Mill and Pyongyang Rubber Factory and the uprising of miners in Shinheung broke out. The labour movement turned from a simple demonstration to a particularly bitter uprising against the Japanese imperialists and their lackeys. Under the influence of the labour movement, the peasants were drawn into the struggle. For two years from 1929 to 1930, cases of tenancy trouble numbered 1,146. But the peasant movement was not confined to tenancy trouble. It assumed a large place in the peasant uprising. Illustrative of this are the demonstration of the peasants under the direction of the peasants' union in Jungpyung, South Hamkyung Province, and the uprising of 10,000 peasants in Tanchun, South Hamkyung Province.

The Kwangju Students Incident which occured in 1929 gave an incentive to the nation-wide anti-Japanese students' and enlightenment movements. Alongside the mass movement within the country, anti-Japanese insurrections with wide participation of the Korean peasants in Northeast China took place in succession.

In the course of the struggle, the worker-peasant alliance gained in strength. The Korean revolutionary forces led by the working class under the leadership of the Communists grew sufficiently to wage an arduous and unflagging armed struggle against Japanese imperialism.



The Japanese imperialists intensified their fascist domination. Under the circumstances, the Korean working people could bring their anti-Japanese struggle to a victorious conclusion only by resorting to a mass armed struggle, the highest form of struggle.

However, in this period, the sectarians who disorganized the Korean Communist Party did not stop their disruptive actions.

In the 30's the Korean national liberation movement had its leaders—the staunch Communists headed by Kim Il Sung. Thus it developed into the stage of a more active armed struggle. Also the movement was stimulated by the decisive triumph in socialist construction in the Soviet Union.

Kim Il Sung applied Marxist-Leninist strategy, in accordance with the necessity of the national liberation movement, to the reality of Korea. He made it clear that the movement should be turned into a people's armed struggle. To do so, the Korean Communists had to eliminate the evils bequeathed by sectarianism; to strengthen the organizational solidarity and unity of the Communists; to impart a higher purposeful consciousness and organized character to the mass movement.

He advocated the necessity of organizing a new Marxist-Leninist Party; of forming on a broad scale an anti-Japanese popular front on the basis of worker-peasant alliance under the leadership of the working class; of linking our national liberation movement with the international labour movement under the banner of proletarian internationalism.

He put forth concrete measures for rallying the ranks of staunch Communists to conduct an active, persistent partisan warfare, for setting up bases of operation in the northern border regions and Northeast China which provided favourably political and economic conditions. In the winter of 1931 he called together workers, peasants and progressive students and youth in Antu Province of east Manchuria and formed the first partisan unit under the leadership of staunch Communists. The staunch Communists headed by Kim Il Sung formed the Communist Party organizations and Youth League organizations within the partisan units to educate the fighters in the Marxist-Leninist spirit, to strengthen their ideological and organizational unity and to display patriotic heroism in the struggle against the Japanese imperialists. The partisans won battles in various districts, and armed themselves with weapons captured from Japanese army and police. They destroyed the reactionary organs

and did away with reactionary elements. They extended their sphere of influence among the people through such popular organizations as anti-imperialist union, peasants' association, peasants' militia and women's society.

Kim Il Sung integrated the partisans scattered in the districts of east Manchuria into the East Manchurian Anti-Japanese Partisan Unit. He strengthened the ties with the Chinese people by sending political workers to the Chinese Anti-Japanese National Salvation Army and Volunteers.

In 1932 Kim Il Sung and his comrades-in-arms set up the partisan bases and liberated areas in various parts of the east Manchuria for the purpose of winning victory in the partisan warfare of a protracted nature.

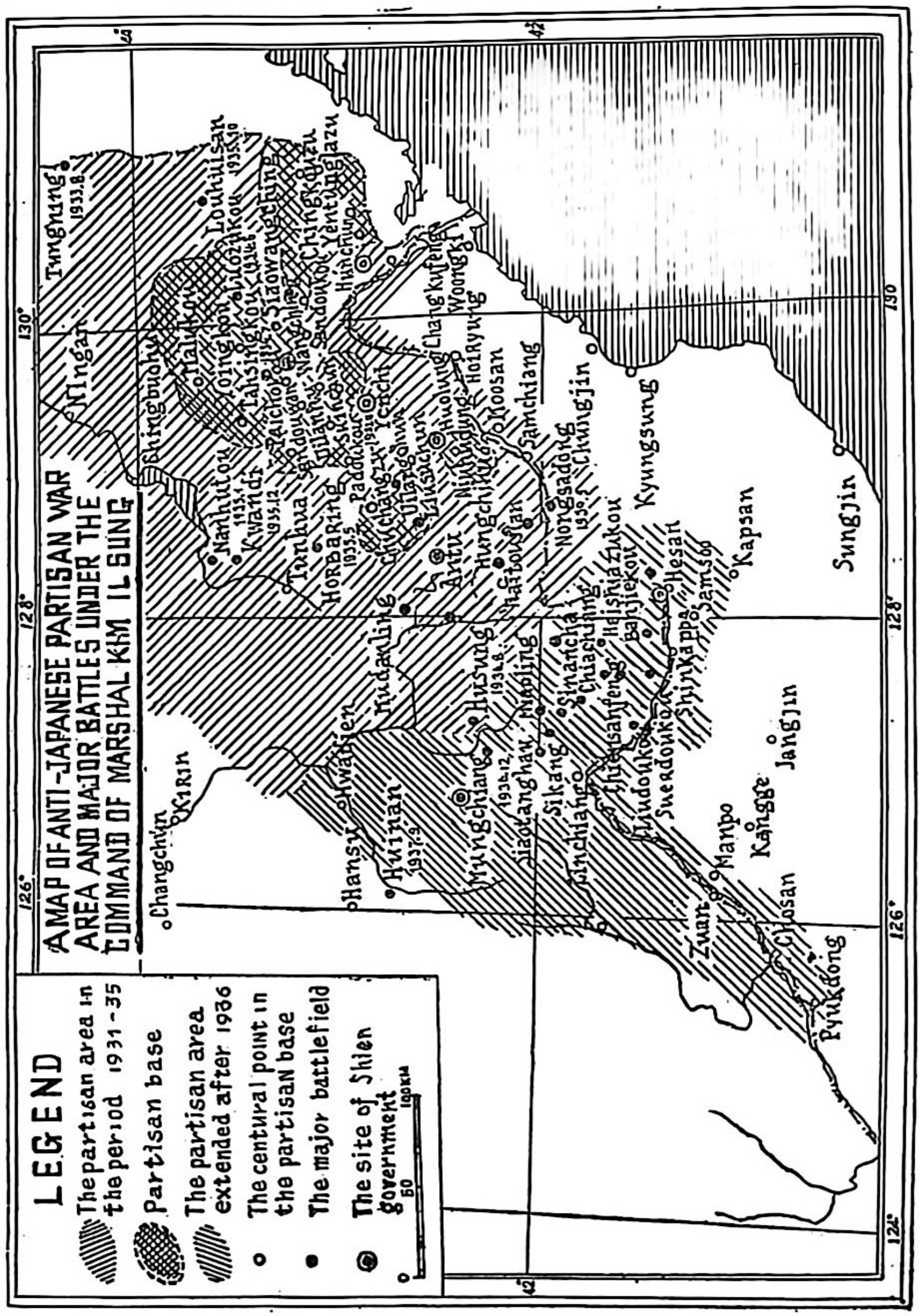
In the partisan bases and liberated areas the organizations of the Communist Party and Communist Youth League and anti-Japanese mass organizations were formed, and the people's revolutionary power was set up. The people's revolutionary power carried out a series of democratic political and economic reforms, such as confiscation and distribution of land without compensation and enforcement of an 8-hour day. It also established schools, communication facilities, arsenals and clothing manufactories.

The partisan bases and liberated areas contributed a great deal to ensuring a unified leadership of the partisan struggle, educating the revolutionary masses, training numerous military and political cadres, and to ensuring a stable rear for the partisans.

Everytime the enemies attacked the partisan bases and the liberated areas, they were defeated by the stubborn joint defence of partisans and civilians in the liberated area.

In April 1933, the partisans led by Kim Il Sung frustrated the attack of the enemy of 5,000 strong on the partisan bases in Shiaowang-ching. At the beginning of 1934 the partisans stormed Lotzukou, and dealt a serious blow to the enemy.

As the partisans were growing in strength and scope, in 1934 Kim Il Sung brought together the partisans active in east and south Manchuria to form the Korean People's Revolutionary Army. Thus the partisans grew into a large combined army. They inflicted a great loss upon Japanese imperialism by mobile operations. The partisan bases were expanded.



A MAP OF ANTI-JAPANESE PARTISAN WAR AREA AND MAJOR BATTLES UNDER THE COMMAND OF MARSHAL KIM IL SUNG

LEGEND
The partisan area in the period 1931-35
Partisan base
The partisan area extended after 1936
The central point in the partisan base
The major battlefield
The site of Shien government
0
50
100KM
126°
128°
130°
42
Tunghung
Ningan
Louhuisan
Shingbuin
Wangching
Hunchun
Changkufeng
Woongki
Hairyung
Yenchi
Hwaryong
Antu
Musan
Hoosan
Samchiang
Chungjin
Kyungsung
Nongsadong
Hungchisan
Kapsan
Sungjin
Tunhua
Hornbaring
Kwandi
Nanhutou
Changchun
Kirin
Hwatien
Mudanling
Huisung
Sikang
Chiaching
Hesan
Poochunbo
Mungchiang
Hwangsan
Huinan
Hansu
Linchiang
Sandoukou
Manpo
Kangge
Jangjin
Chosan
Pyukdong
Zuan

In the same period, Kim Chaik and Choi Yong Kun, comrades-in-arms of Kim Il Sung, following Kim Il Sung's line, waged partisan warfare in north Manchuria.

The Japanese imperialists took every possible means of suppressing the growing armed struggle. They made large scale "punitive operations" on the one hand, and, on the other, attempted to disorganize from within the partisan units by making use of the spy organization, the "Harmony Society", or sectarians who degraded themselves, becoming agents of the Japanese imperialists.

The People's Revolutionary Army never ceased to attack the enemy. In 1934-35 it waged 1,600 battles; carried on political work among the people; strengthened further the ideological and organizational unity of the partisans; rallied the revolutionary masses around the partisans.

The labour movement at home showed an upward swing under the influence of the armed struggle of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army.

In 1932 a red trade union movement was started in Heungnam. In the period 1930-35 1,062 strikes were called and strikers numbered 89,904. In the same period the struggle of peasants was at high tide under the leadership of the red peasants' unions in Kilchu, Myungchun, etc. And the peasant movement was also on the ascent in Kangwon and North Cholla Provinces.

FURTHER STRENGTHENING OF ANTI-JAPANESE ARMED STRUGGLE AND FATHERLAND RESTORATION ASSOCIATION

When the international anti-fascist popular front was on the upsurge, new strategical and tactical tasks were placed before the Korean people. At the Joint Conference of Military and Political Cadres held in Ryoyung-kou in Wangtsing-shien in the spring of 1935, Kim Il Sung put forth the task of forming an anti-Japanese national united front; extending the organization of the front to the homeland; swelling the armed ranks; expanding the partisan bases and operating large scale partisan warfare even within the homeland.

In accordance with the programatic speech of Kim Il Sung the Fatherland Restoration Association with Kim Il Sung as chairman was formed on the basis of the anti-Japanese mass organization which gained strength through the mass political work of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army. It was the first organization of the anti-Japanese national united front on the basis of worker-peasant alliance under the leadership of the staunch Communists.

The revolutionary 10-point program of the Fatherland Restoration Association put forth by Kim Il Sung is a fine example of the creative application of Marxism-Leninism to the Korean revolution in conformity with the actual situation.

The task of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution facing Korea was outlined in the program. Kim Il Sung said that the establishment of a people's government is the immediate goal of the Korean revolution. He expatiated on the unity of the broad patriotic forces under the leadership of the Communists and the working class, and formation of a revolutionary army, an explosive force of the Korean people.

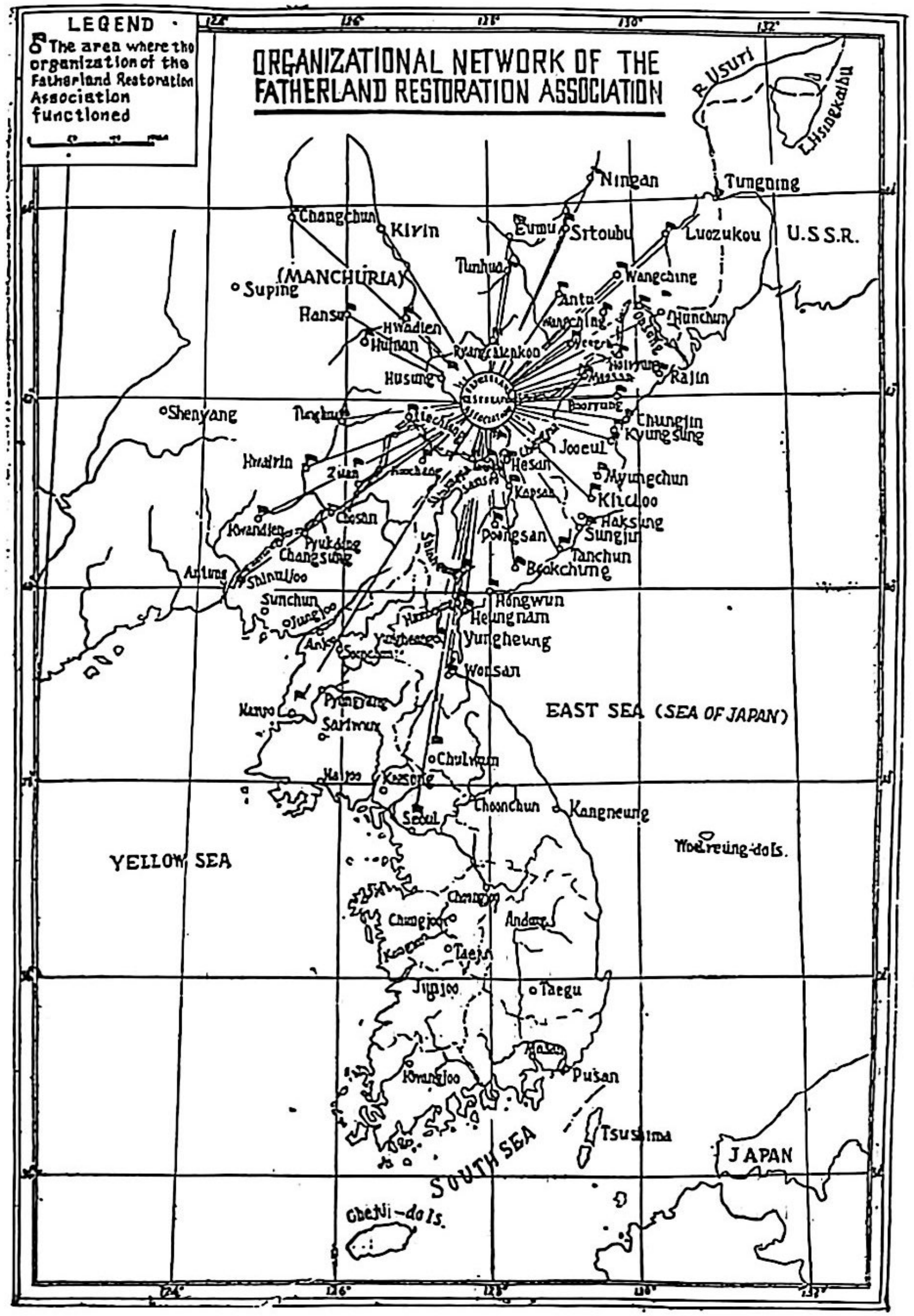
The program detailed the task of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution in the social, economic, cultural and educational fields.

Lastly, in the program were outlined the prospects of the national liberation struggle under the banner of proletarian internationalism and the foreign policy of the anticipated people's revolutionary government.

In this way, the program reflected the interests and needs of all social strata. Workers, peasants and even the national bourgeoisie, therefore, came forward to support the program. In the short time of several months the Fatherland Restoration Association came to have a membership of over 200,000. Its organizations were distributed in Northeast China, as well as in the various parts of Korea—Kapsan, Hoin, Shinpa, Moosan, Kyungsung, Shinuijoo, Pungsan, Shinheung, Tanchun, Hamheung, Heungnam, Wonsan, Sungjin, Cholwon, Seoul, etc.

Organizations of the Fatherland Restoration Association within the country received guidance from the Korean National Liberation Union formed by Pak Tal and Pak Keum Chul under the guidance of Kim Il Sung. These organizations conducted preparatory work for founding the Party in accordance with the program of the Fatherland Restoration Association.

In North and South Hamkyung Provinces in particular, the labour movement gained in scope under the direct leadership of the Korean National Liberation Union.


ORGANIZATIONAL NETWORK OF THE FATHERLAND RESTORATION ASSOCIATION
LEGEND
The area where the organization of the Fatherland Restoration Association functioned
R. Usuri
L. Hsingkaihu
Ningan
Tungning
Changchun
Kirin
Eumu
Sitoubu
Luozukou
U.S.S.R.
Tunhua
(MANCHURIA)
Supine
Wangching
Antu
Hunchun
Hansu
Hwadien
Huinan
Husung
Rajin
Shenyang
Chungjin
Kyungsung
Jooeul
Hwairin
Hesan
Myungchun
Kapsan
Kilchoo
Kwandien
Chosan
Haksung
Sungjin
Pyuksung
Changsung
Poongsan
Tanchun
Bookchung
Antung
Shinuijoo
Sunchun
Jungjoo
Hongwun
Heungnam
Yungheung
Anju
Wonsan
Pyongyang
Sariwon
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
Chulwon
Haijoo
Kaesong
Choonchun
Kangneung
Seoul
YELLOW SEA
Woolreung-do Is.
Andong
Taejon
Taegu
Kwangjoo
Pusan
Tsushima
JAPAN
SOUTH SEA
Chejoo-do Is.
124°
126°
128°
130°
132°

The peasants' struggle for freedom and land assumed a mass character, constituting a powerful wing of the revolution. The organizations of the Fatherland Restoration Association united the broad patriotic forces led by the working class. The firmer proletarian hegemony was ensured, the more solid the worker-peasant alliance became. At the same time the Association carried on the work of expanding the ranks of the partisans; strengthening the ties between the People's Revolutionary Army and the people; reinforcing the partisans with manpower and supplies; collecting military information; disturbing the enemys' rear.

The Fatherland Restoration Association published the monthly "March First", "Mountain Peasants", Kim Il Sung's writings and papers of the People's Revolutionary Army, which helped greatly in arousing the broad masses of the people to the revolutionary struggle and in educating them in the spirit of proletarian internationalism. The Association played a spectacular role in pushing forward the national liberation struggle. The core of the Association was formed of the staunch Communists headed by Kim Il Sung, who laid the ideological and organizational basis for founding a new Marxist-Leninist Party.

In the meantime, Kim Il Sung extended the armed struggle of the People's Revolutionary Army to the area of south Manchuria and to the northern borderline of Korea.

The establishment of the Changpei partisan base was of great significance. The People's Revolutionary Army led by Kim Il Sung set up its bases in the dense forests of Linjang, Mongjang, Antu, Changpei, etc. In July 1936, the People's Revolutionary Army made an encircling attack on the enemy in the Fusun-shien that was the centre of the enemy's "besieging operations". In August and September 1936, the main forces of the People's Revolutionary Army led by Kim Il Sung built secret barracks in Heishazukou of Changpei, which served as the stronghold of the Army.

Frightened by the advance of the People's Revolutionary Army, the Japanese army planned to carry out large scale "besieging operations". In October 1936, talks were held in Tomoon between the Korean Governor-General and the Commander of the Japanese army stationed in Manchuria.

They worked out a plan for a "punitive expedition" against the People's Revolutionary Army.

The enemy attempted to cut the ties between the People's Revolutionary Army and the people in Changpei by setting up so-called "collective villages". They made a large scale winter "expedition" in 1936. But the People's Revolutionary Army dealt a deadly blow at the enemy in Changpei, Touchuan, and Liming-shien in February 1937. The enemy lost about 1,000 manpower. Thus their "winter expedition" ended in failure.

After frustrating the enemy's "winter expedition", the People's Revolutionary Army prepared an attack on the border town, Bochunbo, the enemy's strategic point in Korea. Kim Il Sung drew up a detailed plan for operations on the basis of reconnaissance of the revolutionary fighters at home as well as of the armymen. On June 4, 1937, the People's Revolutionary Army under the command of Kim Il Sung made an enveloping attack on Bochunbo from three points. Bochunbo was liberated with one sweep.

The liberated townsfolk warmly received Kim Il Sung. The People's Revolutionary Army made public a proclamation and laid bare the massacring policy and another war plan of the Japanese imperialists. The proclamation made clear the mission of the heroic People's Revolutionary Army and its aim in attacking Bochunbo. And it appealed for the people to unite under the banner of the anti-Japanese united front, to do away with Japanese imperialism and to establish a genuine people's government.

The People's Revolutionary Army frustrated the pursuit of the enemy on Mt. Kushisan, and then returned in triumph to its base.

The victorious Bochunbo battle demonstrated the might of the People's Revolutionary Army and fortified the confidence of the Korean people in their ultimate liberation.

The Bochunbo battle broke the silence of the Korean people who were mercilessly oppressed under the cruel fascist rule of the Japanese imperialists.

In military and political respects it meant a devastating blow to the Japanese imperialists who regarded our homeland as their "stable rear".

The enemy who was defeated in Bochunbo and on Mt. Kushisan mobilized a reinforcement of one regiment in the Changpei district. But at the end of June 1937 the People's

Revolutionary Army showed unlimited resources in annihilating the enemy on the Chiensan Hill of Hsisandokou. Few of the enemy escaped.

ANTI-JAPANESE ARMED STRUGGLE IN 1937-45. FALL OF JAPANESE IMPERIALISM

From 1937, facing a new economic crisis, the Japanese militarists intensified their colonial plunder in Korea and Northeast China, and frenziedly schemed to fan the flames of aggressive war. On July 7, 1937, the Japanese militarists ventured on invasion of north China.

With the outbreak of the Sino-Japanese War, the Japanese militarists stepped up production of munitions; closed down medium and small individual enterprises, or merged them into the munition industry.

The Japanese imperialists used every possible means of plundering a maximum of provisions. Especially in the latter part of the 30's, they exploited the peasants cruelly by means of forced "delivery of grain", forced labour, etc.

The Japanese imperialists also enforced various evil laws such as "Temporary Law on Peace Preservation", and "Preliminary Arrest of Political Suspects." They aggrandized their army, police and spy rings and vigilance corps as an auxiliary organ of police. They wantonly arrested and put into jail the people or used them as cannon fodder. They enforced the "Order on Special Army Volunteers" and the "Drafting of Labour" in 1938; instituted the "System of Students Conscription" in 1943; the "System of General Conscription" in 1944; the "National Militia System" in 1945.

There were no traces of "cultural administration". Freedom and cultural activities were out of the question. Everyone was forced to change his name to a Japanese name. The Japanese way of life and "Loyalty to Japanese Imperial Court" were imposed upon the Koreans. Even the use of the vernacular language was forbidden.

The pro-Japanese and national traitors supported the fascist war and urged the people to go to the front.

In the anti-Japanese armed struggle led by Kim Il Sung the Korean people upheld their national honour and raised aloft the banner of freedom and independence. They grew in strength with each passing day.

The Korean People's Revolutionary Army, in close cooperation with the Chinese People's Revolutionary Army, waged large scale mobile operations under the banner of proletarian internationalism.

In the period 1937-39 the Korean People's Revolutionary Army waged battles, big and small, 3,900 times and inflicted a great loss upon the enemy. The notable battles are:

The battle in Chinwu-shien in October 1937; in Riudokou, Linjang, in April 1938; in Chajaing, Linjang, in May 1938; in Sintitzu, Linjang, in August 1938; in Changpei-shien, Chatzaishui, Chujatien, Panjaikou, Hsiudokou in Manchuria and Moosan in Korea from April to June 1939; the attack on the Japanese army train carrying two regiments in Dasaho and U-shien in August 1939. Noteworthy also are the big assault in Damarukou, Orung-shien and the battle in Hungcho, Heirung-shien in March 1940.

In these battles large numbers of the enemy were annihilated. Subsequently, the Korean People's Revolutionary Army under the command of Kim Il Sung used new tactics in accordance with the changing situation.

When the Pacific War broke out, the Japanese imperialists reinforced their army on the border between Manchuria and the Soviet Union in order to start their invasion on the Soviet Union. At the same time, they assumed a full scale offensive against the anti-Japanese partisans.

The situation was unfavorable for large scale mobile operations. The People's Revolutionary Army, therefore, resorted to small scale surprise attacks on the strategic points held by the Japanese forces.

Even the enemy admitted that the Korean People's Revolutionary Army was too strong to be conquered.

In connection with the anti-Japanese armed struggle led by Kim Il Sung, the anti-Japanese struggle at home was on the ascent.

Through the Korean National Liberation Union the Communists at home united themselves more closely around Kim Il Sung, and waged the struggle for the founding of a new Marxist-Leninist Party and uniting anti-Japanese patriotic forces. Along with this, mass movements were briskly carried on; for instance, the peasant movement in Kapsan, and the red trade union movement in the Heungnam district.

Toward the end of the Japanese imperialist rule the anti-Japanese movement gained in strength. In 1943 the Korean youth in the service of the Japanese marine corps at Chinhai attempted to turn over to the People's Revolutionary Army. The students of the Choryang Commercial School in Pusan, stimulated by the anti-Japanese armed struggle led by Kim Il Sung, prepared an armed uprising. Workers who were engaged in reclamation in Manpo called strikes in 1943. The steel workers called strikes in Chungjin in 1944.

Encouraged by the anti-Japanese armed struggle, the fine sons and daughters of the Koreans living in China took part in the armed struggle and administered a crushing blow to the enemy.

The staunch Communists headed by Kim Il Sung were a main force in the Korean revolution. They waged the anti-Japanese armed struggle and at the same time made ideological and organizational preparations for founding a Marxist-Leninist Party. On the contrary, the sectarian elements stuck to their practice of disrupting the revolutionary ranks within the country. And the sectarian, anti-revolutionary elements including Choi Chang Ik did their best in China to impair the unity of Korean Communists and muster the sectarian forces around themselves. Thus they obstructed the founding of a united Party, and did much harm to the revolutionary movement of the Korean people.

The Japanese imperialists schemed in vain to prolong the war even after the fascist Germany was defeated by the Soviet Union. The cinders of war still smouldered in the East and peace was still being trampled underfoot. On August 9, 1945, the Soviet Union declared war against Japan. The Korean People's Revolutionary Army, following the Soviet Army, participated in the war against Japan. Within a few days after the Soviet Army launched their operations, the boasted Japanese crack units in Manchuria were annihilated. Consequently, Korea and Northeast China, which the Japanese imperialists regarded as their "stable rear", were liberated. On August 15, 1945 the Japanese imperialists surrendered unconditionally. Thus the age-long cherished desire of the Korean people—the national liberation—was realized.

AFTER LIBERATION

NORTHERN PART OF THE REPUBLIC, THE DEMOCRATIC BASE

LIBERATION OF KOREA BY THE GREAT SOVIET ARMY AND ESTABLISHMENT OF THE REVOLUTIONARY DEMOCRATIC BASE

On August 15, 1945 the Korean people were liberated by the great Soviet Army from the yoke of the Japanese colonial rule which lasted for 36 years.

The liberation of Korea by the great Soviet Army ushered in a new era in the historic development of the Korean people.

Amidst the joy and excitement of liberation the Korean people organized the people's committees in all districts, as a people's power established at the initiative of the people, on the strength of the united democratic national front which rallied broad anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic forces of all social strata with the working class in the van.

Giving support to the sweeping political enthusiasm of the Korean people for establishing a democratic independent state, the Soviet Army stationed in North Korea ensured the free activities of the Korean people.

Under such favourable circumstances the liberated Korean people set about forming a revolutionary Party, while rallying democratic forces and establishing a united people's power.

Kim Il Sung and his comrades-in arms defeated the Japanese imperialist army side by side with the Soviet Army and returned in triumph to the homeland in the difficult period when all the tasks had to be carried out simultaneously. Their leading activities were a vital factor for the development of the Korean revolution.

However, the U.S. forces which landed in South Korea on September 8, 1945 took over the Japanese imperialist ruling system and set up the military government.

While forcibly dissolving the people's committees and suppressing the democratic forces, the U.S. army attempted to turn South Korea into their colony and military base, by piecing together the reactionary forces—landlords, compradors, pro-Japanese and pro-American elements and national traitors who were extremely weakened after the defeat of Japanese imperialists.

The Korean people were faced with enormous obstacles in building a democratic independent state. The course of the Korean revolution became involved and arduous.

Kim Il Sung had already built a firm organizational and ideological basis for organizing a Marxist-Leninist Party in the course of the 15-year struggle for national liberation against the Japanese imperialists. Then he devoted himself to uniting the forces of the revolutionary working class, and put forward the political and organizational lines of a new revolutionary Party.

After analysing scientifically the prevailing situation, Kim Il Sung presented a political line that the Korean revolution assume an anti-imperialist, anti-feudal people's democratic character, therefore the Japanese remnant forces and fascist agents should be liquidated; with the formation of a broad national front a democratic people's republic founded and a new people's system instituted.

Since, under the circumstances, the revolution could not be carried out simultaneously in North and South Korea, Kim Il Sung laid down measures for creating, under the favourable conditions provided by the Soviet Army, a powerful revolutionary democratic base in North Korea which should serve as the basis for unifying our homeland.

In view of the complicated situation created by the occupation of the U.S. imperialist aggressive forces in South Korea, the building of a democratic base in North Korea was the most correct line of implementing successfully the Korean revolution.

This constituted an important part of the strategy in the Korean revolution.

At the same time Kim Il Sung proposed that the Party be organized as a Marxist-Leninist Party of a new type embodying Leninist organizational principles and standards of Party life and its central organ be placed in North Korea.

It was the only correct line for expanding and strengthening the Party and implementing the revolutionary task that the central organ of the Party should be located in North Korea where the Soviet Army was stationed, not in South Korea where the American imperialists were suppressing the democratic forces.

Adhering to this line, the staunch Communists centred around Comrade Kim Il Sung waged a staunch struggle for founding a Party, surmounting all difficulties.

After liberation, the factionists who had exerted an extremely evil influence on the Korean labour movement by their sectarian action again came out openly in opposition to the founding of a genuine Marxist-Leninist Party. This created the most difficult condition.

In particular, the Pak Hun Yung-Li Seung Yup clique, who were U.S. imperialists' spies and heinous factionists, and some other sectarian elements who had belonged to the "ML Group" tried to obstruct the work of founding the Party by every possible means with the hope of attaining their sectarian aim.

The local separatists and self-glorifying elements in collusion with the afore-mentioned factionists schemed to maintain local Party organizations as isolated ones.

Genuine Communists led by Kim Il Sung, however, relying on the progressive workers and toiling masses, formed in October 1945 the North Korean Organizing Committee of the Communist Party of Korea in North Korea, frustrating the vicious attempts of all the anti-Party factionists to split the Party. Thereafter our Party began to develop as a sound, united Marxist-Leninist Party.

The Korean people who embarked upon the building of a democratic base under the guidance of the Party did their utmost to establish the people's power.

All people's committees, the local self-administrative organs established by their own hands, were put under a unified system.

Smashing the overt opposition of feudal landlords, comprador capitalists, pro-Japanese and pro-American elements and national traitors, the people's committees of all levels further promoted their organizational and bussiness-like functions. They were reorganized by the decision of the Joint Conference of the North Korean Five Provincial People's Committees, held in October 1945 in Pyongyang.

In November of the same year 10 administrative bureaus (Industry, Traffic, Agriculture and Forestry, Commerce, Finance, Communications, Education, Public Health, Jurisdiction and Public Security) were set up to administer systematically five provinces in North Korea.

These administrative bureaus administered the different sections of the national economy and state and social life until a united central organ was set up in North Korea.

At the time when the Korean people were waging the struggle for establishing a united central power, the decision on the Korean question was issued at the Moscow Conference of the Three Foreign Ministers held in December 1945.

The decision provided for establishing a democratic provisional government to develop Korea into a democratic independent state.

"It is a correct and fair decision to realize in the most favorable terms the aspiration and cherished desire of the Korean people in the interests of the Korean people following the August 15 Liberation and to pave the way for the free development of the Korean people on the basis of their historic tradition of the splendid anti-Japanese liberation struggle in the period of the Japanese colonial domination and to allow imperialists' aggression in no case." (Selected Works of Kim Il Sung, Vol. 1, p. 164)

Therefore, the various democratic parties and social organizations with the Communist Party in the van and democratic personages expressed their unanimous support for the decision of the Moscow Foreign Ministers' Conference.

The American imperialist invaders who occupied South Korea distorted the correct decision of the Moscow Three Foreign Ministers' Conference, saying that the decision meant only "trusteeship."

In their all-out efforts to oppose the decision of the Three Foreign Ministers' Conference the American imperialists aided and abetted landlords, compradors, pro-Japanese and pro-American elements and national traitors who did not want the unification and independence of the fatherland.

Thus antagonism between the democratic and reactionary forces following the announcement of the decision of the Three Foreign Ministers' Conference became more acute.

In order to promote our revolution and attain the democratic independence of the fatherland, the Korean people were

determined to put into effect the decision of the Three Foreign Ministers' Conference, if only in the northern part of the Republic.

This proved once again the justness of the struggle of the Korean people for attaining the unification and independence and democratization of the fatherland by creating a democratic base for the Korean revolution.

The situation existing at that time made it more imperative to establish a democratic base in the northern part of the Republic.

The further strengthening and development of the people's power was of great importance, since great revolutionary tasks including various democratic reforms arose before the people's power.

Therefore, the Korean Communist Party set forth an important task, the task of organizing a united central political organ in the northern part of the country for promoting the democratic unification and independence of the fatherland.

The enlarged consultative conference of representatives of the Communist Party and various democratic parties and social organizations and the people's committees which was convened on February 8, 1946, organized the North Korean Provisional People's Committee headed by Kim Il Sung.

"Thus, the political power, which our people yearned after for so long and which was the primary target of the outstanding patriots of our country, who struggled for freedom and independence of the fatherland against the Japanese imperialist colonial rule for scores of years, took shape in the northern half." (Kim Il Sung)

The North Korean Provisional People's Committee, a people's power based upon a united democratic national front which rallied the broad anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic forces of the country relying on the worker-peasant alliance led by the working class, performed the function of the people's democratic dictatorship.

The revolutionary character of this people's power and its fundamental tasks were clearly manifested in the immediate 11-point Program that the North Korean Provisional People's Committee proclaimed and in the 20-point Programme laid down by Kim Il Sung.

The 20-point Programme was to serve as the programme of the Korean Democratic Provisional Government to be formed, on the basis of the spirit of the decision of the Moscow Foreign Ministers' Conference on the Korean question.

In other words, it stipulated that the Japanese imperialist remnants should be done away with, the struggle be waged against the Japanese reactionary forces and true freedom and right be ensured for the people.

Along with this, it clarified the tasks of realizing the long-cherished desire of the Korean people by effecting democratic reforms.

By establishing the revolutionary political power which reflected their genuine interests, the Korean people came to have a strong weapon capable of carrying out the Korean revolution.

But, it was only a starting-point of the revolution. In order to create a democratic base in the northern half, various democratic reforms had to be enforced by the people's power.

Without the enforcement of the revolutionary democratic reforms for democratizing the country, we could not expect to eliminate the remnants of the century-old feudalism, rehabilitate and develop industry and agriculture destroyed by the Japanese imperialists, and to raise the living standard of the broad toiling masses who were on the verge of starvation.

Through the democratic reforms, the old colonial, feudal economic system set up by the Japanese imperialist monopolies could be liquidated, a new people's democratic economic foundation laid, and social and cultural life reformed along democratic lines.

Reflecting the age-old desire of our country for economic reform, the Communist Party and the people's power carried out the land reform as the first step in the democratic reforms.

Since the old agricultural productive relations based upon the feudal landownership had been the underlying cause of the stagnation of our country and had put the peasants under the yoke of exploitation and oppression, the land reform was the prime task for developing Korea democratically.

In accordance with the earnest desire of the peasants, the North Korean Provisional People's Committee issued on March 5, 1946, the Law on the Land Reform in North Korea.

The land reform was carried out on the principle that land belonged to the Japanese imperialists, national traitors, Korean landlords who possessed over 5 jungbo, (one jungbo is 2.45 acres), land owned by rentier, by churches, temples and other religious organizations which possessed more than 5 jungbo should be confiscated without compensation and the confiscated land distributed to the tillers.

Under the correct guidance of the Korean Communist Party the land reform was crowned with victory within only one month after the proclamation of the law. As a result of the land reform, over one million jungbo of arable land was confiscated, of which over 980,000 jungbo was distributed without compensation to over 724,000 landless or land-poor peasants.

Thus, the feudal tenancy system was forever eliminated in North Korea and the material foundation of landlords which constituted the mainstay of reactionary elements completely collapsed.

Following the land reform the North Korean Provisional People's Committee proclaimed on June 24, 1946 the Labour Law on Workers and Office Employees in North Korea.

The labour law prescribed the enforcement of an 8-hour day, prohibition of labour of children under 14 years of age, and special protection and social insurence for women and juvenile workers. And it provided for equal pay for equal work.

The enforcement of the labour law emancipated the workers and office employees from the system of cruel colonial exploitation.

On July 30, 1946 the North Korean Provisional People's Committee enforced the Law on Equality of Sex to meet the century-old desire for the emancipation of women.

The enforcement of the Law on Equality of Sex emancipated women from the colonial and feudal suppression. Thus they could for the first time enjoy the right to take part in political, economic and cultural activities on a par with men.

The people's power under the leadership of the Communist Party issued on August 10, 1946 the Law on the Nationalization of Industry, Railways, Transport, Communications and Banks.

By this law, all factories, enterprises, mines, power stations, railways, transport, communications, banks, commerce and cultural organs owned by the Japanese imperialists and their agents were confiscated without compensation and nationalized.

As a result of the nationalization of industry the economic base of the Japanese imperialists and pro-Japanese elements was completely done away with. Thus the state-owned sector became predominant in our national economy.

At the same time, for the welfare of the people reforms were put into effect in the field of education, culture, public health and judicial system by the people's power.

Such democratic reforms were carried out amidst acute class struggle. In conspiracy with the American imperialists entrenched in South Korea and the reactionary elements under their wings the former exploiting class staged subversive acts. The entire working people headed by the working class under the leadership of the Communist Party and the people's power smashed the intrigues of the reactionary elements and won an expected victory.

With the enforcement of the various democratic reforms, in the northern part of our Republic a people's democratic system was established; a democratic base as a groundwork for the unification of the country was created; and material conditions were provided for the building of the foundation of socialism.

At the same time, through the enforcement of the democratic reforms and the acute class struggle against the reactionay classes, the class-consciousness of the workers and peasants as well as their ideological level was raised and the political unity of the entire working people strengthened.

On the basis of the experiences accumulated, thanks to the leadership of the Communist Party, the Korean people entered a new stage of struggle to push forward the revolutionary movement. However, in the southern part under the U.S. occupation, things were quite different.

The American imperialists deliberately frustrated the work of the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S. Commission which was convened in March 1946 in accordance with the decision of the Moscow Foreign Ministers' Conference, causing it to adjourn indefinitely.

And they intensified the suppression of the democratic forces, especially the Communist Party in their attempt to drive the Party underground and isolate the Party from the masses in South Korea.

In view of the real state of affairs, the urgent tasks confronting the Party and people were, first of all, to further rally the working people whose nucleus is the working class, while strengthening firmly the revolutionary forces in order to reinforce still further a democratic base in the northern part of our country, free the South Korean people and establish a unified independent state.

At the same time it was necessary to take measures for ensuring the legal activity of the Party by all means under the situation in which the American imperialists tried desperately to dissolve the Communist Party.

Through the enforcement of the democratic reforms in North Korea, the interests of workers, peasants and intellectuals had been brought together closer, the leading position of the working class was strengthened and the worker-peasant alliance further fortified.

Under such conditions, it was an unconditional requirement to unite the seperate parties of the working people into a single Party.

Therefore, in order to unite the revolutionary forces and ensure the legal activity of the Party in South Korea, our Party took measures to found the Workers' Party—a mass political Party—by merging the working people's parties which had similar political programme and rules.

Thus, on August 28, 1946 the Communist Party and the New Democratic Party merged into a mass political Party, which was named the North Korean Workers' Party as the Marxist-Leninist Party.

It was an extremely important guarantee for the successful carrying out of the Korean revolution.

THE STRUGGLE FOR REHABILITATING AND DEVELOPING THE NATIONAL ECONOMY AND STRENGTHENING THE DEMOCRATIC BASE

As a result of the enforcement of the democratic reforms in the northern part of our Republic, a new socialist economic sector was created. The change of class relations raised the essential and historical task of setting up the super-structure in conformity with a new economic base in the period of transition to socialism.

Under the correct leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea, the Korean people set up their political power which was to exercise the function of the proletarian dictatorship, and then began to further democratize and consolidate legally the people's power.

Towards the end of 1946 and early in 1947, in the northern half, elections to the people's committees of province, city, county, sub-county and ri were held for the first time in our history on the principle of universal, equal and direct suffrage by secret ballot.

Thanks to the efforts by the Workers' Party and the concerted action of the United Democratic National Front, the first democratic elections scored a splendid victory.

In the elections to the people's committees of province, city and county, 99.6 per cent of the total electors participated in the elections. 97 per cent of them in the provincial people's committees, 95.4 per cent in the city people's committees and 96.9 per cent in the county people's committees voted for the candidates recommended by the United Democratic National Front.

Following the democratic elections, the Conference of Representatives of the People's Committee of Province, City and County which was held on February 17, 1947 formed the North Korean People's Assembly, the highest legislative body.

On February 21, 1947, the First Session of the North Korean People's Assembly organized the North Korean People's Committee headed by Kim Il Sung.

"Thus, the North Korean People's Committee as a more strengthened and developed political organ of the people's democratic power, waged a more tenacious struggle for fulfilling our revolutionary tasks throughout Korea, and at the same time set out to implement the tasks for a gradual transition to socialism, further extending and consolidating the gains of democratic reforms and developing in a planned way the national economy of North Korea." (Kim Il Sung)

The Korean people under the leadership of the Party waged the struggle for strengthening the democratic base politically and economically.

The Conference of Representatives of the People's Committees of Province, City and County in North Korea which was held on February 19, 1947 discussed and adopted the national economic plan for 1947 on the basis of the report made by Kim Il Sung.

The implementation of the national economic plan accorded not only with the requirement of the law-governed development of the planned national economy but also was a vital factor for raising the people's living standards and expanding and strengthening the socialist sectors in the national economy (state and cooperative economy).

However, many difficulties arose in the course of implementing the national economic plan. The extreme colonial onesidedness was characteristic of our industry under the Japanese imperialist rule. Furthermore, the Japanese imperialists caused great damage to our national economy at the time of their defeat.

The split of our country into two parts—North and South—made it impossible for us to turn to account the resources and particularly the rich food supply obtainable from South Korea for our economic construction. Besides, we were short of experienced technicians and skilled workers.

These circumstances made it imperative to restore the ravages on industries and build new industrial plants and factories, while paying particular attention to increased production of food.

It was thanks to the correct guidance of the Workers' Party and the selfless aid given us by the Soviet people that the entire working masses of our country could successfully clear away all the snags appearing in their way, taking advantage of the conditions in which the state-owned industry held the leading place in the national economy (90 per cent of the industry was state-owned) and the political power was in the hands of the people led by the working class.

The Party started with the mapping out of the National Economic Plan for 1947 which envisaged the reconstruction of the damaged factories and plants and a more than two-fold increase in the industrial output compared with that in 1946. It was the first national economic plan ever carried out in our country.

The Party put up the slogan "For a Successful Fulfilment of the National Economic Plan for 1947!" calling the masses to the implementation of the Plan.

To carry out the National Economic Plan with honours, the working people of our country developed a strained emulation for increased production in all the factories and plants, mines, and coal mines, and in towns and villages.

The Party relied on the masses in pushing forward economic construction, smashing all crank elements who quailed before the difficulties and doubted the economic policy of the Party, openly saying that the carrying out of the plan was "impossible." As a result, the first national economic plan was overfulfilled with the patriotic fervour of the entire working people.

The Party and the people's power drew up another plan, the National Economic Plan for 1948, following the successful fulfilment of the 1947 Plan. The 1948 Plan not only provided for a restoration of the destroyed factories but a further expansion of factory equipment and an increase in food production.

The entire working people with the members of the Workers' Party in the lead devoted themselves, body and soul, to the fulfilment of the second national economic plan. Thus, the 1948 Plan was also exceeded.

In carrying out successfully the two national economic plans under the leadership of the Party and Government, the Korean people fortified still more the democratic base and improved their living standards.

In February 1948 the Party and Government founded the Korean People's Army, with a view to defending the gains of the people's democratic revolution in our country and ensuring the unification, independence and democratization of the fatherland.

Organized with the anti-Japanese partisans led by Comrade Kim Il Sung as the central force, the Korean People's Army is the people's revolutionary armed forces in the full sense of the word. It inherited the revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese partisan units.

When it was formed, the People's Army drew on the rich revolutionary experience and the top-class military science of the Soviet Army, and proceeded from the organizational principles on which the Soviet Army is formed. The founding of the People's Army and its strengthening and development are of extremely great importance for the advance of the Korean revolution. It was the formation and strengthening in good time of the People's Army by the Party and Government that enabled the Korean people to win the sweeping victory in the Fatherland Liberation War.

THE FOUNDING OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

Under the guidance of the Workers' Party of Korea the Korean people waged an unflagging struggle for the implementation of the decision taken at the Moscow Conference of the Three Foreign Ministers.

But the U.S. imperialists wrecked all the work of the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S. Commission which was called twice, and openly came out with a plot to hammer out a separate puppet government in South Korea. Thus, the possibility of establishing a democratic provisional government in accordance with the decision of the Moscow Conference of the Three Foreign Ministers was excluded.

Faced with such situation, the Party insisted that the foreign forces should be withdrawn simultaneously from North and South Korea and the issue of unifying Korea should be settled by the Korean people themselves with no intervention from without, and organized and unfolded a nation-wide struggle against the insidious attempts of the American imperialists to perpetuate the division of our country by setting up a reactionary separate government in South Korea.

In February 1948, the Workers' Party and people's power put the draft Provisional Constitution of Korea before the entire people for discussion, and insisted that all-Korea elections to a supreme legislative body be held on the basis of universal, direct and equal suffrage by secret ballot.

The Workers' Party of Korea adopted the tactic of total boycott against the separate elections planned by the U.S. imperialists and the reactionary forces in South Korea.

In order to break the national deadlock, the democratic political parties and social organizations of North Korea proposed on March 25, 1948 to the South Korean political parties and social organizations to hold a joint North and South conference which would discuss measures for saving the country against the planned separate elections.

Thus, the Joint Conference of Representatives of North and

South Korean Political Parties and Social Organizations was opened in Pyongyang on April 20, 1948.

The Conference was attended by representatives of 56 political parties and social organizations.

The Conference declared that it was humbuggery and deception to hold elections under the condition of open intervention by foreign countries.

The participants of the Conference resolved to boycott the traitorous separate elections in South Korea, making it clear that the Korean people would on no account recognize a government set up through the elections. Thus, a nation-wide struggle spread against the South Korean separate elections, in conformity with the decision of the Joint Conference.

Nevertheless, the U.S. imperialists had their own way in staging the "election farce" in collusion with the so-called "U.N. Commission on Korea," by intimidation and police terror. This is how the puppet Syngman Rhee regime with a gang of landlords, comprador capitalists, pro-Japanese and pro-American elements and traitors, was set up. After the concoction of the puppet Syngman Rhee regime, the colonial enslavement policy of the U.S. imperialists toward Korea assumed a more vicious nature and the situation in our country ever more aggravated.

Under the circumstances prevailing, the Workers' Party set forth measures to save the country from being split: the Party proposed to found the Democratic People's Republic of Korea which would represent the will of the entire Korean people. The consultative conference of leaders from the political parties and social organizations of North and South Korea, held on June 29, 1948, adopted a resolution, on the suggestion of the Workers' Party, to hold general elections throughout the country on August 25, 1948, so as to set up a supreme legislative body. The August 25 general elections were a brilliant victory for the Korean people, who took an active part in the elections under the guidance of the Workers' Party. In the northern half of the country 99.97 per cent of the electorate went to the polls, and in South Korea 77.52 per cent of voters exercised their rights to poll in defiance of the cruel suppression by the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique. Thus, 572 deputies were elected to the Supreme People's Assembly.

The First Session of the Supreme People's Assembly held in Pyongyang in September 1948 proclaimed our country the Democratic People's Republic of Korea and adopted the Constitution. At the session the Government of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea was formed with Kim Il Sung as its head. This meant that the Korean people came to have a more complete, firm and advanced people's democratic sovereign power. The founding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea marked a new, epoch-making turn in the struggle of the Korean people for the unification and independence of the country and its democratic development, and opened up a new page in the development of Korean history. The Democratic People's Republic of Korea has become the banner of freedom and independence for the Korean people.

Following the proclamation of our country as a Democratic People's Republic, the Soviet Government extended recognition before any of other states did so and, at the request of the D.P.R.K. Supreme People's Assembly, withdrew all its troops from Korea by the end of 1948.

The People's Democracies followed the Soviet Union in establishing friendly diplomatic relations with our country on an equal footing.

Thus, the Democratic People's Republic of Korea made its debut on the international arena as a full-fledged member of the great community of the socialist camp.

The U.S. imperialists, however, unwilling to look squarely at the indisputable facts, further intensified their aggressive policy and continued to station their forces on the South Korean territory.

Such being the case, the people in the northern half of the country launched a struggle, under the leadership of the Workers' Party, for consolidating further the political, economic and cultural foundations of the Republic.

They drew up the two-year national economic plan for 1949-1950 and fulfilled it. The two-year plan had not only envisaged further economic progress and improvement of the living standards of the people in the North. Measures were outlined for a rapid restoration of the ruined economy of South Korea in the event of the country's unification.

The Korean-Soviet agreement on economic and cultural cooperation concluded in March 1949 was of great significance for the successful fulfilment of the two-year national economic plan.

In accordance with the agreement, the Korean people received enormous material and technical aid from the fraternal Soviet people. Encouraged by the disinterested assistance of the Soviet Union, the working people of our country unfolded an energetic labour struggle, foiling every under-handed subversive attempt of the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique to sap the economic construction of our working people, who maintained high revolutionary vigilance.

As a result, the assignments for 1949, the first year of the two-year plan, were exceeded by 2.8 per cent. The people in the northern half of the country registered accomplishments by their unyielding struggle for an overfulfilment of the 1950 plan.

In South Korea under the occupation of the U.S. imperialists, the state of affairs was quite different. The U.S. imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rhee clique were busy preparing openly for an aggressive war with the object of occupying the northern half of our country, while intensifying the exploitation and oppression of the South Korean people. The South Korean people carried on their struggle against the U.S. imperialists and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique.

On the strength of the growing patriotic forces, the United Democratic Fatherland Front was formed in June 1949 with an affiliation of 72 political parties and social organizations of North and South Korea. The Fatherland Front published a declaration on peaceful unification calling for the withdrawal of U.S. forces from South Korea and the establishment of a united government through all-Korea elections. The declaration enjoyed the full support of the people of North and South Korea, who desired eagerly the peaceful unification of the country.

But the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique rejected the proposals set forth in the declaration and kept on with the preparations for an aggressive war still more overtly.

Under such conditions, in June 1950 the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly and the United Democratic Fatherland Front proposed to hold negotiations with the South Korean authorities on ways and means of easing tension existing between the North and the South and of promoting the peaceful unification. The traitorous Syngman Rhee clique, however, rejected this reasonable proposal on the instruction of the U.S. imperialists, and answered it by war against the North, which they had long prepared for.

START OF THE FATHERLAND LIBERATION WAR AND LIBERATION OF MOST PART OF THE SOUTHERN PART OF THE COUNTRY

On June 25, 1950, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique, at the instigation of the U.S. imperialists, launched a general attack by surprise upon the territory north of the 38th parallel.

In unleashing the aggressive war the U.S. imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rhee clique aimed at turning our country into a permanent colony and reducing our people to the status of slaves. Their sinister design did not end there. They were reckless enough to scheme in secret an invasion upon the Soviet Union and China.

The sudden armed invasion by the U.S. imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rhee clique put our country in a critical situation. The Korean people were thus interrupted in their peaceful construction and drawn into the whirlpool of the righteous Fatherland Liberation War against the U.S. imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rhee clique.

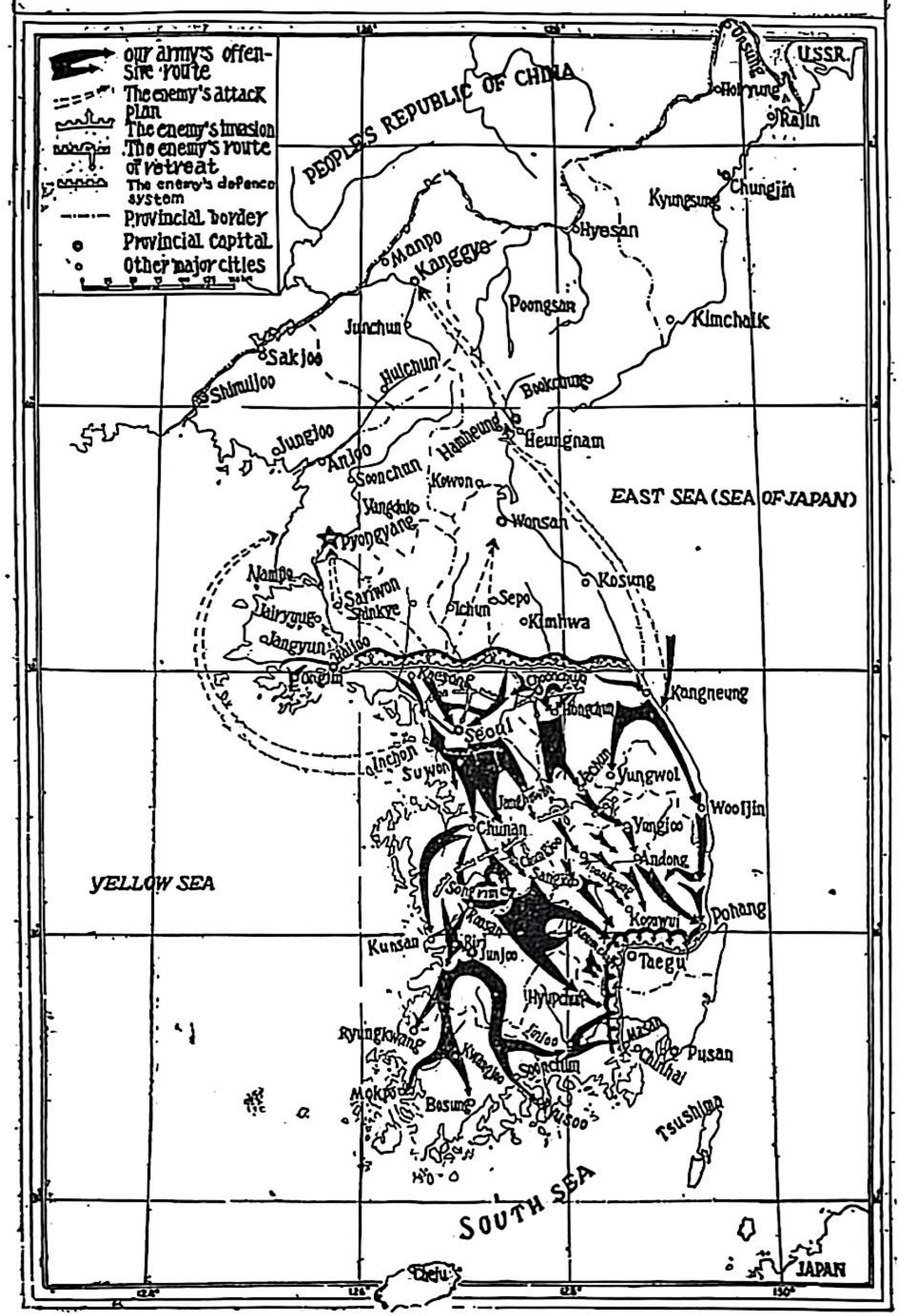
On June 26, 1950, the next day after the beginning of the armed invasion by the enemies upon our territory, Comrade Kim Il Sung made a historic speech over radio calling upon the entire Korean people to rise up for victory in the war. In his speech, Comrade Kim Il Sung appealed to all the people to secure the rear and give active support to the front to win victory in the war, and men of the People's Army on the front to crush the enemies.

Upholding the call of the Workers' Party and the Government of the Republic, the Korean people rose up for victory in the war. Their slogan was "All for Victory in the War." In a short space of time over-all reorganization of the state affairs and national economy was carried out on a wartime footing.

Hundreds of thousands of young men and women volunteered to go to the front; all the people came out with an offer to render assistance to the front.

Under the orders to open counterattack on the puppet Syngman Rhee's army, the People's Army, founded and trained by the Workers' Party of Korea, shattered the attack of the enemies which crossed the 38th parallel and invaded the North. The coun-

MAP OF OPERATIONS IN THE FATHERLAND LIBERATION WAR IN ITS FIRST STAGE (1950—1953)


our army's offensive route
The enemy's attack plan
The enemy's invasion
The enemy's route of retreat
The enemy's defence system
Provincial border
Provincial capital
Other major cities
PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA
U.S.S.R.
Hoiryung
Rajin
Chungjin
Kyungsung
Hyesan
Manpo
Kanggye
Poongsan
Kimchaik
Junchun
Sakjoo
Shinuijoo
Hulchun
Bookchung
Hamheung
Heungnam
Jungjoo
Anjoo
Soonchun
Kowon
Yangdok
Pyongyang
Wonsan
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
Nampo
Sariwon
Sinkye
Ichun
Sepo
Kimhwa
Kosung
Jairyung
Jangyun
Haijoo
Ongjin
Kaesong
Seoul
Hongchun
Kangneung
Inchon
Suwon
Yungwol
Woolijin
Chunan
Yungjoo
Andong
YELLOW SEA
Sangju
Kimchun
Pohang
Kunsan
Iri
Junjoo
Taegu
Hyupchun
Kyungkwang
Jinjoo
Masan
Pusan
Chinhai
Mokpo
Soonchun
Yusoo
Bosung
Tsushima
SOUTH SEA
Chejo
JAPAN
124°
126°
128°
130°

ter-attack thus began. Units of the People's Army advanced south in hot chase of the flying enemies.

Having aided and abetted the Syngman Rhee clique in igniting the fire of war, the U.S. imperialists openly threw their own forces into the Korean front on the very next day after the start of the war.

On June 26, 1950, U.S. planes began to appear over the front and on June 27, President Truman of the United States officially ordered MacArthur to rush U.S. planes and war-ships to Korea.

This meant that the Korean people were confronted from the very first day of the war with the task of dealing with the aggressive U.S. forces and the puppet Syngman Rhee clique.

Units of the heroic Korean People's Army liberated Seoul, the enemy's citadel, in a matter of three days after starting their counterattack.

The liberation of Seoul by the Korean People's Army proved that in the first stage of the war all the initiative on the front-line had been seized by the Korean People's Army, convincing the Korean people still firmly of their final victory. More, it was striking proof of the failure of the invasion upon the northern half of the Republic by the Syngman Rhee puppet army and its total collapse.

Inspired with fresh courage over the victory they had won in the outset of the war, units of the Korean People's Army continued their triumphant march southwards. Panic-stricken, the U.S. imperialists threw their ground forces into the Korean front on June 30.

Units of the Korean People's Army first encountered U.S. ground forces near Osan, south of Suwon. The aggressive U.S. forces, which had been boasting of "technical superiority," sustained one defeat after another.

With deep penetrations made in their front-lines by our forces, the enemies were at last driven into the small area on the south side of the Rakdong river. More than 90 per cent of the South Korean territory and over 92 per cent of its population were liberated from the yoke of the rule of the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee regime. The U.S. imperialists were on the brink of being driven out of Korea.

During the first two months of the war, the enemies sustained a heavy loss. The casualties suffered by the U.S. and ROK ground forces were more than 60,000.

Even under the difficult conditions of the wartime, the Workers' Party of Korea restored local people's governments, Party organs and social organizations in the liberated areas of South Korea, and, relying upon them, carried out democratic reforms.

Besides, elections to the people's committees of county, subcounty and ri (township) levels were held in the liberated areas, with a participation of 97 to 98 per cent of the voters. Land reform was carried out amidst the enthusiasm of the liberated peasants in South Korea. As a result, 1,267,800-odd peasant households received free of charge over 570,000 hectares of land. Along with this, the labour law was put in force in those areas.

All these correct measures taken by the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic led the South Korean people to display patriotic devotion, to whom the correctness of the policies of the Party and Government was brought home.

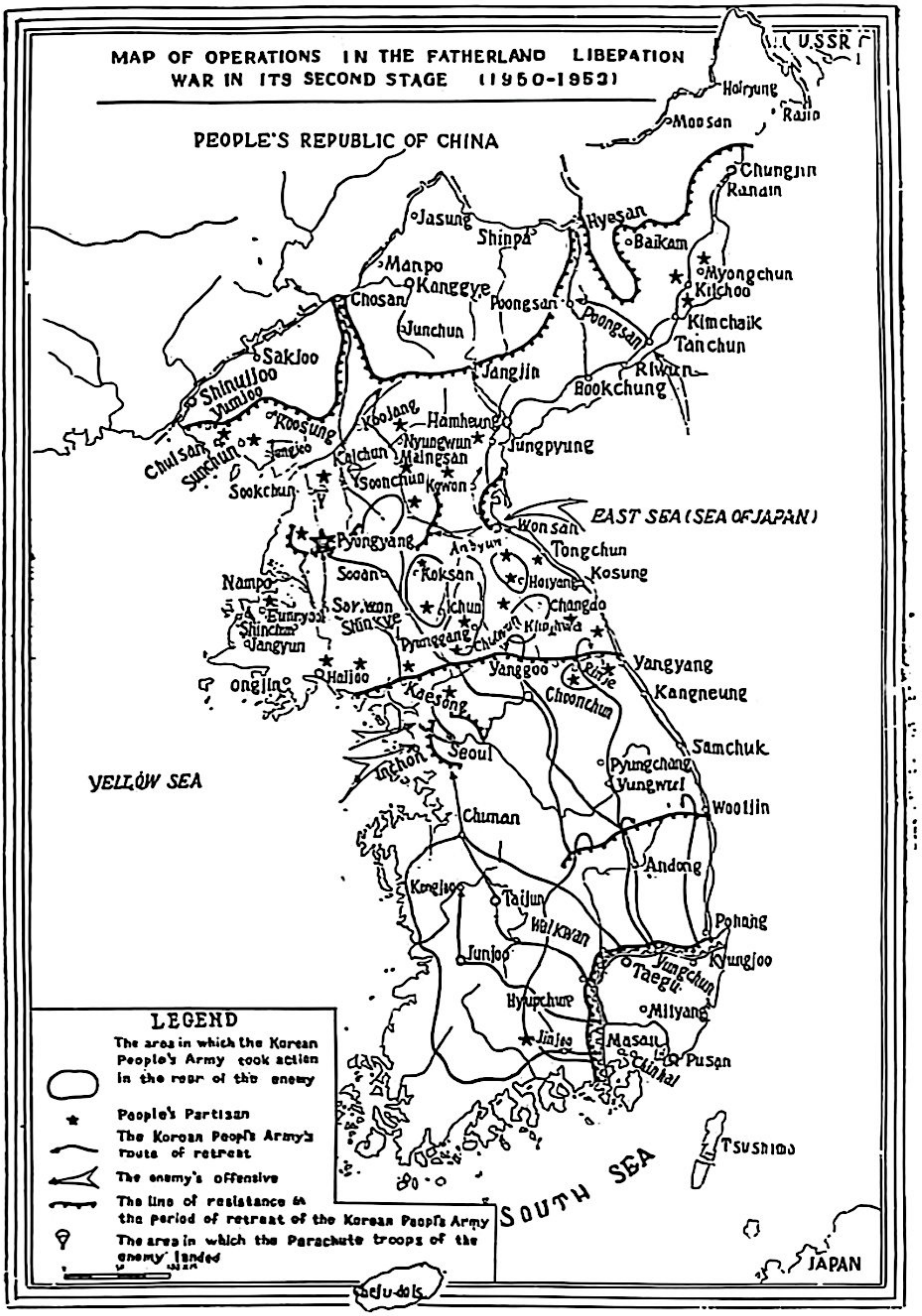
A brilliant victory was won by the Korean people in the first stage of the war. But this did not mean that the course of the war would be smooth and even.

TEMPORARY STRATEGIC RETREAT OF THE PEOPLE'S ARMY

Having sustained one defeat after another at the hands of the Korean people and their powerful armed forces, the U.S. imperialists tried frantically to recover their lost prestige by carrying through their aggressive, wild design for seizing Korea.

And so, they threw a large military force into the Korean front. The U.S. imperialist aggressors mobilized the bulk of their army, navy and air forces, and made a large-scale landing operation at Inchun on September 15-16, 1950. The aim of U.S. aggressors was to separate the main force of the People's Army, which was at the time in South Korea, from the rear. They fancied that they would be able to conquer easily the northern half of our country, if once the main force of the People's Army were besieged and wiped out.

But, our People's Army waged stout defensive battles, delivering heavy blows to the enemy forces landing at Inchun. However the numerically preponderant enemies finally managed to land, and then advanced on Seoul.


MAP OF OPERATIONS IN THE FATHERLAND LIBERATION WAR IN ITS SECOND STAGE (1950-1953)

U.S.S.R
PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA
Hoiryung
Moosan
Rajin
Chungjin
Ranam
Jasung
Shinpa
Hyesan
Baikam
Myongchun
Kilchoo
Kimchaik
Tanchun
Manpo
Kanggye
Chosan
Poongsan
Junchun
Janglin
Riwun
Bookchung
Sakjoo
Shinuijoo
Yongampo
Koosung
Chulsan
Sunchun
Sookchun
Koojang
Hamheung
Nyungwun
Maingsan
Kaichun
Soonchun
Kowon
Jungpyung
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
Wonsan
Tongchun
Pyongyang
Ansyun
Sooan
Koksan
Kosung
Nampo
Hoiyang
Sariwon
Shinkye
Ichun
Changdo
Eunryool
Shinchun
Jangyun
Pyunggang
Chulwun
Kimhwa
Haijoo
Ongjin
Yanggoo
Rinje
Yangyang
Kangneung
Kaesong
Choonchun
Inchon
Seoul
Samchuk
YELLOW SEA
Pyungchang
Yungwul
Woolljin
Chunan
Andong
Kongjoo
Taijun
Walkwan
Pohang
Junjoo
Kyungjoo
Taegu
Yungchun
Hyupchun
Milyang
Jinjoo
Masan
Chinhai
Pusan
Tsushima
SOUTH SEA
Cheju-do Is.
JAPAN
LEGEND
The area in which the Korean People's Army took action in the rear of the enemy
People's Partisan
The Korean People's Army's route of retreat
The enemy's offensive
The line of resistance in the period of retreat of the Korean People's Army
The area in which the Parachute troops of the enemy landed

The People's Army men who defended Seoul side by side with the citizens displayed unheard-of heroism and patriotism, deterring the advance of the overpowering enemies for 14 days.

Suffering immeasurable loss, the aggressive U.S. army forced its way into Seoul and occupied it at the end of September, and then continued to march north.

At the same time, the enemies entrenched along the Rakdong river were reinforced by new forces, and started an offensive.

This brought about a grave situation on the front. In such situation our Party organized the strategic retreat, raising the important task of deterring the enemy's advance, thereby enabling the main force of the People's Army to retreat in a planned way, while continuously preparing reserve forces.

In the most difficult time of the retreat, that is, on October 11, 1950, Comrade Kim Il Sung made a speech over the radio calling upon all the people, heroic men and officers of the People's Army, and men and women partisan fighters to defend the freedom and independence of the country. The speech of Comrade Kim Il Sung served as a militant programme of action for all our people who were going through the hardships of the retreat.

The Party and Government encouraged the people with a confidence in their final victory, and ensured the retreat of the People's Army in an organized and orderly manner. The main force of our army, which had been deployed along the Rakdong river, made the difficult retreat successfully by employing the most complex and mobile method, delivering successive losses to the enemy by offering stout resistance and mobile hits.

During the retreat the People's Army inflicted heavy losses upon the enemy, which suffered 12,000 odd casualties.

Meanwhile, the people in the rear displayed unprecedented patriotic fervour in successfully moving the equipment of plants and factories, materials of transportation and food to places of safety, under the guidance of the Party.

Whatever place they occupied temporarily, the U.S. imperialist armed invaders, in their attempt to enslave the Korean people, perpetrated brutal atrocities against them, which have no parallel in human history.

The enemies murdered the members of the Workers' Party and patriots. In Hwanghai Province alone, the number of the butchered was 120,000; in Shinchun County they slaughtered more than 35,000 or a fourth of the entire population of the county, by means

of burying alive, burning alive and other brutal methods. The invaders destroyed towns and villages, demolished and burned wantonly the equipment of peaceable industry and cultural establishments, and looted the people's properties. The U.S. imperialist armed invaders destroyed the people's government organs and restored the Japanese imperialist ruling machinery.

They did not stop there. They aided and abetted the liquidated landlords, comprador capitalists, pro-Japanese and pro-American bandits in organizing the reactionary, terrorist gangs "Chiandai," as tools of their policy of subversion and pillage.

Such cannibalistic acts of the enemies inflamed still further the rage and enmity of the Korean people against the U.S. imperialists. Young men and women, who loved their country, volunteered in a stream for service in the People's Army to defend the freedom and independence of the country, in response to the call of the Party.

In every region which was under the enemy's occupation, partisan units were organized under the leadership of the underground Party. Our partisan fighters cut the enemy's telegraph wires, destroyed bridges, overturned military trains, blew up the enemy's military establishments, and disposed of U.S. occupiers and their lackeys.

Particularly, the people rallied still more firmly around the Party and Government in the difficult conditions of the temporary strategic retreat, prepared for a new counter-attack. Thus, many army corps were formed in a short space of time, and several reserve army corps were organized.

ENTRY OF THE CHINESE PEOPLE'S VOLUNTEERS INTO THE KOREAN WAR AND THE NEW OFFENSIVE OF THE KOREAN-CHINESE PEOPLE'S ARMIES IN CO-ORDINATED OPERATION

The armed invasion of Korea by the U.S. imperialists evoked indignation and protest among the freedom-loving peoples of the world.

From the first day of the war all the freedom-loving peoples of the world, foremost among them the peoples of the Soviet Union and the Chinese People's Republic, raised the angry voice:

"U.S. imperialists, keep your blood-stained hands off Korea!" They unfolded a world-wide movement against the U.S. armed invasion of Korea.

It will be remembered forever that in the most difficult time for our country the Chinese people sent the People's Volunteers, organized with their sons and daughters, to aid our people with their own blood.

The Chinese people rose up holding high the banner of proletarian internationalism to beat back the U.S. imperialists from the Korean territory and frustrate their provocative design to unleash another war, thereby securing the safety of their own country and defending world peace.

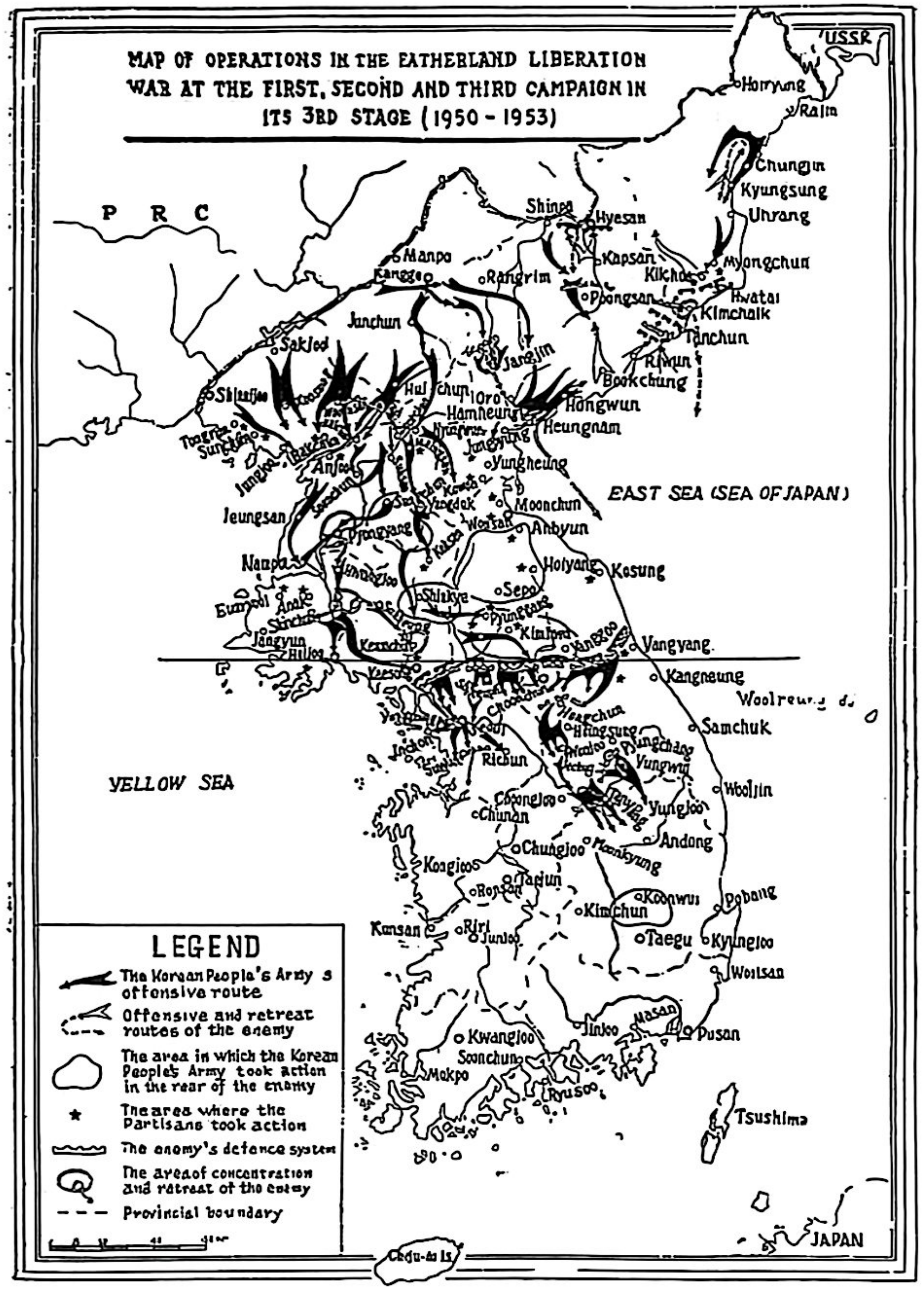
When the Chinese People's Volunteers appeared on the Korean front on October 25, 1950, under the banner of "Resist U.S. Aggression, Aid Korea, Protect the Homes and Defend the Country," it produced a radical change in the balance of power between the enemy and us, turning the scales in favour of us.

Thus, our People's Army went over again to an offensive in closely co-ordinated operation with the Chinese People's Volunteers. The period of the temporary retreat was now over, and a new stage in an offensive war began.

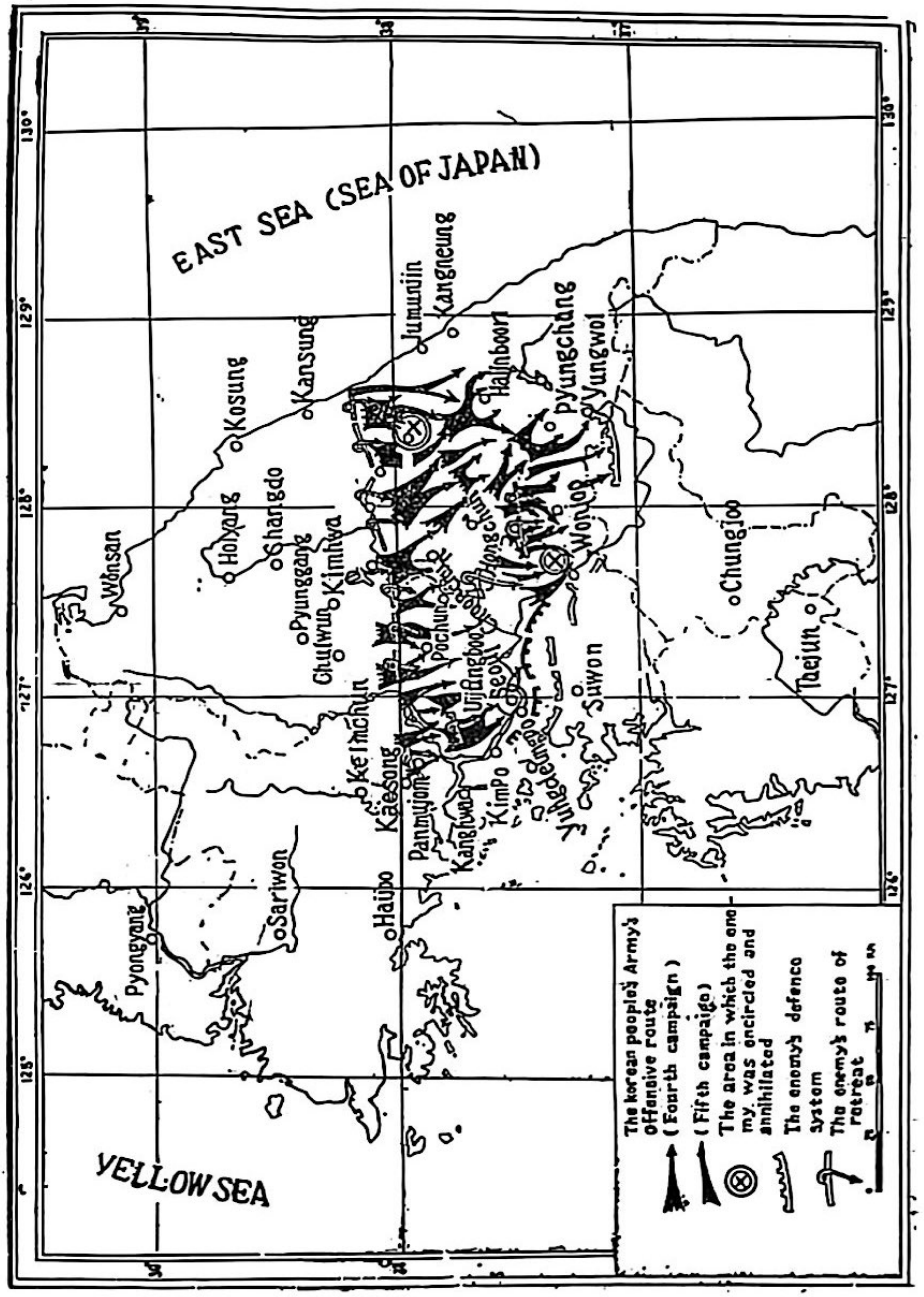
Our units besieged and crushed the enemies that had marched on to the Chungchun river and then the Yalu river, and continued advancing southwards. Soon they liberated Pyongyang, the democratic capital, and broke through the enemy's strong defence line, over 400-ri wide and over 140-ri deep, where 4 U.S. divisions and eight divisions of the puppet Syngman Rhee's Army had been deployed. And they again liberated Seoul, Wonju and other towns and reached the 37th parallel. In the northeastern part of the country too, the enemies sustained serious loss. After losing battles in the Hwangcho-ryung region, on the Jangjin lake and the Urang river, they fled hurry-scurry by sea.

In the favourable situation brought about by the victories won on the front, a new, imminent task was raised before the Korean people, the task of restoring Party and state organs in the liberated areas, rehabilitating and building up the national economy, fortifying the rear, and organizing all the work in the rear fully to meet the requirements of the front. All this was necessary to secure the final victory in the war.

In the existing situation the Workers' Party had to tackle the huge task of re-establishing Party and state organs and social


MAP OF OPERATIONS IN THE FATHERLAND LIBERATION WAR AT THE FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD CAMPAIGN IN ITS 3RD STAGE (1950 - 1953)
USSR
P R C
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
YELLOW SEA
JAPAN
Tsushima
Chedu-do Is.
Hoiryung
Rajin
Chungjin
Kyungsung
Uhrang
Myongchun
Hwatai
Kimchaik
Tanchun
Riwun
Bookchung
Hongwun
Heungnam
Hamheung
Shinpa
Hyesan
Kapsan
Kilchoo
Pongsan
Manpo
Kanggee
Rangrim
Junchun
Jangjin
Sakjoo
Shinuijoo
Yongchun
Sunchun
Anjoo
Yungheung
Moonchun
Wonsan
Anbyun
Jeungsan
Pyongyang
Nampo
Holyang
Kosung
Sepo
Pyungkang
Kimhwa
Yangyang
Kangneung
Samchuk
Woolreung do
Haejoo
Kaesung
Seoul
Inchon
Suwon
Richun
Hoengsung
Wonju
Pyungchang
Yungwol
Woljin
Chunan
Chungjoo
Yungjoo
Andong
Poonkyung
Kongjoo
Taejun
Kimchun
Koonwui
Pohang
Kunsan
Riri
Junjoo
Taegu
Kyungjoo
Woolsan
Kwangjoo
Soonchun
Mokpo
Jinjoo
Masan
Pusan
Ryusoo
LEGEND
The Korean People's Army s offensive route
Offensive and retreat routes of the enemy
The area in which the Korean People's Army took action in the rear of the enemy
The area where the Partisans took action
The enemy's defence system
The area of concentration and retreat of the enemy
Provincial boundary

MAP OF OPERATIONS IN THE FATHERLAND LIBERATION WAR AT THE FOURTH AND FIFTH CAMPAIGN IN ITS 3RD STAGE (1950—1953)


EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
YELLOW SEA
Wonsan
Hoiyang
Changdo
Kosung
Kansung
Jumunjin
Kangneung
Pyungchang
Yungwol
Hajinboori
Wonjoo
Chungjoo
Taejun
Suwon
Seoul
Pyungyang
Sariwon
Haijoo
Kaesong
Panmunjom
Kangbwa
Kimpo
Inchon
Kimhwa
Pyunggang
Chulwun
Pochun
Uijungboo
Keimchun
The korean people's Army's offensive route (Fourth campaign)
(Fifth campaign)
The area in which the enemy was encircled and annihilated
The enemy's defence system
The enemy's route of retreat
130°
129°
128°
127°
126°
125°

organizations in the liberated areas and stabilizing and improving the people's living, while strengthening the Party and military discipline.

All these were carried out in a good manner, in conformity with the decisions of the Third Plenum of the C.C., Workers' Party of Korea, held in December 1950.

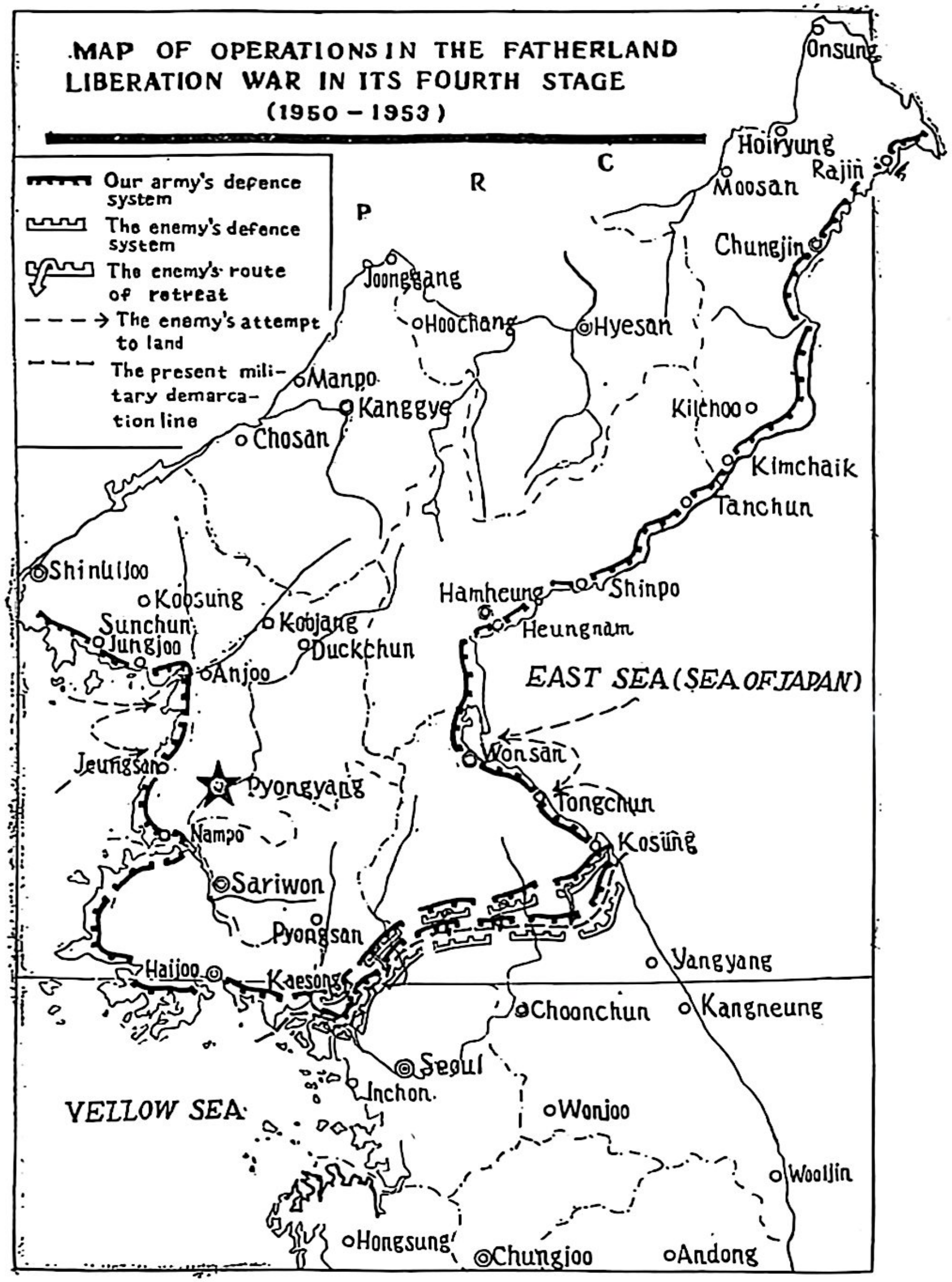
In areas which had been occupied by the enemies for a time, Party organs, government bodies and social organizations were restored in a brief space of time and a popular struggle was developed against those reactionaries who, in collusion with the enemies, had perpetrated bloody atrocities against the people. Through this struggle, the popular masses rallied closely around the Party and Government.

On the other hand, the correct economic policy, worked out on a wartime footing, of the Party and Government made it possible to expand the production of war supplies and stabilize and improve the people's livelihood. Thus, conditions were created in the rear that would ensure more successfully the victory on the front, where the situation had turned in our favour.

STALEMATE ON THE FRONT, TRANSITION TO THE POSITIONAL WAR, FRUSTRATION OF THE ENEMY'S ATTEMPT AT "A NEW OFFENSIVE" AND CONCLUSION OF ARMISTICE

Having suffered heavy losses from the powerful blows delivered by the Korean-Chinese people's armies which had the all-out support and assistance of the entire people united as one, the enemies gave up the break-through tactics combined with landing operations. It was replaced with the "limited offensive" aimed at seizing certain heights, that is, Ridgeway's so-called "inroad tactics."

To deal with the new tactics of the enemy, our forces went over to the active positional war. This enabled our units to refresh their strength, shorten the course of the transportation of war supplies, and defend the flanks of the front more effectively. It also provided the possibility of consolidating further the political and economic foundations in the areas liberated from the enemy's temporary occupation.



MAP OF OPERATIONS IN THE FATHERLAND LIBERATION WAR IN ITS FOURTH STAGE (1950 – 1953)

Our army's defence system
The enemy's defence system
The enemy's route of retreat
The enemy's attempt to land
The present military demarcation line
P R C
Onsung
Hoiryung
Moosan
Rajin
Chungjin
Joonggang
Hoochang
Hyesan
Kilchoo
Manpo
Kanggye
Chosan
Kimchaik
Tanchun
Shinuijoo
Koosung
Sunchun
Jungjoo
Kujang
Duckchun
Anjoo
Hamheung
Shinpo
Heungnam
EAST SEA (SEA OF JAPAN)
Jeungsan
Pyongyang
Wonsan
Tongchun
Nampo
Kosung
Sariwon
Pyongsan
Yangyang
Haijoo
Kaesong
Choonchun
Kangneung
Seoul
Inchon
Wonjoo
YELLOW SEA
Wooljin
Hongsung
Chungjoo
Andong

Successfully beating back the persistent attack of the enemy, the Korean-Chinese people's forces fortified continuously their defence line and waged an active defence, inflicting heavy losses upon the enemy's manpower and equipment.

In one year after the start of the war, over 598,000 men and officers of the enemy forces were killed, wounded and captured.

Having sustained repeated defeats on the front and under the pressure of the peace-loving people the world over with the Soviet people in the lead, the U.S. imperialist aggressors could not but propose to hold cease-fire talks. The proposal was made by Ridgeway, commander-in-chief of the "UN forces," on June 30, 1951.

The Government of our Republic, which had been consistently been making efforts for the peaceful unification of the country and the relaxation of international tension, agreed to the proposal. Thus, the talks on armistice began at Kaesong on July 10, 1951. But the aim and end of the U.S. imperialist aggressors were to recover their own prestige undermined by their defeats in battles, while earning the time to prepare for a new offensive on the front, by availing themselves of the chance of the talks.

While sabotaging the armistice talks, the U.S. imperialist aggressors reinforced their military strength and equipment, and in 1951 launched the so-called "summer offensive" and the "autumn offensive" in succession. During the enemy's "summer and autumn offensives," the battles on the 1,211 and 1,052 heights were most hard-fought. The enemies showered an average of 30,000 to 40,000 shells and bombs every day upon our positions on these heights. This continued for three months, during which the enemies launched attacks 431 times.

The brave men of the Korean People's Army, entrenching themselves in the strong tunnel positions, offered a stubborn resistance to the enemies, living up to the order of their beloved Supreme Commander Marshal Kim Il Sung that never even an inch of land should be yielded to the enemy. Thus, they delivered wholesale death to the enemy and held the heights. "Every height of the fatherland belongs to me" movement was unfolded among the People's Army men who were then fighting stubborn defensive battles. They also organized in a big way aircraft-hunting teams, surprise-attack parties, mobile-artillery teams, snipers teams, and heavy machine-gun parties, thereby waging an in-tense struggle to bring down more planes, smash more tanks and battleships and kill more men.

In this way the enemy's "summer and autumn offensives" suffered a set-back.

The fourth plenum of the C.C., Workers' Party of Korea, held in November 1951, which put a stop to the leftist "shut-the-door" policy practised by Huh Gai in the matter of the Party membership, and the speech of Comrade Kim Il Sung made in February 1952 "On the present situation and duties of the people's government bodies," which was a telling blow to bureaucratism, resulted in a further strengthening of the ties between the Party and Government on the one hand and the people on the other, promoting the people's struggle for victory in the war. The more our victory in the Fatherland Liberation War became certain, the more the U.S. imperialists and their lackeys ran amuck. Towards the end of 1952, the enemy attempted to restore their collapsed positions on the front by the so-called "new Eisenhower offensive."

At that time, the traitor Pak Hun Yung and his clique, factional elements and hireling spies of the U.S. imperialists who had crept into the Party and Government and carried on subversive acts, went so far as to plot an armed revolt to overthrow our Party and Government agreeing in time with the offensive of the U.S. imperialists, as was exposed later.

The Party exposed and smashed the treacherous plot of the Pak Hun Yung-Li Seung Yup gang, the hireling spies of the U.S. imperialists, around the time when the fifth plenum of the C.C., Workers' Party of Korea, was held, and mobilized the entire Party members and peoples to the decisive battle to frustrate the enemy's "new offensive" and guarantee final victory in the war.

Our Party guided the People's Army to strengthen the fighting power and make the defence line impregnable.

All the people in the rear came forward for the crucial fight to foil the "new offensive" of the U.S. imperialists, in response to the call of the Worker's Party. Thus, the "new offensive" of the enemy was frustrated from the outset.

The U.S. imperialists and their lackeys, who bragged about their so-called "technical superiority," were obliged to admit that they could not achieve their aggressive aim by any military hazard.

This is why the U.S. imperialists had to sign the Armistice Agreement on July 27, 1953.

Thus, the just Fatherland Liberation War ended in a historic victory for the Korean people, after three years and one month's bloodshed.

During the three-year war, the Korean People's Army and Chinese People's Volunteers administered a decisive blow to the aggressive armed forces of 16 countries headed by the United States, as well as to the puppet Syngman Rhee's army, a blow that is enough to prevent them from thinking of unleashing another war in Korea.

The loss of manpower (dead, wounded and captured) suffered by the enemy totaled 1,093,839, of which 397,543 are the U.S. army; 667,293, the puppet Syngman Rhee's and 29,003, the other countries'. Besides, vast amounts of military equipment were destroyed or captured.

The ceasefire in Korea not only means a great historic victory for the Korean people, who fought and defended the freedom and independence and the people's democratic system of their fatherland against the armed invasion of the international reactionary forces of 16 countries headed by the United States and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique, but also a victory for the peace forces of the world. It also foiled the vicious design of the U.S. imperialists to reduce the Korean people to the status of a colonial slave and to turn Korea into the springboard for another world war, and brought to light the true colours of the aggressive U.S. imperialists, the boss of today's world imperialists, before the world public.

What factors made it possible for the Korean people to win such a brilliant victory in the Fatherland Liberation War?

First. Our country is a people's democratic country. We had a stable rear with the superiority of our people's democratic system.

Second. We had the strong People's Army which had taken over the patriotic, revolutionary tradition. Our People's Army, educated in patriotic and internationalist spirit, displayed mass heroism, and, in close co-operation with the Chinese People's Volunteers, defended every inch of our land.

Third. There was the internationalist assistance of the great family of socialism, especially the disinterested help of the Soviet Union; the participation of China in the Korean war and her various forms of aid; the fraternal aid from the peoples of the people's democratic countries; the support of the world peace-loving people.

Fourth. The Workers' Party of Korea guided by invincible Marxism-Leninism stood at the head of the Korean people who rose in the just war for freedom and independence of the country.

The correct policy and wise guidance of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea led by Kim Il Sung constituted a decisive factor that enabled the people to perform miracles. The force of the people united around the Party, the organizer and inspirer of all victories, defeated the U.S. armed aggressors.

THE STRUGGLE FOR PEACEFUL UNIFICATION AND SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION IN THE POST-WAR PERIOD

Having won a historic victory in the Fatherland Liberation War, the Korean people embarked on peaceful construction. However, the truce does not mean a complete peace. The U.S. imperialists and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique refused to draw lessons from their failure. They have continued their scheme for provoking another war.

In the post-war period the Korean people were confronted with the task of unifying the country by peaceful means. To this end, the first thing to do was to convert the armistice into a lasting peace and to strengthen further the democratic base in the northern part of the country, the political, economic, and cultural source of our revolution. Conditions following the truce were very difficult. During the war our towns and villages had been reduced to ashes by the enemy's heavy bombing and other means of destruction. Consequently, the people were in distress.

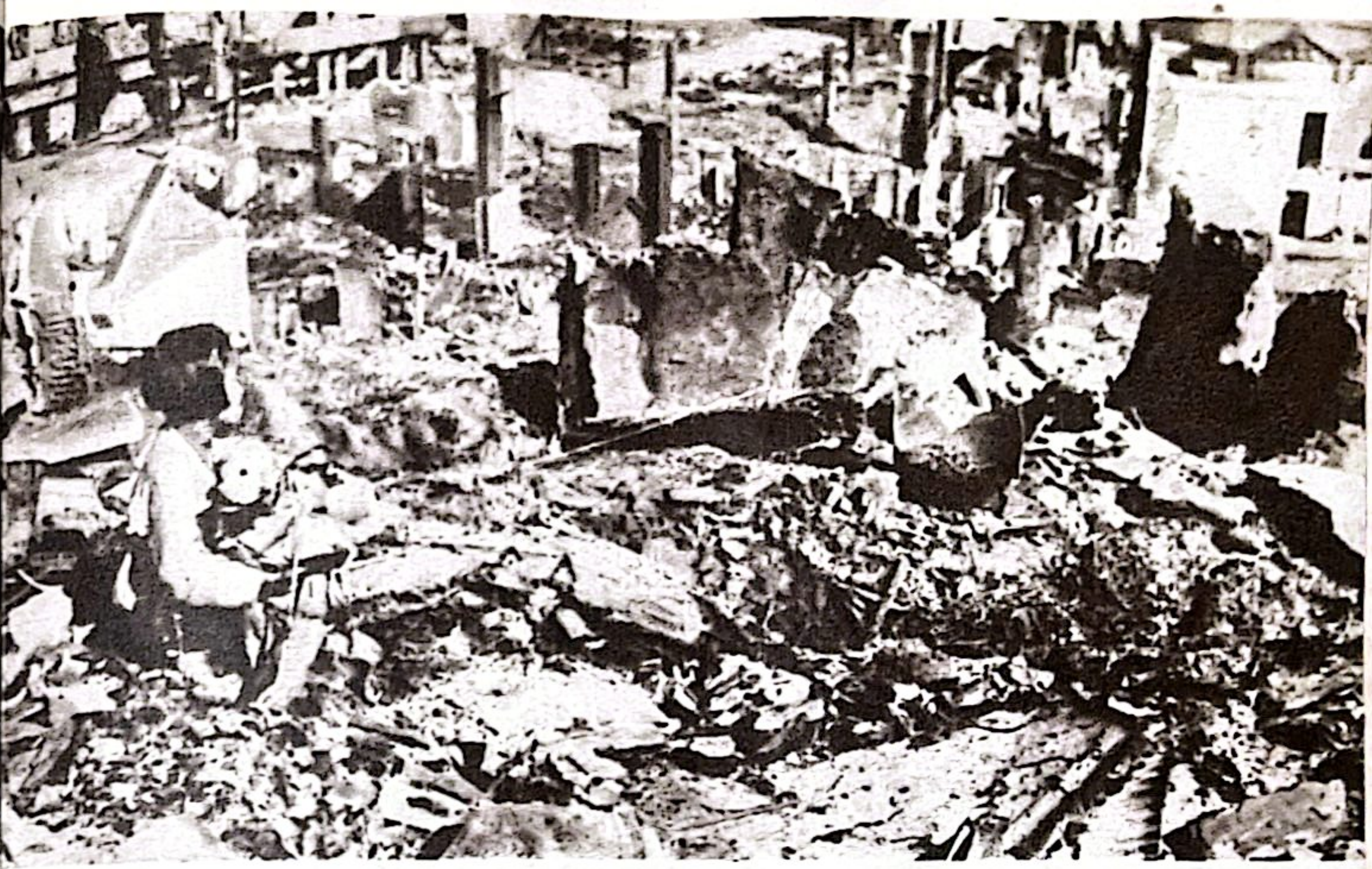
The pressing task was to rapidly restore the war devastated economy; to stabilize and improve radically the people's living; and to bring about the up-swing in all branches of the national economy. To achieve the task, it was necessary to draw up the correct line in conformity with the objective requirements of economic development. The 6th Plenum of the Party Central Committee held in August 1953 set forth a general line with regard to the postwar reconstruction and development of the national economy. The postwar reconstruction was to be carried on by three main stages on the basis of the general line of priority

Battle for liberating Seoul by the Korean People's Army

A CPV unit crossing the Yalu to help the Korean people in their fight against the U.S. imperialists

Anti-epidemic workers struggling with bacteriological weapons dropped by the U.S. air pirates

A delegation of the International Democratic Lawyers Association came to Korea to investigate the bacteriological weapons dropped by the U.S. air pirates

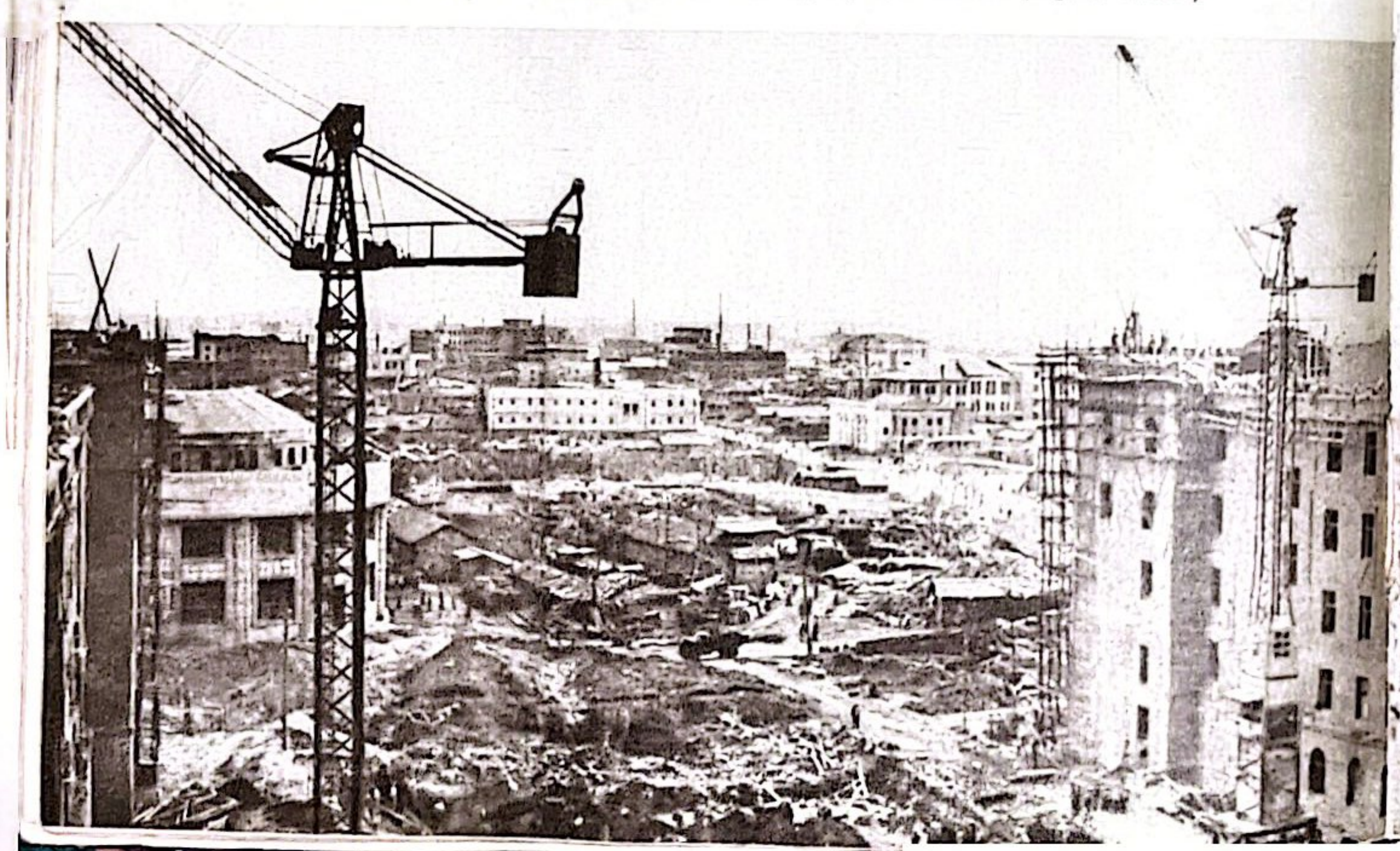


A view of Pyongyang destroyed by the barbarous indiscriminate bombing of the American imperialists

Open-air mass rally in celebration of cease-fire in Pyongyang (July 1953)

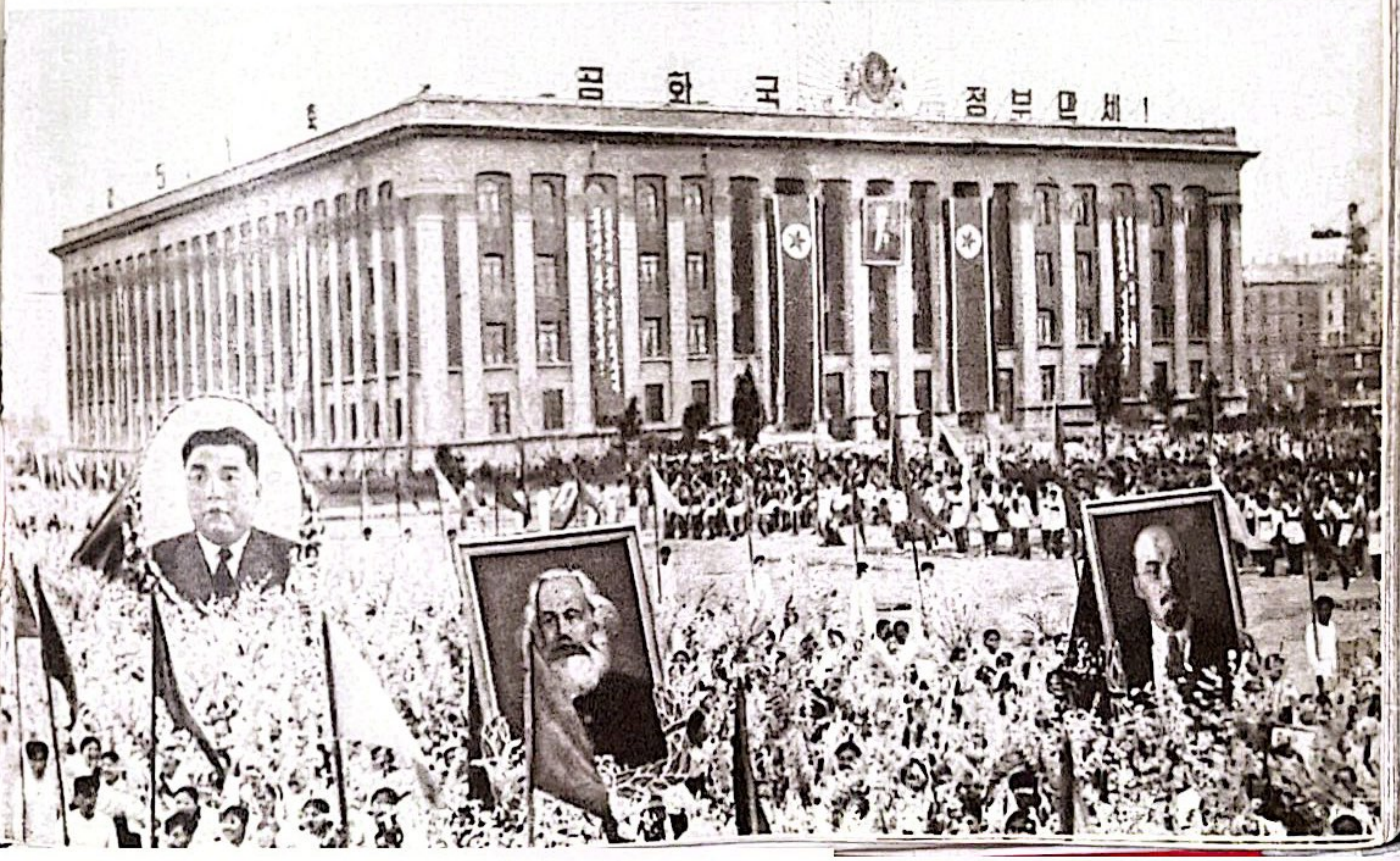
Comrade Kim Il Sung delivering a report at the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea

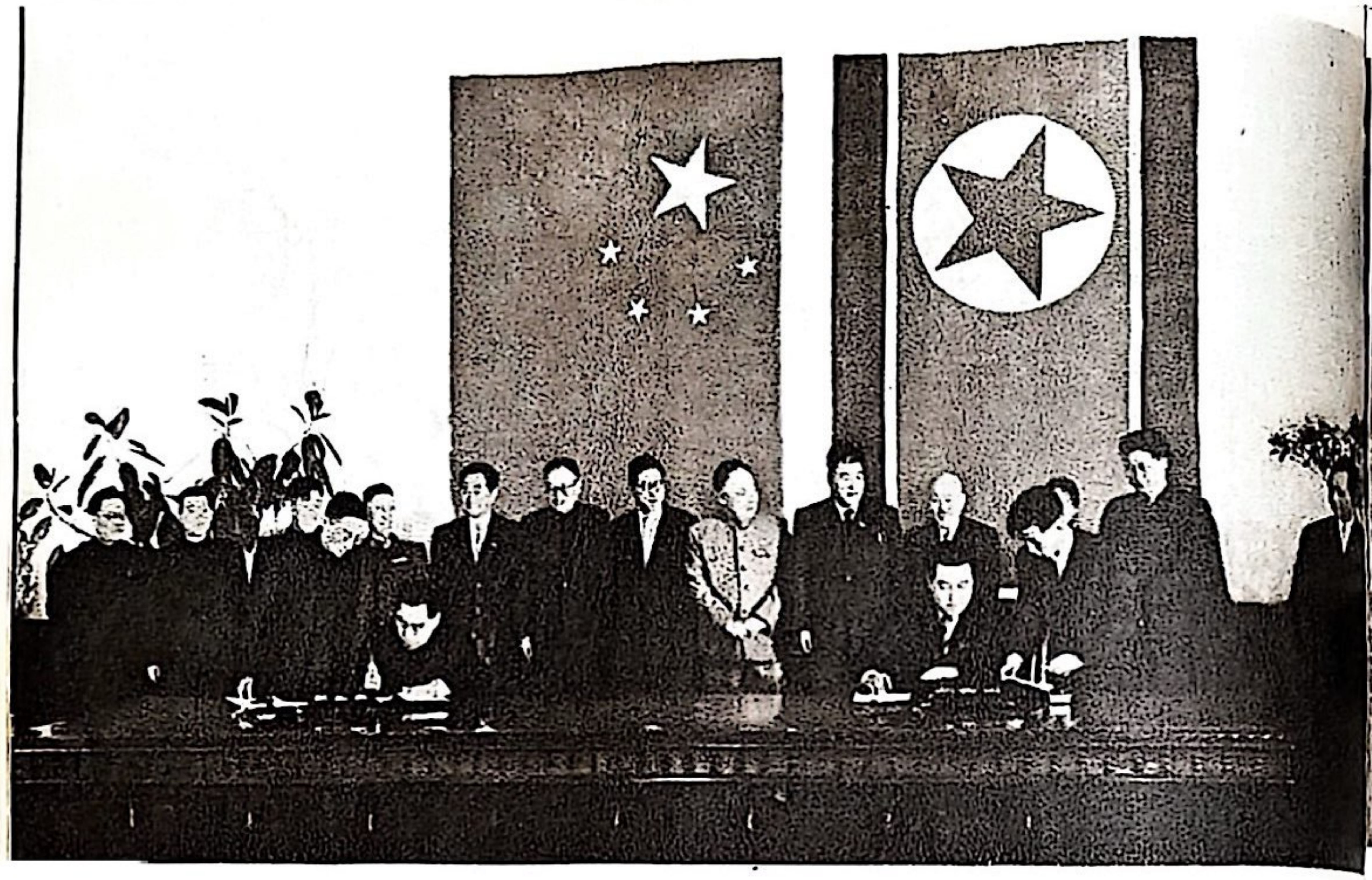
The central part of Pyongyang springing up on ashes (April 1954)



Workers of the Pyongyang Textile Mill put their signature in demand of the withdrawal of the American imperialist aggressive army from South Korea

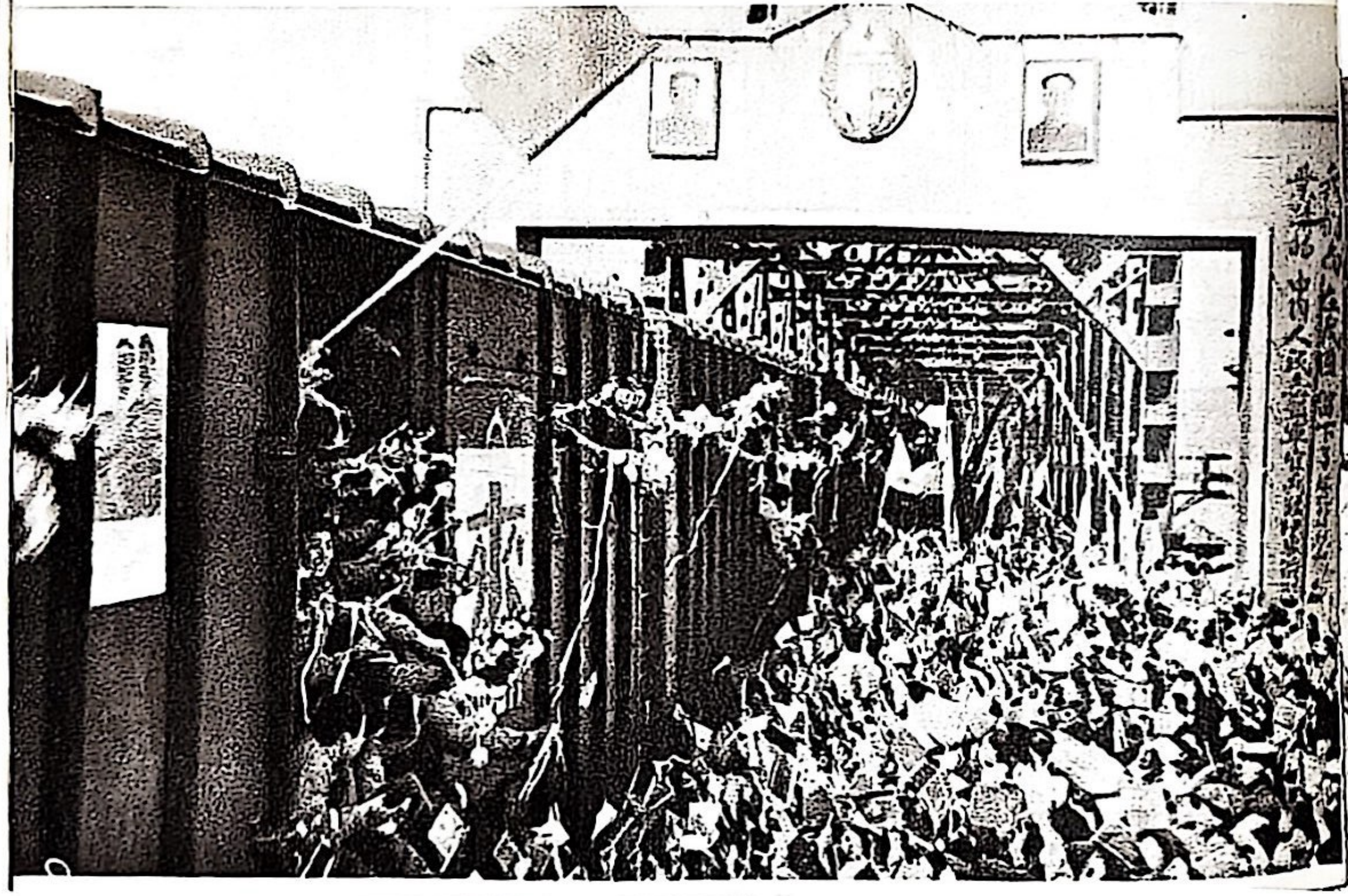
May Day celebration in Pyongyang

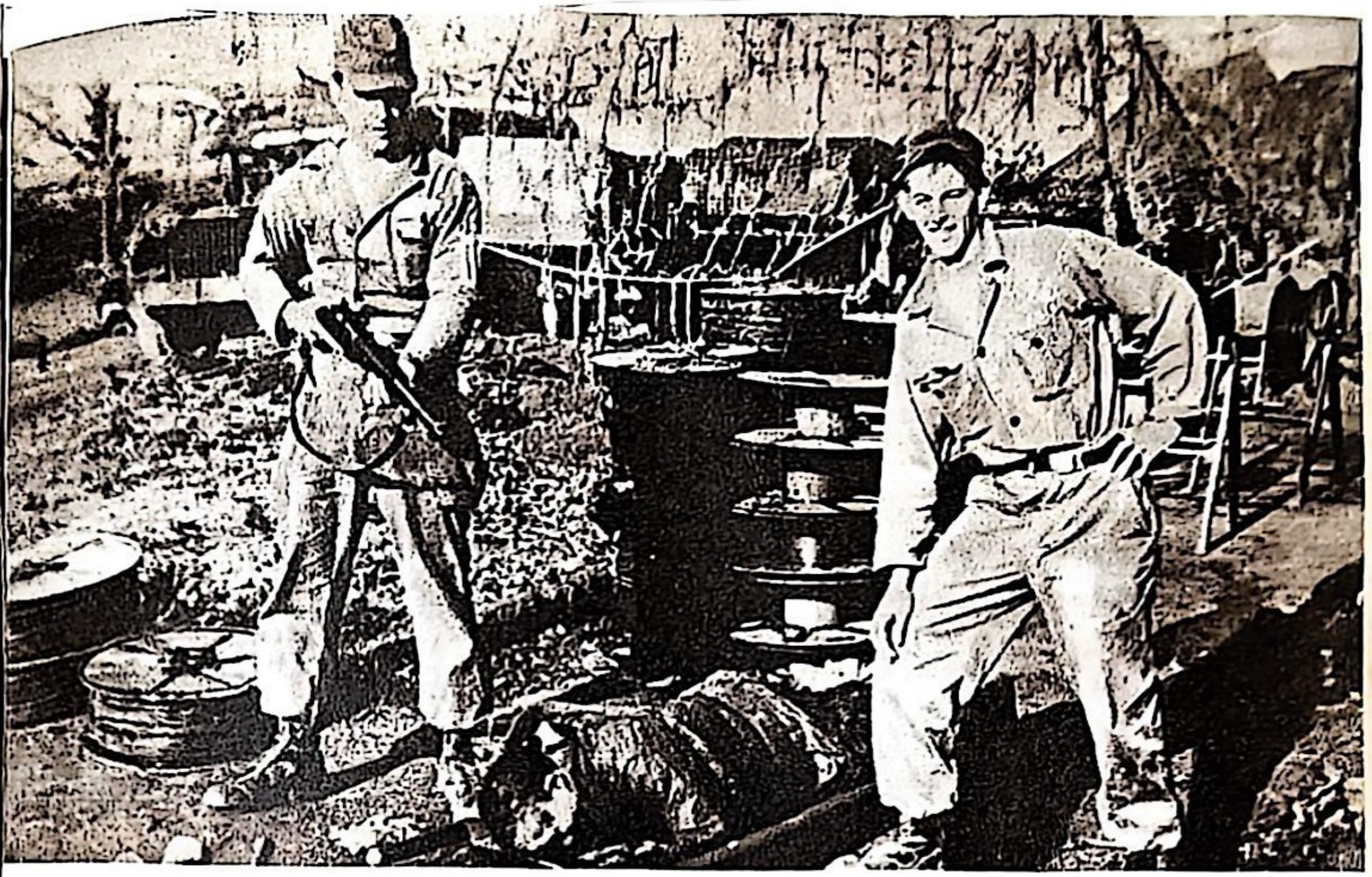




Premier Kim Il Sung and Premier Chou En-lai signing the Joint Communique of the D.P.R.K. and C.P.R. (February 1958)

The Korean people giving a warm send-off to the Chinese People's Volunteers withdrawing from Korea



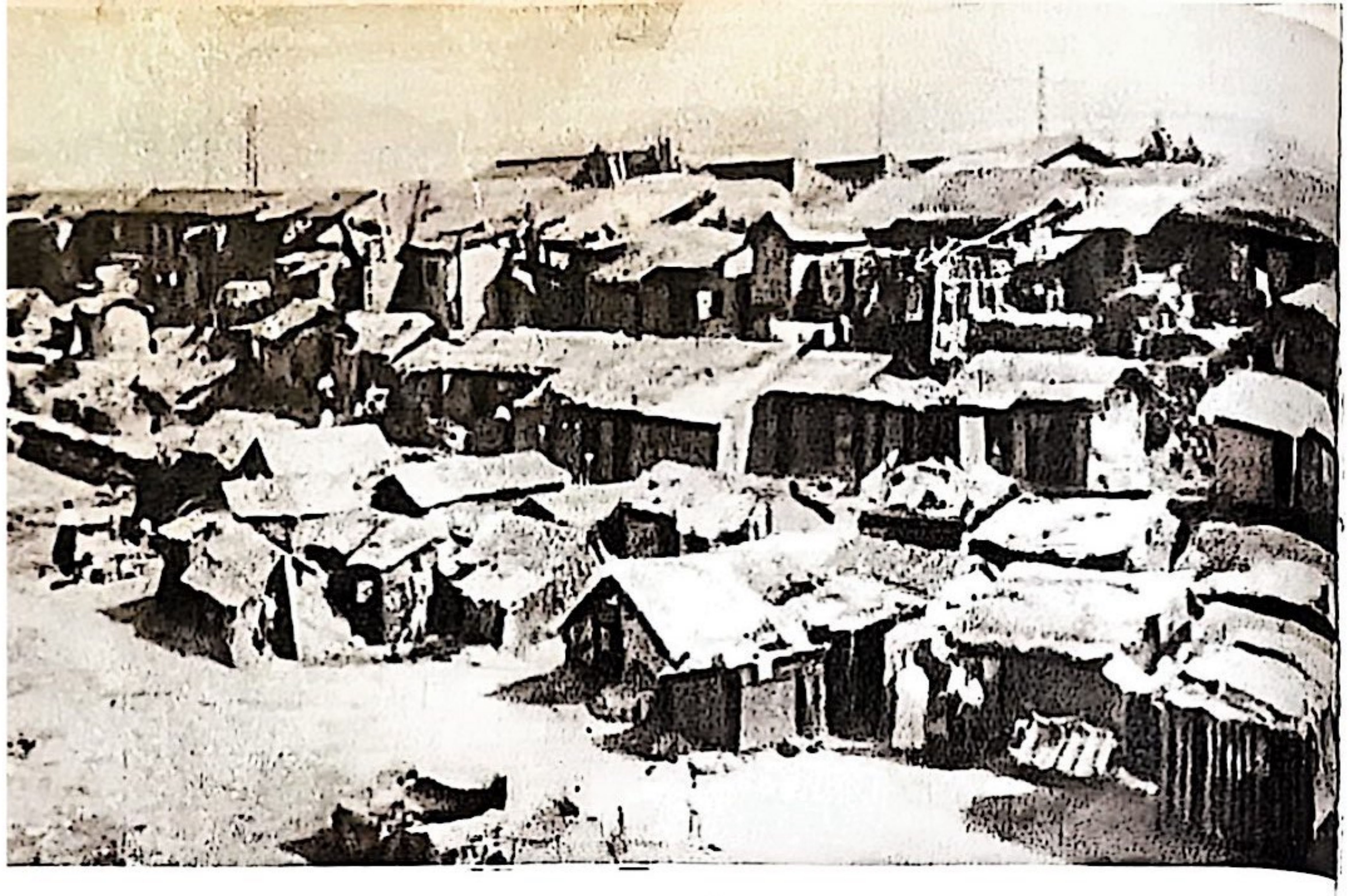


Innocent Korean boy being killed unlawfully by the cold-blooded American imperialist murderers

Helpless orphans in South Korea are wandering about street

The aggressive U.S. army closed down and occupied factories

MILITARY POLICE



"Box houses" in South Korea

Life in shabby hut in South Korea

The U.S. aggressive army keeps a watch for the people's living

development of heavy industry along with the progress of light industry and agriculture.

In the first stage covering 6 months to one year, general preparations were to be made and things were to be put in order to reconstruct the national economy.

In the second stage all branches of the national economy were to regain the prewar level by fulfilling the Three-Year Plan for reconstruction and development of the national economy.

In the third stage a solid foundation for socialist industrialization was to be laid and the problem of food, clothing and housing for the people solved by carrying out the First Five-Year Plan.

On the basis of the general line, the Party and the government took measures for strengthening and expanding socialist sectors—state-run and co-operative economy—in all economic branches, and to transform gradually along socialist lines non-socialist sectors—individual farming, private handicraft and private industry and trade.

In response to the militant call of the Party, "All for the Postwar Reconstruction and Development of the National Economy for the Strengthening of the Democratic Base", the entire Korean people dedicated themselves to labour endeavours.

When our reconstruction started after the ceasefire, the peoples of the fraternal countries rendered the Korean people great assistance. The government of the Soviet Union gave gratis one billion rouble aid. The Chinese people who helped the Korean people with their very blood granted 8,000 billion yuan of aid (old Chinese currency). All other People's Democracies rendered us vast assistance—material and technical—for our reconstruction. This disinterested help constituted a major guarantee for the reconstruction and development of our national economy.

Thanks to the self-sacrificing labour efforts the preparatory work in the first stage was successfully carried out. On this basis, the Workers' Party of Korea drew up the Three-Year Plan (1954-56) for the postwar reconstruction and development of the national economy.

The 7th Session of the D.P.R.K. Supreme People's Assembly held in April 1954 adopted the law on the Three-Year Plan on the basis of the general line presented by the Party.

The principal task of the Three-Year Plan was to restore the war-devastated national economy; to attain and surpass the prewar level in industrial and agricultural production; to lay a solid economic foundation for accelerating rapid development in science, culture and art; and to improve the living standards of the people. The Three-Year Plan was, indeed, vast and difficult to carry out. The Workers' Party of Korea conducted large-scale organizational and political work for the successful implementation of the tremendous task outlined in the Three-Year Plan. Meetings were held with the participation of activists in the fields of industry, building, transport and agriculture. Youth League and Women's Union held meetings. All these meetings stimulated the labour enthusiasm of workers to overfulfil the Three-Year Plan. They decided to advance various inventive suggestions and launch mass emulation campaigns.

Workers introduced advanced work methods and raised steadily labour productivity. They surpassed the old norm of work and set new ones.

Under the guidance of the Party, the ranks of workers produced numbers of trail blazers. Tremendous results were gained in mass emulation campaigns.

However, we found quite a few shortcomings in our work of reconstruction.

The Party laid bare the shortcomings which hindered our economic development, and immediately took concrete measures for overcoming them. The Plenum of the Central Committee of the Party held in March 1954 took measures to raise the level of leadership in the field of industry and put an end to bureaucratism and formalism. As a result, the state economic bodies improved their leadership over the subordinate organs, and the masses displayed a greater political and labour enthusiasm.

The November (1954) and the December (1955) plenums of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea took radical measures to restore and develop the rural economy which was lagging behind the industrial development. The Party and the government improved their guidance in this field.

In line with the decisions adopted by the plenary meetings of the Party Central Committee, the Party and Government organs carried out the work of restoring the war-damaged rural economy; of building on a wide scale irrigation projects; of producing more chemical fertilizer and modern farm implements; of organizing the agricultural co-operative movement and strengthening the co-ops organizationally and economically.

Under the correct policy of the Party and the Government, the peasants showed high enthusiasm; agricultural production increased; the socialist transformation of agriculture proceeded apace.

In our country socialist construction was not easy sailing. In order to win victory in the acute class struggle with the reactionaries who attempted to hamper our socialist construction, it was necessary, above all, to reinforce the work of educating the toiling masses in the spirit of socialist patriotism and of heightening their class awakening.

The April (1955) Plenum of the Party Central Committee took steps to improve class education and raise the ideological level of the labouring masses. The Plenum also took measures to eradicate bureaucratism and put an end to corruption and waste.

A nation-wide struggle was waged to implement the tasks set by the April Plenum. In this course the class consciousness of the entire people was raised to a new high and their confidence in the victory in their just cause fortified. And their political and moral unity was consolidated still further.

The measures taken by the Party proved to be correct and effective at each stage of our revolutionary development. Our working people put their energy into the carrying out of the Party's policy. They displayed unexampled labour enthusiasm in the overfulfilment of the Three-Year Plan. Greeting the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea, the entire labouring masses rendered outstanding services.

Along with the postwar reconstruction, the Korean people continued their unflagging struggle for converting the armistice into a lasting peace and for the peaceful unification of the country.

After the truce was signed, the Korean people strongly demanded the convocation of a political conference provided for in the Armistice Agreement.

Thanks to the sincere efforts of the D.P.R.K. Government the preliminary political conference was held in October 1953.

From the first day of the conference the U.S. side refused to put on the agenda the composition of the political conference which was a central issue at the talks of both sides. On November 30 our side proposed to hold the political conference in India and invite five neutral nations—the Soviet Union, India, Indonesia, Pakistan and Burma. However, the U.S. side produced no reasonable proposal. They walked out of the conference room, torpedoing the talks.

In April 1954 the Korean question was discussed at the Geneva Conference. In spite of the obstructive tactics of U.S. imperialists, the D.P.R.K. Government Delegation participated in the conference. This was of great significance in our international development.

At the Geneva Conference our government delegation put forward a proposal, "On the Re-establishment of Korea's National Unity and All-Korea's Free Elections". From the outset the delegations of the U.S. ruling circles, the Syngman Rhee clique, and the followers of the U.S. imperialists refused our proposal that the settlement of the Korean question should be left to the Koreans themselves.

The U.S. delegate made the absurd assertion that the Chinese People's Volunteers should withdraw from North Korea but the U.S. Army should remain stationed in South Korea. They directed their followers to read the prepared "Joint Declaration of the 16 Countries", thus unilaterally breaking off the conference for the peaceful settlement of the Korean question.

The discussion on the Korean question at the Geneva Conference ended in failure, but the whole course of the conference revealed that the U.S. ruling circles and their agents, the Syngman Rhee clique, were not only the enemy of the Korean people but also of peace in the Far East and the world.

Though the conference was wrecked, the Korean people have since then made consistent efforts for unifying the country by peaceful means. (See Chapter VII)

The D.P.R.K. Supreme People's Assembly and the government repeatedly made constructive proposals and spared no efforts for the peaceful settlement of the Korean question and relaxation of international tension. Proof of this is the reduction in the number of the Korean People's Army by 80,000 in 1956.

The Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea was held in April 1956. The Congress summed up all events that have happened since the Second Congress (1948). On the basis of achievements and experiences gained in the past years, the Congress blazed the path to be followed by the Korean people.

First, the Congress set forth the basic line and the tasks in relation to the First Five-Year Plan (1957-1961) for socialist construction in the North.

Next, the Congress set forth the task of strengthening still further the United Democratic Fatherland Front and the people's power and of consolidating the people's democratic system for ensuring unification and independence of the country, for the successful carrying out of socialist construction in the North.

The Congress made public a new proposal for accelerating the peaceful unification of the country.

The Congress outlined measures for strengthening further organizationally and ideologically the Party, the organizer and inspirer of victory of the Korean people.

The Third Congress which outlined the above mentioned basic tasks signified a great event in the course of the historical development of our country.

Inspired by the decisions of the Congress, the entire working people took an active part in the sparkling emulation campaigns for increased production, with a view to fulfilling ahead of schedule the Three-Year Plan for the postwar reconstruction of the national economy.

The Party mobilized the working people to implement the decisions of the Congress, and at the same time tightened friendly ties with the fraternal countries. The visits to the fraternal countries of the government delegation led by Premier Kim Il Sung enhanced the international prestige of our country, developed friendly and co-operative relations with the fraternal countries and contributed a great deal to the promotion of peace in Asia and Europe.

The anti-Party, anti-revolutionary sectarians such as Choi Chang Ik and Pak Chang Ok who had wormed their way into the Party were hatching plots against the Party and the state, at the time when the Party and the government were carrying out the arduous tasks for healing the serious wounds inflicted by the stern three-year war, when international reaction launched a more vicious campaign against the Soviet Union and Communism, and when the U.S. imperialists and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique clamoured for "March North."

They are an anti-Party, anti-revolutionary sectarian group who had no definite political program and line. They were dirty careerists who grouped themselves with selfish interests. Going with the tide of international revisionism, they came out in a frontal attack against the Party and the Government. However, the August (1956) Plenum of the Central Committee of the Party dealt a fatal blow to their sinister scheme.

Through the ruthless struggle with the anti-Party, anti-revolutionary sectarian group, the Korean people have rallied themselves more closely around the Party and the government, and defended their precious socialist gains. They fulfilled the Three-Year Plan four months ahead of schedule.

We achieved tremendous results in the course of carrying out the Three-Year Plan. Consequently, material foundations were laid for expediting our socialist construction and for improving the people's livelihood. And necessary conditions were provided for drawing up the long-term plan and carrying out the Five-Year Plan for the first time in our history.

The December (1956) Plenum of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea outlined the plan for 1957, the first year of the First Five-Year Plan, on the basis of the fundamental line of the Five-Year Plan worked out by the Third Party Congress.

The principal task of the national economic plan for 1957 was to create conditions for multiplying the results scored in the Three-Year Plan, for pushing forward the laying of socialist foundation and for improving the livelihood of the people.

The December (1956) Plenum outlined correct practicable measures for the implementation of the task. It considered that "maximum production and minimum spending" should be put into practice, so as to solve important economic problems arising in the course of implementing the First Five-Year Plan.

In response to the Party's call, the entire working people in the North devoted themselves to the task of overfulfilling the 1957 plan with more production and less spending, and with no additional investment.

The Party paid keen attention to the development of the backward economic branches. The April (1957) Plenum of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party dealt with the fishing industry, and the October (1957) Plenum, the building industry. Important measures were outlined for developing rapidly these industries.

The people under the leadership of the Party waged a strenuous struggle for carrying out the December Plenum decisions. Consequently, tremendous changes took place in all branches of the national economy.

The boundless love for and trust in the Workers' Party and the government were vividly represented in the elections of deputies to the Second Supreme People's Assembly held on August 27, 1957. 99.99 per cent of electors participated in the elections, and 99.92 per cent cast their votes for registered candidates.

At the First Session of the Second Supreme People's Assembly convened in September 1957, a new government was formed with Kim Il Sung as Premier. The new Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly was elected with Choi Yong Kun as President.

At the session Premier Kim Il Sung summed up the brilliant results scored in the postwar reconstruction and development of the national economy, and presented new prospective tasks. He also elaborated again on the just program for the peaceful unification of the country and the basic line of the foreign policy.

The First Party Conference held in March 1958 was of great significance for the Korean people who march forward in support of the policy of the Party and government. The Conference outlined in detail the First Five-Year Plan which is the first try at such plan in our country, and strengthened further the organizational and ideological unity of the Party, the leading and guiding force of the Korean people.

The entire working people, more closely united around the Party, will, as hitherto, carry out successfully the First Five-Year Plan, consolidate further the revolutionary democratic base, and accelerate the peaceful unification of the country.

Peaceful unification is the most urgent task confronting the Korean people. The D.P.R.K. government statement (Feb. 5, 1958), the joint statement (Feb. 19) of Korean and Chinese governments on the withdrawal of Chinese People's Volunteers from Korea—all this opened a new phase in the struggle of the Korean people for peaceful unification. Already by the end of April six divisions of the Chinese People's Volunteers comprising 80,000 had completed their first-stage withdrawal.

All the peace-loving peoples headed by the Soviet Union gave strong support to the peace move of the Korean and Chinese governments, thus encouraging the struggle of the Korean people for peaceful unification. Their indignation at U.S. imperialism is mounting. The voice, "Aggressive U.S. Army, Pull Out of Korea!", is ringing out not only in Korea but also in all parts of the world.

The Korean people will certainly force the U.S. occupiers to withdraw from their territory and attain the great cause of peaceful unification.

SOUTH KOREA UNDER THE U.S. IMPERIALISTS' OCCUPATION

U.S. OCCUPATION OF SOUTH KOREA AND ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL ENSLAVEMENT SYSTEM

The entire Korean people liberated by the great Soviet Army rose up, like a volcanic eruption, for founding a democratic independent country.

Our country, however, was devided into two parts, North and South, due to the fact that the aggressive U.S. Army which had shed no blood in the interests of the Korean people has illegally occupied South Korea since September 8, 1945, one month after the Japanese imperialists' surrender. South Korea was faced with a serious situation of colonial enslavement of the people.

Though Korean was not a vanquished country, the aggressive U.S. Army which landed in South Korea openly pursued a colonial policy they had prepared long before, proclaiming that South Korea was placed under the rule of the U.S. imperialist occupiers.

In the early days of their occupation they did their utmost to build a base for political, economic and military domination over South Korea by maintaining the Japanese imperialists' colonial system.

From the first day of their landing in South Korea, the U.S. imperialists dissolved by force the people's committees which were established after liberation on the initiative of the people in provinces, counties and sub-counties throughout South Korea. On September 19, 1945, they took over the colonial government organ, the Japanese "Government-General of Korea." They set up the U.S. Military Government. But this was only a nominal change. They declared that the Japanese laws remained effective. The Military Government employed a bunch of pro-Japanese, national traitors, dependent capitalists and landlords as a tool in order to oppress the democratic forces.

In December 1945, at the Moscow Conference of Three Foreign Ministers, (U.S.S.R., U.S.A. and Britain), thanks to the resolute endeavour of the U.S.S.R., the proposals made by the U.S.A. for enslaving Korea were resolutely rejected, and a just decision which was to enable Korea to develop as a democratic independent country was adopted. Nevertheless, the U.S. imperialists brazenly violated the international agreement to which they put their signature.

They pieced together landlords, comprador capitalists, pro-Japanese and pro-American collaborators and national traitors to suppress by means of police and terrorism the people's movement for the realization of the decision of the Moscow Conference, and to split the popular masses. In February 1946, they fabricated the "South Korean Democratic Assembly" for tightening their colonial rule and in December 1946, "Legislative Assembly". In June 1947, they changed the U.S. Military Government into the "South Korean Interim Government".

They schemed, on the one hand, to wreck the work of the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S.A. Commission, and on the other, to concoct a puppet regime in South Korea, pursuing an aggressive policy of devide and rule.

Thus the U.S. imperialists established a fascist police system in South Korea. Terrorism, destruction and violation were rampant. A dark age prevailed over South Korea. They suppressed ruthlessly freedom of speech, the press, assembly and association by enacting such reactionary laws as the "Law on Registration of Political Parties" in February 1946 and the "Ordinance on Violation of Military Administration" in May 1946. In addition, they massacred the people. The "Incident of the Union of the Student Soldiers" in January 1946 was an example.

They pursued the policy of colonizing South Korea and turning it into a military base, obstructing the realization of the Moscow Decision. They outrageously violated the international agreement at the two meetings of the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S.A. Commission—the first was held from March to May 1946 and the second from May to October 1947—disregarding the sincere effort of the Soviet Union and the just demand of the Korean people.

They made desperate efforts to reinforce their colonial system in South Korea. They rejected the proposals made on more than one occassion by the Soviet Union for the simultaneous withdrawal of the Soviet and U.S. armies from Korea, and shamelessly retained their troops in South Korea even after the Soviet Army withdrew from North Korea at the end of 1948. They made frantic preparations for war by continuously building and expanding the aggressive military bases. They constructed military fortifications along the Imjin River running along the 38th parallel, and newly built and expanded harbours, roads, railways, air fields, barracks, etc. They rapidly increased the armed forces under the "Department of National Defence" and "Guard Units" organized in June 1946, and equipped them with U.S.-made weapons in preparation for an armed aggression against North Korea.

Under such system of political and military oppression of American "military government", the U.S. monopolies drove the South Korean economy into a complete confusion, bankruptcy and collapse, and resorted to heinous exploitation and plunder.

In September 1945, the U.S. imperialists issued the "Ordinance No. 2", for the purpose of plundering, under the name of "custodian properties", all the properties and capital formerly owned by the Japanese imperialists. Thus they took possession of almost all the modern enterprises in South Korea, because about 90 per cent of all the industry in South Korea belonged to the Japanese imperialists.

On the basis of the imperialist exploitation system, the U.S. imperialists enforced a policy of destroying, dismantling and ruining the South Korean industry. They intended to completely remove every possible obstacle to the dumping of the goods. As a result, in October 1946, only 40 per cent of factories in South Korea was in operation and the output was only 10 per cent that in the pre-liberation year of 1944.

The U.S. surplus goods imported in 1946 amounted to more than 168,400,000 won, and in 1947, went up to more than 20,088,000,000 won.

Bankruptcy of industry, flooding of the U.S. goods into South Korea, expenditure of military government and merciless plunder

by the U.S. monopolists and comprador capitalists have resulted in an unprecedented inflation. The issuance of the bank-notes of the Bank of Korea amounted to 4.8 billion won on August 15, 1945. In June 1946, it went up to 11.3 billion won and in October 1947 18.2 billion won.

In the field of agriculture, the U.S. imperialists pursued the policy of maintaining the colonial-feudal exploitation system; they seized the lands formerly owned by the Japanese imperialists and protected landlordism. They took over the "Oriental Development Company," a Japanese imperialists' organ for exploiting Korean peasants, and renamed it "New Korea Company" in February 1946, continuing to bleed white the peasants. The "rice procurement system" was instituted in January 1946 with a view to taking away a tremendous amount of grain. It was worse than "rice collection" enforced by the Japanese imperialists for plundering grain. In the year of 1947 alone they robbed the peasants of 4,200,000 suk of grain. The U.S. imperialists not only sought maximum monopoly profits by means of plundering the so-called "custodian properties". Part of custodian properties were transferred to the Korean comprador capitalists and landlords. By doing so, they aimed to win over reliable followers.

Owing to such a colonial policy of the U.S. imperialists the people's living conditions extremely deteriorated.

Due to the rise of living costs and the "pegging" of wages, real incomes were considerably reduced. The number of the unemployed exceeded 500,000 already in 1947. The real incomes of the peasants sharply dropped and numbers of peasants were fated to wander from place to place in groups. Medium and small traders and enterprisers, together with national capitalists, were faced with bankruptcy.

The U.S. imperialists' colonial enslavement policy practically obliterated the South Korean culture. In South Korea under the U.S. military government, democratization of culture and education is unthinkable, because the remnants of Japanese imperialism are kept alive in all fields. Democratic ideas and culture are oppressed, while the anti-popular reactionary ideas are inspired and anti-Soviet and anti-Communism advocated.

The U.S. imperialists oppressed the vigorous educational and cultural movement of the people after liberation. They arrested and imprisoned the patriotic students, teachers and scientists who rose up against the "Programme for Establishment of National

University" fabricated by the U.S. imperialists. Many of the students were expelled from school; teachers dismissed and no small number of schools abolished. They frenziedly disseminated the decadent and reactionary "American way of life" and "American democracy", enforcing the heinous policy of blotting out the Korean national culture. They employed every possible means of paralysing the Korean people's democratic idea and patriotism.

ESTABLISHMENT OF PUPPET GOVERNMENT AND WAR PREPARATION

The U.S. imperialists finally scuttled the work of the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S.A. Commission. In October 1947, they put illegally the Korean question, despite the opposition of the Soviet Union and other democratic countries, to the U.N. General Assembly, and fabricated the United Nations Temporary Commission on Korea by using their "voting machine". They intended to concoct the South Korean puppet government with their lackeys so as to completely turn South Korea into their colonial military base.

The U.S. imperialists, instigating the UNTCOK to hold separate elections to form a separate government in South Korea, resorted to unheard-of terrorism and oppression against the Korean people who opposed the U.S. imperialists and their agent, the UNTCOK.

Chiếu cử
10.05.1948

The elections on May 10, 1948, when the U.S. imperialists' army and Syngman Rhee's terrorist police were mobilized, were met with stubborn opposition from the popular masses. Suffice it to cite one example. In North and South Kyungsang Provinces, voters were only 10-20 per cent of the total electors.

The "National Assembly", which was fabricated by the U.S. imperialists and their lackeys, adopted the so-called "Constitution of the Republic of Korea" following the instruction of the U.S. imperialists, and concocted the puppet government headed by Syngman Rhee, the arch traitor.

The South Korean puppet government is a product of the U.S. imperialists' scheme to perpetuate the artificial division of the country and to ensure their rule by the pro-Japanese, pro-Americans and national traitors, so as to make Korea their colony and military bridge-head in defiance of the unanimous will of the entire Korean people who were aspiring after the country's peaceful unification and democratization.

The U.S. imperialists imposed upon the Syngman Rhee puppet government the tasks of enforcing their aggressive colonial enslavement policy and of massacring the patriotic Korean people who were struggling for the unification and independence of the country. They also instigated the South Korean puppet government to widen national split and prepare for a fratricidal war with a view to occupying the whole Korea, enslaving the entire Korean people and provoking the third world war.

The emergence of the South Korean puppet government created a great obstacle to the unification and independence of the country and its democratic development, and further aggravated political tension in our country. There were two roads for the Korean people to choose; one was to tide over the crisis of the country by a nation-wide struggle against the aggressive U.S. imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rhee clique; the other was to be again subjected to colonial enslavement.

The Korean people stood up, under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea, in the struggle for overcoming the national crisis and for the unification, independence and democratization of the country.

In the spring of 1946, the struggle spread over South Korea like wildfire against the U.S. imperialists' colonial enslavement policy and their setting up military bases.

The struggle waged by the miners of the Hwasoon Colliery in August 1946 was followed by the general strike of the railway workers in September, and the people's uprising in October. This uprising which continued from the beginning of October to the end of November spread to more than 73 cities and counties throughout South Korea and was participated in by 2,280,000 people.

Though put down by the heinous U.S. imperialists and their lackeys' oppression, the October Uprising was a blow to their colonial enslavement policy.

The Korean people, who had bitter experiences in the life of colonial slaves under the Japanese imperialists' rule for nearly half a century, demonstrated their unbending resolve never to repeat the past.

The October Uprising was also indicative of the earnest desire of the South Korean people to establish a people's power and carry out democratic reforms, as in North Korea, and exposed the true nature of the U.S. imperialist aggression before the world.

On March 22, 1947, the entire workers in South Korea, enjoying sympathy from peasants and students, called a general strike against the increasing terrorism and oppression by the U.S. imperialists and their lackeys.

The struggle of the South Korean people against the U.S. imperialists became more vigorous on the occasion of the "May 10 separate elections" in 1948, which aimed at perpetually dividing Korea.

In April 1948, the people's uprising took place in Cheju Island. In all parts of South Korea the people started a positive struggle. They attacked police stations and did away with rabid reactionaries, and resorted to strikes, demonstrations, students' strikes, bonefire struggle, distribution of bills, uprising and partisan warfare, etc. In this way the South Korean people stepped up their struggle for securing the independence of the country. Thus they paralysed the U.S. imperialists' military administration and separate elections, demonstrating to the whole world the unbending fighting spirit of the Korean people for the unification and independence on the democratic principle, and making reactionaries tremble in fear.

On the occasion of the democratic elections carried out on August 25, 1948, for founding the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, our glorious fatherland, the patriotic people in South Korea enthusiastically took part in the elections despite terrorism and oppression by the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique, who were trying desperately to stop the nation-wide elections. In the elections, 77.52 per cent of the total South Korean voters took part and sent 360 deputies to the Supreme People's Assembly of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

Thus the South Korean people personally took part in founding the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, and upholding the political programme of the D.P.R.K., continued their struggle for overthrowing the Syngman Rhee puppet government and for opposing the U.S. imperialists' colonial enslavement policy in South Korea.

A soldiers' uprising which took place in Ryusoo, South Chulla Province in October 1948 against the Syngman Rhee puppet

regime and the partisan warfare waged by the participants of the uprising dealt a severe blow at the U.S. imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rheeites.

In such vigorous struggles, the South Korean people with the members of the Workers' Party in the van were greatly inspired by the enormous achievements attained in the northern part of the country. Especially the North Korean Workers' Party took timely measures and gave guidance to the revolutionary movement in South Korea. This inspired the South Korean people to a more vigorous struggle for national salvation. Conditions were created in favour of the development of our revolution.

However, the revolutionary movement in the South was hampered greatly due to the dirty scheme of the Pak Hun Yung-Li Seung Yup clique, heinous factionists and U.S. spies who managed to occupy the leading positions of the South Korean Workers' Party. These villains attempted to undermine the struggle of the Workers' Party and the South Korean people led by the Party in face of fascist oppression by the enemy.

In addition, the sectarian action of the "M. L. group" and other factionists which caused the split of the labouring masses of South Korea was very harmful to the struggle of the South Korean people. However, the staunch members of the Workers' Party and patriotic people, who firmly rallied round the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea led by Comrade Kim Il Sung, despite every kind of persecution by the enemy, and the factionists' conspiracy, rose up resolutely in the struggle against the U.S. imperialists and their lackeys.

Through all these struggle the crimes of the U.S. imperialists, pro-Japanese and national traitors headed by Syngman Rhee, the lackeys of the U.S. imperialists, were laid bare, the might of democratic forces demonstrated and the reactionary forces isolated more and more.

PROVOCATION OF THE KOREAN WAR BY THE U.S. IMPERIALISTS. THE DEFEAT OF THE AGGRESSIVE TROOPS

The U.S. imperialists, ignoring the just proposal of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of Republic for peaceful unification, tried to break the unswerving struggle of the entire Korean people. They instigated the Syngman Rhee

Tentativas de se iniciar uma Terceira guerra Mundial a partir da China e da Coreia

clique to start a surprise attack against the D.P.R.K. on June 25, 1950.

The provocation of the Korean war by the U.S. imperialists constituted a link of their policy, the policy of kindling a new war with wild scheme to dominate the world.

After World War II was over, they added fuel to the civil war in China for provoking another war.

They granted over 6 billion dollars of military "aid" to the Chang Kai-shek bandits.

However, their attempt ended in failure, as a result of the victory of Chinese people's revolution in October 1949. Internally the United States was confronted with further aggravation of economic crisis. The nation-wide struggle of the Korean people for achieving the peaceful unification of the country and powerful national salvation movement shook the Syngman Rhee puppet regime to its foundation. Consequently, the expansion policy of the U.S. imperialists towards Korea was faced with a grave crisis. In such situation, the U.S. imperialists who occupied South Korea made more frenziedly preparation for invading the D.P.R.K. and Asian mainland.

Already at the end of August 1948, the U.S. imperialists concluded the U.S.-R.O.K. Military Pact with Syngman Rhee puppet regime. They gave South Korea weapons worth 110 million dollars with which to arm the fourteen divisions of R.O.K. army.

They also took measures for "cleaning up" the rear. They intensified their policy of suppressing the South Korean people. From 1948 to 1949, they cruelly massacred more than 141,000 patriots. They went so far as to reduce to ashes 150,000 houses of the peaceful inhabitants, under the pretext of wiping out the partisans.

With the object of covering up the provocation of civil war in Korea, the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique caused armed conflicts along 38th parallel. The cases of their provocation numbered 1,863 in the period from January 1949 to December 15, 1949. They attempted to lay the blame on our government. In this period they were frantically preparing for a civil war.

In October 1949, at the interview with an American pressman, Syngman Rhee bragged that the R.O.K. army could occupy Pyongyang in three days.

The Syngman Rhee clique made a plan for provoking a civil war under the direction of the American military and political advisers. They received instructions from the U.S. high-ranking officials such as the Secretary of Defence Johnson, Chief of Joint Staff Bradley, the adviser to Secretary of State Dulles, etc.

One week before the civil war started, the warmonger Dulles visited the 38th parallel and inspected the Syngman Rhee army to take action against North Korea. On this occasion he instructed Syngman Rhee to start a civil war.

At daybreak of June 25, 1950, six days after Dulles' instruction was given, the Syngman Rhee puppet army started invasion on North Korea all along the 38th parallel. They attacked all along the line of Ongjin, Haijoo, Kumchun and Chulwon. The Korean People's Army made a heroic counter-attack and the enemy suffered an irrevocable loss.

At this movement, the U.S. imperialists started their open armed intervention according to their prepared plan. The U.S. imperialists mobilized their aircraft on June 26. The U.S. air force and navy took part in the Korean war on President Truman's order, which was issued on June 27.

In order to legalize their criminal aggressive action, they stole the sign-board of the United Nations. Thus they mobilized the armed forces of 15 countries which followed the lead of the United States—Britain, France, Australia, Canada, Turkey, New Zealand, the Union of South Africa, the Philippines, Greece, Columbia, Holland, Ethiopia, Belgium, Thailand and Luxemburg.

The U.S. imperialists calculated that their big ground, naval and air forces equipped with up-to-date technique could conquer Korea with no difficulty. They resorted to unprecedentedly destructive means.

The U.S. aggressors made barbarously bombed peaceful towns; brutally massacred innocent inhabitants; turned our country into a wilderness, thereby trying to conquer the Korean people.

But their desperate attempt bore no fruit. They could not put into practice their predatory plan. They could not bring the Korean people to submission.

The U.S. ruling circles were seized with panic, as their interventionist army was defeated and the world public opinion bore hard on them. They agreed to the proposal made by A. Y. Malik, the Soviet representative in the United Nations, in July 1951 and came to the truce talks.

The U.S. imperialists calculated on gaining at the truce talks what they could not gain in the battlefields. Whenever their crafty tactics were frustrated before the just and fair stand taken by the representatives of the Korean People's Army and the Chinese People's Volunteers, they resorted to every means —delaying tactics, blackmail, military pressure.

They met with the resolute attitude of the Korean People's Army and the Chinese People's Volunteers. Cornered, they resorted to all possible vicious means of massacring en masse the Korean people by chemical and bacteriological weapons in gross violation of international conventions.

The U.S. imperialists tortured brutally, killed, threw into the sea and used for the experimental object of chemical weapons thousands of the Korean and Chinese POWs who wished to return to their homelands.

They used all possible crafty and cruel means to attain their aggressive aims. However, they could not break the resolute attitude of our side at the armistice talks and at the front they were receiving a terrible blow. At last they were compelled to sign the armistice agreement in July 1953.

The U.S. imperialists spent 20 billion dollars and used 73,000,000 tons of war supplies. Over 1,093,000 manpower (over 397,000 U.S. hireling soldiers inclusive) were killed, wounded or captured.

The butcher General MacArthur admitted that the U.S. army suffered a serious defeat in the Korean war. The "U.S. News and World Report" wrote that the Korean war was the first war in which the United States failed to win victory.

The Korean war demonstrated before the world the great strength of the Korean people under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea, and the immense virility of the people's democratic system set up in the northern part of our country.

The victory won by the Korean people shows clearly that a people who rise up in defence of freedom and independence of their country can repulse any armed aggression of alien imperialists, provided they enjoy proletarian internationalist support and aid.

THE TIGHTENING OF U.S. MILITARY RULE OVER SOUTH KOREA AND PREPARATIONS FOR ANOTHER WAR IN THE POSTWAR PERIOD

The armistice achieved by the heroic struggle of the Korean people opened up a new prospect for the peaceful unification of the country—the cherished desire of the Korean people.

However, since the truce the U.S. imperialists have obstructed by every means the peaceful settlement of the Korean question and are frenziedly preparing for another aggressive war. This is evidenced by the "Joint Declaration of the 16 Countries", "ROK-U.S. Mutual Defence Pact" (concluded in August 1953), sabotage of the discussion on the Korean question at the Geneva Conference in 1954, "ROK-U.S. Agreement on Military and Economic Aid" (in November 1954), etc.

With the weakening of the political power of the Syngman Rhee's puppet government, and the further aggravation of internal contradictions, the U.S. imperialists openly supported the fascist policy in order to prolong the doomed life of the Syngman Rhee clique.

Under the patronage of the U.S. imperialists, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique suppressed ruthlessly the opposition groups within the ruling circles. For the purpose of strengthening Rhee's dictatorship, a wider scope was given to the authority of "President"; the "National Assembly" was forced to pass the decision on his life presidency; the functions of the "National Assembly" were restricted to serve as a subordinate organ of Rhee's administration.

In the postwar period the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique, under the U.S. manipulation, concluded more than ten agreements with the United States, including "ROK-U.S. Mutual Defence Pact" (August 1953), "ROK-U.S. Economic Agreement" (December 1953), and "ROK-U.S. Treaty of Friendship, Trade and Navigation" (November 1956)

It is clear to everyone that the Syngman Rhee clique have done all in their power to bring South Korea as a whole under U.S. subjugation.

In order to strengthen the fascist rule in South Korea, the Syngman Rhee clique have expanded the judicial and police mechanism. From the time of the truce up to 1956, the number of "thought police" had doubled. 22 prisons and 131 courts had been newly instituted or expanded. Now South Korea has become a notorious "police state" which has much more policemen than under Japanese imperialist rule.

The people are intensifying their struggle against the Syngman Rhee's fascist rule and driving the Syngman Rhee clique into a more acute political crisis. In the face of the growing strength of the South Korean people who struggle for the peaceful unification of the country against U.S. imperialism and Syngman Rhee's rule the Syngman Rhee clique are being isolated from the people and in the throes of an acute political crisis, which is further aggravated due to the scramble for political power within the ruling circles under the patronage of the U.S. imperialists.

In the 1956 elections for President and Vice-President, Syngman Rhee scraped together only 52 per cent of the total votes for all his trickery, intimidation and fraud and Chang Myen, the opposition leader, was elected Vice-President. On the occasion of elections to the fourth "House of Representatives" held in May 1958, the Syngman Rhee clique, faced with a serious political crisis, made a desperate attempt to amend the Constitution by securing the majority of more than two-thirds in the "National Assembly" in order to maintain their collapsing regime.

Despite all their outrageous repression, fraud and deception, the results of elections show clearly that the Syngman Rhee clique are isolated entirely from the broad sections of the people including the national bourgeoisie and traders, not to mention the masses of the working people.

The vicious U.S. imperialists are creating war troubles and fanning war psychosis. Their true aim is to prevent the collapse of the Syngman Rhee puppet government and to save the grave situation created by acute conflicts within the ruling circles under the fair name of "aid".

They have unreasonably refused to accept the just proposals made by the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of our Republic for the peaceful unification of the country. Moreover, they are constantly violating the armistice agreement and madly making preparations for another war.

They say that the truce in Korea means only temporary cessation of hostilities. They have by no means given up their scheme of attaining their aim by "strength".

The U.S. imperialists have unscrupulously violated the armistice agreement since the truce was signed. In violation of the mutual agreement on the repatriation of POWs they forcibly retained 48,000 POWs of our side and large numbers of civilians who were taken by force to South Korea.

They repeated provocations along the demarcation line. At Panmunjom our side filed protests numbering 758 from the time when the truce was signed to March 20, 1958.

The U.S. imperialists instigated the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique to perpetrate various provocative acts with a view to destroying the work of the Neutral Nations Supervisory Commission. In June 1956, they unilaterally suspended the legal activities of Neutral Nations Inspection Teams in South Korea.

The U.S. imperialists continued their scheme to perpetuate the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. army. And they have reinforced the ROK army as their cheap cannon fodder and tightened their control over the ROK army.

The ROK army had 16 divisions at the time the armistice was concluded. Now it has grown to 21 divisions (servicemen number 720,000) and, in addition, 10 reserve divisions. All these divisions are heavily armed with U.S. weapons. In all parts of South Korea they have set up and expanded aerodromes for F-100 jets, big aircraft capable of launching atomic warheads, and ROK air force. They have improved on a large scale naval bases on the east, west and south coasts.

On June 21, 1957, they unilaterally abrogated 13-d of the Korean Armistice Agreement which forbids the illegal introduction of combat weapons. They have been scheming to annul the Armistice Agreement as a whole. On July 1, 1957, they moved the infamous "United Nations Command" into South Korea. In October they regrouped their army into an "atomic division".

In January 1958, the U.S. imperialists conducted provocative "atomic manoeuvres" along the military demarcation line. Shortly afterward they introduced 280 mm. atomic guns and brought an "Honest John" rocket battalion into Korea.

All the preceding facts reveal the true nature of the sinister plots of the U.S. imperialists who are attempting to continue indefinitely their occupation of South Korea as a guided missile base and a "spearhead" of aggression.

The U.S. brutes occupying South Korea are insulting the people and committing cannibalistic outrages. They are subject to no law nor punishment. In April 1957, an armed gang of 80 U.S. military police made attack on a village in Pajoo County, Kyonggi Province. They looted about 2,300 articles from about 300 private houses and took away over 700 innocent people.

After this incident there were more than 100 cases of atrocities committed by the U.S. brutes and even now their barbarous acts do not cease.

THE DEPENDENCE OF SOUTH KOREA UPON U.S. IMPERIALISM AND BANKRUPTCY OF THE NATIONAL INDUSTRY

Since the war, the U.S. imperialists have given priority to their predatory policy of reinforcing the system of the military economy and of rationalizing the system of colonial plunder.

The war played havoc with the South Korean economy. When the truce was signed, it was faced with bankruptcy. The U.S. imperialists took advantage of this situation. Under the pretext of "reconstruction" they foisted on South Korea the agreements on the joint economy commission for economic reconstruction and financial adjustment (on December 14, 1953), on military and economic aid (on November 17, 1954), etc. In this way they militarized the South Korean economy and strengthened control of their "aid" fund. They decided arbitrarily the rate of exchanging the U.S. dollar with South Korean currency "whan". Fiscal expenditure is concentrated on military expenses; most part of the "counterpart" deposits are appropriated for the upkeep of the ROK army; the collapse of the national industry is accelerated by restricting loans.

On the other hand, under the pretext of establishing "a system of free economy", they elaborated a colonial system of prices depending on the supply of their "aid" goods; turned the "state-owned" or public enterprises into private ownership; opened the door to the inroad of U.S. capital.

Since the truce the U.S. imperialists forced the South Korean puppet government to create favourable conditions for the investment of U.S. private capital. The Syngman Rhee puppet government, the faithful executor of U.S. orders, exerted pressure on the "National Assembly" to pass the draft Amendment to the "Constitution", which expedited the turning of government-run enterprises into private management. An "agreement on the protection of investment of foreign capital" and the "law

on introduction of foreign capital" have been under contemplation for some time now.

In order to develop dependent capital which provides a prerequisite for investment of U.S. private capital, there was from 1954 an increase of loans to dependent capitalists under the name of "rationalization" of management. In November 1957 the "Trade Law" was enacted. It legalized the control of the South Korean foreign trade by the U.S. imperialists.

In November 1956, the U.S. imperialists concocted the "Treaty of Friendship, Trade and Navigation". This marked a change in their economic policy toward South Korea. In other words, stress was shifted from "aid" to loan and private capital investment. What results the U.S. predatory policy toward the South Korean economy produced is conclusively found in the aggravating colonial dependency and onesidedness in industry.

In 1956, South Korea depended on the United States for all capital goods; for over 80 per cent of the cement; 46 per cent of coal (100 per cent of coal for transport use); 95 per cent of cotton, and all chemical fertilizer, structural steel, and soda.

The U.S. imperialists made technical reorganization of the South Korean industry and transport, making it dependent on the U.S. industry.

The U.S. imperialists artificially separated industry from agriculture; thus the South Korean industry depended on the United States for raw materials while agriculture depended on the U.S. industry.

The complete subjugation of the South Korean industry to the United States has resulted in the general bankruptcy of South Korea's national industry.

In 1954 the total industrial output value dropped to two-thirds as compared with the closing years of Japanese imperialist domination; in 1955 it decreased to a half the year 1940; at present gross output of industry can meet home requirements to an extent of 20 to 30 per cent.

The colonial onesidedness and abnormality of the South Korean economy also find expression in the relatively small importance placed on industry, lack of balance in the structure of industrial branches and the small size management. Whereas the ratio between industrial and agricultural output in South Korea was approximately two to three in the last period of Japanese imperialist rule, it is now one to three.

As for the South Korean industry, the food processing and textile industries depending on the United States for raw materials, are, somewhat worthy of mentioning.

The small scale industry was on the decline after the end of war owing to its backwardness and the general crisis.

Here are some examples.

In November 1955, there were only seven factories employing as many as 1,000 workers each. Factories with less than 50 employees each accounted for 92.1 per cent of the total. Handicraft-type enterprises with less than 9 workers occupied 45 per cent of the total industrial enterprises in South Korea.

Most of industry is held by the capitalists subordinate to U.S. monopoly capital, while medium and small scale enterprises are on the verge of total collapse. For example, 1,176 medium and small scale enterprises went bankrupt in 1956. According to the investigation made by the Taihan Chamber of Commerce and Industry in 1957, of 6,529 medium and small enterprises 1,848 enterprises closed down and 3,394 reduced working hours. 62 per cent of bankruptcy and closure were caused by a shortage of funds; 20 per cent by the difficulty of sales; 18 per cent by an increase of taxes and insufficiency of raw materials and power.

Agriculture, like industry, has been in the grip of general crisis since the war.

In South Korea the peasants, who were inspired by the land reform carried out in North Korea, had a pressing demand for land. And the feudal landownership was faced with a general crisis of collapse. Under such circumstances, the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique enforced the spurious "agrarian reform" in April 1950. According to the reform the price of the land should be paid at the rate of 150 per cent of the ordinary harvest over the period of five years. However, during the war and in the postwar period they exacted annually 35 to 54 per cent of the highest yield under Japanese imperialist rule in the form of "redemption grain for the distributed land" and "land acquisition tax". As a result, the land fell again into the hands of landlords and usurers; and feudal landownership has been put on a firmer footing. This is the true nature of the so-called "agrarian reform".

According to doctored figures released by the Bank of Korea, sales of land numbered more than 10,000 at the end of 1954.

Since the "Agrarian Reform" was effected, the number of the petty peasant households has increased sharply.

Before the "Agrarian Reform" the tillers who owned less than one hectare of land occupied 65.3 per cent of the total peasant households, of which the tillers who owned half a hectare occupied 32.5 per cent. But in 1957, the former increased to 74.4 per cent, of which the latter to 44 per cent. The United States dumped its surplus farm produce (grains amounted to 13,080,000 suk in the period from 1956 to 1957). This accelerated the decline of the South Korean agriculture.

The cultivated land in South Korea was reduced by 310,000 jungbo in 1956 as compared with 1944. Production of rice decreased by 25 per cent, and wheat by 39 per cent in 1956 as compared with the average annual yields in the period 1936-40. Cotton yield also decreased to 35.8 per cent in 1956 as compared with the average annual yields in the period 1940-44, and decreased to 14.9 per cent in 1957.

Now South Korea, once a big grain producer, is reduced to a grain-deficient area facing chronic famine.

In 1956 the U.S. imperialists took a series of measures for intensifying the exploitation of the peasants. Proof of this is the "Regulations for Agricultural Association" and "Law on the Agricultural Bank". Through these apparatus they are planning to exploit mercilessly the South Korean peasants in a more organized manner.

The reduction of agricultural production and the general agricultural crisis have driven the South Korean people into reduced circumstances. Gross output of industry and agriculture dropped to approximately half as compared with the closing years of Japanese domination. In addition, nearly half of it is turned directly or indirectly to military expenditure.

Such being the case, it is quite natural that the people's living standards should drop sharply. Furthermore, the working people are subjected directly to double and treble exploitation by the U.S. imperialists and dependent capitalists. They are groaning under abject poverty.

The real wages of the South Korean workers show continued reduction; taking as 100 in 1954, the wages decreased by 26.3 per cent in 1955, and by 29.4 per cent in 1956.

As a result of "management rationalization" in the postwar period, mass dismissals increased, and work became harder. In the period from 1953 to 1956 the workers in the textile industry showed a 20 per cent decrease; they work for 10 to 12 hours a day and in some cases for 16 to 17 hours. The number of unemployed and semi-unemployed is 3,810,000 in January 1958.

The South Korean peasants are no better off than the workers. They have sunk to the depth of poverty. In January 1958, the peasants who occupy 70 per cent of the total population had a 40 per cent share in the national income.

Disregarding the position of the peasants, the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique raised the price of fertilizer 3.3 times (one third of the total amount defrayed by the peasants goes for the purchase of fertilizer). And they procured rice at the price below the production cost.

The practice of usury is prevailing in farm villages in South Korea, leading the peasants to dire straits. Today in South Korean villages farm households under the burden of onerous debts are 90 per cent of total farm-houses; in May 1953, the total sum of their debts reached 9 billion hwan, at the end of 1954 20 billion hwan, at the end of 1956 70 billion hwan, and in June 1957, even 100 billion hwan.

Under the 13 years of U.S. imperialist rule the farm villages in South Korea changed into an area of famine unprecedented in the world.

In the spring season before barley harvest, the foodless peasant households usually numbered more than 300,000. At the beginning of February 1958, there were 3,100,000 foodless peasants.

The sufferings of the South Korean people are not limited to the economic field. They are deprived of elementary democratic freedom and rights, and subjected to inhuman atrocities committed by the U.S. aggressors. Today the miserable conditions of the South Korean people are beyond description.

THE COLONIAL OBSCURITY POLICY UNDER U.S. IMPERIALIST RULE

The U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique have enforced their colonial obscurantism and destroyed the educational system, in order to suppress the political awakening of the South Korean people.

In the period 1954-56, they promulgated various evil laws

such as "The Standard Regulations for Establishment of University", "Closure of Unauthorized Schools", "Standard Regulations for Establishment of Middle and High Schools", "Regulations for Private Middle and High School Foundations" and "Standard Regulations for Establishment of Night High Schools". These laws meant the closure of schools and the drafting en masse of students into the puppet army.

For instance, 110 various schools merged in 1955; the primary school buildings were sold to profiteers under the name of "custodian property".

In 1956, 11 colleges were forced to abolish some departments or to suspend enrolment of new students. As a result, college students were reduced by 11,330 in only one year. In 1957, the situation grew worse. Two colleges closed down, and 26 lecture courses were abolished or merged.

In 1958, 61,023 class rooms at least are required for primary schools. They only have 32,850 class rooms, which means a shortage of 54 per cent of the total. Consequently, 264,455 children are barred from attending school. In addition, there are over 1,000,000 school-age children who cannot go to school and nearly 2,800,000 illiterates. This fact shows the grim situation of education in South Korea.

In November 1956, they abolished the "Measures for Postponing Conscription of Students", expediting the decline of South Korean education. South Korean students are pressganged into the army to serve as cannon fodder.

In this way the U.S. imperialists hampered the normal development of education in South Korea. They are reinforcing the system of slavish education. They are frenziedly spreading anti-communist venom and cosmopolitism. The evil consequences of their barbarous educational policy find expression in the sharp increase of criminal cases of youth and students.

According to doctored data published by the "Department of Justice" of the South Korean puppet government, there were 57,415 juvenile and student criminal cases between January 1954 and October 1957. As some South Korean publications rightly commented, schools in South Korea are not sacred palaces of learning but "places of despair" haunted with crime and decadence. Profiteers are making use of schools by imposing various financial burden upon students.

The U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique are not simply the destroyers of education, but arrant killers of Korean national culture and brazen plunderers of cultural heritages.

In July 1954, they attempted to draft the "Program for Simplification of Korean Letters" which aimed at stamping out the tradition of our national language. However, it met with a resolute objection of the general public and ended in failure.

In April 1955 the "Order on Exhibiting Cultural Treasures Abroad" was promulgated. Its true aim lies in legalizing the plunder of Korean cultural heritages by the U.S. imperialists. Since their occupation of South Korea, the U.S. imperialists seized about 70,000 cultural treasures. What is still worse, they are still frantically taking away our national treasures. All the facts reveal that the U.S. imperialists are not only aggressors, but also destroyers of civilization and downright robbers.

In the postwar period the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique did their best to suppress the patriotic spirit of the people, to stamp out the progressive elements and the time-honoured tradition of our culture, with a view to making the Korean people their colonial slaves. They pursued the policy of burying the Korean people in obscurity by popularizing the American brand civilization.

THE STRUGGLE OF SOUTH KOREAN PEOPLE AGAINST U.S. IMPERIALISM AND THE TRAITOROUS SYNGMAN RHEE CLIQUE

The South Korean people have tasted the bitterness of unbearable poverty and non-rights due to the colonial plunder, national humiliation, tyrannical oppression and cruel exploitation by the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique. In spite of all this, they made advance in the struggle for the improvement of their living standards, freedom, democratic rights, and the peaceful unification of the country.

Laws prohibit the South Korean workers from waging the political struggle. Struggle for their economic interests is strictly restricted by various laws and vicious repressive measures. Nevertheless, the South Korean workers did not succumb to fascist oppression. They have continued their struggle in various forms. Their action has become more positive since the D.P.R.K.

Supreme People's Assembly made public the appeal for the peaceful unification of the country in October 1954.

According to partial data found in the South Korean publications, big strikes were called for three months after the appeal of the Supreme People's Assembly was made public (from November 1954 to January 1955). Large numbers of miners in Nyungwul, Hwasoon, Onsung, and Samchuk and 30,000 railway workers launched strikes against slavish work and hunger wages.

Even according to insufficient data, labour troubles numbered 15 in the period from July to December in 1953; 44 in 1954; 55 in 1955; 96 in 1956; 93 in 1957.

Stimulated by the struggle of the workers, the South Korean peasants have continued their struggle against the plunder of the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique, against the turning of the farm land into military bases, and against collection of farm produce at cheaper prices than the production cost.

The South Korean students are stepping up their struggle against the militarization of schools and utilization of them for the profit-seeking purposes.

According to incomplete data reported in the South Korean publications, cases of the students' struggle for ensuring freedom and democracy in school exceeded 200 in the period from 1954 to the first half of 1957. Now their struggle is assuming a more active character. More and more youth and students are refusing to serve as cannon fodder for Syngman Rhee.

According to statistics of Syngman Rhee's police, draft evaders comprised 31 per cent of youth of conscriptional age in 1954. But they increased to 43.3 per cent in 1955. And over 80 per cent of the college graduates evaded in 1956.

Even according to doctored figures recently published by the South Korean authorities, the number of youth of conscriptional age evaded military service is more than 50,000. This fact tells how strong is the demand of the broad masses of youth and students for attaining the peaceful unification, and for ensuring democratic rights and freedom.

The urgent desire for the peaceful unification of the country is spreading even among the ROK army soldiers. Proof of this is the increase of ROK army soldiers who have come over to the northern part of our Republic.

At present the patriots in South Korea, encouraged by the

Declaration of the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea and the policy pursued by the Party and the government of the Republic, for accelerating peaceful unification, are waging an unflagging struggle for penetrating the policy into the wider sections of the masses of the people.

By using all available means of publicity such as letters and hand-bills, they are stirring up the South Korean people to push on the struggle against the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique. The "iron-fist rule" of Syngman Rhee who is refusing the peaceful unification of the country is evoking more protests and curses from the South Korean people. This is evidenced by the mass demonstrations in Seoul and Pusan on May 5, 1956, 10 days ahead of "Presidential Elections" and by the mass struggle against the "elections to the Fourth House of Representatives" held on May 2 this year.

The growing desire of the people for peaceful unification is causing unrest within the South Korean ruling circles.

The South Korean people have experienced the bitter hardships of colonial slaves and the tragic suffering of the fratricidal war forced upon them by the U.S. imperialists. Therefore, they are giving warm support and waging a more active struggle for carrying out the policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the Republic, the policy of converting the armistice into durable peace, of withdrawing U.S. army from South Korea, of solving the Korean question by the Koreans themselves without any foreign intervention in Korea's internal affairs, and of opening free travel and contacts between North and South Korea.

In face of the growing struggle of the South Korean people for peaceful unification and national independence, the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique naturally feel a deep apprehension about their colonial enslavement policy. They are, therefore, intensifying brutal terrorism and oppression in order to suppress the growing resistance of the people.

No amount of fascist oppression could break the staunch spirit of the South Korean people who have an ardent desire for attaining peaceful unification at the earliest possible date and demand resolutely democratic rights in all political and social fields.

In South Korea the forces in favor of peaceful unification are growing stronger with each passing day and demonstrating a mightier strength in the struggle against the U.S. imperialist aggressors and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique. It was reported that this year saw a number of labour troubles in South Korea. For example, longshoremen in Pusan and Mokpo, 30,000 railway workers waged a struggle for their economic interests; the workers employed by the Seoul Electricity Co. and the workers employed by the U.S. business agency "Korean Trade Corporation" in Inchon called strikes.

The struggle of workers is assuming a more organized and active form with each passing day. The struggle of the South Korean peasants, too, shows an upward swing. The workers' and peasants' movement has spured the South Korean people of all social strata to wage struggle against the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique.

The present situation in South Korea is characterized by a general crisis of the U.S. colonial rule and the further aggravation of contradictions between the U.S. imperialists and the Korean people.

Even though the Syngman Rhee clique under the aegis and control of the U.S. imperialists may resort to all available means for prolonging their remaining days, the Korean people, rallied firmly around the Korean Workers' Party and the D.P.R.K. government led by Comrade Kim Il Sung, will not fail to compel the U.S. army to withdraw from South Korea and attain the peaceful unification of the country.

CHAPTER III

STATE SYSTEM

THE FOUNDING OF THE D.P.R.K.

The liberation of the Korean people from Japanese imperialist colonial rule by the great Soviet Army opened a new chapter in their history.

From the first day of their liberation, the Korean people who had languished for nearly 40 years under the suppression and exploitation by the Japanese imperialists, set about realizing the idea set forth in Article I of the Programme of the Fatherland Restoration Association founded in the thirties by the staunch Korean Communists headed by Kim Il Sung and introducing the experience gained by the Communists in the struggle for establishing the people's government.

Right after liberation, the people's committees (now People's Assemblies), organs of people's power, were set up at the initiative of the Korean people throughout Korea. Then the Korean people embarked on putting the committees on a solid basis.

In February 1946, the North Korean Provisional People's Committee, a united revolutionary power, was established on the basis of the provincial people's committees, and carried out great democratic reforms under the leadership of the Party. The North Korean People's Assembly was formed by the first democratic elections held in November 1946, and in February 1947 the North Korean People's Committee was organized. From 1947 the people's committee set about developing the national economy in a planned way.

Thus the task of anti-imperialist and anti-feudal democratic revolution was completely fulfilled in the North and the transition to socialism began.

In contrast to the situation in North Korea, in South Korea the people's committees existed for a short span of time, and were dissolved by the suppression of the U.S. imperialists.

The U.S. imperialists and their puppet, the Syngman Rhee clique, attempted to convert South Korea into a complete colony and military base and to perpetuate the division of our country into two parts under the signboard of the "U.N." The Syngman Rhee gang in collusion with the U.S. imperialists enforced the treacherous separate elections in South Korea on May 10, 1948 in defiance of the resolute opposition of the entire Korean people, and concocted the puppet "National Assembly" and "Government."

In view of the critical situation, the Workers' Party of Korea called on the entire Korean people to wage a national salvation struggle. The task set before the Korean people was to force the U.S. imperialists to withdraw from South Korea and liquidate the Syngman Rhee lackeys; to safeguard the great achievements made in democratic reforms; to develop the northern half of the Republic into a solid democratic base for the complete independence and prosperity of the country and happiness of the people; to hold general elections through North and South Korea.

On August 25 of the same year nation-wide elections through the North and South were successfully conducted with the enthusiastic participation of the people throughout the North and South. The First Session of the Supreme People's Assembly convened in September 1948, adopted the Constitution of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea and proclaimed the founding of the D.P.R.K., and the people's government headed by Marshal Kim Il Sung was established.

CONSTITUTION

At the Third Session of the North Korean People's Assembly held on November 18, 1947, it was decided to prepare the temporary draft Constitution of Korea. For this purpose a committee was organized with the members of representatives of political parties and social organizations affiliated with the National United Front.

The Fourth Session of the North Korean People's Assembly called on February 6, 1948, resolved to submit the draft Constitution for nation-wide discussion. The discussion proceeded for nearly two and a half months from February 12 to April 25 with the active participation of the people throughout the North and South (more than 58,000 resolutions on approving it and 2,238 suggestions to revise and supplement it were received). Subsequently, the Extraordinary Session of the North Korean People's Assembly passed the draft Constitution on the condition that it should be endorsed by the highest legislative body which would be formed later.

The Constitution, enjoying the support of the people in the northern half of the Republic, carried out its functions. The First Session of the Supreme People's Assembly adopted unanimously the Constitution of the D.P.R.K. on September 8, 1948. Thus, the Korean people came to have for the first time in their history their own Constitution—fundamental laws for the good of people.

First, the Constitution of the D.P.R.K. consolidates legally the great revolutionary gains achieved in the northern part of the Republic, namely, democratic reforms in the domains of politics, economy and culture, and reflects the interests of the South Korean people who were endeavouring to establish the same system as ours.

Secondly, the spirit of democracy runs through the Constitution of the D.P.R.K. It ensures complete freedom and democratic rights for the citizens, which cannot be found in South Korea and other bourgeois countries.

The Constitution promulgates freedom and rights of the people not only for form's sake, but guarantees the realization of them. Comrade Kim Il Sung said:

"The fact that in North Korea exist the people's committees representing the interests of the people constitutes a solid guarantee for ensuring democratic freedom as declared by the Constitution. The fact that an important material basis came under the control of the people as a result of the nationalization of industries, transport, banks, and communications constitutes a material guarantee for ensuring democratic freedom." (Kim Il Sung, Selected Works, Korean ed., Vol. 2, p. 251)

Only when the people take the power into their hands and control the main means of production, can the people enjoy their freedom and truly exercise their rights.

The Constitution of the D.P.R.K. has a true popular character. The Constitution which fully accords with the will and interests of the Korean people, is a powerful guarantee for victory in the struggle for attaining the independence of the country, for strengthening the democratic base.

Particularly, the Constitution signifies a symbol of emancipation and a banner of struggle for the South Korean people who are groaning under the rule of the American imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique.

STATE AND SOCIAL SYSTEM

Basic principles of the state and social system to which the Constitution attaches special significance are set forth in Chapter I of the Constitution.

Article I of the Constitution states:

"Our state is the Democratic People's Republic of Korea." Article II states: "The state power of the D.P.R.K. belongs to the people."

The Constitution declares that our Republic is a state of people's democratic dictatorship established on the basis of the worker-peasant alliance under the leadership of the working class. What is meant by people is the working class, the class which is the most advanced class in society, the peasantry, its most reliable ally, and the petty bourgeoisie and anti-imperialist, anti-feudal national bourgeoisie under the leadership of the working class. In the D.P.R.K. the state power belongs to the people and the people exercise systematically their power through the Supreme People's Assembly and local people's assemblies.

People's assemblies (people's committees prior to adopting the constitutional laws of local organs of state power) are a new type of organs of people's power and a new form of government established at the revolutionary initiative of the Korean people after liberation by the heroic Soviet Army which liquidated the old Japanese colonial governmental machinery. The people's assemblies, under the guidance of the W.P.K. and Kim Il Sung, have been rapidly consolidated and developed in the North under the favourable conditions created by the Soviet Army, and

have become a firm political foundation of the Republic.

The people's assemblies are genuinely representative organs of the people and the mass and revolutionary organizations of the people themselves.

The people's assemblies represent directly the people and their sovereignty and exercise full power.

The people's assemblies not only adopt state decisions but also organize and guarantee the work of implementing them through their standing or temporary committees, executive organs and other organs subordinate to them.

The people's assemblies organize directly or indirectly all the state organs including their executive and judicial organs, give them appropriate powers and supervise their activities. In other words all the state organs are branches stemming from the people's assemblies which organize elections to the state organs or appoint personnel.

Thus, the system of the sovereign state power organ in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea is the backbone and foundation of the system of all other state organs.

As mentioned above, the people's assemblies are directly subordinate to the people, and all other state organs are indirectly subordinate to them through the people's assemblies and responsible to the people for their activities. The state organs carry out their functions with the direct participation of the people in state administration and under their supervision. Thus, all our state organs have taken deep root among the broad popular masses. Relying on the masses, they carry on their work, thereby forming kindred ties with them. Herein lies the source of their inexhaustible vitality.

People's assemblies and state organs are organized on the basis of democratic centralism: the lower are subordinate to the higher and the local to the central.

Based on the principle of combining special interests of each locality with the national interests, this democratic centralism allows the provinces and local popular masses to display to the full their initiative, independent spirit, and activity. On the other hand, it concentrates leadership and planning in the central organs, establishes strict state disciplines and firmly secures nation-wide unity in action.

All the state power organs on the basis of the system of people's assemblies, headed by the Supreme People's Assembly, form a monolithic system, champion the interests of the people and ensure unbreakable unity in their action.

The state life in the Republic is led by the Workers' Party of Korea, the vanguard of the toiling masses, the core of which is the working class.

The Workers' Party of Korea is the leading and guiding force of the Korean people. The W.P.K. led by Comrade Kim Il Sung applies creatively Marxist-Leninist theories to the reality of Korea and guarantees democracy in the activities of the state organs, thereby giving them invincible might. The state power organs serve as the faithful executors of the general line of the Party, are an indispensable means of effecting its policy and a powerful weapon of revolution.

The representative organs of the people from ri people's assemblies to the Supreme People's Assembly are elected by the free will of the people. The elections to the people's assemblies are conducted on the basis of universal, equal and direct suffrage by secret ballot.

According to the general election principle every citizen of the D.P.R.K. who has reached the age of 18, irrespective of sex, nationality, social origin, religious belief, length of residence, property status and education, has the right to elect and be elected to the people's assemblies at all levels. Persons who are deprived of the electoral right by the decision of a court, insane persons and persons who are placed under arrest by the decision of a court or with the sanction of a procurator's office have no right to elect and to be elected. Electors participate in elections with equal right and each elector has one vote. All constituencies have the same ratio of population and each elects one deputy.

Based on the direct election principle, every elector casts directly a vote for a candidate for deputy by secret ballot, thus being guaranteed complete freedom of expressing his will.

Not only political parties and social organizations may nominate candidates for deputy, but also employees' general meetings of enterprises, offices, and transport services as well as citizens' and armymens' meetings can do so.

Political parties and social organizations have also the right to nominate jointly a candidate for deputy. In the past elections, those who enjoy confidence of the people were nominated jointly. Deputies of the people's assemblies are representatives who are elected with the active participation and ardent support of the people themselves.

The people's assemblies comprise as their members the sons and daughters of the people representing all social strata. The overwhelming majority of deputies are representatives of political parties and social organizations under the United Democratic Fatherland Front with members of the Workers' Party of Korea in the van, workers and peasants. For example, 215 deputies representing all social strata were elected to the Supreme People's Assembly held on August 27, 1957.

The Democratic People's Republic of Korea, relying on its state apparatus and revolutionary social forces, is building socialism in the North for the further strengthening of its democratic base, a real guarantee for the implementation of the supreme task confronting the Korean people — the peaceful unification of the fatherland.

The economic system reflected in the Constitution is the material basis of people's power organs. The ownership of the means of production prescribed in the Constitution of the D.P.R.K., which is the basis of the relations of production, takes the following forms: state ownership, cooperative ownership and private ownership. (Paragraph I, Article V of the Constitution)

State and cooperative ownership in the D.P.R.K. is two forms of socialist ownership. State ownership is a higher form of socialist ownership, because the property is owned by the entire people headed by the working class.

The state owns the most important basic means of production in the national economy, such as mines and other mineral wealth, forests, territorial waters, major enterprises, banks, railways, water and air transport facilities, communications, water-works and natural energy.

Besides these, all the property which formerly belonged to the Japanese government, Japanese nationals and pro-Japanese elements, is also owned by the state. Foreign trade is conducted by the state or under its supervision.

Our state ownership has come into being by confiscating free of charge and nationalizing industries, railways, transport and communications and banks owned by the Japanese imperialists, pro-Japanese, and national traitors.

The ownership of cooperative organizations is that of respective cooperatives, that is, collective ownership of working people who voluntarily organized cooperatives. It has come into existence by socializing voluntarily means of production owned by members of cooperatives.

Cooperatives are also allowed to own land and no limit is imposed on its acreage. The Party and the government pay special attention to the development of cooperative economy and give guidance and assistance to them, protecting by law the cooperative ownership in strict observance of voluntary principles.

The state also protects private ownership of the means of production by law. And the right to inherit private property is ensured by law.

The state encourages creative initiative in private economy. There are two kinds of private ownership: one is for the working people: the other, for exploiters. Land holds special place in private ownership. Only the tillers are allowed to own land. The maximum extent of their land ownership is 5 to 20 jungbo. But selling, buying or mortgaging of the distributed land is prohibited. The state gives help to private economy and at the same time guides it toward the road of cooperativization on voluntary principles. Under the guidance of the Party, the planning of the national economy is carried out by the state. With a view to utilizing rationally in the interests of the people all the domestic economic resources and all potentialities, the state works out a single national economic plan and strives for the development of the national economy and culture according to the plan.

In putting into effect the national economic plan, the state, with a powerful weapon of state ownership, carries out the national economic plan on the basis of state and cooperative ownership and allows private economy to participate in it.

THE HIGHEST ORGAN OF STATE POWER

The highest organ of state power in the D.P.R.K. is the Supreme People's Assembly.

The legislative power of the state is exercised exclusively by the Supreme People's Assembly, the highest organ of state power. The Supreme People's Assembly is the true highest representative organ composed of deputies of the people elected on the basis of the most democratic election principles.

The Supreme People's Assembly is elected at the ratio of one deputy for every 50,000 population throughout the country. Deputies of the Supreme People's Assembly are elected for a term of four years. Prior to the expiration of the term of office of the Supreme People's Assembly its Presidium shall arrange the holding of elections to the succeeding Supreme People's Assembly. On August 27, 1957 the elections to the Second Supreme People's Assembly were successfully carried out, demonstrating the monolithic unity of the people rallied around the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the D.P.R.K. 99.99 per cent of the entire electors participated in the elections and 99.92 per cent of them voted for the registered candidates. The Second Supreme People's Assembly elected is composed of 215 deputies in total — representatives of all strata with workers and peasants occupying the overwhelming majority of deputies — 84 deputies from workers, 68 from peasants, 60 from office workers and intellectuals and 3 from enterprisers and merchants. (27 women are among the deputies.)

The Supreme People's Assembly represents the sovereignty of the Korean people and exercises the supreme state power. The following powers are exercised exclusively by the Supreme People's Assembly:

1. to approve and amend the Constitution;
2. to establish basic principles of the domestic and foreign policies;
3. to approve the national economic plan and the state budget;
4. to establish and revise administrative districts;
5. to exercise the right of amnesty;
6. to approve decrees adopted by the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly;
7. to elect the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly;
8. to form the Cabinet;
9. to elect the Supreme Court;
10. to appoint the Procurator-General.

The basic and most important task of the Supreme People's Assembly is to exercise the legislative power. Laws enacted by the Supreme People's Assembly reflect directly the will of the Korean people and have the supreme legal validity.

The Supreme People's Assembly also exercises the supreme power of supervising the Cabinet, the Supreme Court, and the Supreme Procurator's Office. The main legal form of the Supreme People's Assembly is ordinary and extraordinary sessions. Ordinary sessions are convened twice a year by the decision of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly. Extraordinary sessions are convened by the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly when it deems necessary or on the demand of over one third of the deputies. The legislature of the Supreme People's Assembly goes through four stages: draft laws are submitted for consideration; the draft laws are examined; draft laws are adopted; and laws are promulgated.

The Supreme People's Assembly may organize permanent or temporary committees as its auxiliary organs which may inspect the lower state organs or the organs subordinate directly to them.

At the First Session of the Second Supreme People's Assembly, the Judicial, Budgetary, Foreign Affairs, and Credentials Committees were organized.

The deputy to the Supreme People's Assembly has the right to vote. He is ensured the right to address questions to the Cabinet and ministries and other economic and cultural organs, in case he considers it necessary for the performance of his duties, and to have appropriate answers in oral or written form from the organs concerned. The deputies to the Supreme People's Assembly are also ensured inviolability as deputies.

The duties of the deputies are to represent the will of the people and to be organizers who realize the spirit of laws. The deputies should report regularly on their activities to the electors. Electors may recall their deputies prior to the expiration of the term of office if the latter betrays former's confidence.

As mentioned above, the Supreme People's Assembly represents directly the will of the people and exercises systematically the highest state power.

The Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly is the highest organ of state power when the Supreme People's Assembly is not in session. The Presidium is the highest organ of state power which performs ordinary functions of the supreme power.

The Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly is the sovereign power based on a council system. The Presidium is composed of a Chairman, Vice-Chairmen, a Secretary-General and its members.

The Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly is elected at the first session of the Supreme Peopl's Assembly and exercises its power until the holding of election to a new Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly.

The Presidium exercises the following important functions in relation to domestic and foreign matters:

1. convening the Supreme People's Assembly and promulgating laws adopted by the Supreme People's Assembly.
2. supervising the execution of the Constitution and laws, interpreting the Constitution and laws and issuing decrees.
3. supervising the activities of the Cabinet and annulling decisions and orders of the Cabinet which contravene the Constitution or laws.
4. appointing ministers on recommendation by Premier when the Supreme People's Assembly is not in session, subject to subsequent confirmation by the Supreme People's Assembly.
5. exercising the right of pardon.
6. awarding orders and medals and conferring titles of honour.
7. ratifying or annulling treaties concluded with foreign countries, appointing or recalling ambassadors and ministers to foreign states, and receiving letters of credence and recalling diplomatic representatives accredited to it by foreign states.

The Presidium issues decrees to carry out its functions. It is responsible to the Supreme People's Assembly for its activities and is under its authority.

The Supreme People's Assembly re-elects, whenever it deems necessary, some or all of the members of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly.

THE CABINET

The central executive organs of state power in the D.P.R.K. are the Cabinet, Ministries (or Committees) and organs under the direct control of the Cabinet. The Cabinet is the highest executive organ of the Supreme People's Assembly and the state administrative organ.

The Cabinet is organized by the Supreme People's Assembly and is composed of a Premier, Vice-Premiers, Ministers, and Chairmen of the Committees. At the First Session of the Second Supreme People's Assembly the continuation of Comrade Kim Il Sung in premiership was unanimously decided and the Cabinet was formed of 30 members.

The Cabinet convenes a general council or executive meetings. The general council is composed of all members of the Cabinet and the executive meeting is formed of Premier and Vice-Premiers. The Premier, head of the government of the D.P.R.K., convenes and presides over the cabinet meeting. In the absence of Premier from the office for any reason, the Vice-Premier under the direction of the Premier exercises in behalf of Premier equal with the Premier.

The Cabinet is an organ based on the council system. Cabinet decisions are adopted by a majority vote and the decisions adopted by the Cabinet are published with the signatures of the Premier and Ministers concerned.

The Cabinet has the right to promulgate decisions and orders in accordance with the Constitution and laws; and directs and inspects their execution.

The Cabinet controls and directs the work of all ministries, organs under its direct control and local people's committees.

The Cabinet may annul ordinances and regulations of the Ministers, decisions and directives of the provincial people's committees in case these contravene the Constitution, laws and decrees or decisions and orders issued by the Cabinet.

The Cabinet exercises the following powers: to conduct general guidance in the sphere of relations with foreign states and conclude treaties with them; to control foreign trade; to set up the monetary and credit system; to draw up a general state budget and to fix taxation and other revenue included in the state and local budgets; to direct state industrial and commercial establishments, agricultural administrative organs and state transport and communication organs; to adopt measures for maintenance of public order; to take measures for the improvement of material and cultural standards of the people; to direct

the formation of the Korean People's Army. Thus, its tasks are of great importance and its power covers a wide range.

The Cabinet is under the supervision of the Supreme People's Assembly and is responsible to the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly when the Supreme People's Assembly is not in session.

MINISTRIES (COMMITTEES)

Ministries (committees) and other organs subordinate to the Cabinet, are central executive organs of state power in their respective branches.

The functions of ministries are to direct their respective branches of state administration within the jurisdiction of the Cabinet. At the First Session of the Second Supreme People's Assembly, the Law on Cabinet Formation was revised. Now the Cabinet is composed of 24 ministries and two committees.

In addition to ministries, there are some organs subordinate to the Cabinet.

The establishment or abolition of a ministry is decided by the Supreme People's Assembly. When the Supreme People's Assembly is not in session, it needs the approval of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly, which must later be endorsed by the Supreme People's Assembly. The organization or abolition of organs subordinate to the Cabinet is decided by the Cabinet.

The minister is the head of the ministry and is a member of the Cabinet with a vote. He is responsible to the Cabinet for his activities. The ministers exercise one-man control over their respective branches of administration. The ministers are singly responsible for the work entrusted to them, and at the same time have full power to direct their respective branches.

The minister may, within the limits of his authority, issue ministerial ordinances or regulations whose execution is binding, and directs and inspects their execution.

Heads of organs subordinate to the Cabinet are not members of the Cabinet, but carry out activities in a way similar to ministries.

LOCAL POWER ORGANS

Local power organs are organized in accordance with local administrative divisions, — provinces, cities, counties (districts), ri (township or workers' settlements). The local people's assemblies at all levels are genuinely representative organs of the people. The local people's assemblies at all levels are composed of deputies directly elected by the people on a democratic basis. The provincial people's assemblies are elected for a term of 4 years and the people's assemblies of cities, counties (districts), ri (township and workers' settlements) for a term of 2 years. The present local people's assemblies were formed by the elections held in November 1956.

Deputies to the local people's assemblies at all levels number over 10,000, of which 2,428 are workers, 2,528 office employees, 695 intellectuals, 3,616 members of agricultural co-operatives, 386 individual peasants, 212 members of producers' or fishing co-operatives, 233 enterprisers or merchants, 210 men of religion and others 47. 2,100 are women deputies.

The local people's assemblies at all levels are an integral part of the state power system based on democratic centralism as well as self-governing. They are power organs which exercise full power within the limits of powers vested in them by law.

Taking into account the concrete conditions and will of the people in their respective localities the local people's assemblies adopt appropriate decisions in accordance with laws, decrees, and decisions and directives of the Cabinet and ministry level organs. The local people's assemblies also direct and supervise all activities in economic, public and cultural fields, approve economic plans and budgets in their respective districts, and protect state and public property, maintain public order and ensure freedom and rights of citizens. The local people's assemblies elect and recall their respective people's committees (including courts), and supervise the activities of all organs subordinate to them, including state-owned enterprises and co-operative organizations.

The local people's assemblies at higher levels may annul and revise decisions and directives of the people's assemblies and people's committees at lower levels. The local people's assemblies at all levels may organize permanent or temporary committees as auxiliary bodies. The first session of local people's assemblies at all levels elected in the elections to local power organs held in November 1956 organized permanent committees for popular education, local construction and budget, which are now functioning. These committees are playing an important role in helping the people's assemblies to draw the broad masses into state administration and strengthen the ties with the broad masses of the working people. The local people's committees at all levels are the executive organs of the people's assemblies at the corresponding levels and local administrative organs of the state. The local people's committees at all levels are elected by people's assemblies at the corresponding levels and each consists of a chairman and vice-chairmen, a secretary-general and committee members.

The election and recall of chairman of Provincial People's Committee require the ratification of the Cabinet, and election and recall of chairmen of people's committees at other levels require the ratification of a higher level of people's committees.

The people's committees at all levels adopt decisions and directives in accordance with laws and decrees, and decisions, orders and directives of a higher level of organs, and decisions of people's assemblies at the corresponding levels.

The people's committees at all levels are not only accountable to the people's assemblies at the corresponding levels for their activities, but also to people's committees at higher levels and to the Cabinet.

COURTS AND PROCURATOR'S OFFICES

The primary aim of our courts and procurator's offices is to ensure the accurate enforcement of people's democratic laws.

Cases are tried by courts. The task of courts is to protect by law from all encroachments the people's democratic state and social system, state and public property, and all rights and interests of state power organs, state-owned enterprises, co-operative organizations and citizens; to ensure the strict observance and execution of state laws by state power organs, government employees and citizens.

Courts examine and pass judgement on criminal as well as civil cases.

The courts also play an important role in educating the working people in new socialist discipline.

The courts apply a penalty to a criminal not merely for the sake of punishing him but also for re-educating him. By drawing the popular masses extensively into the court proceedings, the courts foster the law-abiding spirit of citizens and enhance an educational role of trial with emphasis on loyalty to the fatherland and the people, on accurate execution of laws, on protection of state and public property, on love for labour and respect for people's democratic public order.

Cases are tried by the Supreme Court, the courts of provinces, cities and counties and special courts (court martial and transport courts).

Most of cases are tried at first by the people's courts of cities or counties. The people's courts of provinces try important cases as the first trial, and examine appeals and complaints of people's courts of cities or counties.

The Supreme Court is the highest judicial organ and supervises the judicial work of all courts.

The courts of the Republic are organized on genuinely democratic principles; the way of electing judges and people's assessors has no parallel in capitalist countries; cases are tried in public; the right to defence is guaranteed; judges are independent, subject only to the law; and equal rights to all citizens in trial are granted.

Procurators exercise the right to ensure precise and honest observance and execution of law by all ministries, subordinate institutions and organizations as well as by officials and citizens.

Procurators supervise if the ordinances and regulations of all ministries and the decisions and directives of local organs of state power conform to the Constitution, laws and decrees, as well as to the decisions and orders of the Cabinet. Procurators bring suits against criminals in the name of the state, and participate in civil cases to protect the interests of the state and citizens.

Procurator's organs are the Supreme Procurator's Office, procurator's offices of provinces and procurator's offices of cities and counties (districts). Procurator's offices are organized and carry on their work on the principle of powerful democratic centralism.

Procurator's offices and courts, strengthening close ties with the broad masses of the people, carry out their task with co-operation of, and under control of, the popular masses.

FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS AND DUTIES OF CITIZENS

Fundamental rights and duties of citizens, one of the most valuable gains won by the Korean people, are provided for in the Constitution of the D.P.R.K.

In our country the rights and duties of citizens are ensured by the Constitution. The citizens may display fully the inexhaustible revolutionary creativeness and enjoy freedom of individuality, and be ensured their physical as well as mental development.

The Constitution guarantees the people full democratic rights and freedom without any restriction in all political, economic, cultural and social life. All citizens of the D.P.R.K., irrespective of sex, nationality, religious belief, property status or education, have equal rights in all domains of state life. Women are accorded equal rights with men. The state protects specially mothers and children. Marriage and family life are under the protection of the state. The child born out of wedlock has equal rights with the child born in wedlock.

The national minorities who have citizenship of the D.P.R.K. have equal rights with Koreans, and are entitled to use their mother tongues and develop their own national culture.

The D.P.R.K. citizens have broad political rights. All citizens (including servicemen of the Korean People's Army) who have reached the age of 18 have the right to elect and to be elected to organs of state power.

Citizens have freedom of speech, the press, association, mass meeting and demonstration. Citizens are guaranteed the right to organize and join any political party and social organization. Citizens have freedom of religious belief and of conducting religious services. Citizens are guaranteed inviolability of the person and have the right to submit petition and make complaints to any government authority.

The citizens of the D.P.R.K. have also a wide range of economic rights.

The citizens of the D.P.R.K. are guaranteed the right to employment and protected from dismissal from their jobs without reason. They enjoy the right to equal pay for equal work in the state organs, state enterprises, co-operative organizations and the privately-owned enterprises. Citizens have the right to rest. The right to rest is ensured by the establishment of an eight-hour day for workers and office employees (seven- or six-hour day for workers engaging in harmful labour and for juveniles) and by the institution of paid vacations.

Citizens who are entitled to the benefit of social insurance have the right to material assistance in old age and in case of sickness or disability. The right is ensured in the form of medical service or material assistance by social insurance.

Citizens of the D.P.R.K. have the right to education. In 1956 the compulsory primary school education system at government expense was introduced. In the First Five-Year Plan period compulsory seven-year school education will be enforced. The state ensures free education for poor children. A system of state stipends is applied to the vast majority of students of technical and higher educational establishments.

Citizens of the D.P.R.K. have the freedom to engage in scientific and artistic pursuits. Copy-right and patent right of inventions are protected by law.

Citizens have the freedom of running medium and small industrial enterprises and engage in commerce.

The D.P.R.K. affords the rights of asylum to foreign nationals persecuted for fighting for democratic principles or national liberation movement, or for the interests of the working people or for freedom of scientific and cultural activities.

Every citizen of the D.P.R.K. has his duties alongside his rights. Only by fulfilling his duties can he be ensured his full freedom and rights. The legal standard coincides with moral standard. The Korean people, therefore, are consciously mobilized to carry out their duties with a sense of honour.

It is the primary duty of every citizen to observe the Constitution and laws of the D.P.R.K., the expression of their free will and a reflection of the policy of the Workers' Party of Korea. To foster the law-abiding spirit is of special significance in the struggle against the enemy. The people observe precisely and sincerely the Constitution, laws and ordinances, state and labour discipline, inner order and regulations, and wage a resolute struggle against the slightest violation of them. It is impossible to think of freedom and happiness without the fatherland. The fatherland is the most precious. Therefore, to defend the fatherland is the highest duty and honour of every citizen of the D.P.R.K.

It is the duty of every citizen of the D.P.R.K. to work. In the D.P.R.K. work is a matter of honour to every citizen for the prosperity and development of the fatherland and for promotion of the material and cultural welfare.

Today, the conscious attitude of the popular masses toward work is being manifested in their patriotic emulation movement for increased production, expansion of ranks of production renovaters and enhancement of labour productivity in fulfilling the First Five-Year Plan.

It is the duty of every citizen of the D.P.R.K. to pay taxes for functioning state power organs.

CHAPTER IV

POLITICAL PARTIES AND PUBLIC ORGANIZATIONS

THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA

The Workers' Party of Korea is an organized force standing in the van of the working masses of our country—the working class, toiling peasantry and working intellectuals. It is a popular political party representing and championing the interests of the Korean nation and the entire working people of Korea.

Guided by the theory of Marxism-Leninism in its activities, the Workers' Party of Korea is a political party inheriting the revolutionary tradition of the Korean people who fought against the Japanese and other colonialists for the national independence and liberation of our country.

The aims and tasks of the Workers' Party of Korea are stipulated in Article I of the Rules of the Party, as follows:

"The immediate aim of the Workers' Party of Korea lies in carrying out the tasks of anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution on a nation-wide scale, and its ultimate aim in building a communist society.

"The Workers' Party of Korea struggles for the liberation of the southern half of our country from the American imperialist aggressive forces and the internal reactionary rule, and for the attainment of the complete unification of the country on a democratic basis by firmly uniting the broad popular masses of North and South Korea around itself, and by strengthening the united front with the participation of the patriotic, democratic forces of all walks of life in Korea on the basis of the alliance of workers and peasants.

"The Workers' Party of Korea successfully carries on the building of socialism in the northern half of our country by consolidating the people's democratic system, strives for the steady growth of production and the improvement of the material and cultural life of the people, and for the acceleration of the unification of the country by politically and economically strengthening the democratic base.

"The Workers' Party of Korea struggles for the training of the Party members and the toiling masses in the spirit of patriotism and proletarian internationalism, for the consolidation of the internationalist solidarity of the Korean people with the peoples of the great Soviet Union, China and other People's Democracies as well as with the toiling people of all countries, for the strengthening of friendship with all nations which support the unification and independence of our country and with all peace-loving peoples, and for a lasting peace in Asia and the world."

Today the Workers' Party of Korea is playing the role of the pilot and leader in all domains of state and social life of our country with its membership of over one million. The Party is being consolidated still further and is developing with every passing day into a more powerful mass political party with the whole Party rallied firmly around its Central Committee and with the entire people rallying around the Party.

This consolidation and development has been attained thanks to the fact that the Party has staunch Communists led by Comrade Kim Il Sung as its leading core, to the correctness of the Party policies, and to the resolute fights waged by the Party against the enemies at home and abroad and against the factional elements, alien elements, and all descriptions of opportunists within the Party in defence of the unity and solidarity of Party ranks.

The movement for national liberation and the labour movement made rapid progress in Korea under the impact of the great October Socialist Revolution in Russia, paving the way for the founding in 1925 of the Korean Communist Party. The Party, however, ceased to exist as an organized force in 1928, for it could not maintain its ranks any longer owing to the anti-Marxist, non-class sectarian conflicts of the factional elements and all shades of opportunists within the Party and to the harsh suppression by the Japanese imperialists.

In the thirties of the present century, when the Japanese imperialists further intensified the fascist rule over Korea and the positions of the Korean people were further aggravated, the staunch Communists led by Comrade Kim Il Sung, developing the revolutionary labour and peasant movement assuming the form of mass uprising into a more active struggle, an armed struggle, launched the anti-Japanese partisan struggle and thus paved the way, organizationally and ideologically, for founding a Marxist-Leninist Party, establishing the brilliant traditions of the revolutionary movement in Korea.

But the Korean working class did not have a united Party of its own when liberation came. After liberation, the revolutionary enthusiasm of the Korean people showed an unprecedented uplift, which provided the possibility for forming a Marxist-Leninist Party, a Party of new type, representing the interests of the working class.

However, the territorial split of the country caused by the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. imperialists, threw tremendous impediments in the way to the founding of a Marxist-Leninist Party in our country.

On the basis of a correct analysis of the situation created in our country after liberation, the staunch Communists led by Comrade Kim Il Sung formed the North Korean Organizing Committee of the Communist Party of Korea in October 1945, taking advantage of the favourable conditions provided by the Soviet forces stationed at that time in North Korea.

Thereafter the Party, a genuine Marxist-Leninist Party, began to rally broad revolutionary, democratic forces around itself. Later, in keeping with the development of our revolution the Communist Party and the New Democratic Party of North Korea merged in August 1946, into the Workers' Party of North Korea, a mass political party of a more developed form which united and brought together the scattered revolutionary forces.

In South Korea, despite the fact that a situation decisively favourable for the Communists had been created after liberation, those factional elements who wrecked our communist movement before liberation indulged in carrying on sectarian activities and in sowing discord among the working masses. Though the merger into the Workers' Party of South Korea was carried out in November 1946, it did not go beyond a nominal change owing to the machinations of the sectarian elements.

Continued manoeuvres of the sectarian elements and subversive activities of spies that had sneaked into the Party caused split and disintegration of the Party ranks.

In the light of the situation, in 1949 it became necessary to strengthen Party work in the southern half and to bring the Workers' Parties of North and South Korea under an integrate, single leadership. To this end, the Workers' Parties of North and South Korea, which had so far been functioning separately out of necessity (in actuality they were one and the same party), were merged into the Workers' Party of Korea in 1949.

The accumulated might of the Korean people, built up in the struggle for organizational and ideological consolidation of the Party in the period of peaceful construction, constituted the secure guarantee for their victory in the righteous Fatherland Liberation War against the armed invasion of the U.S. imperialists and treacherous Syngman Rhee clique.

During the trying war time, which was a test to the unity and sturdiness of the Party ranks, the Workers' Party of Korea maintained unity in thought and in will and secured concerted action of its ranks by taking correct political line and organizational steps. It called the entire people to the struggle for victory in the war. Thus, the Korean people won a glorious victory.

The role of the Workers' Party as organizer and mobilizer was further promoted in the postwar reconstruction period.

The Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea, held in April 1956, is of great significance in the development of the history of our country. The Congress adopted the programme for future struggle of the Party and the people on the basis of profound, scientific analysis of the present developments and future prospects of the Korean revolution. The Congress set forth more concrete ways for the peaceful unification and independence of the country, and outlined the basic line of the First Five-Year Plan for socialist construction in the North, the material guarantee for the unification of the fatherland.

Today the entire Party members and people, rallied firmly round the Workers' Party of Korea and its Central Committee, are displaying all their creativeness and devotion to implementing the Party policies.

It is solely because the Party had staunch Communists led by Comrade Kim Il Sung as the leading core that unity in thought and will and concerted action of the Party ranks were ensured, and that the Party ranks were strengthened and united firmly. It is also to be explained by the fact that not only the political lines and policies of the Party in each stage of the development of our revolution have been correct, but also the Leninist standards of Party life based on democratic centralism and revolutionary disciplines have been correctly adhered to.

Since its first day, the Party has persistently fought for the elimination of alien elements and opportunists who had sneaked into it, for the purpose of the ideological and organizational consolidation of the Party. The Party thus uncovered and disposed of the Pak Hun Yung-Li Seung Yup clique, hireling spies of the U.S. imperialists and anti-Party sectarian elements; delivered a blow to Huh Gai, Pak Il Woo and other anti-Party sectarian elements; exposed and shattered the criminal acts of the anti-Party sectarian elements headed by Choi Chang Ik and Pak Chang Ok, who schemed of late to make an anti-Party, anti-revolutionary debouchment, in keeping with the manoeuvres of international revisionism and the "anti-Soviet, anti-Communist" campaigns developed by the imperialists. It was a historical task lying before the Korean working class after liberation to eliminate various shades of factions that had not been dealt with in the pre-liberation days through a struggle in the Party, owing to the fact that there had been no political working party in pre-liberation Korea.

The Workers' Party of Korea has triumphantly kept on tackling this arduous task relying on the stable nuclear positions of the working class built up after liberation.

The August Plenum (1956) and the First Conference of the Workers' Party of Korea held in March 1958 are of historic significance in exposing and smashing anti-Party, anti-revolutionary sectarian elements, eliminating the poisons spread by them, and strengthening the unity and solidarity of the Party.

The road traversed by the young Workers' Party of Korea is indicative of the fact that whatever difficult situation may arise at home or abroad, and whatever difficult problems may appear in the Party, when a Party unswervingly upholds Marxist-Leninist principles and wages a persistent fight to put those principles into reality, the Party can tide over all the difficulties and trials, and triumphantly carry out the revolutionary tasks by rallying the working class and entire working masses still more closely round itself.

The accomplishments of the Party, which has scored victories over the U.S. imperialists and the domestic reactionaries under their wings, both of which have been entrenched in South Korea for the 13 years since liberation face to face with us, are evidence of the fact that our Party has now grown strong enough to perform its duty with honours, a duty to protect a link of the international labour movement by firmly standing guard at the Far Eastern post of the socialist camp.

In its work for the organizational and ideological consolidation of its ranks, the Workers' Party of Korea is guided by the cardinal principles of organization and leadership that inner-Party democracy combined closely with the principle of centralism is upheld, criticism and self-criticism and especially criticism from below are encouraged, and the principle of collective leadership is strictly adhered to in all the activities of Party organizations at varied levels. The Party has also been carrying on an active ideological work. Stress is laid on educating the entire Party members and labouring masses in the spirit of socialist patriotism and proletarian internationalism, and on waging a struggle against capitalist ideas and all other descriptions of outmoded ideas penetrating into the Party. Particularly, the Workers' Party of Korea, advocating consistently the principle that the socialist camp and the international labour movement should center around the Soviet Union, educates the Korean people to learn from the Soviet Union.

An organization of the Workers' Party of Korea is formed on a regional or industrial division, and the highest body of the whole Party is the Party Congress.

As of January 1, 1956, the Workers' Party of Korea had in its ranks a membership of 1,164,945, and in the composition of its ranks workers were 22.6 per cent, poor peasants 56.8 per cent, middle peasants 3.7 per cent, office employees 13 per cent and others 3.9 per cent. (from the Report of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea to the Third Congress)

The central body of the Party comprises the Party Central Committee and the Central Auditing Commission. The Central Committee elects a chairman and a few vice-chairmen, forms a presidium, sets up an organizing committee and a control committee.

Under the central bodies, there are provincial, city, county (or district) Party organizations, below which come primary Party organizations. The primary Party organization is the basic body of the Party. All Party bodies from the lowest to the highest elect their leading organs at Party general meetings, Party conferences or at the Party Congress, by means of secret ballot.

Chairman of the Party Central Committee: **KIM IL SUNG**
Vice-Chairmen of the C.C.: **CHOI YONG KUN, PAK JUNG AI, PAK KEUM CHUL, KIM CHANG MAN.**

THE UNITED DEMOCRATIC FATHERLAND FRONT

The United Democratic Fatherland Front is a powerful, united political national front organization, uniting in it all the revolutionary forces of North and South Korea with the worker-peasant alliance as its basis, under the leadership of the working class.

The most important task this organization is facing at present is to liberate South Korea from the enslavement policy of the U.S. imperialists and the rule of Syngman Rhee regime, and achieve the peaceful unification and complete independence of our country, as well as to strengthen the united front, under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea.

The United Front also works for a consolidation of the democratic base in the northern half of the Republic and strives to guard world peace and particularly peace in Asia, while educating all its members in the spirit of socialist patriotism and proletarian internationalism.

The Fatherland Restoration Association, founded in 1935 by the staunch Communists led by Comrade Kim Il Sung, was the first united national front organization in Korea based on the alliance of the workers and the peasants.

The United Democratic National Front of North Korea, formed on July 22, 1946, inheriting the traditions of the Fatherland Restoration Association, provided strong political foundations for the people's power, and played an important role in mobilizing people from all sections of the society to the struggle for carrying out the tasks of democratic revolution and building and consolidating the democratic base in the northern half of the country.

After the South Korean separate puppet government was set up by the U.S. imperialists in 1948, the situation strongly called for a closer co-operation and unity of political parties and public organizations of North and South Korea which aspire after the peaceful unification, independence and democratic development of the country. Thus, on June 25, 1949, the Conference of Representatives of North and South Korean Political Parties and Social Organizations was called, at which were represented 72 political parties and social organizations, including the Workers' Party, the Democratic Party, the Chundogyo Chungwoo Party, the General Federation of Trade Unions, the Democratic Youth League, the Women's Democratic Union, etc. from North Korea, and the South Korean Workers' Party, the Democratic Independence Party, the General Council of Trade Unions, the Democratic Patriotic Youth League, the Democratic Women's Union, the General Federation of Cultural Organizations, the Christian Democratic Union, etc., from South Korea. At the Conference the United Democratic Fatherland Front was formed.

Ever since its inauguration, the United Front has time and again proposed plans for the peaceful unification of the country, calling upon the entire Korean people to fight for their realization. It has all along exposed and denounced, before the public at home and abroad, the illegal armed aggression and the brutal acts committed by the U.S. imperialists in Korea.

The great force of the United Front, strengthened and developed in the struggles against the enemies at home and abroad, constitutes a reliable guarantee of our victory in the postwar reconstruction and development of our national economy.

After the war, the United Front mobilized all the patriotic, democratic forces to a struggle for the implementation of the policy of the Workers' Party of Korea for socialist upbuilding in the northern half of the Republic, uniting it closely with the struggle for the peaceful unification of the country.

The United Front has as its central bodies the Central Committee, the Standing Committee, Co-Chairmen, the Secretariat. It has provincial, city and county committees of its own, composed of responsible personnel of the provincial, city and county branches of the political parties and social organizations affiliated with it. All these local committees have co-chairmen and a secretary respectively.

Co-Chairmen of the Central Committee: **KIM IL SUNG, HONG MYUNG HI, HONG KI HWANG, KIM DAL HYUN, HAN DUK SOO, KIM CHUN HAI, LI YUNG,**

THE DEMOCRATIC PARTY OF NORTH KOREA

The Democratic Party of North Korea was founded in November 1945, with urban middle and small industrialists and tradesmen as its mainbody. This Party sends its deputies to the Supreme People's Assembly as well as the local people's assemblies at all levels. It is represented in the Cabinet and the local government bodies as well.

The Democratic Party of North Korea has worked ever since liberation for the peaceful unification and democratic development of the country, in conjunction with the Workers' Party of Korea.

THE CHUNDOGYO CHUNGWOO PARTY

The Chundogyo Chungwoo Party of North Korea, which was formed in February 1946, and the Chundogyo Chungwoo Party of South Korea merged in the Chundogyo Chungwoo Party in 1950.

This Party is organized by believers in Chundogyo (a kind of religion).

Represented in the Supreme People's Assembly, Cabinet and local government bodies, the Party supports the policy of the Workers' Party of Korea on the peaceful unification and democratic development of the country, and goes along with the Workers' Party in the struggle for the realization of the policy.

THE GENERAL FEDERATION OF TRADE UNIONS OF KOREA

The General Federation of Trade Unions of Korea is a mass organization of the Korean working class. It was founded in

January 1951 by merging the General Federation of Trade Unions of North Korea and the General Council of Trade Unions of Korea (South Korea), both formed in November 1945.

The General Federation of Trade Unions of Korea, serving as the transmission belt between the Workers' Party of Korea and the toiling masses (workers and office employees), works for the implementation of the Party policies and helps the people's power in its activities. At present it has a membership of 900,000.

The principal task of trade unions lies in cultivating the labouring masses with ideas of Marxism-Leninism, thereby bringing them still closer around the Workers' Party and Government.

They draw energetically the working people into socialist building; in particular, the emulation drive for increased production carried on under their guidance greatly helps in raising labour productivity.

The trade unions pay great attention to social insurance and various labour protection measures, and particularly to the stabilization of the working people's living. They energetically see to it that mass culture is popularized and developed among the working folks.

The General Federation of Trade Unions of Korea, affiliated with the World Federation of Trade Unions on May 12, 1947, strives to strengthen solidarity with the working class of all countries and friendship with the peace-loving peoples the world over, as well as to advance the international labour movement.

The General Federation of Trade Unions of Korea has the Central Committee as its leading body, under which come provincial (or city) committees and 11 industrial trade union central bodies. Primary trade union organizations number about 6,500.

Chairman of the Central Committee: **HAN SANG DOO.**

THE DEMOCRATIC YOUTH LEAGUE OF KOREA

The Democratic Youth League of North Korea, founded in 1946, merged to form the Democratic Youth League of Korea at

the joint conference of the central committees of the Democratic Youth Leagues of North and South Korea in January 1951.

Being a reliable reserve of the Workers' Party of Korea, the Democratic Youth League of Korea is a mass, democratic organization, uniting on the principle of voluntariness young men and women of all social sections who strive for the good of the fatherland and people, irrespective of their professions and religious beliefs. At present, it has a membership of 1,200,000.

The fundamental task of the Democratic Youth League is to mobilize youth from all walks of life to the implementation of the Party and Government policies and to the struggle for the peaceful unification and socialist building of the country. It pays particular attention to the education of the youth and children in the spirit of socialist patriotism and proletarian internationalism and to making strong-willed and optimistic men of them. At the same time the Democratic Youth League helps them to learn advanced sciences and techniques and apply them creatively, and sees to it that mass culture, physical culture and sports are constantly developed among the young men and women.

Having affiliated with the World Federation of Democratic Youth on June 24, 1947, the Democratic Youth League of Korea (its student's department became a member of the International Students Union in June 1948) regards it as its lofty internationalist duty to fight for the strengthening of fraternal solidarity with the youth of the socialist countries headed by the Soviet Union and friendship and solidarity with the peace-loving youth of the world, and for a lasting peace in Asia and the world.

The Democratic Youth League of Korea has its own provincial, city and county branches under its central committee. There are primary organizations under those branches, formed on regional or industrial divisions. The Democratic Youth League organizes the Young Pioneers in schools for the purpose of democratic ideas, and leads their activities.

Chairman of the Central Committee: **PAK YONG KOOK.**

THE WOMEN'S DEMOCRATIC UNION OF KOREA

The Women's Democratic Union of North Korea, founded in November 1945, was merged in the Women's Democratic Union of Korea in January 1951 together with the Women's Democratic Union of South Korea. This Union is a democratic organization uniting women of all social sections. Its membership is 1,500,000 at present.

Its basic task is to educate and guide the masses of women in carrying out the policies of the Workers' Party of Korea and strengthening the people's power. The Women's Democratic Union ensures women's participation in the social affairs, encourages them to distinguish themselves in labour, and constantly educates them in the spirit of socialist patriotism and proletarian internationalism. It also carries out work of cultural enlightenment among women, helps them improve their cultural standard and educate their children at home in socialist ideas.

Particularly the Women's Democratic Union considers it as one of its most lofty duties to see to it that the war orphans are well cared for and brought up in a proper manner and assistance is given to the bereft families of revolutionary martyrs and the families of servicemen.

Having become a member of the Women's International Democratic Federation on October 15, 1946, the Women's Democratic Union of Korea is striving to strengthen the internationalist friendship and solidarity with the women of the socialist countries and the entire peace-loving women of the world, while taking active part in the international struggle for peace, the rights of women, and a happy future for children.

Under the Central Committee of the Union, there are provincial, city and county committees, below which come ri (township) and dong (lowest administrative unit) primary committees.

Chairman of the Central Committee: **PAK JUNG AI.**

THE PEASANTS' UNION OF KOREA

The Peasants' Union of North Korea, organized in January 1946 uniting broad masses of the peasants with the poor peasants as the nucleus, was brought, along with the General Federation of Peasants' Union of South Korea, into the Peasants' Union of Korea, in January 1951.

It played a big role in carrying out the land reform in North Korea in early post-liberation days, and made a great contribution to the ideological education of the peasants and the popularization of advanced method of farming.

The Peasants' Union of Korea is playing a big role in the socialist transformation of agriculture, working as the transmission belt between the Party and the peasants.

Chairman of the Central Committee: **KANG JIN KUN.**

THE KOREAN-SOVIET FRIENDSHIP SOCIETY

The Korean-Soviet Friendship Society was founded on November 11, 1945, and its principal aim is to acquaint the people with the Soviet Union, and particularly to popularize the valuable experiences obtained by the Soviet people in the upbuilding of socialism and communism, and consolidate the immortal friendship and solidarity between the Korean and Soviet peoples. At present it has a membership of 4,000,000.

Chairman of the Central Committee: **LI KI YUNG.**

Besides the above named, there are the National Peace Committee of Korea, the Korean Committee for Asian Solidarity, the Korean Writers' Union, the Korean Composers' Union, the Korean Artists' Union, the Korean Architects' Union, the Korean Journalists' Union, the Red Cross Society of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, the Fatherland Defence Assistance Association, and such religious organizations as the North Korean Christian Federation, the South Christian Democratic Union, and the Korean Buddhist Federation.

CHAPTER V

THE NATIONAL ECONOMY

GENERAL

Korea is favoured with rich and varied natural resources and sufficient labour power for accelerating all-round development of the national economy. In the pre-liberation period, however, the national economy of Korea was extremely backward and its foundation was weak. This was attributable chiefly to the fact that Korea, a feudal agrarian country, had been prey to foreign capital since the latter part of the 19th century and was occupied in 1910 and plundered by the Japanese monopolies for nearly 40 years.

From the outset, the Japanese imperialists reduced the national economy of Korea to an appendage of their economy, keeping Korea in a state of a backward agrarian country as a source of their provisions and raw materials as well as a market for their commodities.

The Japanese imperialists built certain industrial establishments in Korea in pursuit of maximum profits. But, even they were all malformed ones. We can find the colonial one-sidedness and deformity of our industry in the lack of organic relations between industry and agriculture as well as between industrial branches themselves. The industry of Korea was entirely dependent upon Japan proper. First of all, there was a big gap in structure between heavy and light industries. Heavy industry was limited to the production of raw materials, semi-finished goods and war supplies. Industries for manufacturing finished goods were in an extremely backward state. Especially the machine-building industry was out of the question.

Under Japanese imperialist rule our industry was concentrated on the production of raw materials and semi-finished goods. There was a lack of horizontal and vertical connections between various production branches. Even the metallurgical and chemical industries, which had a comparatively high percentage of share, failed to produce finished goods; they went halfway with production of finished goods, depending on the industry of Japan. As a result, the bulk of machines, equipment and parts needed by factories, mines, transport and agriculture, and most of consumer goods had to be imported from Japan.

In 1944, the share of the machine-building and metal working industry made up only 3.4 per cent of the industrial output as a whole. 80 per cent of the total daily necessary goods consumed in Korea in 1942 were made in Japan. The colonial one-sidedness of industry under Japanese imperialism was represented not only in its deformity of structure, but also in the complete monopoly of all industrial branches by Japanese capital. Korea's national capital was not worth mentioning. Under Japanese imperialist rule the Japanese monopolies seized with ease almost all the factories and mines, and intensified their monopoly rule.

According to Japanese statistics of 1941 the Japanese imperialists held 64.4 per cent of the total number of enterprises in Korea, and 91.2 per cent of all paid-up capital. Koreans owned only 6 per cent of the total factories with a nominal capital of over one million won each. The key industries were all monopolized by Japanese capital. Korean capital was invested in industries of second importance — printing shops and farm implements factories.

Nearly 60 per cent of the total nominal capital invested in industry was shared by the three big monopolies (Noguchi Zaibatsu — 36 per cent, the Oriental Development Co. — 11 per cent and the Nissan — 12 per cent). In addition, the Japanese government had the monopoly of railway transport, tobacco and salt.

The Japanese imperialists had technology all to themselves. In 1944, Koreans made up only 20 per cent of the entire technicians, and their proportion was far smaller at large-scale, modern factories. The technical level of industry under Japanese rule was very low.

The limitation and unevenness in technical development, which constitute the general features of the capitalist industry, were more pronounced in the industry of the colonial Korea.

Special mention should be made of the fact that under political and economic oppression of Japanese Korean workers were forced to work 13-14 hours a day with meagre wages. Their living standards were extremely low.

In a word, the industry of the colonial Korea under Japanese imperialism, whether heavy industry or light industry, was characterized by a low level of development and by deformity and one-sidedness in its structure.

Before liberation the overwhelming majority of the Korean population were engaged in agriculture.

Korea's economy of a colonial type was kept within the bounds of a backward agrarian country that was chiefly producing provisions and raw materials. Even agriculture constituting the main part of Korea's economy was not free from colonial defects, suffering a long stagnation due to the relations of agricultural production, which was caused by the subordination as semi-serfs of poor peasants, who made up the overwhelming majority of the peasants, to a handful of Japanese and Korean landlords, due to corvee, exorbitant rate of farm rent and plunder in various shapes. In the colonial agriculture the basic relations of production were tenancy in a feudal sense.

According to statistics released toward the close of Japanese rule, the Japanese imperialists had possession of fertile land equivalent to about a quarter of the total arable land and four-fifths of the forests.

Some 100,000 landlords, or only 3.3 per cent of the total farm-households owned 60 per cent of the total farmland of 4.5 million jungbo, while 2.4 million households of the toiling peasants, who accounted for 80 per cent of the total farm households, had little or no land. The predominant feudal tenant system led inevitably to an extremely small scale farming. According to statistics published just before the August 15 Liberation, the number of farm households with farm land below 0.5 jungbo each occupied nearly 34 per cent of the total. If the peasants with 0.5-1 jungbo each are added, small peasants account for 67 per cent.

Such being the case, the level of agricultural productive forces and technique was very low.

Suffice it to say that the output of rice was about one suk per tanbo (0.245 acre) in Korea, whereas it was two suk in Japan. Proof of the extremely low level of agro-technique is that the primitive farm implement—hoe—was the chief tool.

The colonial agricultural policy of the Japanese imperialists not only checked the development of the agricultural productive forces but also brought about a lack of balance in the different branches of agriculture.

The stock farming lagged behind crop cultivation, and the production of coarse grain and industrial crops lagged behind rice cultivation. The share of animal husbandry was about 5 per cent of total agricultural produce; industrial crops 4.6 per cent or so in crop field cultivation.

Our country is favoured with natural conditions for the development of agriculture. Accordingly, the rural economy can make a many-sided development. Nevertheless, Korea's agriculture leaned too much towards rice cultivation. This was because the Japanese imperialists pursued the agricultural policy of securing a large amount of food for themselves under the slogan of "More Rice Cultivation". They shipped away 6 to 10 million suk of rice from Korea every year.

The Japanese imperialists directed no concern to irrigation projects which are of great significance for the development of agriculture. They set up some irrigation facilities only to serve for their exploitation. The poor yield of grain, particularly, rice and uncertain harvests were an important characteristic of Korea's agriculture before liberation.

Transport and communications were also not free of colonial backwardness. For example, the railway network per square kilometre was only 29 metres. As for automobile transportation, Korea was one of the most backward countries.

All means of transport under the Japanese imperialist monopoly had been used for invading the Asian mainland, or for shipping away raw materials and marketing their commodities, for maintaining their colonial rule.

Korea's economy had also grave defects in its geographical distribution. The Japanese imperialists developed major industries chiefly along the coastal areas, which were convenient for them to ship away raw materials to Japan.

They left out of account the close connection between raw materials producing districts and consumers districts, or organic relations between industrial branches. As a result, in agricultural South Korea, light industry carried heavy weight, while in industrial North Korea, heavy industry was predominant, with the result that a great zonal difference was created.

Korea was liberated from the Japanese imperialist yoke, but with the legacy of a colonial economy with preponderant agricultural and raw material production. Before the liberated Korea was set the enormous task of developing its national economy into a self-sufficient one. However, obstacles such as colonial one-sidedness, destruction of installations by the Japanese imperialists before and after their defeat by the Soviet Army, were thrown in the way of industrial development. What is still worse, the division of the country into the North and South owing to the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. imperialists added to the difficulty in creating a self-sufficient national economy.

In the northern half of the Republic following the liberation a series of democratic reforms including the land reform and nationalization of key industries, was enforced under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea and the people's power. With the establishment of a people's democratic system all difficulties could be overcome and the material foundations built for restoring and developing the national economy in a planned way. In the early period of transition to socialism, the economic policy of the Workers' Party of Korea was to consolidate and develop the results of the democratic reforms; to eleminate the deformity of the national economy that was the evil legacy of the prolonged Japanese imperialist rule; to reconstruct rapidly the national economy damaged during the aggressive war of the Japanese imperialists; to stabilize and improve the people's living conditions.

Special attention was paid to the fact that the reconstruction and development of the national economy had to be pushed forward in such a way as to ensure the predominance of the socialist economic sectors — state and cooperative economic sectors — over the private economic sector.

Along this basic line in the period of peaceful construction the national economic plans (the two consecutive one-year economic plans for 1947 and 1948 and the two-year national economic plan for 1949-1950) were drawn up. All these plans were successfully overfulfilled. Already in 1949, the total industrial output increased 3.4 times that in 1946. North Korea, which had formerly been short of food, came to have a surplus.

When the Korean war was started by the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rheeites, the Workers' Party of Korea and the

Government of the Republic put the national economy on a wartime footing and took a series of systematic measures to meet requirements for the front and to stabilize the life of the people in the rear.

The war ruined the national economy, especially at the time of the enemy's temporary occupation of North Korea. However, for all difficulties and obstacles the national economy made steady progress, thanks to the timely measures taken by the Party and the Government. In 1953 the total industrial output value increased 1.4 times that in 1951, and agricultural production also showed a continued growth.

The war did tremendous damage to the national economy. About 8,700 buildings of factories and enterprises were destroyed by the U.S. armed aggressors. In 1953, the total industrial output value dropped to 64 per cent compared with the pre-war year 1949.

The war played havoc with the rural economy, too. 370,000 jungbo of farm land was damaged by the enemy's barbarous bombings. In 1953, the total grain output diminished to 88 per cent as against 1949. More than 600,000 dwelling houses with 28 million square metres of floor space, 5,000 schools, 1,000 hospitals and clinics, 260 theatres and cinema houses and thousands of cultural and welfare establishments were destroyed. Cities and rural villages were reduced to ashes. According to incomplete data, the damage is estimated at 420 billion won.

After the end of war the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic set before the entire people the political and economic tasks: to rapidly rehabilitate and develop the war-devastated national economy; to improve the material and cultural standards of the people; to strengthen further the people's democratic system; thereby to achieve the peaceful unification of the country. The Party and the Government laid down the Three-Year Plan for the Post-War Reconstruction and Development of the National Economy (1954-1956) with the object of attaining the pre-war level in all branches of the national economy. The entire people were mobilized to fulfil the plan.

The basic line of the Three-Year Plan lay not simply in restoring the war-damaged national economy, but in eliminating the colonial one-sidedness, in making good a lack of balance between industrial branches caused by the war, in laying the foundations for socialist industrialization and in stabilizing and improving

the livelihood of the people, on the basis of the priority development of heavy industry along with speedy progress of light industry and agriculture.

The entire Korean people rose up as one in response to the call of the Party and the Government, enjoying enormous material and technical aid from the Soviet Union, China and other fraternal countries, displayed unparalleled patriotic devotion and creativeness. As a result, the Three-Year National Economic Plan was successfully fulfilled or overfulfilled in all branches of the national economy.

In 1956, the total industrial output grew 2.8 times as against 1953, and 1.8 times compared with 1949.

In the Three-Year Plan period, grain production steadily grew. In 1956 the output of husked grain was 2,870,000 tons—an increase of 24 per cent over 1953 and 8 per cent over 1949.

Productive forces, too, grew rapidly in all branches of the national economy. Furthermore, a great change took place in the relations of production. The share held by the socialist economic sectors in the production of national wealth jumped from 45 per cent in 1949 to 82 per cent in 1956.

In the same period the share of the state and cooperative enterprises in the total industrial output increased from 90.7 per cent to 98 per cent; of gross agricultural output the socialist sector rose from 3.2 per cent to 73.9 per cent; the turnover of the state and co-operative trade grew from 56.5 per cent to 87.3 per cent.

Thus, in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea the fundamental problem of the gradual transition to socialism was, in the main, solved; victory was won for socialist sectors over the private capitalist sector and a solid material foundation was laid for the completion of socialist transformation of the national economy as a whole.

Such spectacular changes in the relations of production could be brought about by carrying through the Party's policy of converting not only small commodity production but also the capitalist economy, not by expropriation but by peaceful means, into the socialist economy. On the basis of the brilliant achievements attained during the Three-Year Plan, the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea outlined the First Five-Year Plan (1957-1961) after a thorough analysis of internal and external conditions created in the northern part of the Republic and in accordance with objective economic laws. Along this line the First Party Conference held in 1958 worked out the detailed plan. On this basis, the Supreme People's Assembly adopted as law the First Five-Year Plan on June 11, 1958.

The basic tasks set forth in the Plan are to consolidate further the foundation of socialist economy and to solve basically the problem of food, clothing and housing for the people. In this period, industrial productive forces will grow; the foundation for socialist industrialization will be laid, so that all the branches of the national economy may be equipped with up-to-date technique and large-scale capital construction carried out; and the collectivization of agriculture will be completed. Thus, all socialist sectors will be put on a firmer basis. In 1961 gross industrial output value will increase 2.6 times that in 1956, and grain output will be more than 3,760,000 tons. To this end, we will continuously pursue the policy of priority development of heavy industry and at the same time develop agriculture and light industry. With the fulfilment of the First Five-Year Plan our country will be turned from a backward agrarian country into a self-supporting industrial-agrarian one. And a great advance will be made in the fields of politics, economy and culture.

In order to successfully beat the targets for the first year of the grand First Five-Year Plan, the December (1956) Plenum of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea called on the entire working people to launch a nation-wide campaign for increasing production and practising economy to the maximum. The call of the Party was carried into effect. As a result, in the state and co-operative industries, the 1957 plan for production was overfulfilled in value by 17 per cent and the plan including extra production by 5 per cent. (The total output was by far greater than that in the four years 1946-1949.)

In 1957, the total output value of the state and co-operative industries went up to 144 per cent (in terms of prices on April 1, 1957) as compared with 1956; gross output of grain reached 3.2 million tons, an 11.4 per cent increase above the previous year. Such results could not be imagined in the days of the Japanese imperialist rule.

The number of peasant households embraced in agricultural co-operatives increased from 86 per cent of the total in March 1957 to 95.6 per cent at the end of 1957.

On the basis of these economic achievements, the Party and

the Government pursued successfully the policy of raising the material and cultural living standards of the people.

In the course of summing up the fulfilment of the national economic plan for 1957 the confidence of everyone was strengthened that the First Five-Year Plan, which is the first try in Korean history, will be crowned with victory.

Thirteen years have elapsed since the Korean people were liberated from the heinous Japanese imperialist yoke by virtue of the great Soviet Army. In the intervening period, for all the difficulties, they have waged a stubborn struggle and won glorious victories.

In the period from 1945, the year of liberation, up to 1949, the national economy damaged by the defeated Japanese imperialists had been reconstructed and developed; in the period from 1950 to 1953 the national economy and cultural facilities, which had been built with the sweat and blood of the Korean people, were devastated by the atrocities of the U.S. imperialists, their satellite countries and the traitorous Syngman Rheeites; and in the period from 1954 after the truce until 1956, the war-ravaged national economy and cultural establishments not only attained the level of the pre-war year of 1949, but also surpassed it.

These facts tell us that following the liberation the Korean people spent ten odd years on the war (three years) and reconstruction of the war-devastated national economy.

Guided by the correct policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic headed by Comrade Kim Il Sung, the Korean people waged an arduous struggle with all difficult conditions and scored brilliant victories. Tremendous results were achieved in raising sharply the material and cultural standards of the people in so short a period of time.

This represents the great vitality and mobilizing power of the economic policy pursued by the Party and the Government for the vital interests of the people and in conformity with the objective requirements of the economic development in our country.

Nevertheless, the anti-Party, anti-revolutionary sectarian elements led by Choi Chang Ik and Pak Chang Ok have taken a nihilistic attitude toward the correct economic policy pursued by the Workers' Party of Korea since liberation and toward the great achievements made by the working people under the leadership of the Party. They indulged in levelling abuse and slander against the Party, and ventured to take subversive action.

However, the workers, firmly armed with socialist ideology, under the wise leadership of the C.C. of the Party, exposed and condemned those renegades, and are putting an end to the evil consequences. Following the correct policy of the Party and the Government, the Korean people made self-sacrificing efforts for, and displayed unexcelled heroism in, the reconstruction and development of the national economy. They accumulated a great store of experience, and rendered outstanding services. And they enjoyed the enormous disinterested material assistance and moral support from the people of the Soviet Union, China and other socialist countries. The inexhaustible vitality of our people's democracy and its incomparable superiority over the capitalist system were demonstrated. The Korean people, in full support of the policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic headed by Comrade Kim Il Sung, are vigorously working for the peaceful unification of the country, for socialist construction in the northern half of the Republic, and for consolidation of the democratic base, looking forward to a yet brighter and happier morrow.

INDUSTRY

GENERAL

Since the liberation from Japanese imperialist rule by the great Soviet Army, thanks to the correct policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, our industry has achieved remarkable results in putting an end to its colonial one-sidedness and in developing industry along socialist lines.

In the northern part of the country after liberation the national economy was characterized by colonial one-sidedness and deformity which found expression in a lack of balance between different economic branches, as well as between industrial branches.

Take industrial structure for instance. Of the total industrial output the machine-building and metal-working industries accounted for 1.6 per cent in 1944; the textile industry 6 per cent; food processing industry 7.8 per cent; the mining industry which served to supply imperialist Japan with necessary raw materials 15.7 per cent; the metallurgical industry 13.3 per cent.

Such colonial one-sidedness became aggravated by the territorial division by the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. army.

Under these circumstances, the Party and the Government made efforts to reconstruct on an extensive scale the industrial establishments damaged by the defeated Japanese imperialists on the one hand, and on the other, create new industrial branches, so that colonial one-sidedness might be removed and a self-sufficient industry built up. In this connection, stress was laid on the creation and rapid development of the machine-building industry which had been utterly insignificant. At the same time, in order to promote speedily the material well-being of the people, the Party and the Government paid careful attention to the immediate restoration and speedy development of light industry which would supply the people with items of every day use. .

With this in view, measures were taken to ensure the priority development of heavy industry and simultaneously promote speedy restoration and advance of light industry.

In the light of the fact that there was no major branch of industry producing finished goods, efforts were made to reorganize the deformed industrial structure, and establish organic relations between industry and various other branches of the national economy.

The three consecutive plans (one-year plans for 1947 and 1948 and two-year plan for 1949-50), which were an embodiment of the economic policy pursued by the Party and the Government, were successfully fulfilled by the creative endeavours of the entire working people under the conditions that the state-owned industry which came into existence by enforcing the Law on Nationalization of Major Industries was playing a dominant part in the national economy, and the great Soviet Union rendered disinterested aid to the Korean people.

As a consequence, in the five year period of peaceful construction, quite a few machine-building works including the Bookchoong and the Pyongyang Machine-Building Works, metal-working plants as well as light industrial factories were reconstructed, expanded or newly established. Along with this industrial production grew remarkably.

Gross industrial output increased 3.4 times in 1949 as against 1946; the production of the means of production grew 3.8-fold; and consumer goods 2.9-fold. With the growth of industrial output the formation of industrial branches underwent a great change. In 1949, of gross industrial output in value, the share of the machine-building and metal-working industries was 8.1 per cent; the textile industry 11.4 per cent; and the food processing industry 19.4 per cent.

A sharp increase of industrial production had an effect on the relations of production. In 1949, the share of the socialist economic sector was 90.7 per cent as against 72.4 per cent in 1946.

All these facts bespeak the correctness of the economic policy pursued by the Workers' Party of Korea, the policy of enhancing the superiority of the socialist economic sector, of putting an end to colonial one-sidedness, of facilitating a balanced development of industry and of improving radically the living conditions of the people.

When the war broke out, industry was put on a war footing. As many industrial enterprises as possible were switched over to the production of munitions, and new munition factories were established; light industry and the food processing industry continued production to stabilize the life of the people; some production facilities were transferred to places of safety.

In order to produce daily necessaries, the Party and the Government devoted attention to expanding and reinforcing local industries and producers' co-operatives. From 1952 on large-scale factories were built underground.

Special mention should be made of the fact that even during the war condition our industry ensured not only war supplies, but also in anticipation of victory in the war preparations were already made, with a grand long-range plan, for postwar economic reconstruction with due regard to economic development and national defence.

In fact, the measures taken by the Government were not limited to a simple restoration of the war-devastated industries. Industrial establishments were reconstructed in a perspective way; major arsenals, big machine-building works, factories for manufacturing daily necessaries were newly built; new industrial centres were created out of consideration for economic development and national defence; the prospecting work was vigorously conducted; stress was laid on the work of training technical personnel in great demand in the postwar period.

Between 1950 and 1951 industrial output was reduced due to the enemy's destruction and evacuation of industrial facilities. But from 1952 on it showed a steady increase.

In 1952, the gross output of state and co-operative industries increased 113 per cent and in 1953 138 per cent as compared with 1951. All industrial branches with the exception of electric power generation grew systematically. In the midst of the flames of war our industry moved toward the industrialization of the country. But air-raids, naval bombardment and temporary occupation of the enemy inflicted serious wounds on our industry. Consequently, no small change took place in the formation of industrial branches; the share of the means of production was 58.6 per cent of the total in 1949, whereas it had dropped to 37.7 per cent in 1953.

The effects of the war upon industry are seen in the following table:

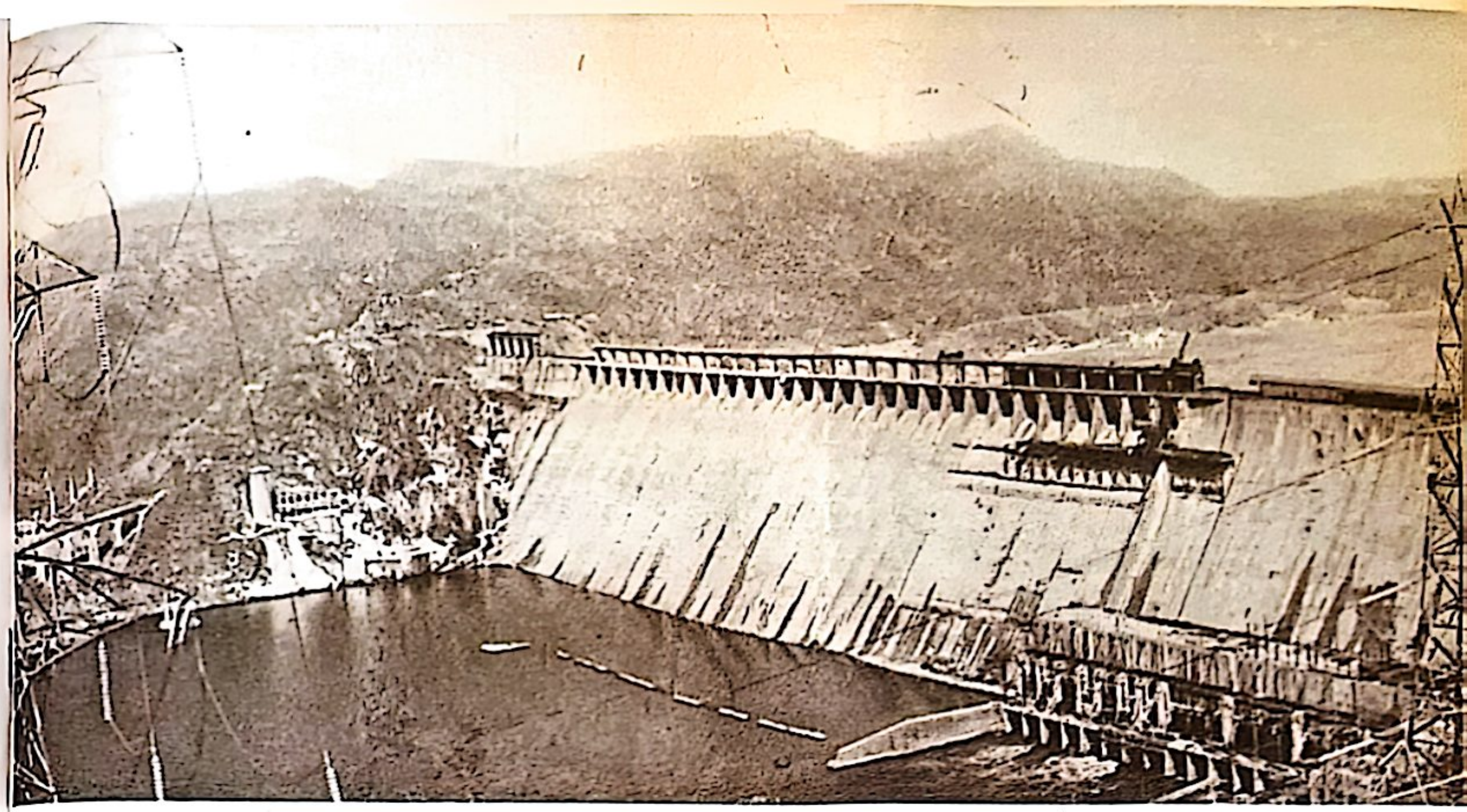
Industrial Gross Output and Proportion of Different Branches *(in percentage)*

	Gross output value		Proportion	
	1949	1953	1949	1953
Industrial gross output value	100	64	100	100
Electric Industry	100	17	1.6	0.6
Fuel Industry	100	11	4.1	0.7
Mining Industry	100	76	8.1	9.3
Metallurgical Industry	100	10	11	1.8
Machine-building and Metal-working Industry	100	124	8.1	15.3
Chemical Industry	100	22	9.5	3.1
Building-materials Industry	100	36	2.5	1.4
Timber and Wood-work Industry	100	79	6.4	7.7
Textile Industry	100	149	11.4	25.7
Leather and Shoe-making Industry	100	143	1.4	3
Fishing Industry	100	24	6.2	2.3
Food and Favorite Goods Industry	100	63	19.4	18.5

After the ceasefire, the task of industry was not only to enlarge the scale of production, but also to bring about a qualitative change in industrial structure in accordance with the general line of the postwar economic reconstruction and development laid down by the Workers' Party of Korea.

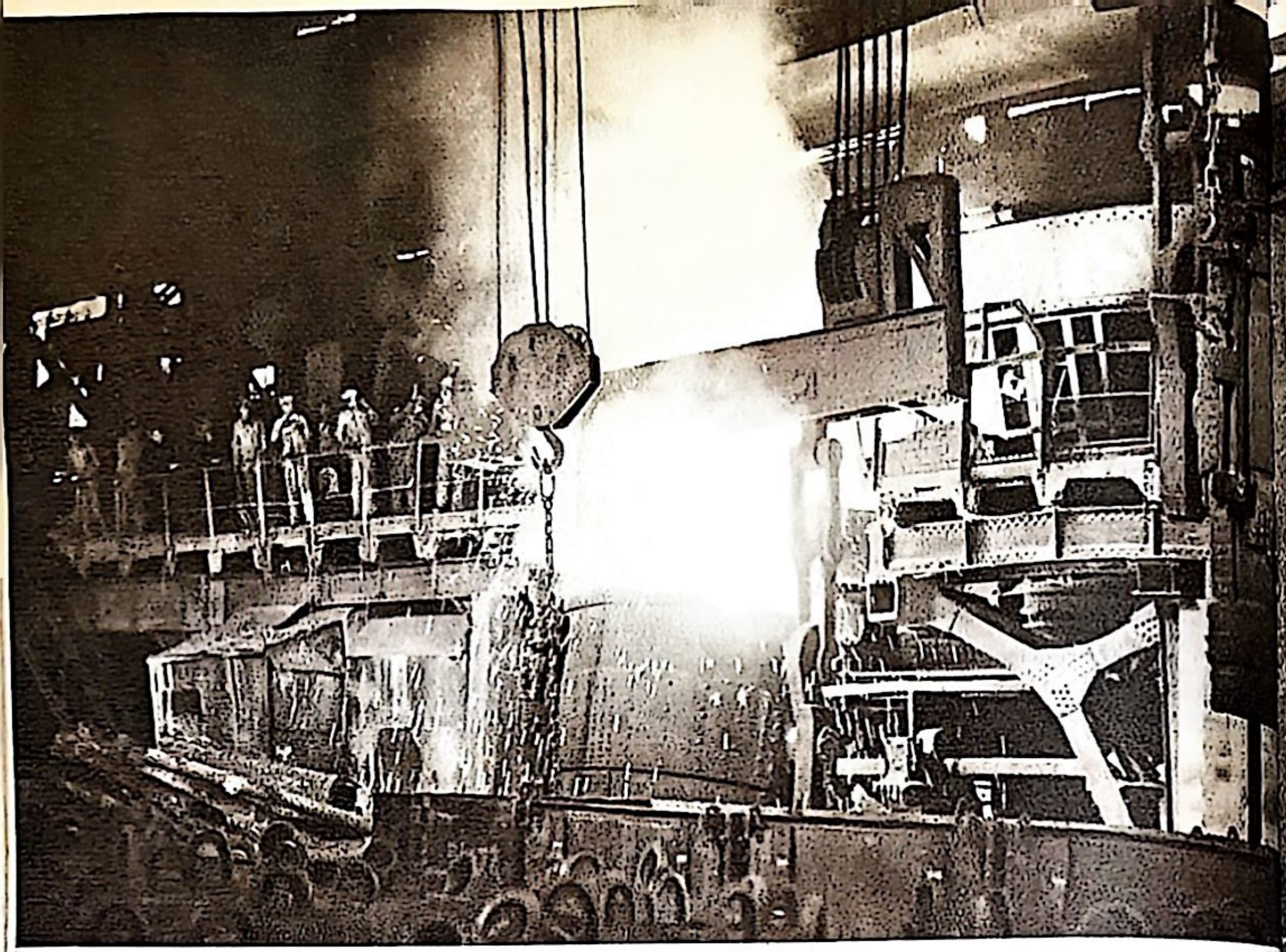
To this end, priority was given to the growth of heavy industry along with the sharp upswing of light industry.

The priority growth of heavy industry was necessary not only for the industrialization of the country, but also for removing the colonial one-sidedness and backwardness of the national economy left by Japanese imperialism, for adjusting unsound relations between various branches caused by the war, for putting an end to the backwardness of light industry and for improving systematically the living conditions of the people which had deteriorated due to the disastrous war.

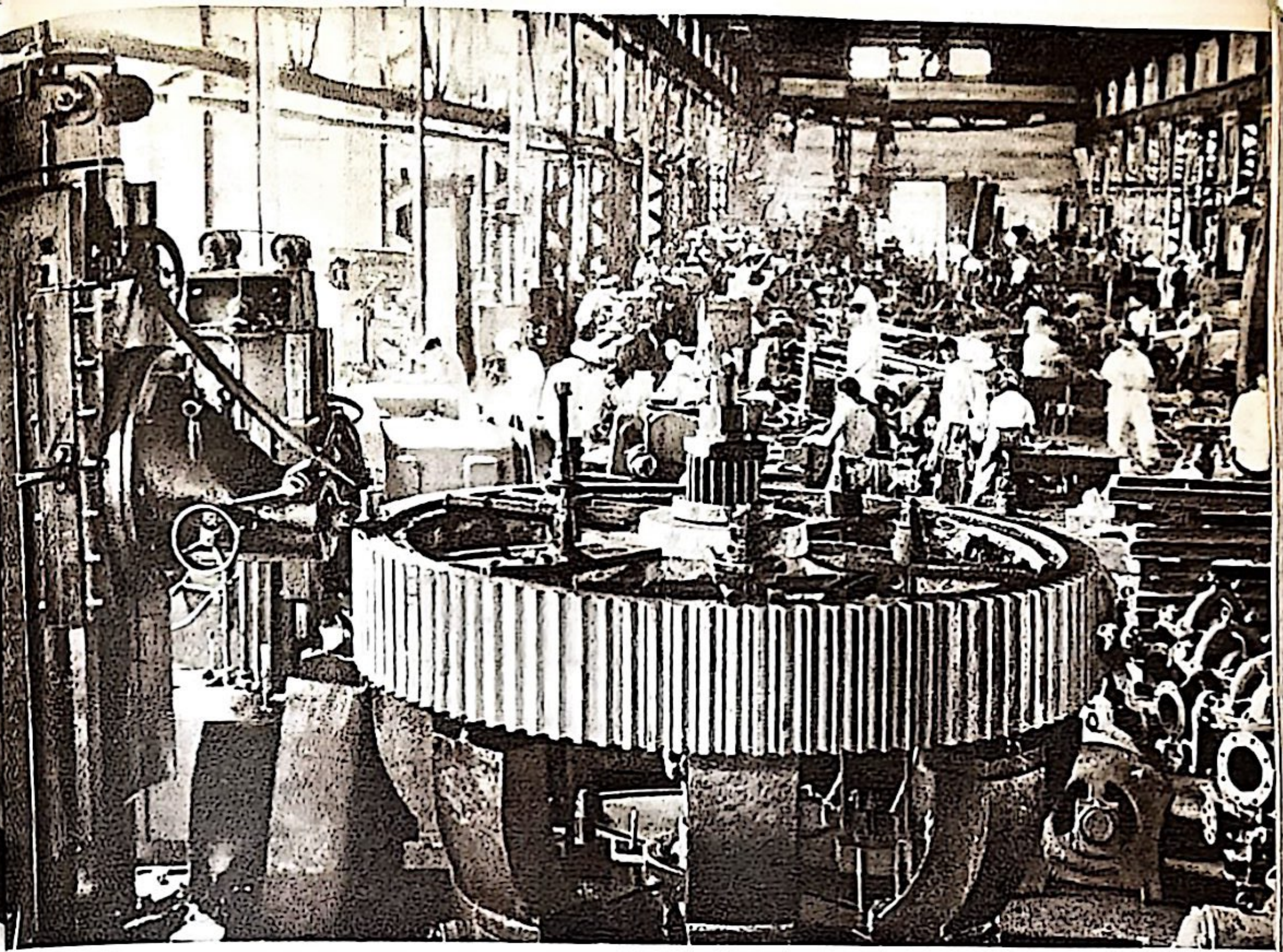


Dam of the Soopoong Power Station

Electric-car in the pit of Aoji Mine

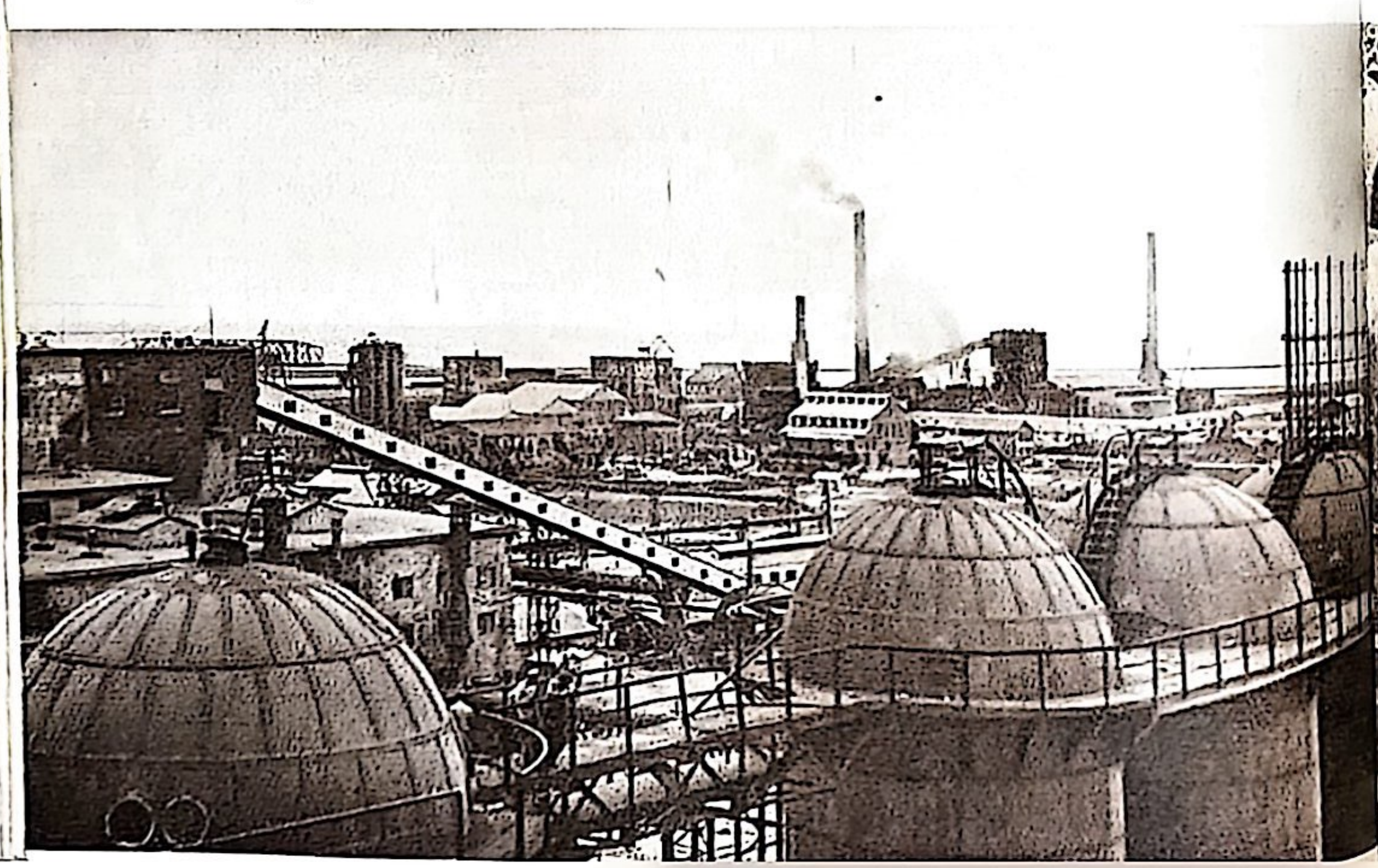


Molten iron flows out of the blast furnace at the Hwanghai Iron Works

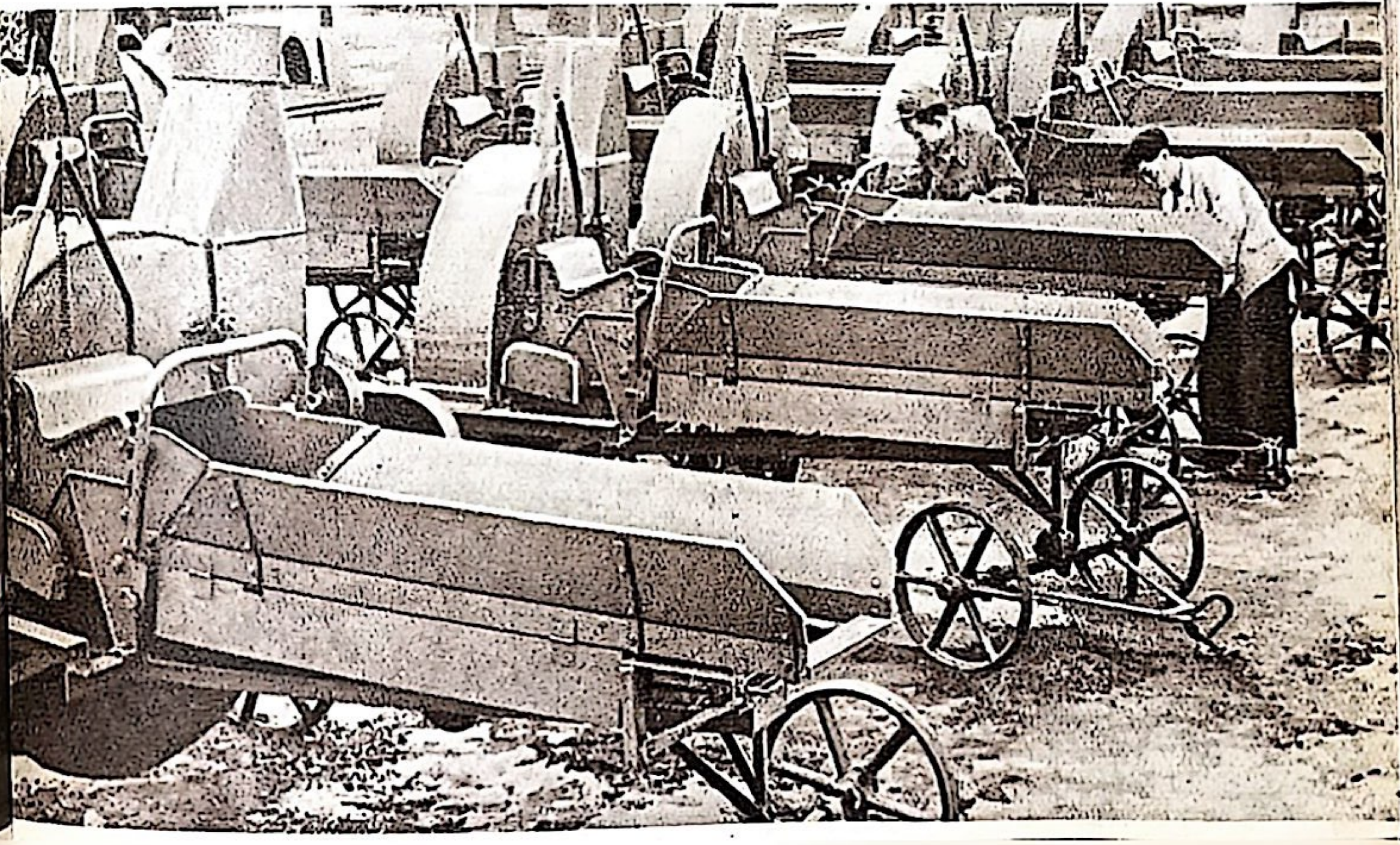


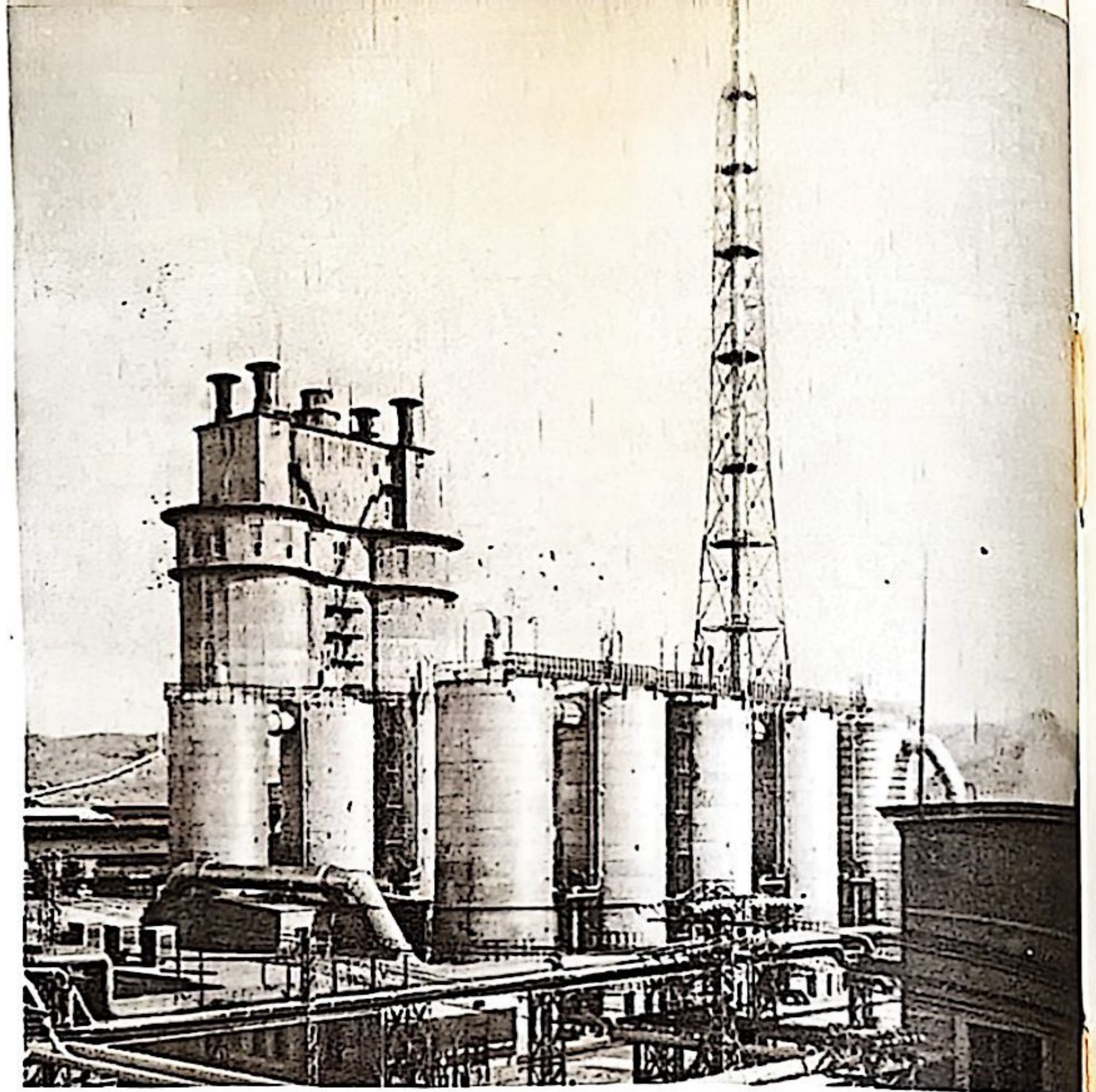
The youth shop of the Rakwon Machine-Building Factory

A majestic view of the Kim Chaik Iron Works

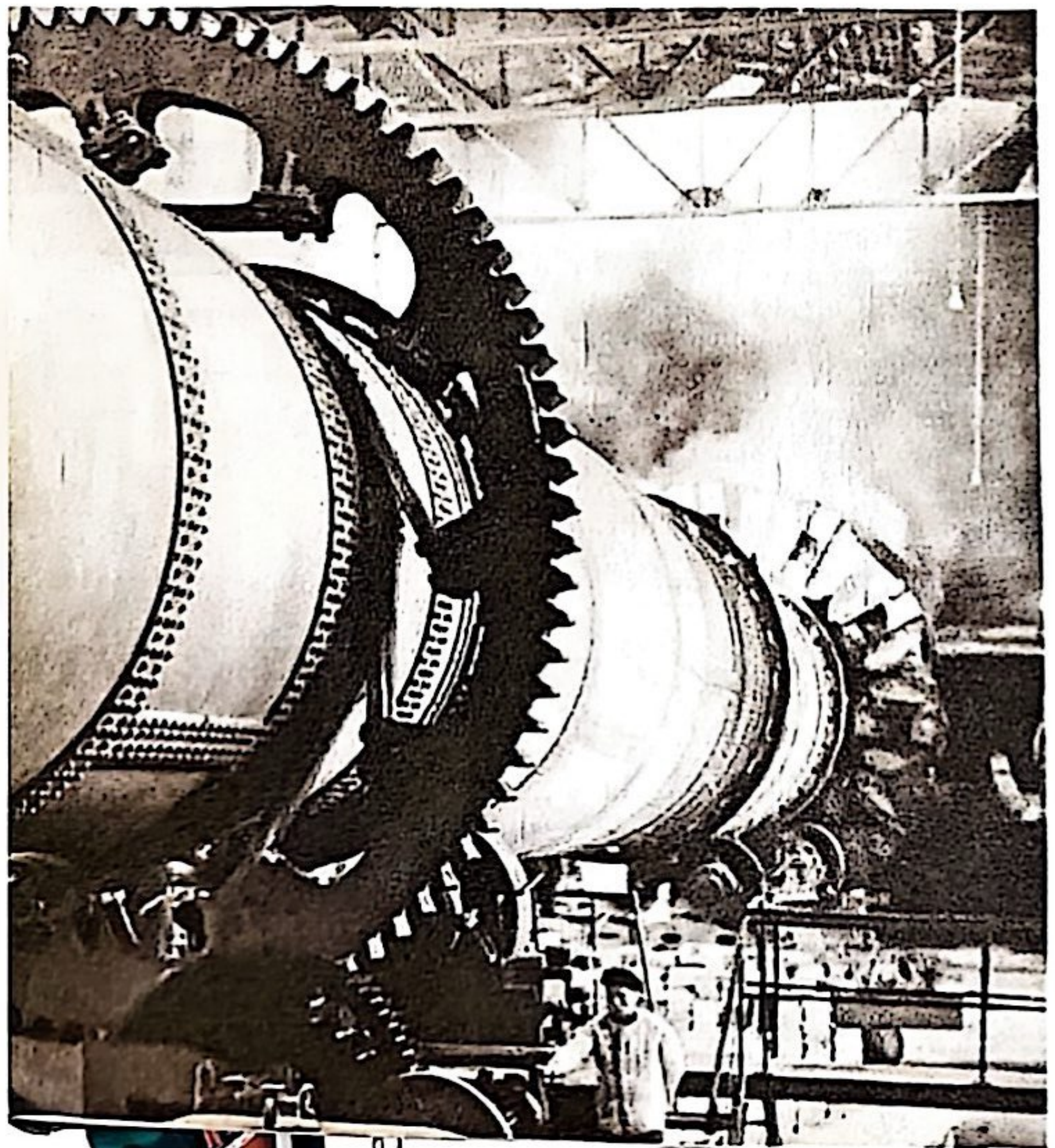


Farm implements produced at the Kiyang Farm-Machine Factory



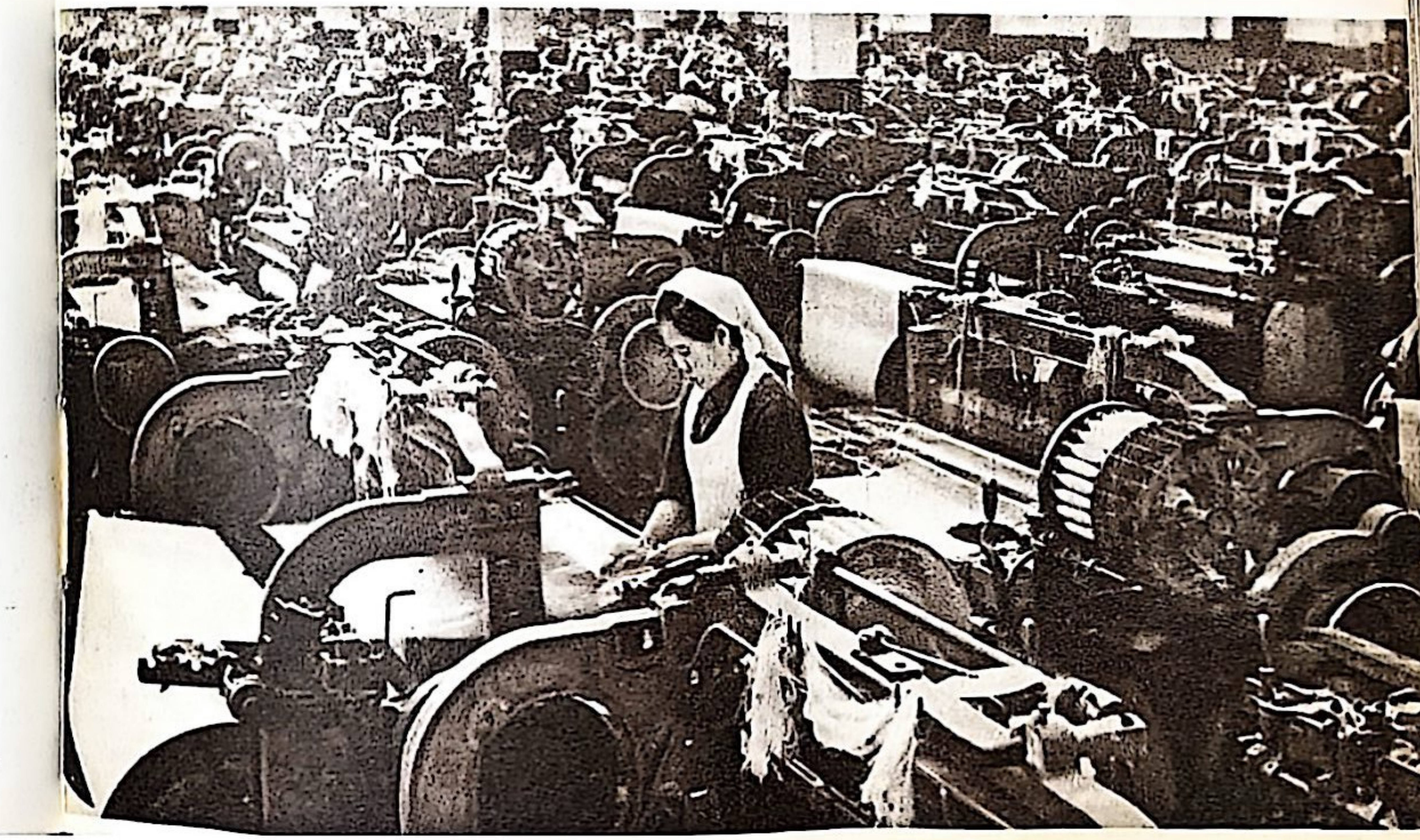


The Ammonium Nitrate Factory in Heungnam

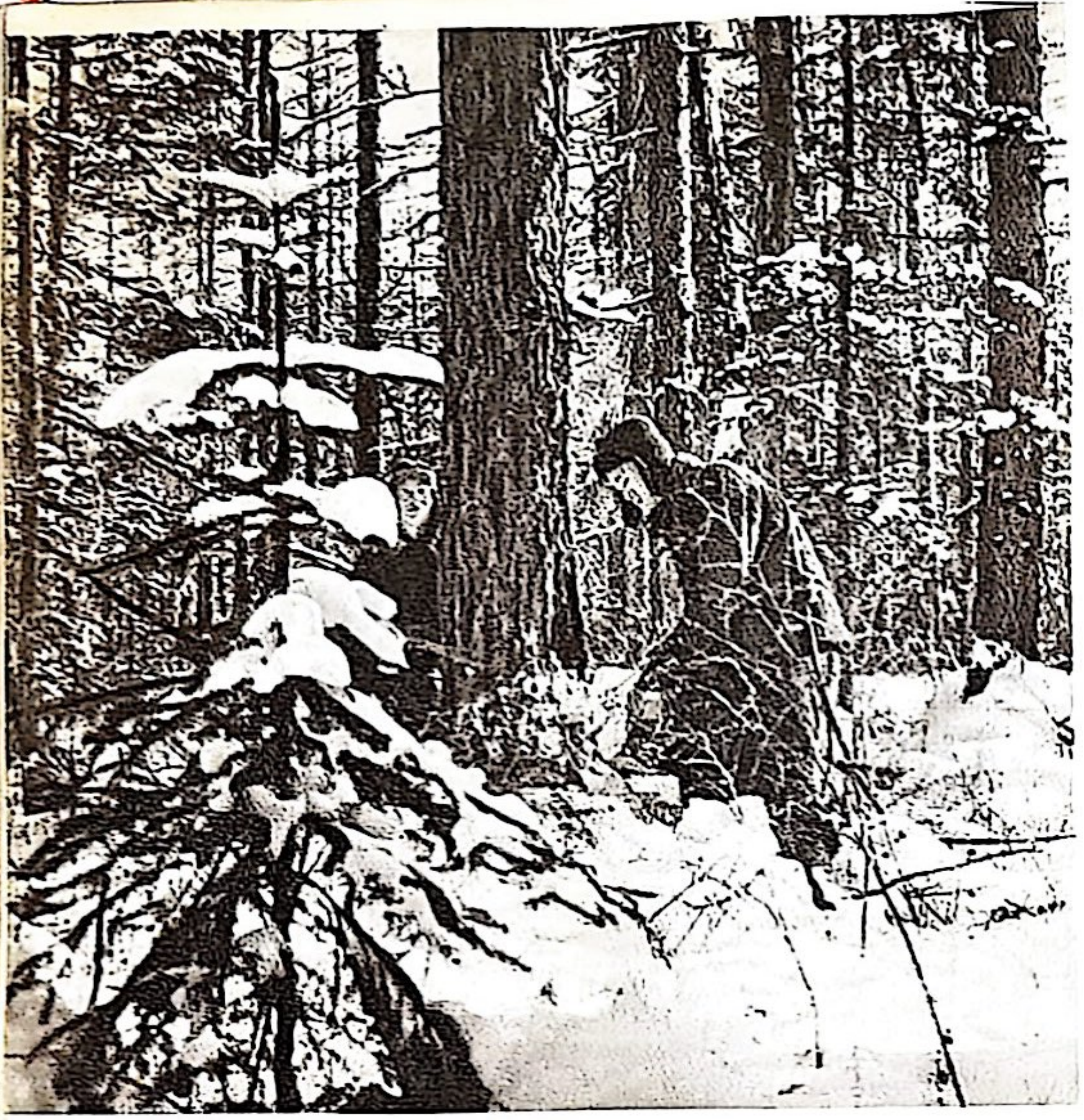


Kiln of the Seungho-ri Cement Factory

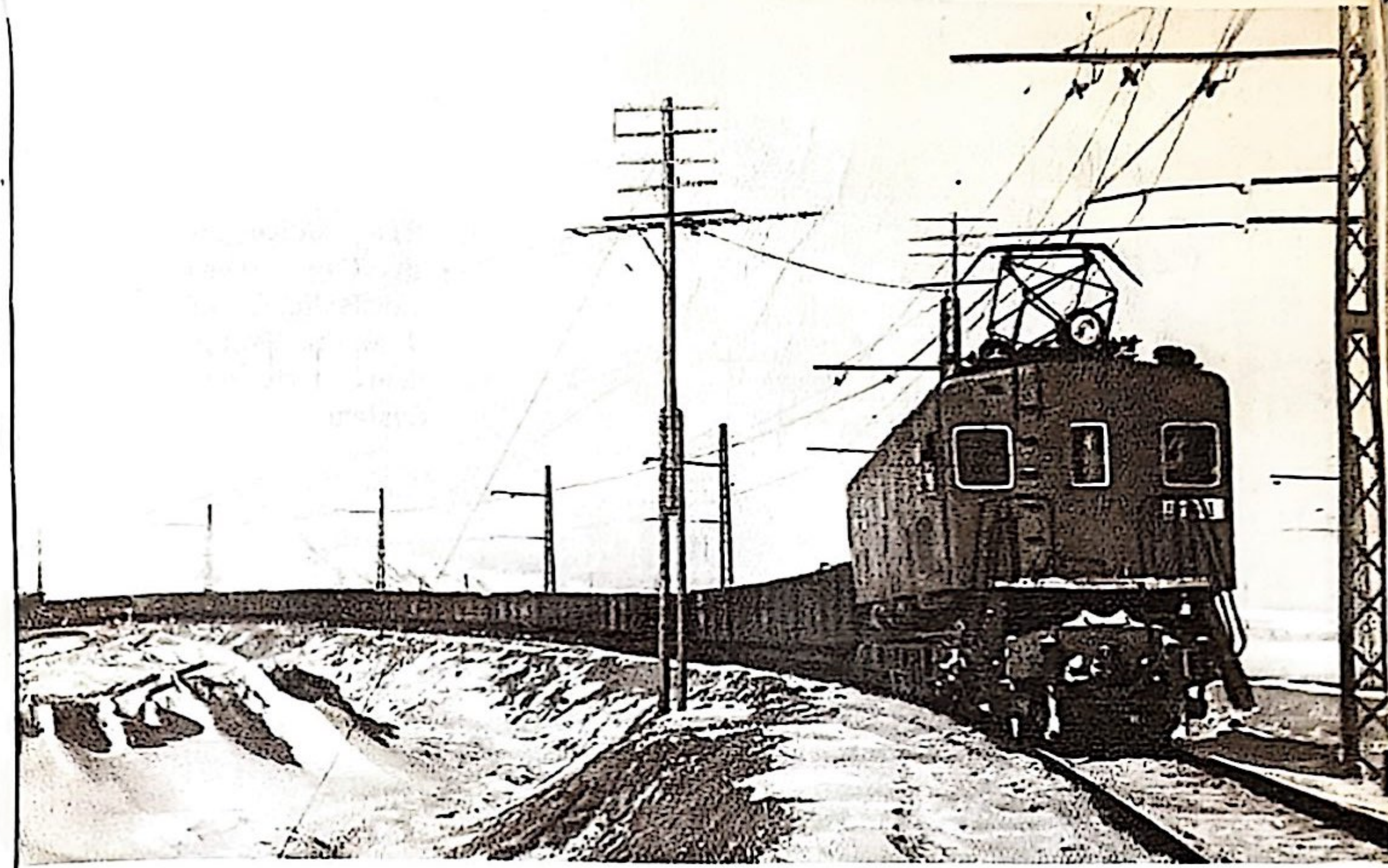
Processed food-stuffs and favorite goods



A weaving shop of the Pyongyang Textile Mill



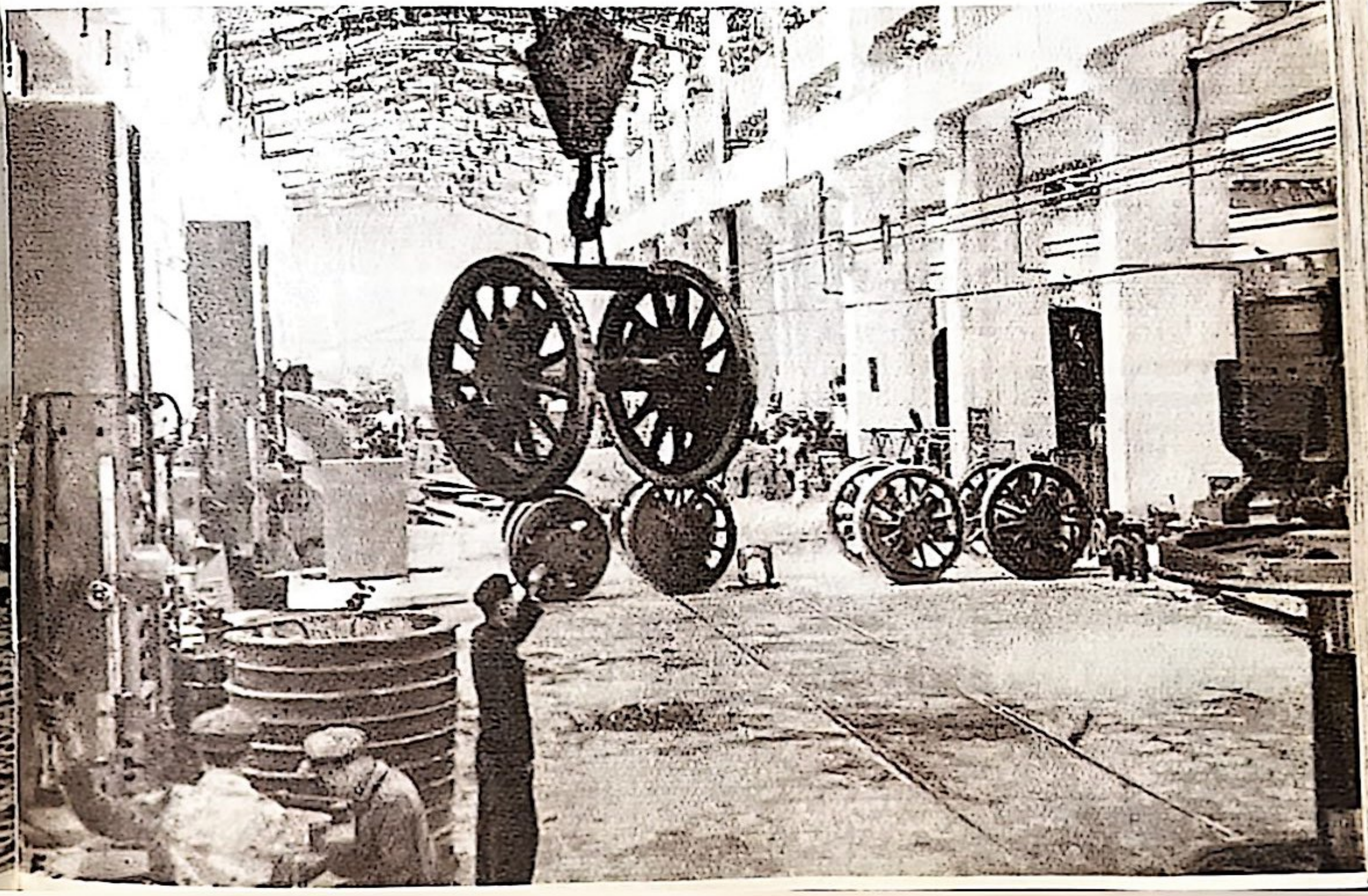
Electric saw is doing the work

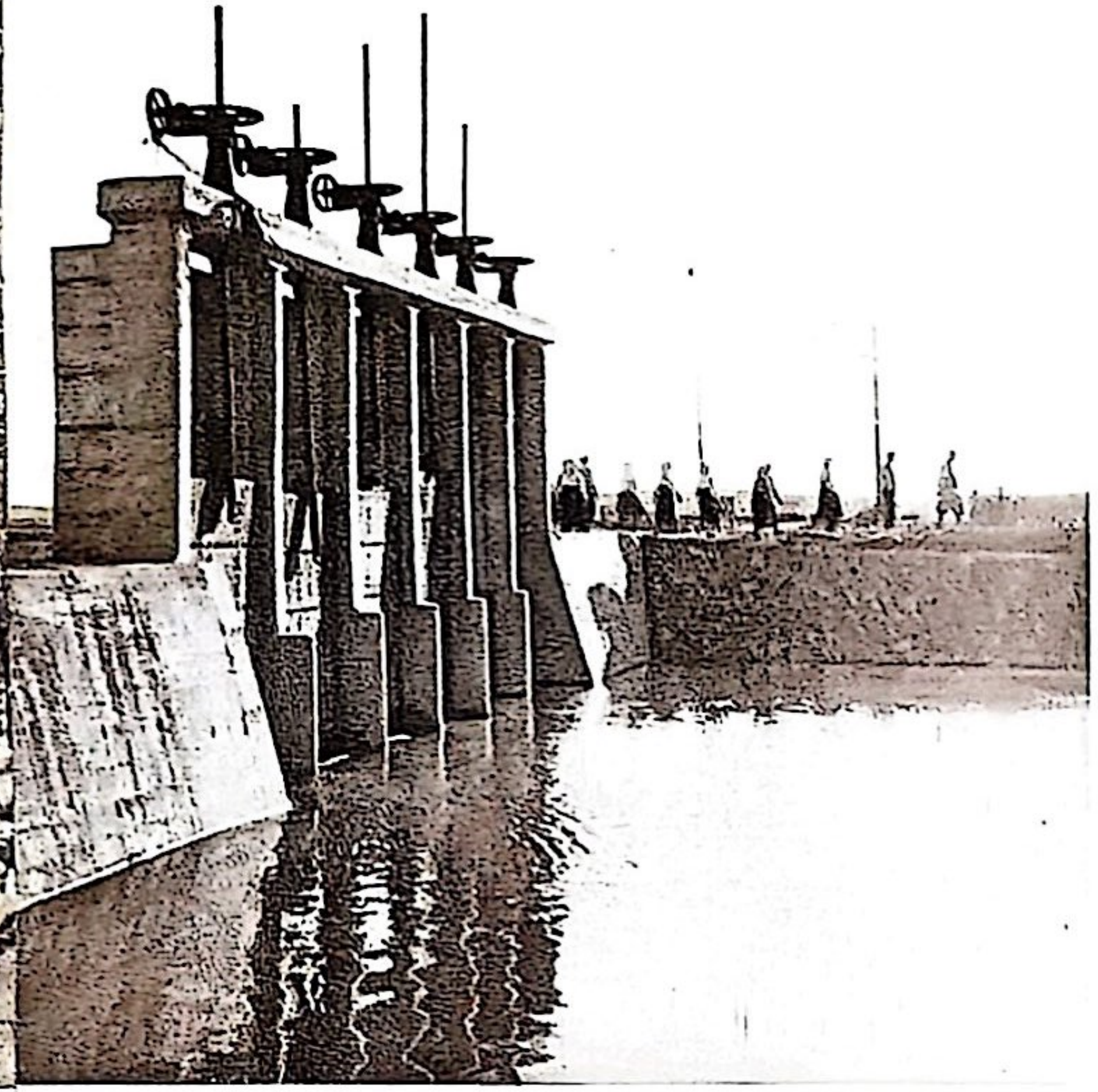


Yangduk-Kowon electric railway

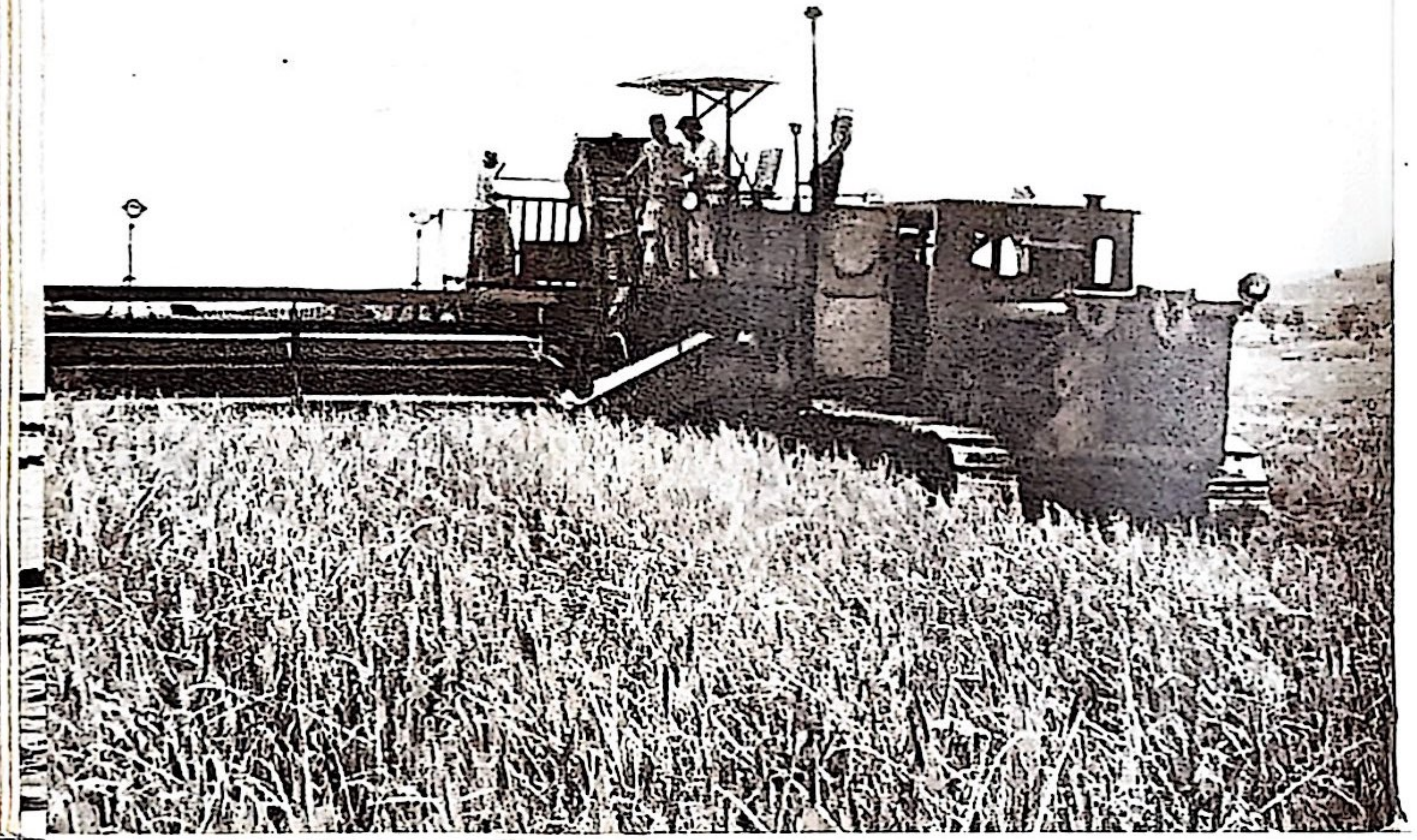
Fishing boats at work in the East Sea

The locomotive shop of the West Pyongyang Railway Factory





The sluice-gate dividing trunk canals No. 3 and 4 of the Pyongnam Irrigation System



Harvesting wheat by a combine harvester

Ample possibilities were provided for carrying out this task. Firstly, a great store of experience was accumulated and the ranks of cadres grew. Secondly, our country had a basis of heavy industry and is rich in natural resources. Thirdly, a vast aid was expected to be given gratis by the fraternal countries headed by the Soviet Union and the People's Republic of China, and there were cooperation and international specialization between the socialist countries.

The Three-Year Plan (1954-56) for the postwar reconstruction and development of the national economy, which was drawn up on the basis of the law-governed economic development and possibilities, was overfulfilled by creative labour endeavours of the people under the wise guidance of the Party. The production level of the state and co-operative industries projected in 1956 was already surpassed at the end of January 1956. In terms of gross output value the plan was carried out in two years and eight months. The planned production level was attained already at the end of 1956, exceeding by far the prewar level.

Over 240 large and medium enterprises, Kimchaik and Hwanghai Iron Works and Heungnam Fertilizer Factory inclusive, all of which had been destroyed during the war, were, in the main, reconstructed. About 80 enterprises including the Huichon Precision Instruments Factory and Daisung Brick Yard were newly established.

Gross industrial output value increased 2.8-fold in 1956 as against 1953, and exceeded the 1949 level by 80 per cent, of which gross output value of state and co-operative industries was 190 per cent higher than in 1953, and 100 per cent higher than in 1949.

In the period of the Three-Year Plan the Party's policy of removing colonial one-sidedness from our industrial structure and creating new industrial branches as foundations for socialist industrialization was correctly implemented.

As a result, the ratio between production of the means of production and consumer goods changed as follows (in percentage):

	1949	1953	1956
Production of the means of production	58.6	37.7	53.9
Production of consumer goods	41.4	62.3	46.1

The industrial structure also underwent changes, colonial one-sidedness and lack of balance caused by the war were remedied to a great extent, as is shown in the following table:

Relative Importance of Industrial Branches (North Korea)

	1944	1949	1954	1956
Total	100	100	100	100
Fuel industry	3.8	4.1	1.7	1.8
Mining industry	15.7	8.1	6.8	6.1
Metallurgical industry	13.3	11	5	8.6
Machine-building and metal-working industry	1.6	8.1	16.9	17.3
Textile industry	6	11.4	18.7	18.4
Food processing industry	7.8	19.4	17.9	13.2

In the period of the Three-Year Plan a marked change took place not only in industrial structure but also in the geographical distribution of industry, contributing to eliminate colonial one-sidedness. In this period new industrial bases were being created. As a result, producing districts were brought closer to consuming districts; industry made comprehensive development; rational use was made of local raw materials; more balanced and closer relations were established between industry, agriculture and transport.

In the period of the Three-Year Plan considerable results were scored in technical reconstruction. New and old mills and factories were equipped with up-to-date machinery sent from the Soviet Union, Germany, Czechoslovakia and other fraternal countries, thus bringing about a radical change in the technical foundation of our industry. At the same time, home-made modern machinery and equipment made a great contribution to technical reconstruction.

With the enhancement of technical level there was a growth of labour productivity, which increased 194 per cent in 1956 as against 1953 and 152 per cent as against 1949.

Another great success made in the period of the Three-Year Plan was the expansion and consolidation of socialist relations of production. Of gross industrial output the socialist sector increased from 90.7 per cent in 1949 to 98 per cent in 1956.

Industrial Output According to Different Economic Sectors *(in percentage)*

	1946	1949	1956
Total	100	100	100
Socialist sector	72.4	90.7	98
Of which;			
State industry	72.4	85.5	89.9
Co-operative industry	—	5.2	8.1
Small commodity economy	4.4	1.5	0.7
Private capitalist economy	23.2	7.8	1.3

Our industry achieved great results in the postwar Three-Year Plan. The state and co-operative industries are predominant in industrial formation. Private industry is insignificant. It is found in the second-rate production fields such as small scale food processing or pottery.

In the postwar period the Party's policy with regard to the socialist transformation of private industry and handicraft was carried through. As a result, various kinds of producers' co-operatives have been set up. The membership of industrial co-operatives increased 1.8-fold in 1956 as against 1953; fishing co-operatives 1.2-fold. Total output of industrial and fishing co-operatives grew twice in 1956 as against 1953 or 2.9 times that in 1949.

In the postwar Three-Year Plan period, our industry began to develop into a modern self-supporting socialist industry. Its leading role in the national economy has been enhanced.

The share of industry in the output of the national economy was about 28 per cent in 1946, 47 per cent in 1949, and 60 per cent in 1956. Thus the relations between industry and agriculture underwent a great change.

On the basis of achievements made in the period of the Three-Year Plan, the First Five-Year Plan started from 1957.

It is envisaged in the Five-Year Plan that the industrial output will increase on an average 21.5 per cent annually. In 1961 it will be 2.6 times as compared with 1956. This means 5.7 times as compared with the pre-liberation year of 1944, and 5.2 times as against the prewar year 1949.

During the Five-Year Plan the production of the means of production will grow 2.9 times and consumer goods 2.2 times.

63 per cent of the growth of industrial production is dependent on the rise in labour productivity which will be 65 per cent higher than in 1956.

In order to carry out successfully the basic tasks of the First Five-Year Plan outlined by the Workers' Party of Korea, it is essential to reinforce fuel-power bases by ensuring the speedy growth of electric power and coal production and accelerate the development of ferrous metal, building-materials, machine-building and chemical industries, so as to lay a solid foundation for the further progress of the national economy.

In addition, an important task to be carried out during the First Five-Year Plan is to speed up the development of the textile, food processing and fishing industries.

During the same period technical reconstruction will proceed apace in all industrial branches, so as to get rid of outmoded technique. Particularly, an end will be put to the backwardness in light industry and machine-building industry, and to colonial one-sidedness still found in all industrial branches. Only when all these tasks are successfully fulfilled, can our industry build a strong basis for socialist industrialization.

From the brilliant results attained in the first year of the First Five-Year Plan, it follows that the above-mentioned tasks will be successfully carried out.

Presenting the 1957 state plan for industrial production which was 22 per cent higher than in 1956, the plenary meeting of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea called upon the entire workers to fulfil the vast plan under the slogan: "Maximum Increased Production and Minimum Spending."

The 1957 state assignments were successfully carried out. Important economic tasks for 1957 were to meet a greater demand for funds, materials and manpower, particularly, to raise large funds from internal resources for establishing or reconstructing a large number of industrial enterprises, and to speed up the production of consumer goods to satisfy the demands of the population which grew with the steep rise in real wages.

Thanks to the correct leadership of the Party and the united forces of the working people, despite all difficulties and obstacles, the original state plan was overfulfilled by 17 per cent, and the increased production plan which was set by themselves by 5 per cent.

A fresh upsurge has been witnessed in industrial production. Our country is turning into an advanced industrial-agricultural country.

We have created the machine-building industry, the heart of heavy industry equipped with up-to-date technique. And we have the bases for the metallurgical, fuel and power industries and a strong base for light industry.

When the First Five-Year Plan with the year 1958 as a divide will have been carried out in 1961, our country will be changed into an industrial-agricultural country, and the problem of food, clothing and housing be solved in the main. Then, our revolutionary base will be consolidated still further, and the material force for accelerating the peaceful unification of the country will grow by leaps and bounds.

POWER INDUSTRY

1. Coal Industry: The coal industry, together with the electric power industry, constitutes a key branch in the production of energy.

Korea is rich in coal deposits which provide favourable conditions for economic construction.

There are three kinds of coal — anthracite, lignite and peat. Total reserves amount to 2,500,000,000 tons (peat excluded), of which 85 per cent is found in North Korea.

Under Japanese imperialist rule before August 15, 1945, Korea's coal industry had been lagging in technique and output. Miners were forced to work under miserable condition. There were no labour protection and safety devices.

After liberation in the North the coal industry, a chief link of heavy industry, developed rapidly with the introduction of advanced mining methods, mechanization of coal hewing and conveyance, improvement in labour protection and safety facilities, etc.

In 1949 the output of coal was 3.2-fold that in 1946. In 1957, 5,000,000 tons of coal were mined.

In the period of the First Five-Year Plan technical improvement will be made in the existing mines; new mines developed; survey work reinforced. In 1961 coal production will reach over

10,000,000 tons, or an increase of 2.4 times as compared with 1949.

2. Power Generation: In Korea the annual rainfall exceeds by far the world's average figure and there are many mountains and rivers. According to incomplete data, Korea's electric power resources are estimated at over 8,000,000 kilowatts.

During the Fatherland Liberation War the Soopoong Hydro-Power Station with a generating capacity of 700,000 kilowatts, Jangjin, Boojunkang, Huhchunkang, Keumkangsan, Booryung, and Ryongheung power stations were seriously damaged by the brutal bombing of the U.S. air pirates.

However, they have been reconstructed and furnished with up-to-date equipment and machinery. In addition, the large-scale Dokrokang Power Station is under construction on the lower reaches of the Dokro River. And preparations are being made for building the Kanggye Power Station.

The transmission and distribution system has been re-established and the colonial one-sidedness removed to a considerable extent. With the expansion of electric bases, power generation is on the increase: in 1957, 6,900,000,000 k.w.h. were generated; in 1961 it will increase to 9,700,000,000 k.w.h.

FERROUS METALLURGICAL INDUSTRY

Korea abounds in iron deposits, which provide favourable conditions for the development of ferrous metallurgical industry. There are 200 or so iron ore deposits.

The biggest base of iron ore is the Moosan mine, which has more than 1,300,000,000 tons of magnetite. Ore contains 40 per cent iron. 50 or 60 per cent of the iron can be extracted bv magnetic ore-dressing. Next come Riwon (producer of hematite), Huhchun and Duksung mines (magnetite). All these mines are closely linked with the ferrous metallurgical bases in the North Hamkyung Province.

The second biggest base lies in the area ranging from the northern districts of North and South Hwanghai Provinces to the north-western districts of South Pyongan Province.

Famous are Jairyung, Eunryul, Hasung, and Anak mines in South Hwanghai Province, Songrim and Hwangju in North Hwanghai Province and Kaichun in South Pyongan Province.

The reserves of these mines are smaller than the Moosan Mine, but the quality is superior. As ore contains 50-60 per cent iron, it can be smelted without ore-dressing process.

Korea has plenty of metal for alloy — manganese, chrome, nickel, cobalt, tungsten, molybdenum, vanadium, titanium, antimony, etc.

As far as fuel and other sources of energy are concerned, high-caloried lignite and anthracite can satisfy part of home requirements, though coke coal is as yet not available. Rich water power resources serve to develop the electric metallurgical industry.

Of great significance in saving coal for iron manufacture is the method of utilizing anthracite for producing granulated iron at the Chungjin Steel Works. There are other methods of utilizing briquettes (a mixture of anthracite, ore dust and lime) or utilizing coal as a reduced agent for obtaining electric energy for iron smelting.

These methods are advantageous, as Korea is rich in resources of water power and raw materials for producing electrodes.

Korea is abundant in heat-resistant materials such as lime, fluorspar and so on, which are found near the steel manufacturing centres.

Thus Korea has favourable conditions for developing the ferrous metallurgical industry. However, in the past it had only served the interests of Japanese imperialists who were bent on plundering Korea of raw materials, so it was limited to producing semi-finished goods. It was a malformed existence and quite loosely related with other industrial branches.

Since liberation, in the North the ferrous metallurgical industry has brought about a radical improvement in horizontal and vertical relations between its various branches, as well as in technical equipment, thus stepping up the production of steel and alloy metal. Consequently it has strengthened the ties with the advancing machine-building industry.

Great results have been scored in raising the utility rate of open hearths and blast furnaces. For instance, the per day output of a blast furnace at the Kimchaik Iron Works was 250 tons in 1949, whereas it increased to 511.44 tons in 1956, and to 739.85 tons in 1957.

The per hour output by a large-size rolling machine at the Hwanghai Iron Works was 4.3 tons in 1944, whereas it was 15.6 tons in 1956 and 17 tons in 1957. The time of a heat in converter No. 3 of the Kangsun Steel Works was 24 hours in 1944, whereas it was 9 hours and 31 minutes in 1956 and 7 hours and 30 minutes in 1957. These examples testify to the all-round development of our metallurgical industry.

The production of pig iron increased 13 per cent in 1956 over 1949; steel, 32 per cent; structural steel, 15 per cent. In 1961 the output of pig iron will increase 3.7-fold as compared with 1956; steel, 3 or 3.5-fold; rolled metal, 3.7-fold. Thus the output of pig iron will reach 700,000 tons. Its variety is being increased. During the First Five-Year Plan new items such as galvanized sheet steel and wire-ropes will be produced.

The centres of the ferrous metallurgical industry are the Kimchaik Iron Works, Chungjin Steel Plant, and Booryung Smeltery in North Hamkyung Province, and the Hwanghai Iron Works and Kangsun Steel Works lying on the lower reaches of the Taidong River.

During the First Five-Year Plan blast furnaces, coke ovens, open hearths, electric converters and rolling machines will be speedily repaired, or newly installed. Their production capacity will grow rapidly.

NON-FERROUS METALLURGICAL INDUSTRY

Korea has rich deposits of non-ferrous metals. In addition, geographical conditions are favourable to the development of non-ferrous metallurgical industry, which holds a very important place in the whole industry.

Korea's copper mining has a long history. In the Silla and Koryu Dynasties copper was exported to China (then Chou and Yuan). In the period of the Li Dynasty, large quantities of copper were mined in Sooan, Nyungwol, Boeun, Anbyun, etc.

Under the Japanese imperialist rule, copper mines were exploited, only provided they yielded a maximum profit with the least outlay. And the survey work was quite neglected.

After liberation, under the people's power big copper mines were discovered in Kapsan, Manduck, and Sangnong areas. Efforts are made to increase copper production. In the period of the First Five-Year Plan the demands for sheet copper and copper wire will be gradually satisfied. Despite the destruction wrought by the recent war, in 1956 the output of copper was 7 per cent over 1949. In 1961 it will be 3 times as great as in 1949.

In Korea lead and zinc are extracted from aggregate ores, such as zinc-silver and copper-silver ores. Our country is rich in lead and zinc reserves, which are more than enough to meet home requirements. They are major items for export. Mines of lead and zinc number over 20 in the North. They are found in South Hamkyung Province, Jagang Province, South Pyongan Province, South Hwanghai Province, and North Hwanghai Province.

The output of lead and zinc is increasing at an unprecedentedly fast rate. In 1956 the production of lead was 244 per cent and zinc was 166.5 per cent higher than in 1949. During the First Five-Year Plan they will increase greatly.

As Korea has rich deposits of alum-stone, shale, fluorspar, cyanite, clay, etc. and is abundant in water power sources, a great prospect is opened up for the development of aluminium production. Up to the present all these favourable conditions have not yet been fully turned into account.

Korea is also rich in magnesite and bittern. The magnesite mine of world-wide fame is situated on the boundary lines between South Hamkyung, Ryanggang and North Hamkyung Provinces. Its deposits are estimated at over 3,600,000,000 tons. Recently magnesite has been exploited at a rapid tempo. Its output in 1956 increased 15 times as compared with 1949.

Bittern is produced in large quantities in salt works on the coast of the Yellow Sea.

Carnallite and brucite, the raw material for producing magnesium, are found in various parts of the country.

Korea has been known from ancient times as a "country of gold". Gold ore is found in lump and dust form: the former is found in the Woonsan and Daiyudong Mines in North Pyongan Province, in the Suheung Mine in South Pyongan Province, in the Ongjin Mine in South Hwanghai Province, and in the Keumjung Mine in North Kyungsang Province; the latter is in the Soonan Mine in South Pyongan Province, in the Bumpo Mine in South Hamkyung Province, in the Kimje Mine in North Chulla Province and in the Jiksan Mine in South Choongchung Province.

The output of gold in North Korea increased 110 per cent in 1956 as compared with 1949. In the future gold output is expected to increase sharply.

As mentioned above, various branches of the non-ferrous metallurgical industry is growing rapidly in the North. There are non-ferrous metallurgical bases on the west and east coast; on the east lie Moonpyong and Heungnam Smelteries and on the west Nampo Smeltery.

These smelteries were destroyed during the war. Since the end of the war they have been reconstructed and enlarged, equipped with up-to-date technique. The production capacity of these smelteries is steadily growing.

In 1956 the coefficient of utility of blast furnaces rose to 2.4 times as against 1949, and 4 times as against the time of Japanese imperialist rule.

During the First Five-Year Plan, the capacity of electrolysis at the Nampo and Moonpyong Smelteries will be enlarged and more copper, lead and zinc produced by raising the rate of actual extraction, so as to meet home requirements and obtain more foreign currency.

MACHINE-BUILDING INDUSTRY

Before liberation the mechine-building industry was one of the most backward branches in the national economy, despite abundant deposits of iron ore and rich power sources. This was entirely due to the colonial policy pursued by the Japanese imperialists.

In 1944 the share of the machine-building industry in North Korea was 1.6 per cent of the whole of industry. It may well be said that the machine-building industry was created after liberation. The Party and the Government paid particular attention to the creation and expansion of the machine-building industry as the basis for the development of a self-supporting industry.

In the period of peaceful construction many heavy industrial plants were built or expanded. Among them were the Pyongyang, Haijoo, Ryongsung, Moonchun, Rakwon, Bookchoong and Sungjin machine-building factories. Besides, shipyards were established in Wonsan and Nampo. Railway factories were built or expanded in Pyongyang, Wonsan and Chungjin.

In 1949 the machine-building industry grew about 5.4 times as compared with 1946. And over 170 kinds of machinery and accessories were produced.

The war provoked by the U.S. imperialists inflicted great damage upon the machine-building industry. However, in the midst of the flames of war, a new basis was laid for building machinery thanks to the correct policy of the Party and the Government and labour enthusiasm of the people.

In July 1953, when the truce was signed, 17 machine-building works were fully functioning and the construction of two works was nearing completion.

In the postwar period the machine-building industry made rapid progress. New machine-building centres have been established on the lower reaches of the Taidong River (Pyongyang, Kiyang, Daian and Nampo), in Shinuijoo and its neighbourhood (Rakwon and Bookchoong), Kusung, Huichun, Kanggye, Junchun, Chungjin, Wonsan, Moonchun, Rajin, Heungnam, Duckchun, etc. These centres produce large quantities of machine-tools, electrical machinery, farm implements, mining and construction machinery, motors and ships.

In 1956 the machine-building industry grew about 4 times as against 1949, and the share of the machine-building industry reached 17.3 per cent of the total industrial output.

Growth of Major Machinery Output Value *(in persentage)*

	1949	1954	1955	1956
Internal combustion engine	—	100	446	487
Lathe	100	—	19.6-fold	39-fold
Boring machine	100	—	47	239
Mining equipment	—	100	274	295
Electric motor	100	—	359	13.2-fold

Transformer	100	85	153	338
Winch	100	184	12-fold	18.5-fold
Motor boat	—	100	183	10-fold
Pump	100	79	793	13.7-fold
Farm machine and implement	100	444	11-fold	16-fold

The production of machinery showed a steady growth. In 1957 alone 295 generators, 12,000 electric motors, 6,800 transformers and 1,022 metal cutting tools were produced.

During the First Five-Year Plan stress will be laid on the development of medium and small machine-building industry in conformity with the level and characteristic features of the national economy. Especially, greater emphasis will be placed on the production of machinery which is demanded in large quantities — electrical machinery, mining machinery, farm implements, construction machines, facilities for ship-building and light industry and various accessories.

In the period of the First Five-Year Plan the machine-building and metal-working industries will grow over 2.6-fold. Thus the machine-building industry will produce not only spare parts but also machine-tools and equipment. Furthermore, it will supply factories and mines comprehensively with machines and equipment, thereby contributing a great deal to reinforce the technical equipment of the national economy.

CHEMICAL INDUSTRY

Korea has abundant mineral resources and water power sources. Vast prospects are opened up for the development of the chemical industry. Rich deposits of lime, apatite, iron sulphide, lignite, salt, barite and so on are found. In addition, industrial by-products are produced in varieties and large quantities.

An abundance of electric power sources and graphite constitutes an important factor in developing the chemical industry.

However, the Japanese imperialists crippled Korea's chemical industry. Towards the close of their colonial rule, they built some chemical plants only with the objects of plundering Korea's rich resources and producing war supplies. Therefore, it had no connection with the other branches of the national economy, and failed to improve the living standards of the people.

However, since liberation our chemical industry has taken the course of reorganizing reasonably its structure and forming close ties with the other economic branches. Greater attention was devoted to producing basic chemicals, carbide, fertilizer, organic synthetic materials, oil, dyes, paints, and medicines. As a result, such branches as are related with agriculture and light industry grew remarkably.

At present basic chemicals such as sulphuric acid, nitrous acid and chloric acid are produced at the Bongoong Chemical Plant and Heungnam Fertilizer Factories; carbide at the Bongoong, Soonchun and Chungsoo chemical plants; fertilizer at the Heungnam Fertilizer Factory.

The Heungnam Fertilizer Factory is big in scale. The construction of an ammonium nitrate factory with an annual production capacity of 136,000 tons started in 1957 with the aid of the Soviet Union and was completed in April 1958.

In 1957, 323,000 tons of chemical fertilizer were produced. This is 128,000 tons more than in 1956. In 1961 it will be over 630,000 tons. At the same time a marked increase of phosphate fertilizer, agricultural chemicals, and chemical fibres is expected.

Now preparations are being made to produce plastics and artificial rubber. During the First Five-Year Plan centres of the organic chemical industry will be created.

The production of medicines will be enough to meet home requirements.

BUILDING-MATERIALS INDUSTRY

Korea is rich in organic and inorganic materials, such as cement, brick, tile, glass and fireproof materials, stone and glue, necessary for developing the building-materials industry. Above all, lime is widely distributed and its reserves are inexhaustible. This provides favourable conditions for the development of the cement industry. In most cases a layer of good quality lime is found together with anthracite.

In Korea there are rich deposits of clay, magnesite, cyanite, alabaster, steatite, felspar and so on.

Over 60 per cent of total geological structure is composed of granite and granitegneiss. Best-quality granite is found everywhere. Marble and slate are also abundant.

Before liberation, Korea's building-materials industry was backward, despite all these natural conditions.

After liberatoin the Workers' Party and the government, taking into consideration the importance of the building-materials industry, took steps to accelerate its development so as to raise sharply the material and cultural standards of the people.

In 1949 the Seunghori, Madong, Chunnairi and Komusan cement mills produced 537,000 tons of cement altogether, and in 1957 895,000 tons. The present cement mills are raising to a considerable extent the operational rate of equipment and tapping inner reserves. At the same time their facilities are being improved technically. The construction of the Shinmadong Cement Mill with the aid of the Soviet Union is nearing completion. In 1961 the production of cement will amount to over 2,000,000 tons.

With the rapid industrialization of construction in recent times, the production of prefabricated reinforced parts is speeded up and will reach 1,000,000 cubic metres in 1961.

Major brick production centres are found near consuming towns. Pyongyang and its neighbourhood are the biggest brick centres with the modern Daisung and Kangnam Brick Yards producing more than 200,000 bricks a day.

Since liberation, the production of bricks has been growing. In 1956 it increased 16-fold as compared with 1949, and roof tiles, 5 times.

Good-quality silica, raw material for manufacturing glass, is plentiful in Mongkeumpo and Keumipo. A modern glass works is located in Nampo.

The glass output has increased greatly. It meets not only the growing demand at home, but is exported. In 1957, 2,568,000 square metres of sheet glass were produced and in 1961 it will reach 3.1 million square metres.

Natural slate is distributed in various parts of Korea. The best producers are Pyongsan and Yuntan, South Hwanghai Province, and Duckchun, South Pyongan Province. Chungjin is the biggest centre of artificial slate.

Korea has an abundance of stone belonging to the system of granite and aqueous rocks. Korea's granite, marble and clay-slate are well known. Kimchaik and Duckchun turn out large quantities of marble.

The developing building-materials industry has ensured the successful carrying out of capital construction, and will continue to satisfy its growing requirements.

LIGHT INDUSTRY

Korea has rich and varied natural resources and an excellent tradition of technique necessary for developing light industry. However, under Japanese colonial rule light industry, like heavy industry, was in a state of stagnation. Cotton, cocoons and semi-finished light industrial articles demanded by the Japanese imperialists were rather noticeable.

Since liberation, in accordance with the policy of the Party and the government with regard to priority development of heavy industry along with the simultaneous development of light industry and agriculture, light industry has made remarkable progress, thereby greatly improving the people's livelihood.

In 1956 textile output increased 302 per cent as against 1949; items of every day use and articles for cultural needs, 358 per cent; food processing, 127 per cent; leather and shoemaking, 317 per cent; rubber goods, 113 per cent.

Before liberation the Japanese imperialists shipped away large quantities of ginned cotton or yarn. Some textile mills were built by the Japanese or comprador capitalists with a view to squeezing out a high profit. 85 per cent of them were in South Korea.

Since North Korea was not favoured with raw materials and industrial facilities, the cotton textile industry had to be started from scratch.

Thanks to the correct policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the D.P.R.K. government, the large scale Pyongyang and Kusong Textile Mills were newly built. And medium and small cotton textile factories were established in various parts of the country.

Cotton cultivation was extended on the principle of growing right crops on the right soil and by the introduction of advanced farming methods.

The Pyongyang Textile Combinat which has been reconstructed on a large scale after the war is equipped with 60,000 spindles. And an attached dye-works with up-to-date equipment has been established.

The output of cotton cloth has grown rapidly with Pyongyang, Kusong and Kaesong as centres. In 1957 the output of cotton cloth was 85,000,000 metres. During the Five-Year Plan cotton cloth and other textile goods will increase rapidly. Then the per capita cloth production will be 20 metres.

Korea's silk industry has a long history, but not until the country's liberation did it make rapid progress. Pyongyang, Bakchun, Anju and Yungheung are the best producers of silk. In 1956 silk output was 3,400,000 metres, and in 1957, 6,500,000 metres.

The centre of the woolen industry is Shinuijoo. Raw materials for woolen fabrics are obtained at home as well as from abroad.

The artificial fibre industry has a great prospect. The Chungjin Spinning Mill has a capacity of producing 2,000 tons of staple fibre and 8,000 tons of rayon. And its scale is now being enlarged. Now good quality fabrics are produced from reed and stalks.

A chemical fibre plant will be built in Shinuijoo during the Five-Year Plan. Then our artificial fibre industry will have an annual capacity of producing 25,000 to 30,000 tons. In 1961 chemical fibres of more than 20,000 tons will be produced. Now in Bongoong a vinalon factory with the production capacity of over 10,000 tons of synthetic fibres is under construction. This will contribute a great deal to increasing the production of fibres.

Before liberation the food processing industry ranked second in industrial output, next to the chemical industry.

Under Japanese imperialist rule the primitive rice milling constituted in the main the food processing industry. Even rice milling was operated only for the benefit of the Japanese imperialists who took away rice from Korea.

In the North the food processing industry has since liberation showed its growth in varied ways, thanks to the policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the D.P.R.K. government.

After the war the food processing enterprises were rapidly reconstructed. Now the food processing industry is developing into a modern one, shaking off all traces of backwardness.

At present it ranks third in gross industrial output (the first is the machine-building and metal-working industries and the second the textile industry). It comprises milling, bakeries, sugar-manufacturing, meat packing, corn-starch, dairy goods, etc.

The biggest centre of the food processing industry is Pyongyang, famous for corn products such as starch, glucose, jelly, oil, sugar and sweets, various wines and other luxuries. The Ryongsung Meat Packing Plant produces various kinds of tinned goods and other processed food. Sariwon and Nampo are known for their milling industry. In Shinpo fish canned goods are produced. Besides, local enterprises and producers' co-operatives are pushing ahead with the production of a variety of specialities.

In 1961 the food processing industry will have grown 3.8-fold as compared with the present.

Since liberation the production of rubber goods, articles of daily use, stationery, leather and shoes has systematically increased.

During the First Five-Year Plan, with a view to solving basically the problem of people's food, clothing, and housing, it is planned to rapidly develop the textile and food processing industries, to increase markedly per capita production and to swell the variety of articles of daily use.

In order to produce much more cloth, the Chungjin Spinning Mill will be reconstructed on a bigger scale, and the Bongoong Synthetic Fibre Plant newly built. And a flax manufactory will be established. More factories for processing farm and marine products will also be built. Manufacture of clothing and footwear will make progress.

In the same period, textiles, underwear, clothing, footwear, foodstuffs, oil, tobacco, sewing machines, watches, gramophones, electric irons, bicycles, enamelware and other household goods will be produced in large quantities, thus contributing a great deal to solving basically the problem of people's food, clothing and housing.

FISHING INDUSTRY

Korea is a country surrounded by seas on three sides. Its inshore fishing grounds cover 750,000 square kilometres. And about 3,300 islands, large and small, lie in her coastal waters. The coast-lines extend 8,700 kilometres. The natural conditions are favourable to the development of the fishing industry. Interflowing of warm and cold currents provides varied and rich marine resources. In North Korea the surface of rivers and lakes covers a total of 50,000 hectares.

Along with rivers the irrigation canals and ponds which have been built since liberation offer possibilities for breeding fresh-water fish.

The Workers' Party of Korea and the D.P.R.K. government have paid special attention to making the most of natural conditions to develop the rich marine resources for the interests of people. Measures were taken to explore and protect fishing grounds; to introduce advanced fishing methods; to develop on a wide scale the ship-building industry; to combine effectively inshore with deep-sea fishing.

The April (1957) Plenum of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea was called to discuss an important task, the task of rapidly restoring and developing the war-devastated fishing industry. The meeting gave a great impetus to the advance of the fishing industry.

In the Three-Year Plan period, the fishing industry completely healed its serious war wounds. Furthermore, it has been furnished with modern equipment, which laid a material-technical foundation for its further forward movement. For instance, motor boats increased 194 per cent in 1956 as against the prewar year; sailing vessels, large and small, 131 per cent. And various processing facilities were expanded and furnished with up-to-date technique.

In the same period the state-owned and co-operative fisheries were reinforced. The total fish catch amounted to 273,000 tons in 1949, whereas it increased to 365,000 tons in 1956, and 564,000 tons in 1957. In 1961, it will be 650,000 tons, which is on a par with the world level of per capita production.

Among major fish are the haddock, mackerel, gilthead, flatfish, yellowfish, herring, salmon, sea-slug, sea-bream, sword-fish, whale, lobster, etc. Among processed marine products are dried slug and octopus, agar-agar, laver, liver oil, haddock-roe, etc. The demand for these marine products are great in foreign markets.

Oyster, corbicula, laver, sea-weed, etc. are major items of pisciculture.

As for the fish processing industry, large quantities of canned fish are produced at Shinpo, and various refrigerated, salted, or dried fish is produced in large quantities in various parts of the country. Most of the fisheries have been newly set up or expanded since liberation.

As Korea is favoured with stretches of alkaline land and much sunshine, the manufacture of sun-evaporated sea salt has developed. Salt fields are found in the Kwangryang Bay, Kwisung, Duckdong, and Namyang in South Pyongan Province, Namshi in North Pyongan Province, Yunbaik in South Hwanghai Province and Juan in Kyunggi Province. In the North salt manufacture is forging ahead to meet the demand of the growing industry and agriculture. In 1957 salt output was 310,000 tons as against 280,000 tons of 1949. In 1961 it will reach 450,000 tons.

TIMBER AND WOOD-WORK INDUSTRY

In Korea forests cover 73 per cent of the territory. Species of plants are varied. And timber by-products are many.

Under the Japanese imperialist rule, the timber industry was in a very backward state. Due to the predatory policy of the Japanese imperialists, Korea's timber resources decreased to 63.7 per cent in the period 1910-42.

However, since Korea was liberated on August 15, 1945, the government has taken positive measures to restore the devastated timber industry, and to encourage afforestation and forest conservancy. In addition, timber felling was organized in an effective way. The total production of timber was 2,580,000 cubic metres in 1956. In 1957 it went up to 2,792,000 cubic metres.

Lumber was about 1,070,000 cubic metres in 1956, while it reached 1,242,000 cubic metres in 1957.

Little veneer was produced before liberation, but now it is made in large quantities in Okasan, Kilchu and Manpo. Furniture, too, is manufactured in various parts of the country.

The pulp and paper industries have made progress. The Kilchu Pulp Factory produces various kinds of paper from the larch and other wood; the Shinuijoo Pulp Factory manufactures pulp from reed, maize-stalks and paddy straw. The paper mills of the factory are producing various kinds of paper to meet home requirements. The bark of a certain kind of mulberry is widely utilized for producing Korean paper which has a long tradition and is world famous for its good quality.

During the First Five-Year Plan the production of various kinds of paper will be 2.2 times that of 1956.

AGRICULTURE

GENERAL

After the liberation from the prolonged colonial rule of the Japanese imperialists the most urgent task set before the Korean people was to liquidate feudal landownership. Unless land reform — the century-old desire of the Korean peasants — was effected, it was impossible to restore and develop agriculture which had long been in a ruinous state as a consequence of the vicious rule of the Japanese imperialists and to promote the material well-being of large numbers of poverty-stricken peasants.

Just before liberation, only 6.8 per cent of the total farm households in North Korea were landlords, who owned 58.8 per cent of the total cultivated land, while the remaining 80 per cent was semi-serf tenants.

In accordance with the historic and economic necessity and the urgent demand of the peasants, the people's power promulgated the Law on Land Reform in March 1946.

As a result of the historic land reform, about one million jungbo of land owned by the Japanese, national traitors and Korean landlords were confiscated without compensation, and over 980,000 hectares distributed free of charge to the farm workers or the peasants with little or no land. Thus 725,000 peasant households were freed from the enslavement to landlords. Feudal landownership was liquidated once and for all, and a new system of landownership was set up for the good of the working peasants.

Under the new land system, the landlord class was liquidated; feudal tenancy was abolished; strict restraint was placed on the purchase, sale and mortgage of land, so that the land might not be used as a means of feudal exploitation and concentrated in the hands of any individuals.

In June 1946 following the land reform the system of tax-in-kind was instituted. Thus an end was put to the exacting taxes and levies and grain collection system enforced under Japanese imperialist rule. The new tax system played its part in securing the results of the land reform; in accelerating the progress of agricultural productive forces; in combining the interests of the state with those of the peasants.

Thanks to the correct policy of the people's power, our rural economy that freed itself from the fetters of feudal land-ownership by virtue of the land reform, was taking long strides while enjoying the positive assistance from the socialist industry.

In the prewar period of peaceful construction the most urgent task confronting agriculture was to solve the food problem.

Due to the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. imperialists and their policy of splitting the nation into the north and south, North Korea was separated from the granary of South Korea.

Under these circumstances, the peasants' enthusiasm for production was enhanced to a great extent; stretches of farm land were reclaimed and improved; per hectare yield of crops markedly increased with the introduction of advanced farming methods.

Already in 1948 the output of grain surpassed the peak level in the pre-liberation period by 10.4 per cent. Thus North Korea became a food-sufficient area. The Party's policy of bringing a change in agriculture bore other fruits. Marked results were attained in livestock breeding and cultivation of industrial crops.

Here are the figures (in percentage).

Growth in Agriculture and Livestock

	1946	1947	1948	1949
Grain	100	109	141	140
Cotton	100	75	230	507
Cocoon	100	120	175	296
Cow	100	129	151	167
Pig	100	181	193	300

With the rapid advance of agriculture the material and cultural standards of the peasants were sharply raised.

During the great Fatherland Liberation War our agriculture was confronted with the important task of ensuring provisions for the front as well as for the rear.

The Party and the government paid due attention to the peculiar conditions prevailing in the war time and emphasis was laid on the rural economy. Appropriate measures were taken to cope with all sorts of difficulties in farming.

In order to stabilize the life of the peasants, particularly the poor peasants, and ensure their farming, the Party and the government gave material assistance to them such as cancelling payment of the tax-in-kind, and return of grain borrowed from the state; giving funds or seeds. A nation-wide movement was launched for the entire people to take an active part in farming. The Party put forward the slogan: "The struggle for producing food is for the Fatherland and for the ensurance of victory on the front."

In response to the call of the Party, workers, office employees, students, soldiers in the rear service volunteered to work in the fields. The soldiers of the Chinese People's Volunteers did labour service and rendered enormous material aid to the Korean peasants. Also the people of the fraternal countries gave the Korean peasants enormous aid in the form of farm machines, agricultural chemicals, draught animals, food, etc.

In the midst of flames of war the peasants, nothing daunted, waged a patriotic struggle for producing more food, under the guidance of the Party and with the help of the whole nation.

As a result, even under the war conditions our agricultural production was on the increase from 1951 on.

	1946	1949	1951	1952	1953
Gross output of grain	100	140	119	129	123
of which:					
rice	100	111	89	104	117

Of special importance was the growth of the socialist sector in agriculture in the war time. Along with the development of the state farms, collective labour was extensively organized among the peasants; and, on this basis, co-operation in agriculture began to grow.

In the period of peaceful construction the Party and the government set up, as the first step for mechanization of agriculture, farm machine-hire stations and the state agricultural and livestock farms which would play a vanguard role in the socialist transformation of agriculture and demonstrate the advantages of large-scale farming.

The state farms, as a new agricultural organization, showed full-scale development during the war. At the same time, the organization of collective labour, for instance, "labour-exchange-teams" and "share-ox-teams", spread far and wide among the peasants, with the positive help of the Party and the government.

In the war time there was an extreme shortage of labour power and draught animals. Under the circumstances seasonal, temporary or all-year-round collective labour was extensively organized in all parts of the country. In addition there appeared no small number of agricultural side-line co-operatives. All these were the buds of our agricultural co-operatives.

The three-year severe war wrought havoc with the material and technical foundations of our agriculture. Almost all irrigation facilities and river-dykes were destroyed. The enemy's barbarous bombing was carried out even on the farm lands. Consequently, one-fifth of the farm lands was damaged, and labour power and draught animals were markedly reduced.

The destruction of industry interrupted the supply of chemical fertilizer, farm machines and implements and agricultural chemicals. Due to the indiscriminate bombing and plunder and atrocities of the invading army which occupied temporarily North Korea, numerous peasants lost their homes, household belongings and tools. Thus their economic strength was extremely weakened.

A brilliant victory was won in the war. After the ceasefire the important task was to reconstruct rapidly the war-devastated industry on a basis of modern technique according to the general line of the over-all reconstruction of the national economy. To do so, it was urgent to increase food, meat and raw materials in keeping with qualitative changes and a rapid advance in the field of industry. In keeping with the rapidly growing industry agriculture had to be developed speedily. The actual situation made it impossible to rely upon individual farming as hitherto.

Only by way of socialist transformation — agricultural co-operation — could the material and technical foundation of agriculture be restored and farm produce increased. Also the peasants could extricate themselves from the difficult conditions created by the war and put an end to exploitation practised by rich peasants. And a balanced development of industry and agriculture could be ensured.

In fact, preliminary conditions were provided for agricultural co-operation. In other words, the peasants experienced during the wartime the advantages of collective labour and co-operative economy through the common labour organization and agricultural side-line co-ops. And their political enthusiasm for the socialist transformation of agriculture was elevated.

Taking into full consideration the law-governed development of economy in our country, the Workers' Party of Korea set forth at the Sixth Plenum of the Party Central Committee (August 1953) the most important task, the task of restoring speedily the war-devastated agriculture and at the same time transforming the rural economy along socialist lines by way of organizing co-operatives step by step. The peasants followed the instruction of the Party and formed co-operatives in strict adherence to voluntary principle.

In our country, the agricultural co-operative movement developed from the experimental stage (1953-54) to a mass movement that started in 1955. In 1956 the co-operatives held a dominant position in farm villages. In 1957 the co-operative movement entered a final stage of its conclusion. The rapid growth of our agricultural co-operation is shown in the following table (in percentage).

	1953	1954	1955	1956	1957
Farm households embraced in co-ops	1.2	31.8	51	80.9	95.6
Farm land under co-ops	0.6	29.3	48.6	77.9	94

In this way socialism in our countryside has won a decisive victory in a short period of time. This may be attributed to the insignificant position of rich-peasant economy; the political enthusiasm of the peasant masses; the understanding of the advantages of co-operative economy by the peasants themselves; in particular, the correctness of the Party's policy and the deep trust in and warm support of the policy on the part of the peasants.

The state farms were expanded and gained strength organizationally and economically, while giving impetus to the speedy development of agricultural co-operation.

Growth of State Farms

	1949	1953	1956
Number of state farms	37	213	188
Arable land *(in thousand jungbo)*	8	57	63

(The reduction in the number of state farms in 1956 is to be explained by the fact that some provincially-run farms were incorporated into large scale ones.)

The technical equipment of state farms was steadily reinforced. Nearly 80 per cent of the total arable land under state farms was ploughed by tractors. The state farms, as the model of socialism in the countryside, are enhancing greatly their vanguard role in helping the co-ops and individual peasants with farming.

Mention should be made of the farm machine-hire stations which play an important role in demonstrating the advantages of co-operatives. They increased from 15 in 1953 to 48 in 1956. In the same period, tractors (in terms of 15 h.p.) increased 4.1-fold and work done by tractors grew 5.1-fold. At the first stage the farm machine-hire stations undertook tilling only. But now they are going over to the mechanized work — sowing, inter-row cultivation, weeding, harvesting, thrashing and transporting. In 1957 the work done by farm machine-hire stations increased 175 per cent as compared with the previous year.

Thanks to the correct policy of the Party and the government the rural economy has been rapidly transformed along socialist lines. As a result, agriculture quickly restored its war damage and reinforced its material and technical foundations. In this respect, of special importance are the November 1954 Plenum and

the December 1955 Plenum of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea.

In the postwar period of the Three-Year Plan (1954-56) the state investment in capital construction of agriculture amounted to 7,400 million won. This was 1,800 million won more than originally planned. Of the total investment 4,200 million won was allocated for irrigation and river-dyke projects which provided a very important condition for increasing grain output.

During the three years from 1954 to 1956, large and medium size irrigation works were carried out with state funds, and small-size ones with private funds. The construction of irrigation facilities was pushed forward in the form of a nation-wide campaign.

With the completion of a number of irrigation projects including the Pyongnam Irrigation Works which waters 30,000 hectares of fields, the irrigated area was extended to 130,000 hectares. The construction of river-dykes with the length of several thousand kilometers could protect 160,000 hectares of fields from flood. Thus, the irrigated fields increased from 47 per cent in 1953 to 74 per cent in 1956; from 1957 the work of watering dry fields has been briskly carried on.

With a view to making good a shortage of labour power and draught animals and raising labour productivity, the Party and the government took measures to retain tens of thousands of ex-servicemen and young intellectuals in farm villages and extend the network of farm machine-hire stations.

Also timely steps were taken to restore rapidly chemical fertilizer factories so as to increase speedily a supply of chemical fertilizers to agriculture.

Consequently, the supply of fertilizer in 1957 amounted to 298,000 tons, or 80,000 tons more than in 1956.

The rapid development of the machine-building industry made it possible to supply a large amount of equipment and materials necessary for building irrigation facilities and river-dykes, as well as modern farm implements.

Thanks to the correct agricultural policy of our Party, the rural economy witnessed a marked progress in the Three-Year Plan period, surpassing the prewar level. In 1957, the first year of the First Five-Year Plan, there was a new turn in agriculture. A production upsurge swept the country and brilliant results were achieved. For all the severe war wounds and frequent natural calamities, in only four years the output of grain surpassed the prewar level by 21 per cent. This is the one of the greatest success scored in our agriculture.

Such speedy growth of grain output is thanks to the extension of arable land and irrigated area, to the constant rise in land utility rate and per hectare yield and to the remarkable expansion of high-yielding crop cultivation. Industrial crop cultivation, fruit growing, livestock farming and sericulture have healed the severe war wounds, and made phenomenal progress, surpassing by far the prewar level.

The following table shows the percentage of growth of agriculture after the war.

	1954	1956	1957
Gross output of farm produce	100	127	152
Grain	100	128	142
Industrial crops	100	108	130
Livestock	100	128	186
Cocoon	100	130	135
Fruit	100	129	384

(In terms of invariable prices of 1948)

In the postwar period a change took place in the share of various economic sectors in farm produce, as is shown in the following table:

	1946	1949	1953	1954	1955	1956
Socialist sector	—	3.2	8	11.5	55.4	73.9
of which:						
State-owned farms	—	3.2	8	8.2	12.2	9.4
Co-operatives	—	—	—	3.3	43.2	64.5
Small commodity economy	94.4	91.4	90.1	87.9	44	25.8
Private capitalist economy	5.6	5.4	1.9	0.6	0.6	0.3
Total	100	100	100	100	100	100

The decisive triumph of the socialist economic sector in the countryside provided prerequisites for carrying on gradually technical reconstruction and developing rapidly the productive forces. The immediate task confronting our agriculture is to increase steadily farm produce; to strengthen the agricultural co-operatives economically and organizationally; to bring the co-operative movement to a successful conclusion.

In short, the basic line of agricultural development during the First Five-Year Plan lies in giving priority to grain output and at the same time in facilitating all-round development of industrial crops, livestock breeding, sericulture and fruit growing, so as to effect many-sided management of co-ops according to the natural and economic conditions. To this end, a series of systematic measures should be taken to give more assistance to agriculture in the form of chemical fertilizer, agricultural chemicals and modern farm machines; to continue the construction of irrigation projects with state or private funds; to introduce a method of watering dry-fields; to use superior quality seed and advanced farming methods on a country-wide scale; and to produce more locally-made compost.

Irrigation projects, large and small, will be carried out with state or private funds. Already in 1957 the construction of the Uhjidon Irrigation Works which will irrigate about 30,000 jungbo of fields and the Kiyang Irrigation Works were started.

In 1961, the last year of the First Five-Year Plan, gross grain output will be more than 3,760,000 tons, and industrial crops, livestock and cocoons will be sharply increased. Mechanization of farming will be accelerated: the state will supply the countryside with over 1,500 tractors, 1,000 lorries and various modern farm implements and transport facilities.

CROPS

The arable land of our country is classified largely into two parts — paddy fields and dry fields. The latter occupies about three-quarters of the total.

Cultivation of crops is to a great extent dependent on geographical conditions. In general, paddy rice is grown on the plains. The vast alkaline land lying along the west coast provides a great possibility for extending paddy rice fields.

As our country is mountainous, the arable land is limited. About 22 per cent of the territory is arable. The nothern half of the country is more mountainous. So the arable land is smaller

Therefore, it is of special importance for a growth of agricultural produce to extend arable and sowing areas; to raise the land utility rate and per hectare yield; to expand the cultivated land under high-yielding crops on the principle of right crops on the right soil.

In this repect, good results have been achieved since liberation, thanks to measures taken by the Workers' Party and the government and their systematic guidance. Especially greater were the results attained in the postwar period.

More arable land was obtained by reclaiming the waste and alkaline land. Also sowing areas were continuously extended. From 1954 to 1957 there was an increase of about 220,000 jungbo of farm land.

Many co-ops introduced the method of producing many crops a year, such as inter-row, mixed, and double cropping. As a result, the rate of land utility was raised to 200 to 300 per cent. In 1957 the average utility of land was 50 per cent higher than in 1956.

The per hectare yield steadily increased by introducing advanced farming methods such as cold- and dry-bed seedlings.

The output of staple crops is shown in the following table:

	1949	1954	1955	1956	1957 (1956=100)
Paddy rice	100	75	90	93	103
Maize	100	98	81	94	119

The marked extension of the fields under rice and maize signifies a great change in raising crops.

During the First Five-Year Plan the government-financed irrigation works will bring 75,000 jungbo of fields under irrigation and the co-op-financed irrigation works, 118,000 jungbo. The rate of land utility will increase to 168 per cent; the total sown area will amount to 2,700,000 jungbo; the supply of chemical fertilizer will increase 2.6-fold.

Grains: From ancient times grain production has held a dominant place in our agriculture. The principal grain crops in Korea are rice, barley, wheat, soy beans, maize, etc.

In 1956 the fields under grain crops reached nearly 90 per cent of the total sown area. Among these rice cultivation comes first in importance. Rice fields occupy over 20 per cent of the area sown to grain crops, while its harvest accounts for about 50 per cent of gross grain output.

Korea, like China, India, Japan and other Asian countries lying in the Monsoon zone, is a famous rice-producing country. The best farmland and rice-growing areas are in the plains on the west coast. Weather conditions are favourable for rice cultivation. In the transplanting season there is much rain. In the growing season, the temperature is high, the air is damp, and the period of sunshine is long. In the ripening season, there is a spell of dry weather.

Owing to the seasonal change, there is often a drought in the transplanting season. In July and August a heavy rainfall leads to floods which cause considerable damage to paddy fields.

In order to secure stable and high yields of rice, irrigation systems should be expanded. Therefore, since liberation the Party and the government have considered it one of the most important tasks to carry on the building of irrigation works on a nation-wide scale. A vast sum of state funds has been invested in irrigation projects.

Next in importance is the introduction of such advanced farming method as cold-bed seedling, which makes it possible to increase rice production by one to 2.5 tons per hectare as compared with the watered-bed method.

During the First Five-Year Plan the area transplanted with cold-bed seedlings will be about 90 per cent of the total paddy fields. And the per jungbo rice yield will be raised to four tons.

Maize cultivation ranks next to rice. It has a great value in the national economy. Its cultivation has recently been sharply increased. Now areas sown to maize is greater than to any other grain crops.

	1949	1953	1955	1956	1957
Total sown area	100	100	100	100	100
Maize	11.8	10.5	14.4	25.2	29.7

Korea, together with Northeast China, is one of the biggest producers of soy beans in the world. In the sown area soy beans come third. Along with maize the cultivation of soy beans has recently grown. They are staple stuff in the food processing industry.

Besides, our country produces wheat, barley, oats, millet, kaoliang, glutinous millet, red and green beans, etc.

Industrial Crops: Our country produces many varieties of industrial crops. Among them the important crops are cotton, flax, hemp, tobacco, ginseng, hops, etc. The high temperature in summer and a considerable amount of rainfall are favourable for growing cotton without large scale irrigation systems.

Cotton cultivation has been making steady progress, as its area is extended and the new advanced methods such as humus-pot growing are introduced. In 1961 cotton output is expected to be 30,000 tons. The best cotton-growing area lies on the lower reaches of the Taidong River.

Tobacco cultivation made marked development, especially in the postwar period.

	1946	1949	1953	1955	1956	1957
Tobacco	100	500	115	292	584	653

(in percentage)

Tobacco is cultivated throughout the country. The yellow leaf variety is well known at home and abroad for its high quality. It is one of the most important items of export. In 1961 tobacco output will reach 20,000 tons.

Flax comes third in the crop area. The best flax-growing area is found on the Kaima Plateau 1,000 metres above sea level. At present flax meets not only the home demand, but is also exported in large quantities. In 1961 its output will reach 70,000 tons.

The Kaima Plateau is famous for hops. Korean hops are of high quality, and one of the important items of export.

Ginseng is a Korean speciality, which has long been known as elixir of life. The quality of Koryu ginseng is excellent.

The prepared white and red ginseng is exported in quantities. And ginseng derivatives such as ginseng tea and wine are also popular.

The cultivated land under sun-flowers and castor-beans has been greatly extended.

Our country has an abundance of vegetables and potatoes. Their export is promising. The mountainous area in the northern part is suited to growing potatoes, and the southwestern area to sweet potatoes. The target of potatoes for 1958 is two million tons, or 800,000 tons more than in 1957.

Fruit Growing: In Korea many varieties of fruits — apples, pears, peaches, persimmons, grapes, plums, etc. — are grown. The war-ravaged orchards were restored speedily. In 1957 the gross output of fruit reached 110,000 tons, thus exceeding the previous year's level by 1.7-fold. Now a nation-wide campaign is being launched to extend the fruit-growing area to 100,000 jungbo. Already in 1957 the newly reclaimed area covered 40,000 jungbo. The work of growing necessary saplings is successfully carried on. Large quantities of fruits are exported. The state orchards play an important role in fruit growing. Their production comprises about 42 per cent of the total output of fruits. And about 70 per cent of fruit export comes from the state orchards. The export of fruits grown by the state orchards increased 13 times as compared with the total amount of fruit export in the prewar years. By 1961 production of fruits will be 150,000 tons.

The cultivation of apple holds a most conspicuous place. The apple area makes up 80 per cent of the total cultivated area under fruit. The largest fruit export is the apple. It is grown throughout North Korea. Particularly the coastal areas of South Hamkyung Province, South Hwanghai Province and South Pyongan Province are the apple-growing centres.

Sericulture: Korea has been well known as a silk-producing country from ancient times. The Koreans have an excellent tradition of sericulture. The recent war devastated the mulberry fields, and damaged cocooneries. As a result, the silk-raising industry showed a sharp decline. However, in the postwar period, the growing demand for silk fabrics has accelerated the development of sericulture. At present the production of cocoons surpasses by far the prewar level. And the mulberry fields have restored war damage, and its area has been considerably expanded.

In our country tussah worm is extensively raised. And a strain of silkworms which feed on castor beans is now being raised. This is of geat importance in increasing markedly the yield of cocoons.

The method of raising silkworms many times a year has been popularized. In the past silkworms were raised twice a year, in spring and autumn. But now sericulturists have accumulated a great store of experience in raising silkworms seven or eight times a year.

	1946	1949	1953	1956	1957
Ordinary cocoons	100	297	174	223	310
Tussah cocoons	—	100	217	30-fold	96-fold

By the end of the First Five-Year Plan the gross output of cocoons will be 25,000 tons. And the raising of tussah and Eri worms will grow considerably.

LIVESTOCK FARMING

Despite the favourable natural conditions, our livestock breeding had been in a very backward state under Japanese imperialist rule. It lagged far behind crop cultivation. Suffice it to say that the share of animal husbandry was 5.3 per cent in agriculture in 1936: The extreme poverty of Korean peasants under Japanese imperialist rule provided no possibility for combining in an effective way crop cultivation with livestock breeding. Especially toward the close of Japanese imperialist rule the livestock breeding was on the verge of ruin.

Since liberation the Party and the government have taken positive measures to eliminate the backwardness in animal husbandry. In order to speed up the development of livestock farming, the state livestock farms, livestock breeding farms and veterinary hospitals were established or expanded; loans were granted to the peasants; superior breeds were distributed.

Thus, in the period of peaceful construction a solid basis was built for developing our animal husbandry. There was, on the whole, no farm household without cattle.

Growth of Livestock *(in percentage)*

	1946	1949	1949 (1944=100)
Korean cow	100	167	104
Pig	100	300	171
Sheep and goat	100	184	—

During the war animal husbandry, too, suffered severe damage. There was a loss of 250,000 Korean cows and 330,000 pigs. The foundation of livestock breeding was destroyed.

In the postwar period the state livestock farms played a great role in developing animal husbandry. It is note-worthy that the breeding farms supplied 260,000 suckling pigs and 1,220,000 fowls to the peasants. The rapid progress of agricultural co-ops gave a great impetus to rebuilding a foundation for livestock farming.

At present the number of animals surpassed by far the prewar level. Pastures have been extended and the storage of sillage has sharply increased. Thus fodder production is put on a solid footing.

Moreover, the advanced methods of breeding animals has been popularized. And the veterinary work has been reinforced.

Growth of Livestock *(in percentage)*

	1949	1953	1956
Korean cow	100	64	62
Milch-cow	100	66	126
Pig	100	82	108
Sheep and goats	100	199	689

When compared with the pre-liberation year 1944, sheep increased two-fold in 1956; goats, 12 times; pigs, 1.8 times.

During the Three-Year Plan animal products showed a marked growth: in 1956 meat increased 3.6 times as against 1953; milk, 172 per cent; wool 186 per cent. In 1957, the first year of the First Five-Year Plan, tremendous results were attained in stock-breeding. At the end of 1957 Korean cows numbered 566,000; pigs, 1,340,000. The former is 17 per cent and the latter 89 per cent higher than in the previous year. In the same period milk increased 2.7 times; meat 167 per cent; wool 109 per cent.

By the end of the First Five-Year Plan Korean cows will be over 900,000; pigs over 2,000,000; sheep over 224,000; goats 162,000. Also the raising of milch-cows, rabbits and other animals will make headway. More than 200,000 tons of meat will be produced.

AGRICULTURAL CO-OPERATIVES

Great indeed is the role of farm co-ops in developing agricultural productive forces.

Apart from agricultural co-ops, agro-stock co-ops are organized in the mountain areas, while agro-fishing co-ops are set up along the coast.

In our country agricultural co-operatives are, in the main, classified into three types; the first type of co-operative is a primitive one such as the mutual-aid co-ops. At present almost all this type of co-ops have developed into an advanced type of co-ops.

The second type of co-operative preserves private landownership. Here collective economy is practised by pooling the land. Other means of production such as draught animals and farm implements may be owned either privately or in common by way of purchase.

Before distributing harvests among co-op members all production costs and tax-in-kind are put aside. Then a certain amount of common reserve and social and cultural funds are held in reserve. The remaining harvest is shared among members according to the number of workdays and the land invested. The share according to workdays amounts to 80 per cent of the total dividends. If the workdays of the members who invested land are more than 120 days a year, he is entitled to receive dividends on his land share. The third type of co-operative is the most advanced one. The land and other means of production are pooled for common uses. But the right to private ownership is still preserved. In this case the privately-owned draught animals and farm implements may be purchased by the co-op. The farming and subsidiary occupations are brought entirely under a single collective management.

When farm produce is distributed, production costs and tax-in-kind are put aside, and a certain amount of common reserve and social and cultural funds are likewise put aside. The rest is distributed to the members according to workday units. The third type belongs to the socialist economic sector.

From the beginning of the co-operative movement, the third type was dominant in our country. In March 1957 it comprised 97.8 per cent of the total co-operatives. The socialist transformation of agriculture by way of co-operation is proceeding apace, and technical backwardness left by Japanese imperialism is eliminated. During the postwar Three-Year Plan the number of agricultural co-op households and their cultivated land grew over four times on an average.

Growth of Co-operatives

	Number of farm households per co-op	Cultivated land per co-op *(in hectares)*
July 1953	12.6	20.6
June 1954	18	30
June 1955	39.4	70.8
June 1956	49.8	81.8
Dec. 1956	54.7	88.3

The scale of co-ops is being extended along with the accumulation of managerial experience and advance of mechanization.

Despite the fact that the scale of our co-ops was comparatively small and agro-technique was at a low level, our socialist co-operative economy demonstrated its great superiority over individual farming. Illustrative of this is the growth of common reserve and increase in shares of co-op members.

During the war agriculture suffered severe damage. Our co-operatives had to start from scratch.

However, in three and a half years the co-ops accumulated common reserves worth 30 billion won. This works out at 2,020,000 won per co-op. In 1957 the co-op common reserve grew to 185 per cent in grain and 151 per cent in cash as compared with 1956. The share of each farm household increased sharply.

Thus the living conditions of co-op members have been radically bettered. Today in farm villages the program of cultural revolution, technical reform, and cultural construction is being successfully carried out.

In the field of land construction strenuous efforts are made to mechanize farming; to make effective use of cultivated land and irrigation facilities commensurate with the present level of our intensive cooperative economy; to develop many-sided management in conformity with the natural and economic conditions; to reorganize rationally administrative divisions in the countryside.

Along with this, the cultural construction of farm villages has been started on the basis of cooperative economy. The countryside is taking on a new look. Schools of various grades, democratic publicity halls, and libraries have been reconstructed or newly built. To this are added many nurseries, kindergartens, clinics and other cultural and public health establishments. The building of farm production establishments and large scale construction of dwelling houses is under way. Already over 30,000 modern houses have been built.

In order to raise the cultural level, various organizations have been set up in the countryside. We can cite by way of illustration 7,000 technical research circles, and 50,000 literary and art circles and sports societies.

Practical life has fortified the confidence of co-op members in the superiority of co-operative economy. They are willing to entrust their destiny to the co-operatives. They are fully determined to defend and multiply their gains by all means. No wonder they achieved such brilliant results as to increase grain output 330,000 tons more than envisaged in the state plan for 1957.

Entering the second year of the First Five-Year Plan, 1958, they are firmly resolved to produce 3,950,000 tons of grain which exceeds the amount envisaged in the Five-Year Plan. From the past year's experience it can be safely said that they will certainly carry out their task with credit.

TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS

TRANSPORT

Before liberation Korea's transport was completely siezed by the Japanese imperialists for plundering Korea of raw materials and marketing their commodities in Korea as well as for tightening their colonial rule over Korea and expediting their aggression on the Asian mainland.

As a result, the transport network was irrational from the standpoint of the development of industry and agriculture, and failed to maintain organic relations of production and consumption between various localities and between economic branches.

A traffic network was constructed by the Japanese imperialists. But there were few transport machine factories. Necessary equipment and materials had to be supplied entirely by Japan. The technical equipment of transport also was poor. Koreans were excluded from the domains of technique and management.

However, after the August 15 Liberation a fundamental change took place in the system and operation of transport in the North. Transport was converted into an important means of promoting the development of the national economy.

Under the law on the nationalization of major industries enforced in 1946, main transport facilities including railways, ports and means of major sea and river transport fell into the hands of the people. As a result, great successes were registered in rationalizing the system of railways and motor highways, in technical equipment and numerical growth of transport facilities, in mass training of technical personnel, and in the marked elevation of the operational rate of equipment.

In the period of peaceful construction our transport met satisfactorily the requirements for developing the national economy. The railway freight haulage increased about 4 times in 1949 as against 1946, automobile transport 5.3 times, sea and river transport by about 200 per cent.

When the war was started by the U.S. imperialists and the

Syngman Rheeites, the transport workers reorganized the transport system on war-time footing. In defiance of the incessant bombing and bombarding of the enemy they carried out heroically their duties.

In the post-war period, the war damaged transport facilities were not only restored but also expanded. As a result, they could satisfy the demand of the national economy which was being rapidly restored and constructed on a big scale. In 1956 when the post-war Three-Year Plan was fulfilled, the railway freight haulage increased to 112 per cent as against 1949; automobile transport to 6.3 times; sea and river transport to 116 per cent. And technical reconstruction made progress to a considerable extent. During the First Five-Year Plan, transport will develop more strikingly.

Railway Transport: The development of railway transport in Korea was made in accordance with the colonial, predatory policy of the Japanese imperialists and their schemes for invading the Asian mainland. In 1899 the Kyung-in railway (between Seoul and Inchun) was opened for the first time in Korea. In 1944 the total length of railways reached 6,347 kilometres.

The Japanese imperialists also severely damaged the abnormally developed railway system, when they were defeated in the war; passenger and freight cars, including 252 locomotives, bridges and tunnels were destroyed.

In the period of peaceful construction after liberation, the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the Republic set about rehabilitating and rearranging the damaged railway system. Considerable results were scored in the new distribution of railways, in production of railway transport equipment, and technical equipment, and in mass training of technical personnel. Thus much was done to eliminate the colonial defects remaining in the field of railways and ensure the independent development of railway transport.

In the same period, Yangduk-Kowon section of the Pyongwon trunk line connecting the eastern areas with the western areas, and the Kaigo-Koin section of the Manpo line connecting the northwest areas with the inland districts were electrified. The Kaichun line changed to a broad-gauge system. Kowon

mine line and forest railways were newly laid. As a result, the irrationality of the railways was markedly remedied.

During the war, the railway transport was destroyed and its freight haulage dropped to 65 per cent in 1953 as against 1949.

During the Three-Year Plan about 300 kilometres of railway lines and station yard tracks and 51 kilometres of the electric railway between Yangduk and Chunsung were completely restored. And 228 railway bridges, large and small, including the Chungchun and Taidong bridges, and 30 tunnels were restored. In the same period, the Wonsan, West Pyongyang, Chungjin and Ranam railway factories and 17 locomotive yards were restored, and many railway stations were reconstructed.

With the increase of the rolling-stock the transport capacity steadily grew in the Three-Year Plan period. In 1956 the railway freight haulage was 12 per cent over the pre-war level of 1949 and the freight turnround, 26 per cent.

In the same period, Pyongyang-Moscow and Pyongyang-Peking through trains were opened to traffic, thereby further strengthening international transport service.

In 1957, the first year of the First Five-Year Plan, such capital construction as restoring the electric Chunsung-Kowon line and building the Pyongyang station were conducted.

In 1957, freight turnover was 19 per cent higher than originally planned and freight haulage 17 per cent. Manufacture of freight cars was started.

In the First Five-Year Plan period, in keeping with the line of electrifying our railway transport, the laying of electric railway between Kowon and Shinsungchun will be carried out. The electrification of the line between Tanchun and Myungchun will be started. The laying of main lines will be continued, adding 300 kilometers. Consequently the transport capacity will grow considerably.

In 1961 the freight haulage will amount to 32 million tons and freight turnround, 7,300 million ton kilometres. These figures are 70 per cent respectively over those of 1956.

Automobile Transport: Owing to geographical peculiarities, automobile transport occupies an important place in Korea. Nevertheless, the automobile transport in Korea before the liberation was extremely poor due to the colonial policy of the

Japanese imperialists. The meager automobile transport found vivid expression not only in the motor highways and technical equipment, but also in the number of automobiles.

In 1938, the number of automobiles was only 8,900. However, in the North after the August 15 Liberation, a number of motor roads were built and technical equipment was markedly reinforced. Automobiles and spare parts greatly increased.

The automobile transport in the North after the liberation played a great role in transportation in combination with railways, distribution of various items of daily necessaries to towns and the countryside and delivery of materials necessary for industrial production, building of irrigation projects and reconstruction of power stations.

Particularly during the Fatherland Liberation War, automobile transport in the North ensured the smooth conveyance of weapons, munitions and troops to the front and played no small part also in the transportation of materials in the rear.

During the war many new motor routes also were built; the technical equipment was reinforced; the number of automobiles increased sharply.

During the Three-Year Plan, the Government of the Republic, in order to promote the rapid development of motor transport and to lay its material foundation, built the Huichun Auto-parts Factory in anticipation of manufacturing automobiles and rehabilitated and expanded many other automobile repair shops.

Freight by lorries in 1956 increased 6.3 times as against 1949 and the number of bus passengers 8.5 times. During the First Five-Year Plan transport of goods by automobiles will be 17,700,000 tons and the number of passengers, about 140,000,000.

River Transport: Korea has a developed network of rivers. About 20 per cent (3,200 kilometres) of the total length of rivers with more than 40 kilometres of navigable streams each is available for river transport service.

In Korea from olden times rivers had been widely utilized for the purpose of transport. However, under Japanese imperialist colonial domination our river transport was declined. In addition the reckless felling of trees and neglect of water conservancy threw no small obstacles in the way of river navigation. After liberation, in the northern part of the Republic positive measures were taken to develop the river transport.

The river transport played no small part, particularly, during the Fatherland Liberation War. In the post-war period, transport facilities were rapidly rehabilitated, and major rivers including the Yalu and Taidong Rivers are more widely utilized. At present there are regular river services between Manpo-Chosan-Soopoong, between Chungsoo-Shinuijoo-Dasado, between Nampo-Jeudo and between Pyongyang-Nampo.

Sea Transport: Korea is surrounded by seas on three sides. Therefore sea transport assumes great importance for coastal navigation as well as for contacts with foreign countries.

Korea, favoured with good ports and sea-routes, had fine traditions in both seamanship and ship-building from ancient times.

However, Korea's sea transportation under Japanese imperialist rule could not develop. And marine transport facilities were monopolized by Japanese capital.

But, since liberation, the Workers' Party and the government have paid great attention to the development of sea transport. Wonsan, Chungjin, Rajin and Nampo ship-yards were established; port facilities repaired and expanded; large numbers of technical personnel trained; loading and unloading were mechanized; new sea-routes explored; ports are protected from tidal changes.

However, during the war sea transport was most severely damaged due to the U.S. imperialists' frenzied bombardment.

After the truce the government paid due attention to the rehabilitation and development of sea transport. In the Three-Year Plan period ship-yards at Nampo, Chungjin and Wonsan ports were restored and expanded; sweeping operations were conducted and numbers of fishing-boats and transport ships are being turned out. In the First Five-Year Plan period, the material and technical foundations for developing river and sea transport will be laid. Freight turnover will reach 3,530,000 tons.

Air Transport: Not until the August 15 Liberation was air transport in Korea developed. At present, there are regular domestic and international air lines: between Pyongyang-Chungjin, between Pyongyang-Shenyang-Peking and between Pyongyang-Shenyang-Chita-Moscow.

COMMUNICATIONS

Before liberation communication facilities centred around Seoul. There were no main tele-communication lines running across North Korea. When the Japanese imperialists were defeated in the war, they destroyed many communication facilities in Chungjin and other districts. In North Korea right after liberation, telegraph and telephone communication between Pyongyang and other provinces was entirely cut.

After liberation, the people's power restored the destroyed communication facilities and rearranged communication service with Pyongyang as the centre. Much was done to expand communication facilities to meet the requirements of the rapidly developing national economy. As a result, the total length of telegraph and telephone lines rose to 143 per cent in 1949 as against 1946 and mail service 6-fold.

During the war, serious damage was done to communication facilities. During the post-war Three-Year Plan, the work of restoring the war-ravaged means of communications and of equipping them with up-to-date technique was successfully carried out. As a result, telegraph and telephone communication facilities between areas as well as city telephone lines were rehabilitated and extended. In 1956, the total length of telegraph lines grew to 123 per cent as compared with 1953; the total length of the long-distance telegraph and telephone circuit lines to 139 per cent; the capacity of town telephone exchange to 152 per cent. The number of post-offices increased 111 per cent.

The Three-Year Plan saw the rapid restoration and expansion of broadcasting establishments. The Central Broadcasting Station with the capacity of 150 kilowatts was newly built.

In 1956, the number of through-wire-radio-relay stations increased by 221 as against 1949 and their power about 7 times. The number of wireless listeners increased 4 times as compared with 1953, and that of through-wire-radio-relay 8 times.

During this period, international telephone lines were opened connecting with Moscow, Peking, Prague, Warsaw, Berlin, Budapest, Sofia, Bucharest and Ulan-Bator.

From the latter half of 1955, tele-communication between Korea and many capitalist countries including Japan, India, Switzerland and France showed considerable improvement. In the First Five-Year Plan period, the telephone network will be further extended and smoother operations will be ensured for tele-communications between the capital and provinces, between provinces and counties, between counties and important townships. To this end the total length of circuit lines will increase 1.5 times. The through-wire-radio-relay network will be also extended covering all big townships. In 1957 the Pyongyang Central Telephone Office with modern automatic exchange equipment of 6,000 circuit lines was put into operation.

CAPITAL CONSTRUCTION

The capital construction has always been put forward as one of the cardinal tasks for the overall development of the national economy and promotion of material and cultural well-being of the people.

It must be recalled that the Japanese imperialists damaged severely all branches of the national economy at the time they were defeated in the Second World War, and the barbarous U.S. imperialists destroyed towns and the countryside, almost all factories, enterprises, transport and communication facilities and cultural establishments during the Korean War.

In the period of post-liberation peaceful construction and postwar reconstruction, the Workers' Party of Korea and the D.P.R.K. Government carried out on a large scale capital construction with a view to ensuring the balanced development of the national economy, eliminating colonial onesidedness, and laying a self-sufficient foundation.

In the pre-war period, capital investments in industry showed a systematic increase. In 1949, of the total amount of the state capital investment industry made up 44.3 per cent. Especially there was a marked increase in electric, machine-building, mining, metallurgical and light industries. In this period a good number of large scale industrial establishments which had been destroyed by the defeated Japanese imperialists were reconstructed and expanded. Among them were the Hwanghai Iron Works, Kimchaik Iron Works, Soopoong Hydro-electric Power Station, Heungnam Fertilizer Factory, Daian Electric Appliances Factory, and Pyongyang Textile Mill.

In this period capital construction was made for restoring the damaged railway transport system and irrigation works for agricultural development. Besides, the construction of educational and public health facilities and dwelling houses was carried out on a wide scale.

In 1949, of the total amount of capital construction non-productive branches made up 30.1 per cent.

All these economic and cultural establishments built in the peaceful post-liberation period were ruthlessly destroyed due to the war provoked by the U.S. imperialists and their lackeys, Syngman Rheeites.

Right after the ceasefire, the Party and the Government worked out a gigantic capital construction plan for the rapid reconstruction and development of the war-devastated national economy and cultural establishments and for creation of industrial centres.

In the postwar Three-Year Plan period (1954-56) the total state capital investment for the reconstruction and development of all branches of the national economy amounted to 80.6 billion won, or 1.8 billion won more than originally planned. In the same period 73.1 per cent of investment was made in productive branches, while 26.9 per cent in non-productive branches.

With such tremendous investment 240 medium and large scale industrial establishments were furnished with up-to-date equipment, and fully or partly put into operation. In addition, about 80 medium and large industrial establishments were newly built.

In the fields of transport, communications, agriculture, education, culture and public health large scale capital construction was carried out. Housing construction of 5,100,000 square metres was carried out with state funds.

For the implementation of the First Five-Year Plan (1957-1961) capital construction will constitute a very important factor in accelerating the rate of industrial development and ensuring balanced extended reproduction. Therefore, it is still a central problem in drawing up the long-term plan.

In the First Five-Year Plan period, the national income will be increased and, on this basis, the state investment in capital construction will reach over 147 billion won. The average annual investment will be 9 per cent over that in the Three-Year Plan period.

It will assume a bigger scale, if we take into account the capital construction worth 40 billion won to be undertaken by co-ops themselves with the increasing common reserve funds.

In allocating funds for capital construction during the Five-

Year Plan, special emphasis will be put on the capital construction of heavy industry as well as on housing construction. Of course, full consideration should be given to a balanced development of all branches of the national economy.

The investment in industrial capital construction was 49.6 per cent in the period of the Three-Year Plan, whereas during the Five-Year Plan it will be raised to 55 per cent, and of the total industrial capital construction heavy industry will occupy about 83 per cent.

Of non-productive construction, housing will increase from 12 per cent to 14 per cent. And capital construction in the fields of agriculture, light industry and transport will be expanded.

It is envisaged in the First Five-Year Plan that large numbers of industrial establishments, dwelling houses, cultural and welfare facilities will be built; the generating capacity of electricity will be increased 1.7 times; the production capacity of rolled steel—3.1 times; the number of machine-tools in machinery works — twice; the capacity of producing chemical fertilizer—2.4 times; cement—1.8 times; cotton fabrics—1.7 times; silk fabrics 8.4 times.

During the First Five-Year Plan preparations for capital construction will be made in anticipatien of economic development in the Second Five-Year Plan period.

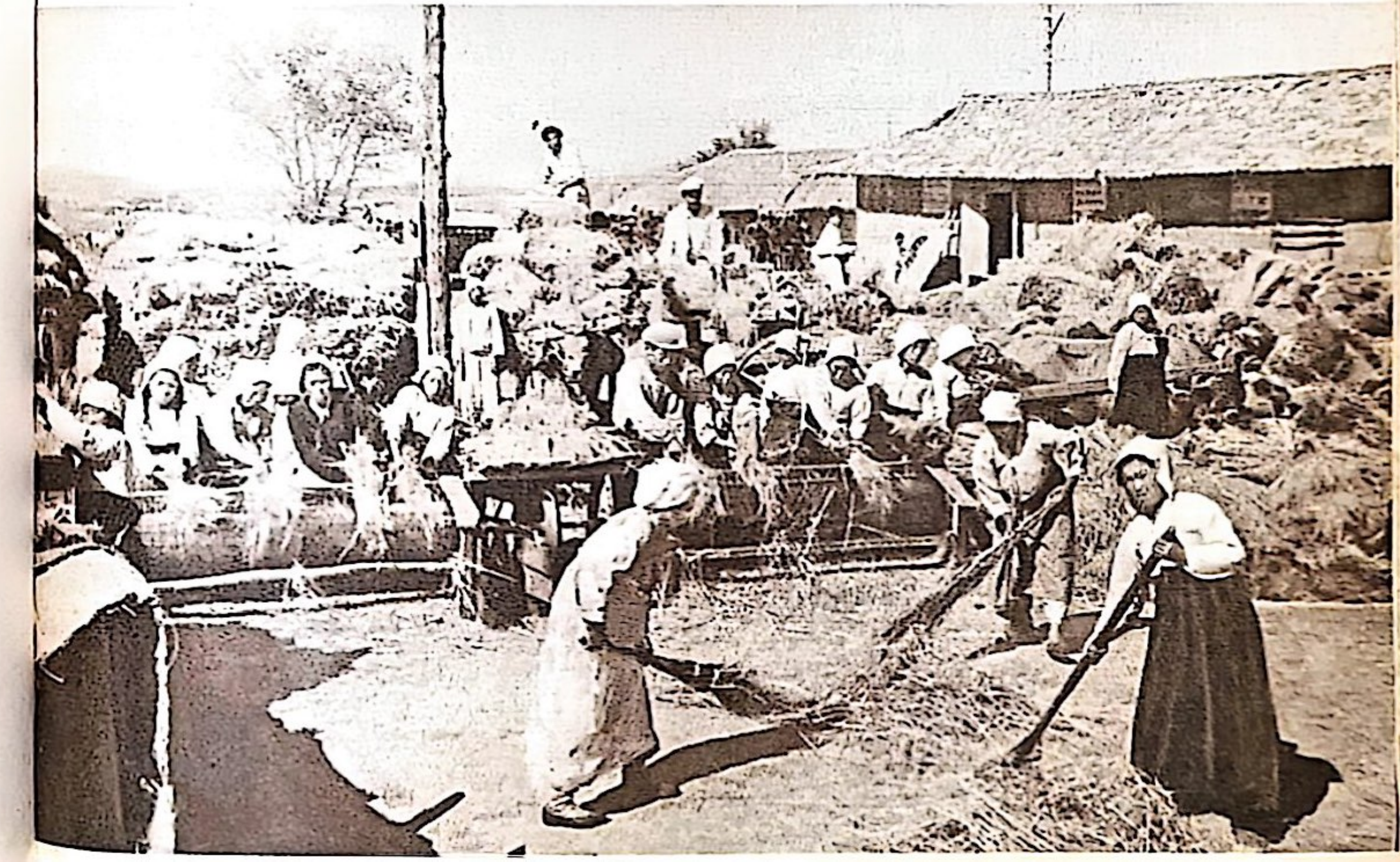
The Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the Republic pay special attention to putting construction on an industrial footing so as to successfully carry out the vast plan for capital construction in the First Five-Year Plan. In this connection the very important problem of technique is raised in the decision of the October (1957) Plenum of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea. In other words, technical measures should be taken to standardize designs and prefabricated parts; to introduce on a wide scale mechanization into industrial construction, with the result that the tempo of construction will be accelerated and the costs of construction reduced.

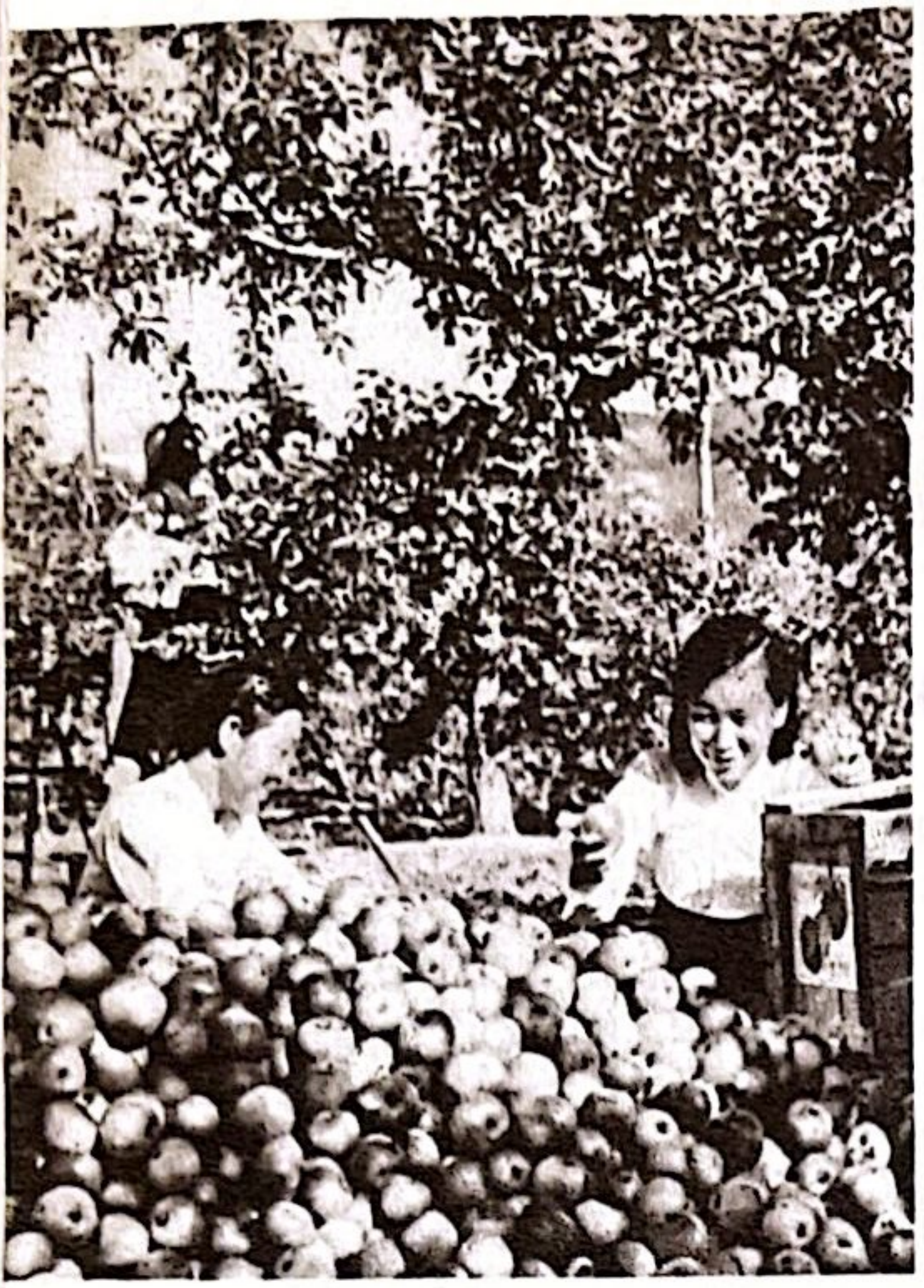
Concrete measures for the extensive use of the assembly-line method in construction are included in the First Five-Year Plan.

In 1961, 38 per cent of industrial establishments and over

Raising cold-bed seedlings

Thrashing work





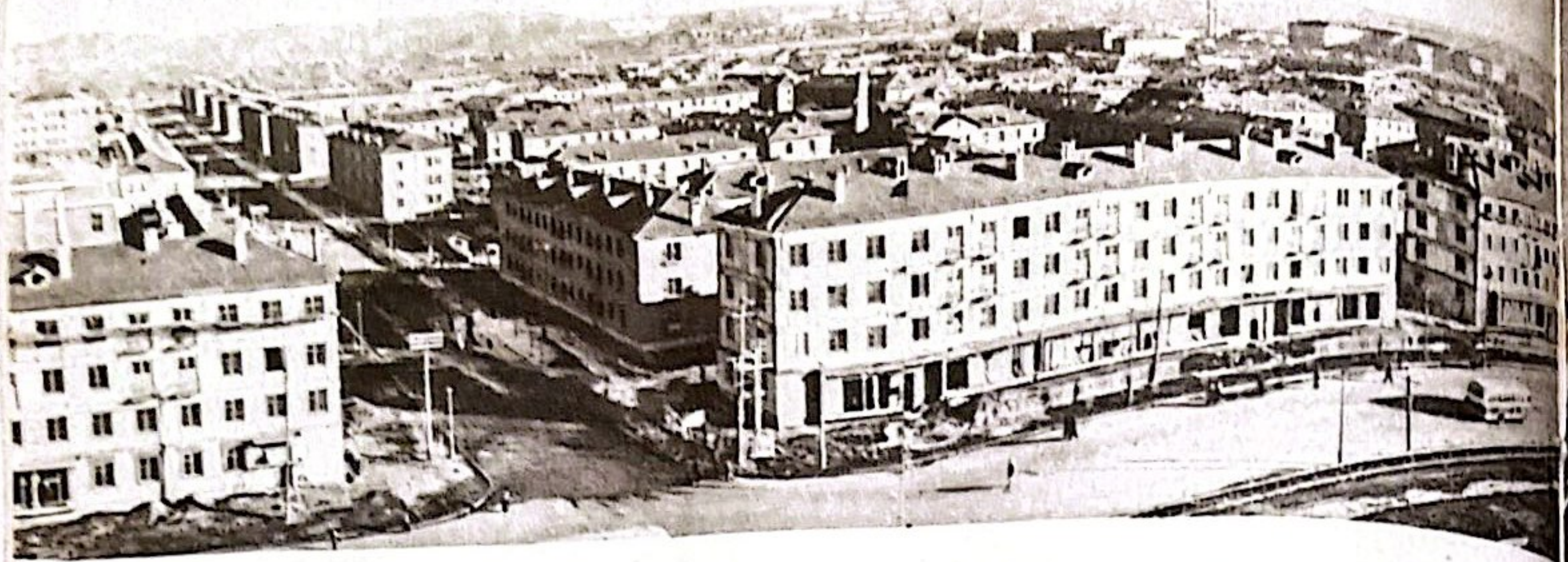
Apple harvesting

Tobacco cultivation

Curing ginseng

A flock of sheep at grass

Milking at the Joonghwa State Stock-Farm



New multi-storied housing estate in East Pyongyang

Construction of prefab houses

Food-stuff section of Pyongyang State Department Store No .2

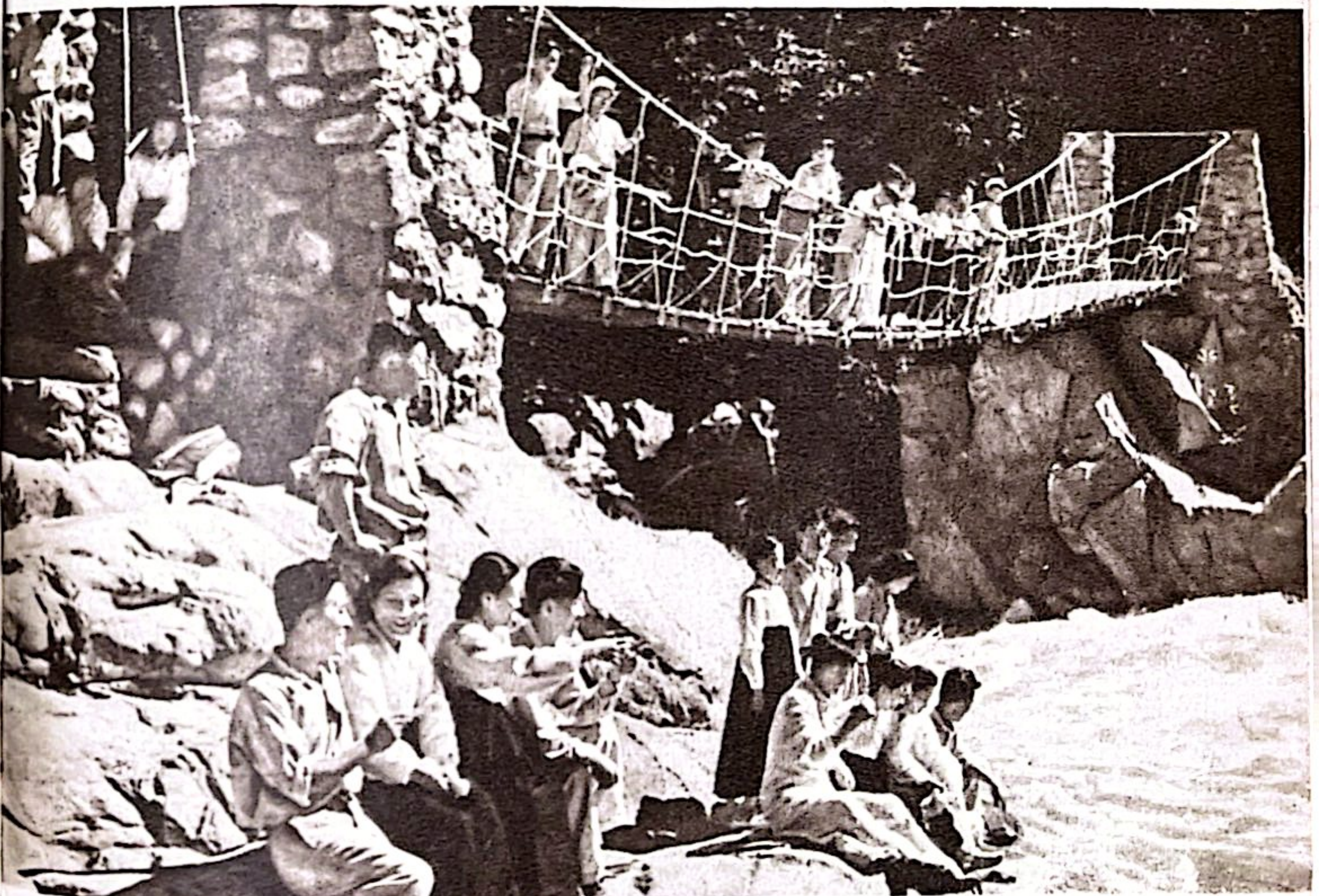
A shop of consumers' co-operative in the countryside

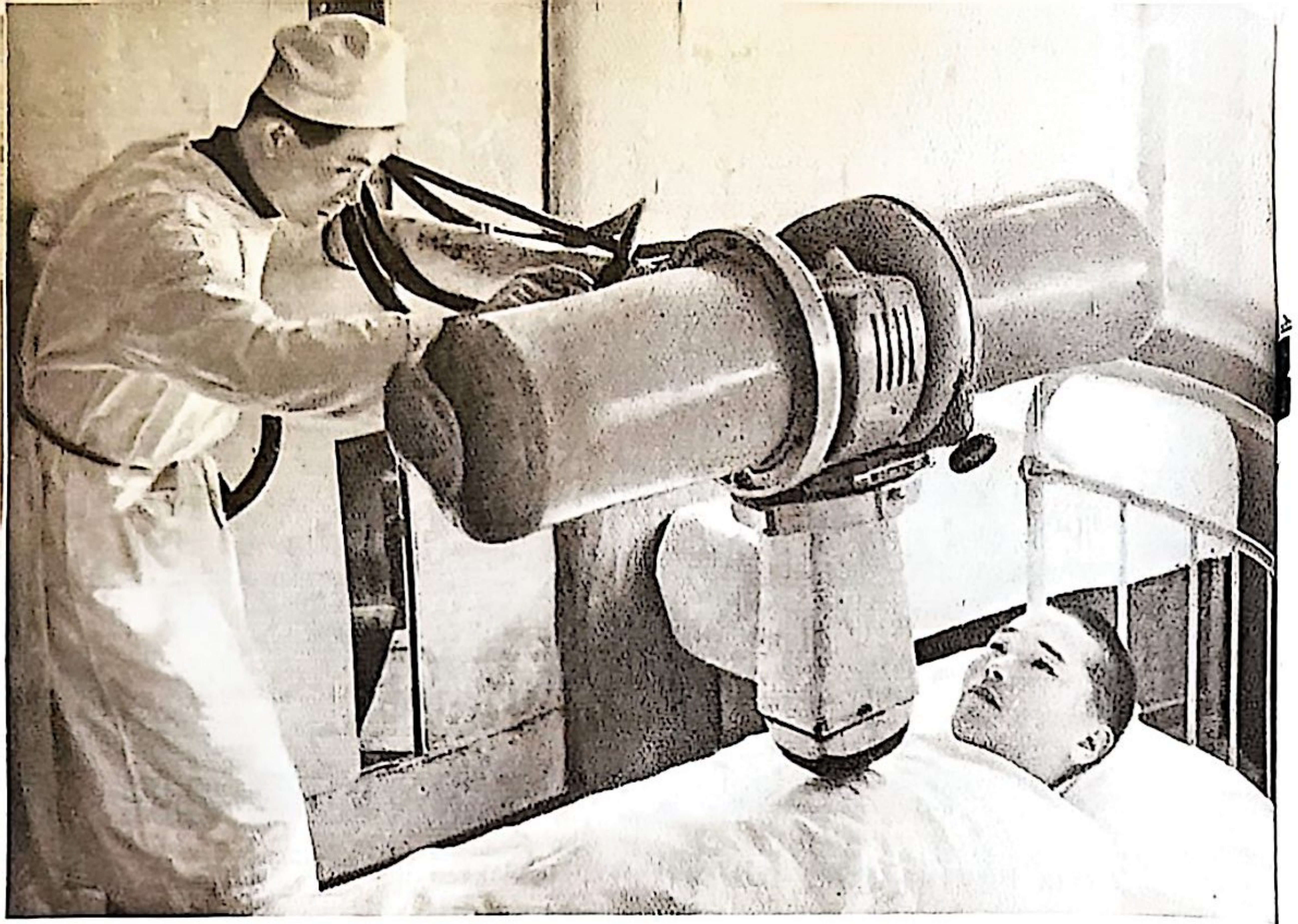
The nursery attached to the Pyongyang Textile Mil

Kindergarten

Young Pioneers spend their vacation in Sokhoo

At Jooeul Rest Home





Physical treatment at the Pyongyang Polyclinic

Housewives are cleaning and beautifying their surrounding

75 per cent of town buildings will be built by the assembly-line method; one million cubic metres of prefabricated reinforced parts will be produced. Mechanization of building process will be raised to 54 to 90 per cent, and labour productivity to 152 per cent.

When the vast plan for capital construction envisaged in the First Five-Year Plan is successfully fulfilled, our national economy will forge ahead, and the problem of food, clothing and housing for the people will be basically solved, which signifies the victorious implementation of the policy charted by the Party and the Government.

HOME AND FOREIGN TRADE

HOME TRADE

The Workers' Party of Korea and Government, which regard it as the supreme law of their activities to direct constant concern to the promotion of the working people's material welfare, have paid serious attention to improving and strengthening the work of supplying the population with commodities.

The Party and the Government have consistently put into effect measures for developing, on the basis of the rapid development of industry and agriculture, the state and co-op trade and for consolidating its place in home markets. As a result, the commodity circulation of state and co-op retail trade organs has grown at a fast tempo.

In the pre-war period of peaceful construction, the turnover of the state and co-op retail trade (at comparable prices) increased as can be seen in the following table.

Retail Commodity Circulation (1947=100)

	1948	1949
State and co-op trade	212	386
of which:		
State trade	274	820
Co-op trade	134	249

As can be seen from the table, in 1949 the turnover of the state and co-op retail trade organs increased over 3.8 times as compared with 1947, of which the state trade increased more than 8.2 times and the co-op trade over 2.4 times.

The turnover of the state and co-op retail trade showed a temporary decline at the beginning of the war, but soon increased thanks to the correct policy of the Party and the Government on the stabilization of the people's livelihood and the enormous free aid rendered by the Soviet Union and other fraternal countries.

In 1952 the total turnover of the state and co-op trade rose to 190 per cent as against 1951, of which the state trade increased 1.8-fold and the consumers' co-op trade twice.

In the war time the rationing system was of great importance in supplying factory and office workers with goods. Under the condition that industrial goods and foodstuffs were insufficient, the Party and the Government enforced the rationing system in order to ensure a fixed amount of supply at a low price preferentially for factory and office workers. Before the war the rationing of cotton fabrics per worker was 12 metres, whereas during the war-time it was raised to 18 metres on an average; the scope of persons under food rationing was expanded; supplementary rice was sold for the family members of factory and office workers; and the supply of edible oil increased.

In 1952 rationed goods occupied over half the turnover of the state and co-op retail trade. In the post-war period commodity circulation grew speedily thanks to a sharp rise in the real wages of factory and office workers, an increase of the real incomes of peasants and rapid advance of light industry and rural economy on the basis of the priority development of heavy industry and assistance given by the brotherly countries.

Growth of Trade Turnover (1953=100)

	1954	1955	1956
Total turnover	147	132	173
Turnover of state and co-op retail trade organs	172	209	281
Of which:			
State trade	193	243	328
Co-op trade	153	178	238

The total turnover of retail commodities increased to 173 per cent in 1956 as against 1953, of which the state and co-op trade increased 2.8 times (at comparable prices) or twice as much as in 1949. In accordance with the rapid growth of the state and co-op trade, the amount of consumer goods sold to the population increased considerably.

As for sales of major consumer goods in 1956, cotton fabrics increased 2.5 times compared with 1953; silk fabrics 8.1 times; underwear 4.3 times; footwear 1.3 times; soy sauce 2.8 times; bean paste 3.3 times; and marine products 5.5 times.

In 1957 the state and co-op retail trade exceeded by 57 per cent (at comparable prices) that of 1956, of which the state trade increased by 38 per cent and the co-op trade by 79 per cent.

In 1957 sales of consumer goods sold through the state and co-op retail trade network increased: as compared with 1956, cotton fabrics increased to 145 per cent; silk fabrics—167 per cent; woolen fabrics—2.3 times; ready-made clothes—2.1 times; underwear—2.5 times; footwear—152 per cent; furniture and items for cultural needs—3.5 times; metal goods—158 per cent; soy sauce—135 per cent; bean paste—122 per cent; marine products—133 per cent; edible oil—5 times; meat—4.9 times; condiments—190 per cent.

As for the volume of consumer goods sold in 1957, there was a steep rise in the sale of ready-made suits, underwear, woolen fabrics, furniture and items for cultural needs, edible oil and meat.

This is attributable to the speedy improvement of the working people's welfare and the victory of socialist cooperativization in the countryside.

Along with the swift growth of the state and co-op retail trade, the number of stores was on the increase.

In 1957, the number of state and co-op trade stores and restaurants was 2,769 more than in the previous year, of which provincial ones were 706 and consumers' co-op ones 1,864.

In our country today three trade forms exist: the state trade, co-op trade and private trade.

The state trade plays a leading role in both wholesale and retail trade and is a basic form in our trade. The state trade undertakes to supply the population of towns and workers' settlements with commodities. Its turnover increased at a rapid tempo in the pre-war as well as in the post-war period. A rapid increase in the turnover of the state retail trade raised its proportion in the home retail trade. As a result, the state trade has held a still firmer position in the domestic markets. Here is the corresponding table.

Proportion of State Trade in Home Retail Trade (in percentage)

Year	1946	1949	1953	1954	1955	1956
Proportion	0.1	27.9	32	39.1	50.6	53.9

In our country, the state trade is conducted through the following system: home and foreign trade ministry system, supply system for workers, non-trade ministry system and the trade system under the direct management of certain productive ministries.

The home and foreign trade ministry system occupies the overwhelming part of state retail trade and supplies the population with commodities through department stores, various kinds of specialized trade network, general trade network and small shops.

During the war the trade under the supply system for workers was conducted by many production ministries. Now it is limited to trade organs under the direct management of Forestry Ministry. Forestry workers are being supplied with daily necessaries through this system.

The sale of medicine, periodicals, text and other books is under the non-trade ministry system.

Recently, the Party and the Government have taken measures to ensure a smooth supply of commodities for the population through shops under the direct management of the ministries of light industry and fishing and other productive ministries.

Consumers' and producers' co-op trade belongs to the co-op trade. The co-op trade has been showing a steady increase in its turnover. Here is the corresponding table:

Proportion of Co-op Trade in Retail Turnover (in percentage)

1946	1949	1953	1954	1955	1956
3.5	25.1	25.7	26.6	33.8	35.3

The consumers' co-op trade holds an overwhelming proportion in our country's co-op trade. It supplies commodities chiefly to the population in the countryside.

The consumers' co-ops deliver industrial products to the peasants and in return purchase their surplus products and by-products, thus strengthening economic ties between towns and the countryside, and making an important contribution to fortifying the worker-peasant alliance. The state and co-op trade forms an organized market under the state plan.

The organized market occupies a decisive and regulating position in commodity circulation at home.

The Party and the Government have constantly directed attention to ensuring the predominance of the organized markets over the unorganized ones (individual trade and peasants' markets). As a result, the proportion of the organized markets has grown rapidly year after year.

Retail Turnover According to Different Forms of Markets (in percentage)

	1946	1949	1953	1954	1955	1956
Total retail turnover	100	100	100	100	100	100
Organized market	3.5	56.5	67.5	71.9	84.6	87.3
Unorganized market	96.5	43.5	32.5	28.1	15.4	12.7

In 1957 the Party and the Government adopted a series of measures for developing the state and co-op trade and for controlling private trade. As a result, the share of the organized markets in retail commodity circulation was further raised.

Private trade constitutes one form of trade in our country. But its proportion in commodity circulation is very small.

Change of Private Retail Trade Turnover (in percentage)

Year	1949	1953	1956
Private trade	100	45	36

The private retail trade turnover in 1956 dropped to 36 per cent compared with the pre-war year 1949 and to 80 per cent as against 1953.

The Party and the Government have pursued the policy of transforming gradually private trade along socialist lines, by utilizing and restricting it. The socialist transformation of private trade is being conducted in such a way as to gradually enlist on the voluntary principle private traders in production through production-marketing co-ops.

Since 98.6 per cent of the total farm households (as of March 1958) has already been embraced in co-operative economy and handicraftsmen are being remodelled into socialist working people, the sphere of activity for private traders will be further reduced and the socialist transformation of private trade will be completed in the near future.

As cooperativization has won victory in the countryside, the character of peasants' markets is being changed and their role further enhanced.

The marketing of agricultural produce and by-products is conducted mainly by co-op members.

Along with the socialist transformation of the countryside, peasants' markets are being converted into the markets of a socialist nature.

The basic task of the First Five-Year Plan is to further consolidate the socialist economic foundation in the North and to solve the problem of people's food, clothing and housing. The important task of trade in the First Five-Year Plan period is to improve remarkably the supply of commodities to the working people.

To this end, the state and co-op retail trade turnover should be increased more than 2.2 times, trade and public catering network extended over 2.1-fold, and the commodity supply system improved, thus meeting satisfactorily ever-growing demands of the population.

The work of providing towns and workers' settlements with foodstuffs should be reinforced. At the same time the important task of trade is to supply smoothly industrial products and farm machines and building-materials to the countryside in order to promote technical reconstruction of agriculture and the construction of farm villages.

During the First Five-Year Plan the state and co-op catering will develop rapidly. Its turnover will grow 3.6-fold. The rapid development of public catering is of great significance for meeting the material and cultural requirements of the population and for inducing women to take an active part in public life.

In the Five-Year Plan period, on the basis of the further advance of state and co-op trade and the completion of the socialist transformation of private trade, the socialist trade will hold a dominating position in all home markets.

FOREIGN TRADE

Our country's foreign trade plays a great role in obtaining foreign currency, in acquiring equipment and supplies necessary for socialist construction and in strengthening economic ties between socialist countries on the basis of international specialization. Our foreign trade has grown at a rapid pace, demonstrating its superiority over the capitalist foreign trade.

In the pre-war 1949, our foreign trade had grown 17 times that of 1946. In the pre-war period the trade with the Soviet Union held the most important place in our foreign trade. In the period from 1946 to 1950, the trade with the Soviet Union accounted for about 80 per cent of the total import.

In the pre-war period of peaceful construction our foreign trade made no small contribution to rehabilitating the national economy and to ensuring the normal enlarged reproduction.

In the same period, our foreign trade ensured machine and equipment for capital construction and raw materials for industrial production, and imported farm machines for the development of the rural economy and equipment and supplies for the reconstruction of transport and communications.

As for goods imported from the Soviet Union, the proportion of the means of production was about 76 per cent in 1948 and 77.3 per cent in 1949. The means of production was used for eliminating the extreme colonial onesidedness in the national economy left by the Japanese imperialists and for laying the self-supporting foundation of industry. In the pre-war period of peaceful construction, there was a rapid increase in the total value of export along with the speedy rehabilitation and development of our national economy. The export increased some 17.6 times in the period from 1946 to 1949. Minerals, chemical products, ferrous and non-ferrous metal goods were important items of export. The rest were agricultural and marine products.

During the just Fatherland Liberation War, the free aid from the fraternal countries headed by the Soviet Union played an important role in ensuring victory in the war as well as in stabilizing the people's living. The foreign trade, too, made no small contribution to the establishment and expansion of the munition industry; to the restoration and new construction of light industry for promoting people's material welfare; and to the rehabilitation and development of the rural economy.

In the post-war period of reconstruction the foreign trade played a great part in the successful fulfilment of the Three-Year Plan.

The main task of the Three-Year Plan was not simply to restore our war-ravaged national economy to the former state, but to eliminate the colonial onesidedness left by the heinous rule of the Japanese imperialists and to ensure the priority growth of

heavy industry attended by the rapid advance of light industry and agriculture.

In order to carry out this task, machines, equipment, industrial raw materials along with consumer goods for the betterment of the people's living deteriorated during the war were imported.

On the other hand the rehabilitation and development of the national economy brought about a rapid growth of export.

In 1954 the foreign trade grew 4.5 times compared with 1946 and 6.9 times in 1955. In 1956 the total amount of foreign trade increased 2.9 times that in 1953 and 136 per cent as against 1955. The total volume of export in 1956 was 2.2 times compared with 1953 and 149 per cent compared with 1955. Thanks to the measures taken by the Party and government some industrial branches related to foreign trade are gaining in scope.

In 1955 minerals occupied more than half the total export, metal and chemical products 40 per cent, and the rest was marine and agricultural products. In 1956, the export of various industrial products was much more than in 1955.

During the Three-Year Plan, import continued to increase. In 1956 the total amount of import increased 196 per cent as compared with 1953 and 125 per cent as against 1955. In 1956, producers goods were 70 per cent of the total import and consumer goods 30 per cent.

This contributed to laying the foundation for industrialization of the country and to raising speedily the people's material welfare.

The rapid growth of foreign trade during the post-war period was accompanied by an increase in the number of the trading countries which carry on commerce with our country and the expansion of our foreign markets.

Our country has concluded long and short term trade agreements with socialist countries, such as the Soviet Union, the Chinese People's Republic, the German Democratic Republic, the Polish People's Republic, the Czechoslovak Republic, the Bulgarian People's Republic, the Rumanian People's Republic and Mongolian People's Republic, etc.

In trade with the countries of the socialist camp, headed by the Soviet Union, major exports comprised metallurgical products, minerals, chemical products, fruits, marine products and other special products. Important import items are structural steel, coal, machines, automobiles, textile goods and other materials necessary for the rehabilitation and development of the national economy and for the promotion of the people's welfare.

The trade with the socialist countries is conducted on the principle of mutual advantage, equality and economic co-operation, contributing a great deal to strengthening internationalist friendship.

Of late, commercial relations are gradually being expanded with Japan, Southeast Asia, Near and Middle East and some European countries.

The trade with the capitalist countries is conducted on the principle of peaceful co-existence, complete equality, mutual respect for sovereignty, territorial integrity and mutual benefits.

Since normal diplomatic relations with capitalist countries are not yet established, the expansion of commercial relations is of great importance for promoting mutual contact and friendship.

At present when the First Five-Year Plan is being carried out, more important tasks are set before our foreign trade. During the First Five-Year Plan the total amount of foreign trade will grow two times. Greater importance is attached to a sharp increase of exports. During the First Five-Year Plan period the foreign export will grow more than 3 times.

In the same period the proportion of minerals in export will be markedly reduced. On the other hand the amount and variety of finished goods such as metal goods, light industrial products, chemicals, farm produce and marine products will increase sharply.

In the period of the First Five-Year Plan, import will increase about twice. During this period, a big change will be brought about in the variety of import items. The growth of the machine-building industry at home will greatly reduce imported machines and equipment.

Also the development of light industry and agriculture will cut down the import of consumer goods in popular demand and agricultural produce.

In the same period, important items of import will be industrial equipment, chemicals, oil, rubber and special steel, etc. that cannot be produced at home.

In the period of the First Five-Year Plan our foreign trade will develop onto a higher level.

FINANCE

The D.P.R.K. has traversed a difficult path in liquidating the evil consequences left by the Japanese imperialists.

In the pre-liberation period the financial system of Korea was utilized as a means of exploiting the Korean people. But it went bankrupt due to the aggressive military policy of the Japanese imperialists during World War II.

During the war time the credit crisis became aggravated due to a sharp increase in tax burden, indirect taxes in particular, national debt, budgetary deficit, excessive issue of paper money for growing expenditures, depreciation of currency, rise in the prices of mass consumption goods and spiral inflation. The situation became worse due to the excessive issue of money under the name of the so called "emergency financial measure," just before their defeat.

This evil legacy impeded greatly the establishment of the sound financial and credit system by the liberated Korean people. Another difficulty was created by the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. imperialists.

Firstly, no central financial and credit organ existed in North Korea. In other words, there was no central organ for performing the functions of issuance of currency, loan and settlement. Secondly, a large amount of the bank notes and forged notes flowed into North Korea from South Korea. One of the most urgent tasks confronting the Workers' Party of Korea and the people's power was to overcome such difficulties and establish and operate a new, sound financial system.

As a first step for setting up the democratic, independent financial-banking system, the North Korean Financial Bureau was organized as a central financial organ in November 1945. With the help of the Soviet Army, a section of accounts in charge of settlement between the banks disorderly set up before liberation and of unitary control of them was organized in December 1945, and the North Korean Central Bank with a fund of 100 million won was established on January 15, 1946.

Following the land reform enforced in March 1946 the North

Korean Provisional People's Committee issued decree No. 3 on the establishment of the North Korean Peasant Bank.

By this decree the old credit associations were abolished. Instead, the Peasant Bank with a fund of 300 million won started business with a total of 218 branch offices and agencies. The state furnished this agricultural co-operative credit organ with some 23 per cent of the fund. The rest was furnished by peasants who occupied 93 per cent of the total farm households. In this way the state rendered aid and gave guidance to the operation of the bank. Under the law on the nationalization of key industries enforced in August 1946 all banks were nationalized. On October 29, 1946, the North Korean Provisional People's Committee adopted the decision on setting up the North Korean Central Bank. This state bank was instituted by incorporating the nationalized banks into the North Korean Central Bank, which the Soviet Government transferred to the Korean people. The bank with a fund of 500 million won started as a single bank of issue and a nerve centre its business for short-term loan and payment.

With the establishment of a democratic financial-banking system, it was possible for the government to compile for the first time the general state budget in 1947 when the planning of the national economy was made. Thus the budgetary structure was built on the basis of democratic centralism. The basic policy of the Party and the government with regard to the state budget was to lighten the burden of the people and to increase incomes from the socialist economy, while allocating a great part of expenditures, in a planned way, to the national economy and to social service and culture so as to raise the material and cultural standards of the people. This basic policy was already reflected in the 1946 budget. It found striking expression particularly in drafting the state budget for 1947 according to the planned indices of the national economy. The extent and composition of revenue and expenditure in the 1947 state budget underwent a radical change.

Revenue and Expenditure *(in million won)*

	1946	1947
Revenue	1,638	8,967
Expenditure	1,351	7,089
Balance	287	1,878

Composition of Revenue *(in percentage)*

	1946	1947
Revenue from national economy	45.5	64.5
Revenue from taxes	54.5	35.5
Total	100	100

Composition of Expenditure *(in percentage)*

	1946	1947
Expenditure for national economy	17.6	33.8
Expenditure for social services and culture	22.1	26.4
Other things	60.3	39.8
Total	100	100

Under the "law on the reform of taxation system in North Korea" issued by the North Korean People's Committee on February 27, 1947, the democratic system of revenue was instituted. Thus it was made possible to liquidate the evil consequences left by the Japanese imperialists in the domain of taxation; to impose a fair burden on each citizen to ensure government reserve funds.

As a result of the successful fulfilment of the national economic plan, actual conditions were provided for the maximum utilization of all financial reserves and for increasing the savings of the working people. On November 12, 1947, the North Korean People's Committee adopted the decision on setting up savings offices at every post-office. And the savings office administration bureau was formed at the North Korean Central Bank (in 1948 the control of the savings offices was transferred to the Ministry of Finance).

With the restoration and development of the national economy production grew rapidly, and commodity circulation increased, and the important problem of stabilizing currency was raised. The independent financial-banking system was established and gold reserve increased with the growth of gold production. The decision concering the issue of new currency in North Korea and exchange for the old currency was published on December 1, 1947. With the enforcement of the monetary reform, the old Japanese currency was put out of circulation and a new independent monetary system was set up. Thanks to the reform, the capitalist-speculators lost ground, and reduction of prices could be effected for promoting the people's welfare. The reform also strengthened the ties between town and the countryside, and provided important conditions for planning the national economy. The reform stopped the inflow of depreciated paper money and forged bills from South Korea. Thus the reform created a stable monetary system in a short space of time, demonstrating the superiority of our political and economic system.

In 1948 when the national economic plan was drawn up, the estimates for the budget increased about twice those in the previous year. In executing the budget a series of measures were taken to ensure the national treasury receipts; to strengthen statistical and cost-accounting system of enterprises; to tighten financial discipline and maintain a strict regime of economy at all state-owned enterprises. These served to accelerate the rapid development of the national economy.

The all-round development of the national economy led to enlarge the scale of the state budget and to enhance its role in the national economy. The following tables show the general figures of the state budget in the two-year national economic plan (1949-1950).

	1949	1950
Total revenue (in million won)	20,901	21,959
of which: (in percentage)		
From national economy	75.5	65.2
From taxes	24.5	24.3
From public loan and contributions	—	10.5
Total	100	100

	1949	1950
Total expenditure (in million won)	19,657	19,994
of which: (in percentage)		
For national economy	42.3	30.7
For social service and culture	19.2	18.1
For others	38.5	51.2
Total	100	100

The state budget in the two-year plan period is characterized by a change in the composition of revenue and expenditure.

Steps were taken to intensify financial control over the management of enterprises and to improve the work of collecting business taxes. As a result, the turnover tax revenue increased. Profits of enterprises were raised on the basis of rise in labour productivity, and consequently the proportion deducted from business profit showed a steady growth. The system of tax payment by the population was reorganized in such a way as to ensure the thorough enforcement of graduated taxation. As a result, possibilities were provided for enhancing the regulating role of the state with regard to incomes of individuals and for intensifying its control over the source of their monetary incomes.

In order to meet the demands of the developing national economy and defray other expenditures, the issuance of national bonds amounting to 1.5 billion won was planned in 1950. But in actuality subscription amounted to 2.5 billion won only in a week after their issue. This bears witness to the surging patriotic enthusiasm of the working people.

As far as the expenditure is concerned, funds appropriated for the national economy and social service and culture occupied an overwhelming proportion of the total. However, they decreased to some extent in 1950 when the war broke out.

There was a rapid increase of funds for the development of the national economy, attended by the growing investment in capital construction. It was necessary to reduce the cost of construction and to carry out construction on the strict cost-accounting basis. And the furnishing and use of funds for capital construction should be placed under strict control. For this purpose the State Construction Fund Bank was instituted according to the Cabinet Decision of January 25, 1950. Thus the credit system was perfected. In the peaceful construction period bank funds were widely used for the all-round development of the national economy.

Credit According to Different Economic Forms *(in percentage)*

	1948	1949	1950
State enterprises	69.4	79.8	86.1

Co-ops	21.1	12.7	8.4
Individuals and private enterprises	9.5	7.5	5.5
Total	100	100	100

When the war was provoked by the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rheeites, the task confronting the financial organs was to raise a huge amount of funds not only for defeating the enemy, but also for economic construction and social service and culture. It was to be carried out under the conditions that the civilian industry contracted and a source of revenue was limited due to the temporary occupation of the enemy. However, the superiortiy of our social system revealed itself not only in reorganizing the financial system in a short span of time and effectively meeting demand for funds at the front and in the rear, but also in maintaining a sound finance. The main source of revenue was, as hitherto, the socialist economy. In the early period of the war the items of revenue from the socialist economy were reduced, but from 1952 they began to increase. Taxes paid by the population decreased from 24.3 to 19.2 per cent. The change in the proportion of revenues conformed to the lawfulness of the development of our country's economic system.

The voluntary payment of the people played a definite role in the war-time financing. For instance, subscribers for national loan for the development of the national economy were to pay by the beginning of December 1950. But they had paid up almost all their money already before October.

Another instance. With a view to raising funds for war supplies the national defence, lotteries were issued by the Supporters' Association for Fatherland Defence. As much as 600 million won worth of lotteries were sold in 10 days.

During the war no small part of the state budget was appropriated for military expenditure, but enlarged reproduction was not suspended. In this period new industrial bases were built in mountain areas such as Jagang and North Pyongan Provinces. A considerable amount of funds were allocated for the rural economy. Expenditure on social service and culture underwent a slight change in their composition (during the war new items such as extra-allowances and pensions were added), but the total expenditure showed a steady increase.

The banking system also made advance to meet the war-time demand. "Field banks" were organized under the control of the North Korean Central Bank. These dealt with cash payment, settlement and other business on the front.

During the temporary retreat, the Central Bank gave credit to the evacuating enterprises and organized new branch offices dealing with credit settlement and receipts and disbursement. In order to reorganize the wartime economy and secure stable currency, the control of the Central Bank was transferred from the Ministry of Finance to the Cabinet in 1951.

During the war, relations between banks and economic branches became closer, the settlement system was re-establised; and regulations on settlement and payment considerably reinforced.

Victory was won in the great Fatherland Liberation War, but sources of revenue were still found to be considerably limited. In compiling the state budget the first consideration should be given to raising a vast amount of monetary funds for the reconstruction of the war-ravaged national economy and for the improvement of the people's livelihood.

The problem of funds was successfully solved by the growth of production in socialist economic branches, by the rise in labour productivity, by the reduction of production costs and by aid from the countries of the socialist camp.

The following table shows the budgetary revenue and its structure in the post-war period.

	1949	1954	1955	1956
Total revenue (in million won)	20,901	90,183	108,157	99,254
of which:				
Income from socialist economic sectors (%)	75.5	52.9	69.1	74.7
Foreign aid (%)	—	33.7	21.7	16.5
Taxes (%)	24.5	13.4	9.2	8.8
Total	100	100	100	100

The composition of budgetary revenue is characterized by a vast amount of foreign aid received for three years (1954-56). The foreign aid played an important part in filling the gap between sources of funds and effective demand. It also contributed a great deal to accelerating the economic reconstruction and to laying the technical foundation for socialist industrialization.

Total expenditure in the state budget and its composition in the post-war years are as follows:

	1949	1954	1955	1956
Total expenditure (in million won)	19,657	80,640	100,619	95,598
of which:				
National economy (%)	42.3	69.5	74.9	74.3
Social service and culture (%)	19.2	9.8	9.5	12.7
State administration (%)	38.5	8.4	6.4	6.1
National defence (%)		8	6.2	5.9

Expenditure in the state budget was characterized by a sharp increase in appropriations for the national economy. Above all, a large sum of investment was made in capital construction, and requirements for the increasing circulating funds were met.

On the other hand, in the post-war period, the share of consumption funds held a considerable proportion in the budgetary expenditure. In the pre-war year of 1949 some 90 per cent of expenditures for the national economy was connected with accumulation of funds. But in the post-war years the expenditure connected with consumption funds increased.

For example, in 1955, of 75.3 billion won of the budgetary expenditure on the national economy 33.7 billion won was alloted to capital construction; 3.3 billion won went to the circulating funds; and 33 billion won to the expenditure on "undertakings" such as management of kindergartens, nurseries, scientific research institutions and training of cadres, compensation for price cuts and funds for purchasing provisions. All this was basically connected with consumption funds.

The constant concern of the Party and the government for the improvement of the people's livelihood found concrete expression in the increase of funds for social service and culture, while expenditure on the maintainance of state administrative organs, and national defence expenses were systematically lowered. This reflects the peace policy of the Party and the government.

The rapidly developing national economy and the sound budgetary system raised the value of money and stability of currency. The investment in the national economy of the North Korean Central Bank also sharply increased. At the end of 1956 as against 1953, the total credit grew to 204.6 per cent; the investment in heavy industry increased to 132.4 per cent. The North Korean Central Bank further intensified control over currency in order to improve the non-cash settlement system, to carry out the national economic plan and to maintain a regime of economy.

Economic and cultural constructions and successful fulfilment of production targets in the First Five-Year Plan depends, to no small extent, on financing.

As a result of the successful fulfilment of the Three-Year Plan, material foundations were laid for carrying out the First Five-Year Plan, the first such undertaking in the history of our country. The plan for the first year of the First Five-Year Plan has already been overfulfilled successfully.

In the First Five-Year Plan period, we must expand the existing enterprises and equip them with up-to-date technique; build new factories; expand on a wide-scale public and cultural facilities. For this purpose funds are required more than in the Three-Year Plan period. Economic assistance from the Soviet Union, the People's Republic of China and other socialist countries will be reduced markedly.

Under these circumstances, the basic financial task is to mobilize as much inner reserve funds as possible. In order to raise a huge amount of funds and improve the material and cultural standards of the people, more funds must be accumulated.

The Party and the government took such effective measures for the overfulfilment of the plan as to elevate the operational rate of equipment, further enhance labour productivity, practise economy and mobilize all inner reserves. Tremendous results have already been achieved thanks to the labour endeavours of the entire working people who have risen up in response to the appeal of the December (1956) Plenum of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea. As a result, the state budget in the first year of the First Five-Year Plan showed a balance of 22.8 billion won.

The stability of finance and the correctness of the financial policy of the government were vividly manifested in the state budget for 1958; revenue was 122,109 million won and expenditures, 118,336 million won. 92.5 per cent of the total budgetary revenue will come from the socialist economic sectors. The revenue from taxes paid by the population is only 3 per cent of the total.

Expenditure on the national economy and social service and culture accounts for 84.7 per cent of the total. Only 5.4 per cent go to national defence.

All this demonstrates vividly the superiority of our social system, the might of our national economy and the consistently popular and peace-loving policy of the Party and the government.

MATERIAL AND CULTURAL WELFARE

The Workers' Party of Korea and the people's power consider it the supreme law of their activities to improve steadily the material and cultural standards of the people. They have always shown deep concern for the improvement of the people's living conditions.

Under Japanese imperialist rule, especially during the Pacific War, the Korean people were subjected to double and treble exploitation and oppression. Consequenty, they were reduced to abject poverty. Under these circumstances, for the speedy improvement of the people's livelihood it was very urgent to do away in a revolutionary way with the old social system which was the source of exploitation, oppression, misery and impoverishment.

The Workers' Party of Korea and the people's power carried out successfully in a historically short space of time a series of democratic reforms including the land reform and nationalization of major industries with the participation of the broad masses of the people.

The land reform and the institution of the tax-in-kind system created prerequisites for raising sharply the living standard of the peasants who had been bound to the wretched fate of slavery under Japanese imperialist rule.

With the enforcement of laws on nationalization of major industries and on labour protection the facilities of major industries which were turned over to the people's ownership could serve the interests of the people. Under the circumstances workers and office employees could free themselves from exploitation and improve their material and cultural standards. The law on equality of sex changed radically the position of women. And other democratic reforms of education, culture and public health created conditions for the betterment of the life of the liberated Korean people.

The Workers' Party of Korea and the people's power took measures at each stage of revolution for the true happiness of the people and the betterment of the people's living.

Thanks to the correct policy of the Workers' Party of Korea, production grew in the northern half of the country in the post-liberation period of peaceful construction. The national income increased 209 per cent in 1949 as against 1940. Accordingly, the material and cultural standards of the people rose markedly. Workers' wages grew each year. Prices of commodities were systematically reduced. The prices of the state retail goods were on several occasions cut down. Market prices in general were lowered. For instance, in 1949 prices in Pyongyang were reduced by half as against 1947.

The state budgetary expenditure on social service and culture increased steadily; in 1949 it amounted to 3,780,000,000 won, or 19 per cent of the total expenditure.

Taxes paid by the people were considerably reduced. The usurious tax system enforced by the Japanese occupiers was abolished. The rate of income taxes on workers, office employees and other population dropped to a great extent.

The housing condition of workers and office employees has been improved markedly with the state help, and public service establishments were expanded on a big scale.

The living condition of the peasantry, too, radically improved. From the day of liberation up to June 1948 the peasants built more than 100,000 new houses; electric lighting was newly installed in 410,000 houses; about 17,000 farm households purchased cattle.

The percentage of school attendance in farm villages increased 3.4 times. The work of cultural enlightenment was briskly carried on. In the countryside the democratic publicity halls, libraries and club houses and clinics were newly built.

The social insurance system gave a great deal of benefit to workers and office employees; medical service was rendered gratis to them. In the cultural field they derived great benefit from the expansion of educational and cultural establishments. In 1949 alone, 9,600,000 people in total enjoyed medical service; 4,600,000 people received extra pay or maternity allowances from the social insurance funds. The amount was 283.7 per cent higher than in 1947.

In 1949 the number of workers and office employees who underwent medical treatment free of charge or enjoyed paid-rest increased 741.8 per cent as compared with 1947.

In the field of public health, too, great achievements were scored. At the end of 1949 the number of state hospitals increased twice that of 1946 and the beds, 3.3 times. In addition, many clinics were set up in towns as well as in villages; at the end of 1949 they numbered 395. Nurseries were established for the benefit of working women in various parts of the country.

In short, the people's welfare was greatly promoted in the post-liberation period of peaceful construction. This testifies to the correctness of the policy pursued by the Workers' Party of Korea and the D.P.R.K. government.

However, peaceful construction and happy life were interrupted by the war provoked by the U.S. armed aggressors and their lackeys, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique.

From the first days of war, the U.S. imperialists resorted to unprecedentedly cruel bombing and committed atrocities against the innocent people. They murdered people mercilessly, and destroyed industrial and transport facilities, and educational, cultural and public health establishments, all of which had been built by the sweat and blood of the Korean people. In addition, most of peaceful towns and villages were devastated.

For all the difficulties and obstacles created by the war, the Workers' Party of Korea and the government took timely and positive measures to stabilize the deteriorated livelihood of the people. Even in the trying period of the temporary retreat the Party and the government took effective measures to aid the war-sufferers.

When the enemy-held areas were liberated again, it was found that inestimable damage had been done to the life and property of the people. The Party and the government immediately put into effect all measures necessary for satisfying the urgent demand of the people for housing, clothing and food, and then undertook to improve the wretched livelihood of war-sufferers. Special schools were established for disabled soldiers and children of the fallen soldiers, partisans and other patriots. And the government devoted particular attention to aiding the aged and the family members who lost their supporters in the war.

In the sowing season of 1951 when a shortage of food was keenly felt, the government loaned a great amount of food and seeds to the peasants; exempted part of the tax-in-kind on the early ripening crops; ensured housing for workers and office employees and their families; increased the supply of cotton-padded clothes, shoes, cotton material and other consumer goods.

In order to improve the health of the population, numbers of hospitals and clinics were established. And the supply of medicaments increased.

In 1952 an extra, cheap supply of food was ensured for the family members of workers and office employees. The poor peasants who were short of provisions were exempted from payment of tax-in-kind and return of loaned grain.

In 1952 general, free medical service was enforced at government expense. In December 1952 retail prices of goods sold by the state and co-operative trade were reduced by 20 to 50 per cent. Price cuts were made on several occasions prior to the truce.

During the war, the Soviet Union, the People's Republic of China and other fraternal countries rendered the Korean people a vast amount of aid in the form of food, clothing, medicines and other articles of every day use. They also sent their medical service corps to Korea. They undertook to bring up the Korean war-orphans in their own countries. Such disinterested aid from the fraternal countries contributed a great deal to the stabilization and improvement of the livelihood of our people.

Thanks to the solicitous policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the government in relation to the promotion of the people's welfare and the proletarian internationalist assistance of the Soviet Union and other fraternal countries, the life of our people was secured even during the stern war.

Indeed the policy of the Party and the government on stabilizing the people's livelihood served as a source of strength for the entire people to overcome every obstacle and hardship and win victory in the war.

At last an end was put to the sanguinary war. Immediately after the truce was signed, the entire Korean people put all their energy into the implementation of the Three-Year Plan for the postwar economic reconstruction and development. The basic line of the Three-Year Plan lay in giving priority to the development of heavy industry along with the progress of light industry and agriculture. This line conformed to the laws of economic development in our country. It was also most proper from the point of view of improving the living condition of the people.

Thanks to the correct policy of the Party and the government the war-time life of the people became stabilized to some extent. But the people suffered the untold loss from the brutal destruction wrought by the U.S. imperialists. They lost almost all their household possessions; clothing, furniture, utensils, bedding, etc.

The imminent task was to improve rapidly the extremely deteriorated life of the people; to rehabilitate the war-torn towns and villages; to build on a big scale dwelling houses and cultural and welfare establishments. It was, therefore, essential to produce on a mass scale farm implements, agricultural chemicals, fertilizers, cements, bricks, timber, structural steel, etc. Accordingly it was urgent to reconstruct and develop the machine-building, metal-working, building-materials and chemical industries along with the coal and electric power industries.

During the Three-Year Plan, the Party's policy on the priority development of heavy industry along with the advance of light industry and agriculture was successfully carried out. As a result, the productive forces made a great leap forward. The socialist relations of production won a decisive triumph in towns as well as in villages. Consequently the material and cultural standards of the people have sharply raised.

During the Three-Year Plan, the national income advanced at a rapid pace with each passing year as shown below:

Growth of National Income *(in percentage)*

1953	1954	1955	1956	1956 (1949=100)
100	137	164	210	146

In 1956, the last year of the Three-Year Plan, the national income surpassed by far the prewar level. During the Three-Year Plan its annual growth was approximately 27 per cent.

How can this surprising growth be explained? Firstly, it is due to a steady growth of productivity of socialist labour and, secondly, to an increase of labour allocated for productive purposes. In the four years from 1953 to 1956 labour productivity increased 194 per cent. In 1956 it was 52 per cent higher than in 1949.

In 1956 the average number of employees in the fields of the national economy was 808,000. This is 41 per cent more than in 1953, and 43 per cent more than in 1949.

In the postwar period, consumer goods in popular demand increased; labour productivity was raised; the cost of production was reduced. On this basis, the government enforced price cuts in consumer goods. From this the people derived a benefit of several billion won. As a result of price cuts on five successive occasions and rapid increase of consumer goods, the prices were greatly lowered as shown in the following table:

Index Number of Prices (1953=100)

	1954	1955	1956
In general	63.3	60.3	54.1
State-owned and co-operative trade	65.2	60.4	54.8
Private trade	68.1	59.6	47.8

Prices of articles for daily use were lowered to a marked extent; at the end of 1956 prices of cotton cloth were 73.8 per cent as against 1953; rubber shoes—25.8 per cent; tobacco — 59.6 per cent; vegetables—23.7 per cent.

Monetary wages of workers and office employees increased sharply as a result of introduction of additional wages, year-end bonus, and the average wage rise of 35 per cent effected since November 1956.

During the Three-Year Plan there was an increase of monetary wages of workers and office employees as shown in the following table (in percentage):

Increase of Monetary Wages

1953	1954	1955	1956
100	122	135	158

In December 1956 the level of monetary wages of workers and office employees was 43 per cent higher than in December 1955, and 2.3-fold as against the monthly average wages of 1949.

During the same period the real wages also grew rapidly from year to year. But not until November 1956 did the monthly real wages attain the level of the corresponding month of 1949. The reason is that the price level of 1956 was still a little higher than that of 1949.

The Party and the government showed deep concern for housing of the people. During the Three-Year Plan buildings with 13,400,000 square metres of floor space (6,100,000 sq. m. in towns and 7,300,000 sq. m. in the countryside) were built. Of this buildings with 5,100,000 sq. m. of floor space were built with state funds for workers and office employees.

Workers and office employees derived a great amount of benefits from social insurance and security, full-paid rest and recuperation, free medical treatment, compulsory elementary education, etc. Consequently, the state budgetary expenditure for this purpose is increasing with each passing year.

The state budgetary expenditure for social service and culture shows a steady growth. (See the following table)

	1953	1954	1955	1956
Social and cultural expenditure (in percentage)	100	141	170	216

In the postwar period workers and office employees derived a vast sum of benefit from the social insurance system. The social insurance subsidy granted by the state amounted to 790,000,000 won in 1956. This was a 397.8 per cent increase as against 1949 and a 102.3 per cent increase as against 1955. The lump sum of allowances for workers' illness and injury and for medical treatment of their family members was 23 per cent higher in 1956 than in 1949.

The number of beds and persons taking rest in the state-run rest homes and sanatoria grew in the period of the Three-Year Plan. Here are the figures:

	1949	1953	1954	1955	1956
Beds	3,400	2,600	2,900	3,800	5,400
Persons	50,500	35,700	36,800	67,100	126,700

The number of persons enjoying rest in 1956 was 251 per cent as great as in 1949.

During the Three-Year Plan labour protection facilities were improved markedly. In 1956 labour protection devices increased 364 per cent as against 1953; labour sanitary facilities, 226 per cent; nurseries, 350 per cent.

During the Three-Year Plan the Party and the government paid great attention to reduction of taxes on the population. On the basis of achievements made in the postwar reconstruction of the national economy, the Party and the government took measures to reduce annually income and local self-government taxes imposed on workers, office employees, handicraftsmen and middle and small industrialists and traders, and tax-in-kind and local self-government taxes on the peasants.

In 1956 the annual revenue from income taxes was 27.9 per cent less than in 1955, and local self-government taxes 13.7 per cent less.

In the postwar period the Party and the government paid special attention to the improvement of the living condition of the peasants. The government loaned food, seed and fund with a view to helping the peasants with farming, and exempted them from the payment of tax-in-kind in arrears, and the return of 90,000 tons of loaned grain and 1,400,000,000 won of debt.

The reduction of the rate of tax-in-kind, adoption of payment of fixed amount of tax-in-kind, lowering of fees for irrigation facilities, raising of procurement prices of agricultural produce, and revision of the rate of exchanging fertilizer for grain—all this raised to a considerable extent the real income of the peasants.

The advantages of co-operative economy are shown in an increase of income in kind and cash of the co-op members and income in cash by running the subsidiary occupations of livestock breeding and fishing.

During the Three-Year Plan the income of individual handicraftsmen increased as a consequence of the reduction of the rate of income and local taxes, abolition of private turnover taxes and other measures taken for the benefit of private handicraftsmen.

The rise of material and cultural standards of the people was accompanied by the growing demand for consumer goods. Accordingly, the turnover of state and co-operative trade and public catering establishments increased. The network of the state and co-operative trade was extended.

During the Three-Year Plan public health service made marked progress. In this period public health facilities were restored and expanded. Here are the figures.

	1946	1949	1953	1954	1955	1956
Number of hospitals for in-patients	100	206	387	319	333	368
Number of hospitals for out-patients	100	918	853	10-fold	11-fold	14-fold
Number of anti-epidemic centres	—	100	374	386	289	357

Note: The decrease in the number of hospitals for in-patients and anti-epidemic centres during the Three-Year Plan was caused by merger or rearrangement of the facilities which had been evacuated or scattered during the war and by the abolition of sanitation centres.

It is noteworthy that facilities for mothers and infants grew remarkably. And the prophylactic and anti-epidemic work, training of public health workers and production of chemicals showed great progress.

The number of medical establishments increased by 356 in 1956 as compared with 1955; beds—2,119; various sections for treating outpatients—586.

With the speedy advance of the rural economy toward socialism, 215 co-op clinics have been instituted. Many first-aid stations have been newly set up in the pits for the benefit of miners and other underground workers.

Public health workers have been systematically trained. The rate of their increase is shown in the following table (1946=100):

	1949	1953	1954	1955	1956
Total number of doctors	182	121	164	207	269

In the field of public health enormous aid was rendered by the Red Cross medical missions from the Soviet Union, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Rumania, Bulgaria and Hungary.

Take the year 1956 for example. The medical missions from the fraternal countries had 2,380 beds and 100 sections. They treated a total of 926,000 inpatients and 1,383,000 outpatients. Moreover, they spared no efforts for raising the skill of our public health workers.

During the Three-Year Plan various schools were restored or built and furnished with modern equipment. In the same period the system of compulsory elementary education was instituted. Scholarships in higher institution of learning were extended. Prices of textbooks and other books and stationery goods were cut down by a wide margin.

During the Three-Year Plan scientific research made headway. And the progress of national culture and art was remarkable. In this way, thanks to the correct policy of the Party and the government, the material and cultural well-being of the people was promoted at an unprecedentedly fast pace. In all fields the year 1956 surpassed by far the level of the prewar year 1949.

However, the problem of food, clothing and housing has not yet been solved to our satisfaction. This is chiefly due to the historical backwardness and colonial onesidedness of our national economy, particularly light industry and agriculture, which are evil consequences of the prolonged vicious rule of Japanese imperialism.

The division of the country into north and south impeded the solution of the problem. Not only that. The war provoked by the Syngman Rhee clique under direction of the U.S., brought great suffering and loss to the people.

However, during the Three-Year Plan period the people's living steadily improved, as great success was achieved in economic construction.

In the period of the First Five-Year Plan it is quite possible to solve the problem of food, clothing and housing for the people. Proof of this is the fact that we had achieved tremendous results already in 1957, the first year of the First Five-Year Plan.

In 1957 gross industrial output of state and cooperative enterprises increased 144 per cent as compared with 1956.

The output of major products essential for the well-being of the people showed a steep rise as seen in the following table (1956=100):

	1957		1957
Electricity	135	Hosiery	107
Chemical fertilizer	166	Fish catch	155
Cement	150	Salt	198
Furniture	135	Soy sauce	135
Cotton fabrics	115	Tobacco	122
Footwear	105		

In 1957 there was an epoch-making growth in agricultural produce, too. The national income was 37 per cent more than in 1956. The income of the working people grew; in 1957 monetary wages of workers and office employees increased by 43 per cent as against the previous year.

On the basis of great results scored in the national economy, the Party and the government raised the basic monetary wages of workers and office employees by 10 per cent on the average on January 1, 1958. Furthermore, the prices of some foodstuffs were lowered on a big scale. In 1957 headway was made in the state and cooperative trade. Prices in organized and free markets were cut down by 5.5 per cent as compared with the previous year.

The housing condition of workers and office employees was bettered in 1957. They moved into new houses with 1,540,000 square metres of floor space, or 45 per cent more than in 1956. The agricultural co-ops built 30,000 houses with their own funds. In 1957 the social and cultural expenditure — social insurance and security, full-paid rest and recuperation, education, culture and medical service—amounted to 17.6 billion won, or 45 per cent higher than in 1956.

In 1957, 165,000 workers and students enjoyed their paid-rest in rest homes and sanatoria. The number was 30 per cent greater than in 1956. With the rapid advance of agricultural productive forces, the income of the peasants increased considerably.

With the adoption of the payment of fixed amount of tax-in-kind and reduction of the rate of tax-in-kind, the peasants got a profit equivalent to 200,000 tons of grain.

In 1957 the share of each co-op household increased by 8 per cent in grain, by 22 per cent in potatoes, and by 44 per cent in cash compared with 1956.

With the improvement of material and cultural standards of the people and the rise in their purchasing power the turnover of consumer goods showed a steady increase; the state and co-operative trade was 57 per cent higher than in 1956.

Brilliant results were achieved in the fields of education, culture and public health.

At the beginning of the academic year 1957-1958 students numbered in total 2,200,000. Preparations are made for enforcing the system of compulsory middle school education. About 92 per cent of primary school students moved up to the higher level of schools.

In 1957 the number of hospitals for inpatients increased by 14 and beds by 1,937 as compared with the previous year. The number of hospitals for outpatients increased by 464: of which the therapeutic organs in farm villages increased by 274. The total number of doctors increased 110 per cent as great as in the previous year. The facilities for mothers and infants increased by 54 and beds by 3,500.

The targets for the promotion of the people's welfare set by the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea were attained earlier than planned originally. This confirmed fact serves as a fatal blow to the anti-Party, anti-revolutionary factionists headed by Choi Chang Ik and Pak Chang Ok who vilified against our Party's policy, saying that the Party was not interested in the improvement of the people's living and that the policy of giving priority to the development of heavy industry was a "blood-letting" policy.

During the First Five-Year Plan the national income will increase 2.2 times. It is envisaged that the real income of workers, office employees and peasants will be raised over 1.5-fold during the same period.

The increase of the real income of the people and the growth of their demand for goods will accelerate commodity circulation. In the same period the turnover of the state and co-operative trade will grow more than 2.2 times.

The public catering service will be improved and extended in scale. Special mention should be made of the fact that during the First Five-Year Plan the ration of some important industrial products and food are expected to be abolished.

The housing condition of the people will be improved to a considerable extent. Following the decision of the October (1957) Plenum of the Workers' Party of Korea, the assembly-line method has been on a wider scale introduced into construction. Then the building is carried on at a very high speed.

During the First Five-Year Plan dwelling houses with 10,000,000 square metres of floor space will be built with the state funds. And 200,000 modern houses will be built in farm villages. The state will encourage and give positive help to the building of houses with private funds in towns and countryside.

Tremendous progress will be made in the field of popular education. During the First Five-Year Plan compulsory seven-year school education will be enforced.

In the cultural field great achievements will be made. Public health service will forge ahead in line with prophylactic work. In the period of the Five-Year Plan the number of beds of hospital will increase 1.5-fold. The therapeutic facilities including hospitals for outpatients will be expanded over 3.5 times. In 1961 a clinic will be set up in every village. Big agricultural co-ops will have their own public health facilities.

The social insurance system for the benefit of workers and office employees will be reinforced, and the network of rest homes and sanatoria will be greatly extended.

Vast prospects are opened up for the improvement of the material and cultural standards of the people. The successful implementation of the First Five-Year Plan means the basic solution of the problem of food, clothing and housing for the people, and an abundant life for the people.

CHAPTER VI

CULTURE

EDUCATION

BEFORE THE AUGUST 15 LIBERATION

Already prior to the period of the Three Kingdoms, Korea's civilization had reached a high level and its system of education was also developed. According to chronology of Three Kingdoms, a *Taihak* (Confucian institute of higher learning) was set up in 372 A.D. But the use of letters traces back to the 2nd century B.C. In the period of Three Kingdoms *Kyongdang* (common school) were widely established in Kokuryo.

In Silla, in the 6th century, a special educational system was instituted for training young people of noble families to be *Hwarang* (warriors). They were instructed in military arts, gymnastics, morals and aesthetics. *Hwarangs* were promoted to a high rank of government officials.

In the period of the Three Kingdoms, the educational system made progress within the country on the one hand, and, on the other, many people were sent to China for study in order to introduce the developed culture of the Tang Dynasty into Korea. Korea exerted to a great extent influence on the progress of education and culture of Japan.

In the period of the Unified Silla the system of *Kookhak* (state college) was elaborated, and higher mathematics and medicine together with Confucianism were taught.

At the end of 10th century in the Koryu Dynasty *Kookjakam* (highest institution of learning) was established for training sons of nobles. The institution had six departments dealing with subjects of a high level of learning. The qualification for entry was strict. The people from the lower classes were barred from the institution.

Already in the early period of Koryu Dynasty, *Sudang* (a sort of grade school) was established in every corner of the country. This school played an important role in disseminating knowledge.

From the 11th century, along with the government-run schools, private education was encouraged by Confucianists.

In the middle part of the 13th century, in addition to the *Kookjakam,* the *Obuhakdang* (Five-Department Institute) was established in the capital and *Hyangkyo* (provincial elementary school) was set up in localities.

Of course, all this was for training sons of nobles in the spirit of Confucianism.

In the 15th century (the early period of the Li Dynasty) agricultural productive forces made strides. The court pursued the policy of encouraging Confucianism and suppressing Buddhism. The *Sungkyunkwan,* the institute of higher learning, and *Sahak* (four middle schools) were established in the capital and *Hyangkyo* (provincial elementary school) was set up in all parts of the country.

Sahak and *Hyangkyo* formed the basic system of Confucian education for training nobles as government officials.

In this period the Moondo (disciple) system of education was developed by numerous noted Confucian scholars including Kil Zai.

In the 16th century school regulations were elaborated. And the privately-run school *Suwon* (institute of learning) played an active part in the development of education.

This type of school was set up by the scholars of noble families and flourished under favour of the feudal government.

In the same period, a number of prominent scholars including Li E made their appearance with the development of Chu Hsi theory. They showed originality in developing educational theories and produced large numbers of young scholars.

From the 17th century when the feudal society under the reign of King Li showed a downward tendency, school administration was generally inactive. Confucianism, the backbone of learning at the time, was degraded to sheer doctrinairism, far divorced from life. In the midst of such circumstances, a group calling itself the Practical School appeared. The scholars belonging to this Practical School criticized the outlived Confucian education and set forth their main principles. They attacked trenchantly the traditional obscurantism which asserted that "the common people ought not to be educated but should be obedient." Doctrinairism and formalism in education were the targets of their attack. Their educational views, high value of culture, ardent desire for reform, patriotic spirit and lofty humanism made a great contribution to the progress of our classical education, though their ideas had traces of feudalism.

In Korea capitalism grew to some extent from the end of the 19th century to the beginning of the 20th century. In this period the first Russian Revolution took place and the national enlightenment movement was carried on in China. Spurred by this, the New Educational Movement, one wing of the wide-scale enlightenment, was unfolded in opposition to feudalism and alien aggression.

When oppression of Koreans by the Japanese imperialists began, the progressive intellectuals organized academic societies; published newspapers and magazines; and studied literature and Korean language, which inspired the people with a new national pride, a desire to protect civil rights, and an anti-Japanese spirit.

They put forward the slogans "Promote Native Culture and Introduce Foreign Science" and "Education is Everything." They exerted great efforts to establish large numbers of private schools or reorganize the *Sudang* for enlightening the people.

The New Educational Movement was opposed to the old Confucian education prevalent in the feudal society. Its object was to introduce modern education; to enlighten the common people; to form the firm foundation of the nation.

In the newly instituted private schools children of all sections, irrespective of their social status, were allowed to attend school and education for girls was effected; instructions were given in Korean language, Korean history, arithmetic, geography, natural science and gymnastic. These schools organized their educational work along progressive lines.

On the other hand, toward the close of the Li Dynasty public schools were set up by the feudal government under the direction of the Japanese imperialists. Almost all lessons were taught in the Japanese language. Their first objective was to infuse pro-Japanese idea into the pupils.

Applicants for public schools were much less than those for private schools. In 1910 the number of public schools was 107, while that of private schools was 2,250 and *Sudang* was 25,000. By virtue of the New Educational Movement, the old system of education gave way to a modern one, which aroused a national, partriotic spirit against imperialism and feudalism.

However, after the Japanese imperialists had occupied Korea, they plundered unscrupulously the Korean people with unprecedented brutality which combined "up-to-date technical invention with a sheer Asiatic torture" (Lenin). They took measures to close down private schools or check their development. They encouraged public school education, and strengthened the system of slavish education under colonial rule.

From the beginning to the end, the Japanese imperialists in pursuance of the policy of colonial obscurantism deprived the Korean people of opportunity for learning. They did their best to paralyze the national consciousness of the Korean people and make "loyal servants who would submit to the Japanese yoke".

They could oppress and plunder only when the Koreans were ignorant. They made public in 1911 the ordinance on Korean education to set up the colonial system of education. The majority of Korean youth were denied the opportunity to attend school. In 1933, 22 per cent of school-age children were enrolled. In 1939, 35 per cent were embraced in grammer school or elementary course.

The middle school education was worse. In 1942 there was an enrolment of 9,560 in 43 boys' or girls' schools in North Korea.

The students of middle school came from the well-to-do families. For example, out of 647 students of the Sumoon Girls' School, only one was of worker origin. The same thing applied to Pyongyang Middle School No. 3. Nine per cent of 971 students were sons of landlords; 47 per cent were sons of capitalists and merchants; the rest was sons of officials and professionals. There was none of worker or poor peasant origin.

Instruction in Korean language and Korean history was forbidden in school. The use of the mother tongue was prohibited. They put up such reactionary slogans as "Manifestation of Japanese Nationality," "Japan and Korea are One," "Endurance and Tempering," etc. They also forced the people to "worship the Imperial palace from a distance" and visit Shinto shrines. All students had to recite the "Pledge of Loyalty to Japanese Emperor" every morning.

With regard to the educational policy pursued by the Japanese imperialists, Comrade Kim Il Sung said:

"Under Japanese imperialism the majority of our compatriots could not realize their desire to attend school, and the genius of our nation lay resentfully in obscurity. Even if one was fortunate enough to finish at some of their slavish educational institutions, his lot and position was miserable and wretched. He has studied in school, but he was ignorant of the language, letters and history of his own country. Without the weapon of science, truth and technique he was thrown out into the societv." (Kim Il Sung: *To the Graduates of Schools of All Grades*, July 21, 1947)

The Korean people fought valiantly against the slavish education enforced by Japanese imperialism. Outstanding examples are the March 1 Uprising (1919) and the Kwangju Students' Incident (1929).

In the thirties the struggle of the Korean people against the colonial enslavement education assumed more active and organized character, under the influence of the anti-Japanese partisan warfare and the Fatherland Restoration Association organized and led by Kim Il Sung.

In Article VIII of the Programme of the Association it is specified that the struggle should be waged against the Japanese slavish and militarist education, and compulsory education in the mother tongue and at state expense should be effected.

In accordance with this educational program the popular education made development along democratic lines after liberation.

AFTER LIBERATION

After liberation the educational task was to liquidate the evil survivals of Japanese imperialism; to establish a new educational system on the democratic basis; and to raise the general level of the culture of the people.

The North Korean Educational Bureau proclaimed the "Program of the Temporary Measures for Schooling" in November 1945, and the North Korean Provisional People's Committee, the "Decision on the Improvement of School Work" in March 1946. Thus an end was put to the Japanese slavish educational system.

The basic principles and lines of new democratic education were elaborated in keeping with the Twenty-point Program advanced by Comrade Kim Il Sung and the Program of the Workers' Party of Korea.

In the field of popular education the Party demanded in its program that an educational reform should be effected; the survivals of the Japanese education should be liquidated in the work of education and culture; a comprehensive educational system should be established for ensuring the right to education for all Korean people, regardless of property status, beliefs or sex; a universal compulsory primary schooling should be put into effect; the network of schools of all levels should be expanded; national cadres should be trained; the cultural revolution should be accomplished by raising the cultural level of the people. The tasks set by the Party were carried out successfully. In December 1946, the people's power adopted the "Regulations for the Establishment of Educational System in North Korea." As a result, a new democratic educational system under the unified leadership of the state was set up.

The educational reform was carried out; and its system was put on a solid material basis as a consequence of a series of democratic reforms including the land reform effected in March 1946. The planned operation of the national economy which started in 1947 required the further enhancement of the cultural and technical standards of the working people. In 1947 the system of adult and trade education was established.

Thus an end was put to illiteracy of the vast majority of the people — the evil consequences of the Japanese slavish educational policy. The working youth could receive systematic education without leaving their places of work.

In June 1947 a decision was proclaimed on giving state stipends to the students above the level of specialized schools, thus ensuring fully the material condition for educating the sons

and daughters of the toiling people at specialized schools or higher educational establishments.

In July 1946 a decision was adopted on the establishment of a university. In accordance with this decision the Kim Il Sung University and subsequently a number of colleges were instituted.

With the radical reorganization of the system of school education and the rapid expansion of the network of schools at all levels the contents, style and methods of teaching underwent a fundamental change.

As for the curriculum, many hours were given to Korean language and Korean history which had been banned under Japanese imperialist rule. And at the same time special attention was paid to basic science, natural science in particular.

New successes were scored in the work of drafting the program of teaching and of compiling text-books.

The valuable experiences of the advanced Soviet education were widely introduced into the style and method of teaching. Refresher courses for educational cadres were organized on a wider scale to raise their politico-ideological as well as professional levels.

Thanks to the correct educational policy of the Party and the government, the patriotic struggle of the people and the fraternal help of the great Soviet Union, our popular education made rapid progress.

In North Korea, in 1949 the number of primary school students was 1,500,000 or 600,000 more than in the pre-liberation year 1944. Higher educational establishments which did not exist before liberation numbered 15 with the enrolment of 18,000. Large numbers of technical personnel and economic experts were trained at technical and other specialised schools which increased to 69.

By 1950 sufficient conditions had been created for effecting the universal compulsory education. 71.9 per cent of the students who finished primary school moved up to middle school and 52 per cent of the students who finished junior middle school entered the upper form of schools.

Good results were also scored in education for adults. In 1949 illiteracy was in the main eradicated in the northern part of the country.

In this way, during the five years of the post-liberation peaceful construction the people under the leadership of the Party and the people's power achieved tremendous successes in the sphere of education. The survivals left by Japanese imperialism were liquidated from the field of popular education; the network of schools at all levels expanded; the content and method of teaching improved; the educational cadres were trained; and education for adults effected.

Thus a solid foundation was laid for developing democratic education and prerequisites were created for accomplishing cultural revolution.

In June 1950 the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique made surprise attack on the northern part of the Republic. The Party and the government mobilized all available forces to win victory in the war. All domains of state life were reorganized on a war footing. The educational system, too, had to adapt itself to the objective requirements.

Despite the difficult war conditions, the Party and the government showed special concern for the work of popular education. The U.S. air pirates made ruthless air-raids. In order to operate schools measures were taken to move schools to safety, set up schools underground, and protect students from bombing raids. On the other hand, in the face of various obstacles, strenuous efforts were exerted to improve the programme of teaching and quality of textbooks.

In the 1951-52 academic year all grades of schools continued work in accordance with the revised curriculum and programme of teaching.

Notwithstanding the war circumstances were grim, the Party and the government directed special attention to restore the war-damaged schools of all levels, to enlist school-age children and to ensure conditions for educating students.

During the war the U.S. imperialists destroyed or burnt over 90 per cent of the schools including 15 higher educational establishments.

In support of the policy of the Party and the government the people waged a patriotic struggle for rehabilitating educational establishments. In 1952, 2,913 classes were prepared on the surface, and 4,758 classes were arranged underground. In addition, 5,414 school rooms were repaired. Thus the school work continued without stopping a single day.

In the districts where the continuation of normal education was difficult owing to the indiscriminate bombing and bombardment of the enemy, special study groups were organized. The unit consisting of about ten students from one school or several schools combined was organized in places of safety. A teacher undertook to guide several study groups. From this special education during the war time precious experience was gained.

During the war time special attention was devoted to technical and higher education. Measures were taken for improving the work at specialized schools and technical institutes, for increasing the amount of state stipends and for giving special favour to students who had no one to depend upon.

On the other hand, many students were sent to the Soviet Union and other advanced countries for study.

During the war time the Party and the government showed deep concern for educating the sons and daughters of patriotic martyrs, war orphans and disabled soldiers. The Cabinet of the Republic took steps to set up special schools for the sons and daughters of patriotic martyrs in 1951, disabled soldiers' schools in April of the same year and expanded on a large scale the network of nurseries.

During the war time no small results were attained in the work of training teachers. Two thousand and five hundred teachers in all were trained at 17 normal schools, 3 pedagogical institutes, or one teachers' college. And 6,347 teachers were re-educated at various educational institutes.

Thanks to such measures taken by the Party and the government, the work of popular education was reinforced even in the grim conditions of war.

On the basis of the educational development made in the periods of post-liberation peaceful construction and the Fatherland Liberation War, in July 1953, the Cabinet of the Republic took measures for reorganizing the educational system as a whole.

During the war time hundreds upon hundreds of students rendered distinguished services. For example, 5,000 combatants including Heroes Li Soo Bok and Jo Keun Shil displayed heroic feats. Fourteen thousand educational workers received state prizes in recognition of their outstanding services through the periods of the post-liberation peaceful construction and the Fatherland Liberation War.

The Korean people scored brilliant results in education. This testifies to the correctness of the educational policy pursued by the Workers' Party of Korea and the government. After the war the task raised in the field of education was to restore rapidly the educational and cultural establishments which had been destroyed or burnt by American brutes; to put the educational system on a peace-time footing; and to raise all the educational work to the prewar level during the postwar Three-Year Plan period.

In the postwar period the people displayed patriotic enthusiasm for the reconstruction of the national economy. In the educational field, the primary task was to restore rapidly the educational establishments which had been destroyed or scattered during the war and to normalize school work.

In one month or so after the truce 9,425 class rooms and 10,616 temporary class rooms were made ready; textbooks and teaching materials were prepared. Thus it was possible for all grades of schools to start the new academic year from September 1, 1953.

While carrying out the urgent and huge tasks of the national economy, the Party and the government allocated a huge amount of 5.5 billion won for education in 1954. In 1955 social and cultural expenditure in the state budget increased 21 per cent as compared with the previous year. The people displayed enthusiasm for restoring the war-damaged schools. As a result, 18,600 class rooms were restored or newly built. At the end of 1955 in various parts of the country modern multi-storey schools were built. The Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea held in the spring of 1956 set the important tasks before popular schooling, the tasks of improving the work of training technical personnel, of instituting the compulsory seven-year schooling, of popularizing practical education based on production and technique, of enriching teaching in scientific content and idea. Indeed the Congress opened up vast prospects for the progress of education.

On the basis of the achievements made in the course of rehabilitating the national economy in the post-war period, the universal compulsory primary schooling—the long cherished desire of the people—was realized in 1956.

For three years after the war great results were achieved in the educational field. At the end of 1956 popular education exceeded the prewar level; as compared with the prewar peak of 1949 the number of primary school students increased 102 per cent; the number of junior middle school 134 per cent and students 125 per cent; senior middle school 197 per cent and students 109 per cent; higher educational establishments 114 per cent and students 127 per cent.

In January 1958, as compared with 1944 under Japanese imperialist rule, the number of primary school increased 2.9-fold and the students 1.5-fold; middle school — 4.2-fold and students — 7.4-fold; specialized school — 21.5-fold, and students — 39-fold.

In the northern part of the country where not a single university had existed 20 higher educational establishments including Kim Il Sung University, Kim Chaik Polytechnical Institute, Wonsan Agricultural Institute and Pyongyang Medical Institute were set up. Now in these schools over 29,000 students are studying advanced science and technique. In addition, more than 4,000 students are sent to the advanced countries for higher or professional study.

Also much was done for children of revolutionary martyrs and war orphans, for children under school-age and for non-educated adults. Correspondence courses of various kinds were extended. Trade schools for working youth, evening schools for cadres and correspondence courses were set up in order to elevate their scientific level.

Since the war, the Korean people have achieved tremendous successes in the educational field. On the basis of these successes, in the period of the First Five-Year Plan the universal seven-year schooling will be effected; school work further improved; technical and higher education pushed forward. For this the necessary work is under way.

All the successes achieved in popular education since liberation testify to the correctness of the educational policy pursued by the Party and the government, the superiority and inexhaustible virility of our people's democratic system.

The system of popular education in our country is based on the principles of universal education, unified leadership, equality of sexes, separation of religion from education and equality of nations.

Our educational system comprises kindergartens for children under six years; four-year primary schools for students from 7 to

11; three-year junior secondary schools for students from 11 to 14; three-year senior secondary schools for students from 14 to 17.

As for technical schools, there are three- or four-year specialized schools and two-year higher specialized schools for training engineers.

The university offers a five-year course; colleges, four to five year courses; Pedagogical Institute, four-year; Teachers' Training Institute, two-year; Conservatoire and Academy of Fine Arts, four-year with a two-year preparatory course. Postgraduate courses are attached to the seven higher educational establishments.

There are also various kinds of correspondence courses, schools for adults and other educational institutes for special purposes.

SCIENCE

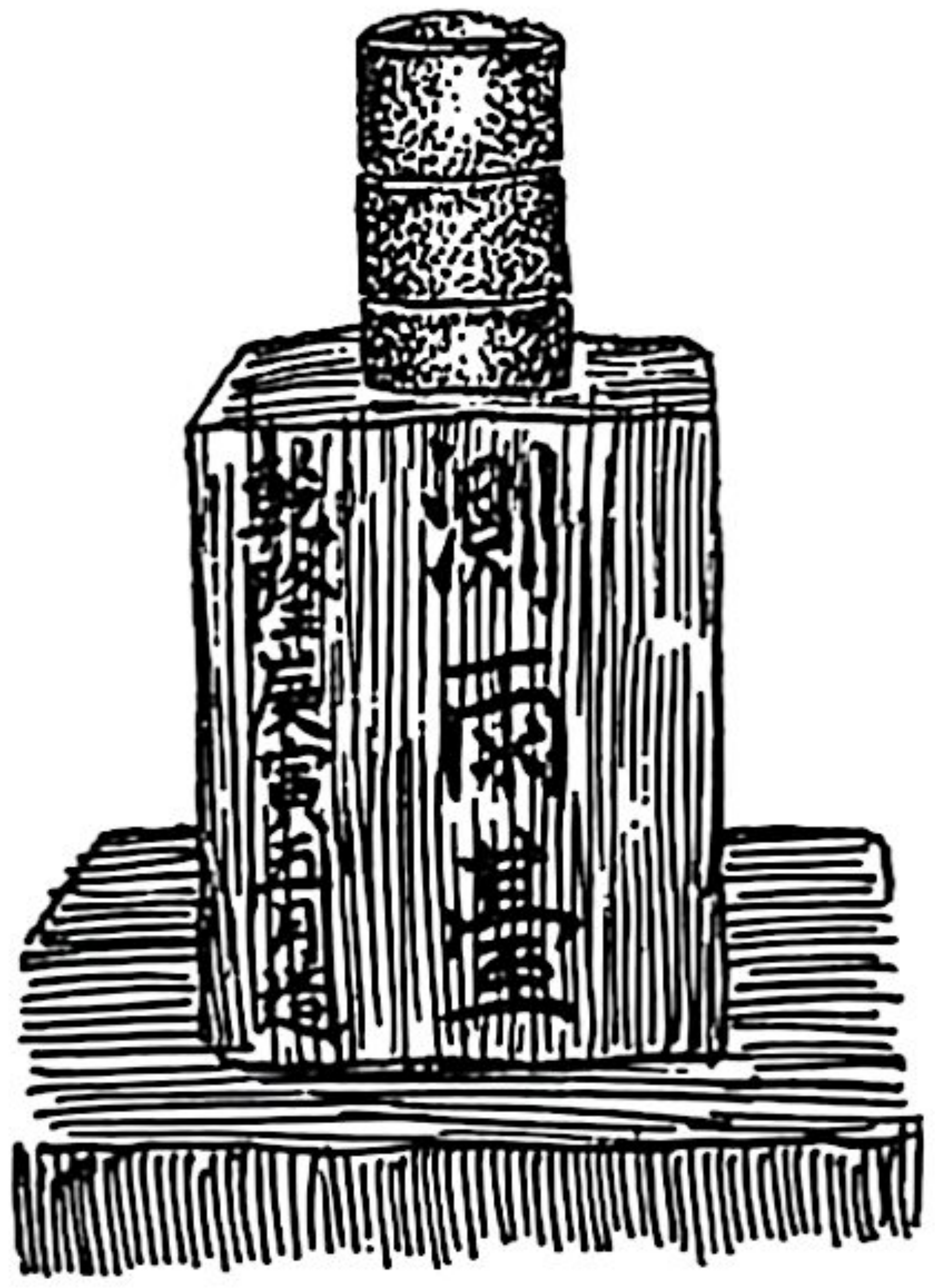
SCIENCE IN OLDEN TIMES

Already in ancient times our science and culture played a definite role in improving the life of the people and developing production.

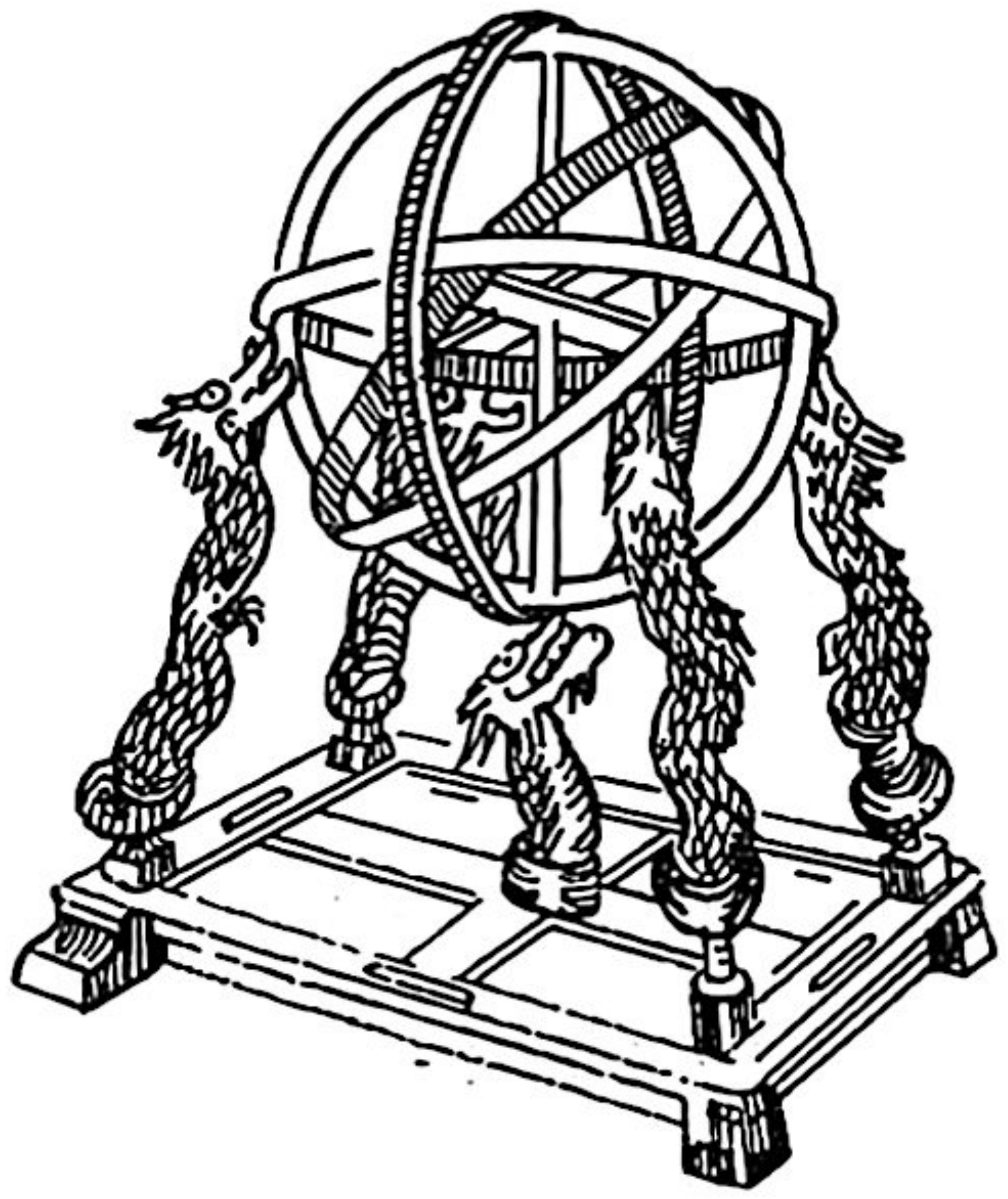
The tradition of our brilliant culture is not only the pride of Koreans, but also has made contribution to the treasure-house of human culture.

Astronomy: Our country witnessed the development of astronomy early in its history. Our astronomy made progress along with the development of agriculture which was dependent on natural conditions.

One of the most outstanding achievements in our ancient culture was the *Chumsungdai* (Observatory) built in the 7th century. This observatory, the first one in Asia, was built of stone. On the upper part were placed various observation instruments. The Silla people corrected an average error of calendar used in



Udometer



Celestial globe

some other Asian countries. They observed accurately the eclipses of the sun and moon, and made detailed records of the position of planets and comets and celestial changes.

Astronomical observations continued in the Koryu period, and voluminous records related to these remain. We can cite as an example the *Chunmoonji* (Astronomical Chronicle) and *Ohangji* (Five Elements Chronicle) included in the History of Koryu. In the former we find detailed records of observation about the eclipses of the sun and moon, and about comets and planets. Noteworthy is the record concerning spots in the sun, giving the scientific method of their observation.

Some facts recorded in the Five Elements Chronicle have to do with astronomical observations. Natural phenomena were not only closely observed, but also viewed in close connection with social phenomena.

In the 15th century when the feudal centralism of the Li

Dynasty was further strengthened, astronomy made conspicuous progress. In this period Korean literary science reached its highest level. Though limited, Korean science laid its own foundation. A scientific tradition was set up advocating that science should serve practical life and play the role of a guide to prosperous life. In this period various instruments used in celestial observation were manufactured.

Large and small measuring instruments and telescopes made in the period of King Sejong and various types of celestial observation instruments and time recorders preserved in the Humkyungkak were all designed and made on intricate mathematical calculations and on a technical basis, showing the highest level of science and technology at that time.

In this period astronomy became more closely linked with practical life. Proof of this is the invention of udometre in 1441.

Between the 17th and 18th centuries Koreans introduced European science on the soil of their traditional science, thus opening up a new era for the development of celestial observation.

Above all, the scholars belonging to the Practical School interpreted the revolution of the earth by an original method, and systematized celestial and weather observation and made a calendar, all of which helped them to form a progressive world outlook.

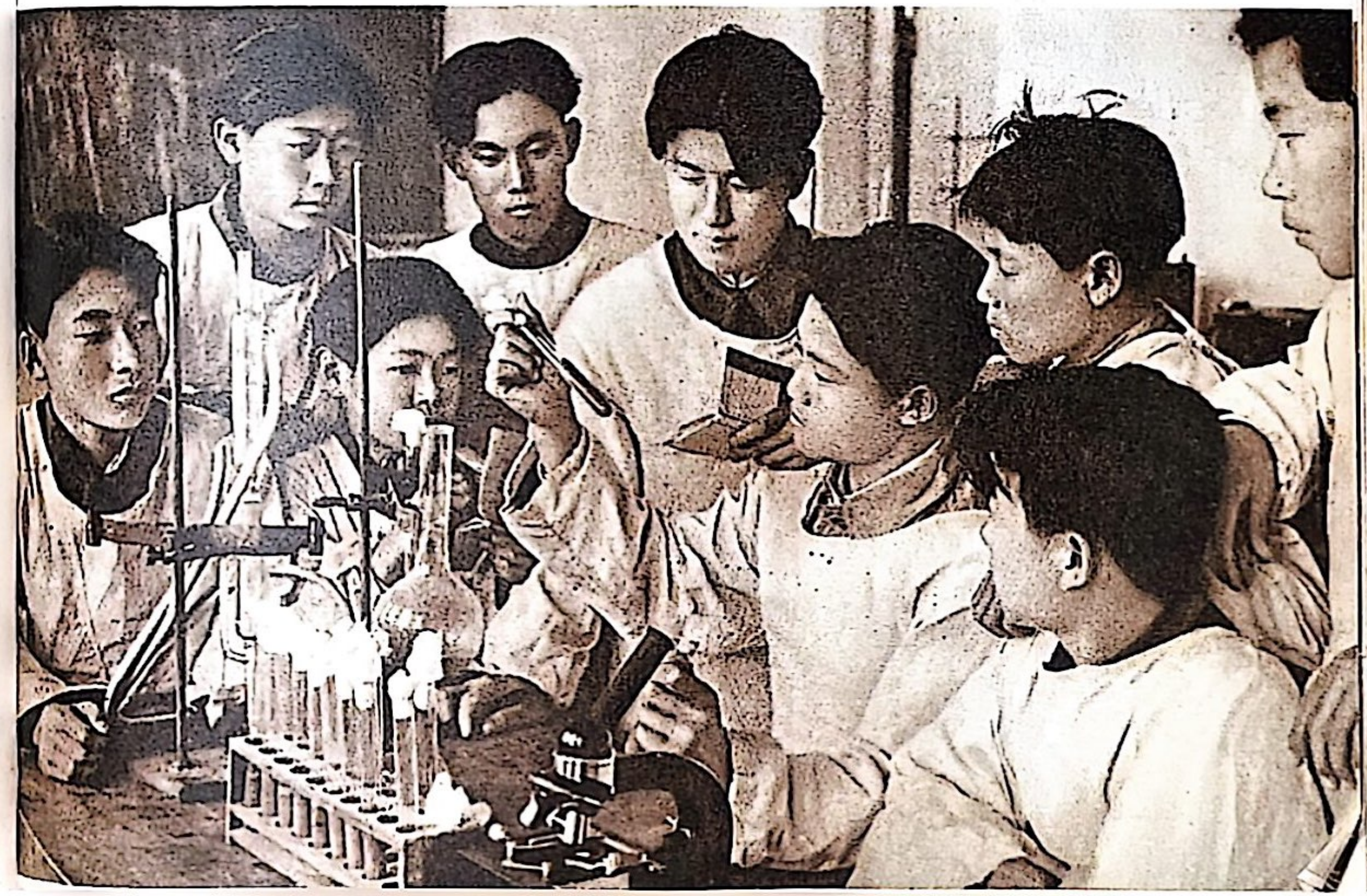
Mathematics: In Korea mathematics developed along with astronomy and the calendar. It was widely applied to the practical life of the people. Precise application of mathematics can be seen in the design of the tombs and other forms of architecture of the Kokuryo period. Especially, the *Sukkulam* (Stone Grotto) built in the period of Silla is excellent in its composition, giving a sense of Mathematical Palace.

Mathematics was applied to rhythmical calculation, manufacture of musical instruments, compilation of charts and other geographical data, building of banks, making of measuring instruments, etc.

In the 18th century the scholars of the Practical School made a study of European mathematics, which greatly contributed to the development of mathematics in Korea. The book "Analysis and Application" deals not only with theoretical aspects — al-

The main building of the Kim Il Sung University

Analysis of plankton by the students of the Sinpo Fishery School

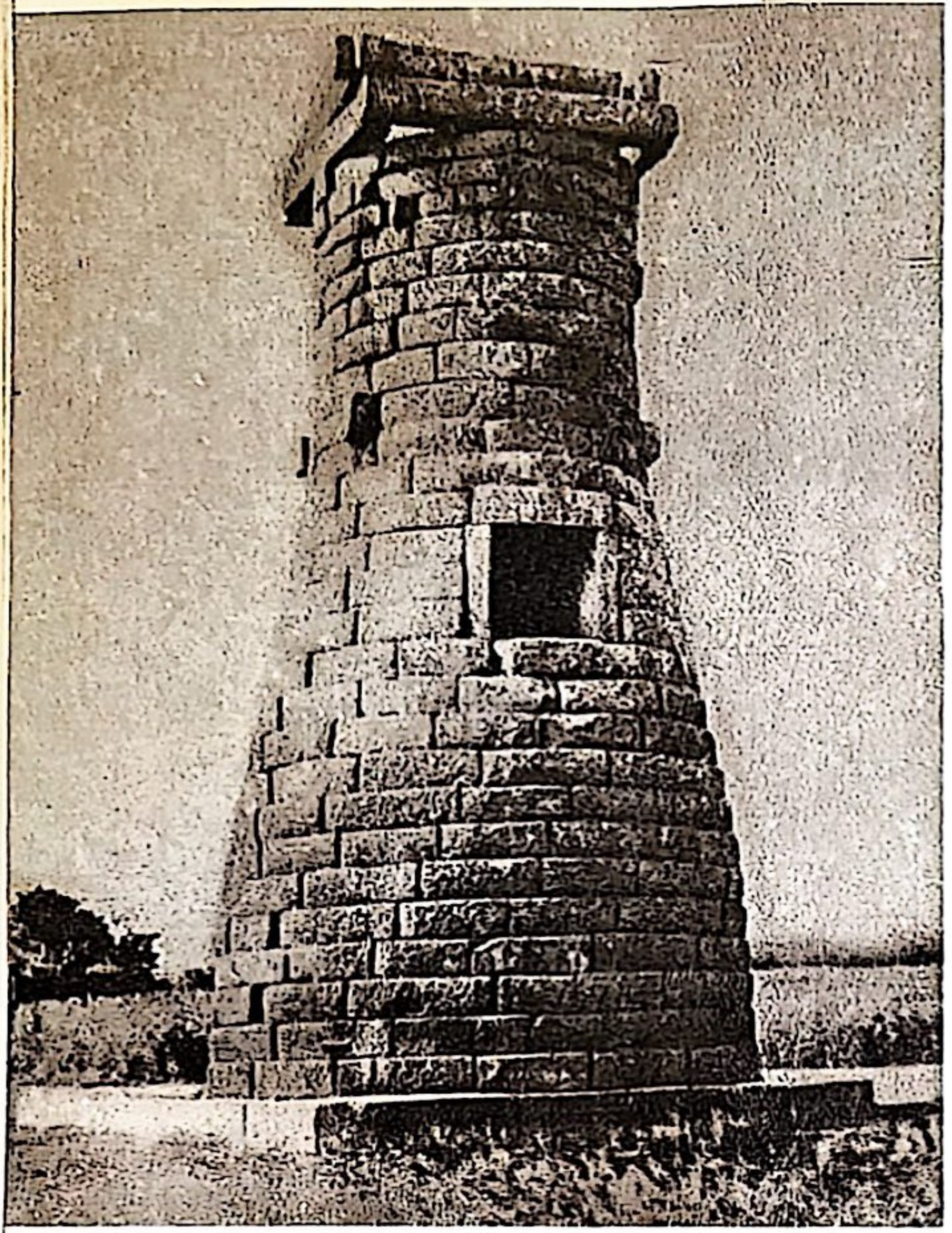


Pupils of the primary course on the play-ground

A circle of Young Pioneers

Mankyungdai School for the bereft children of revolutionaries

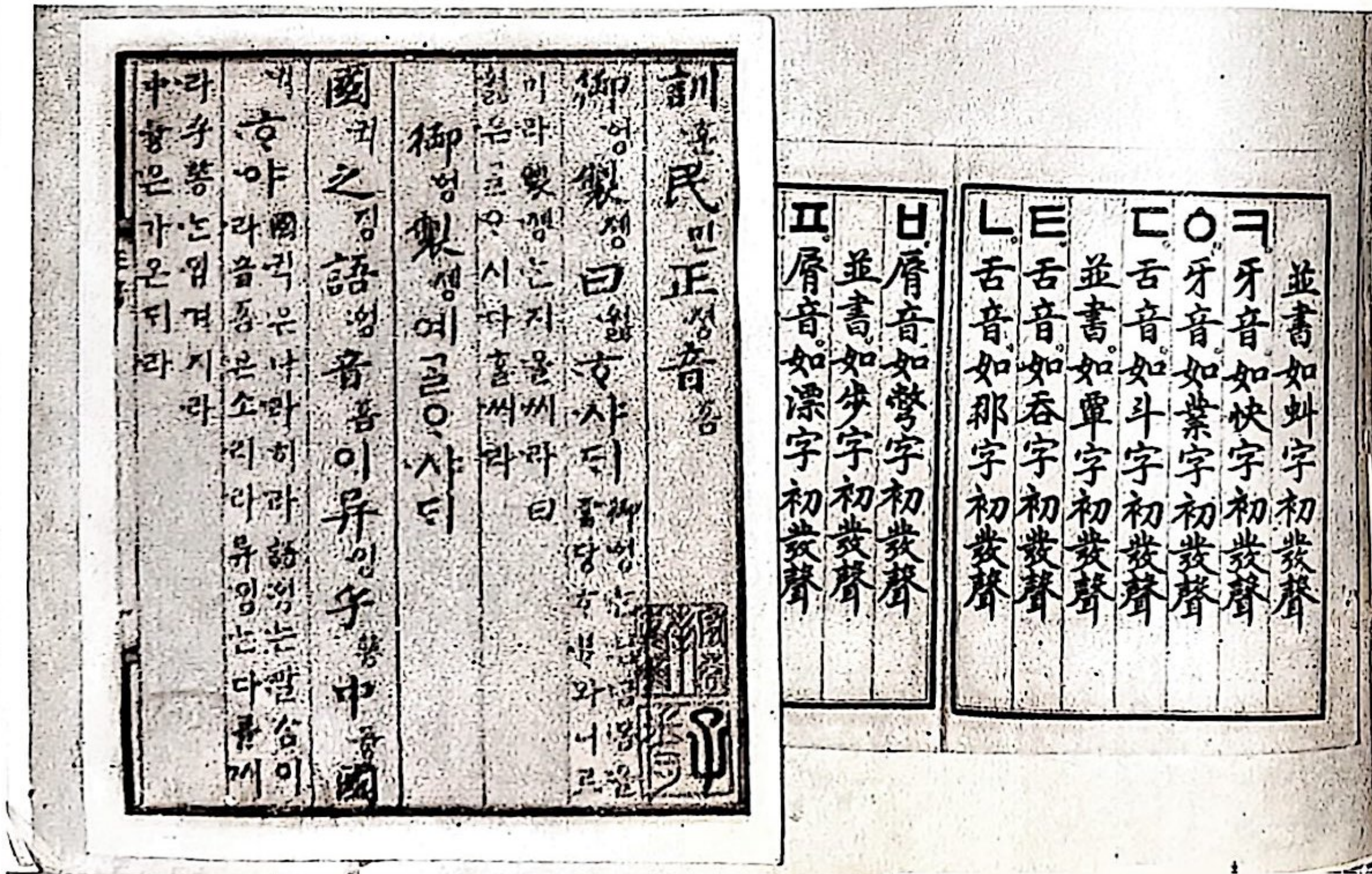
The Pyongyang Textile School



Chumsung-Dai
(Astronomical Observatory)

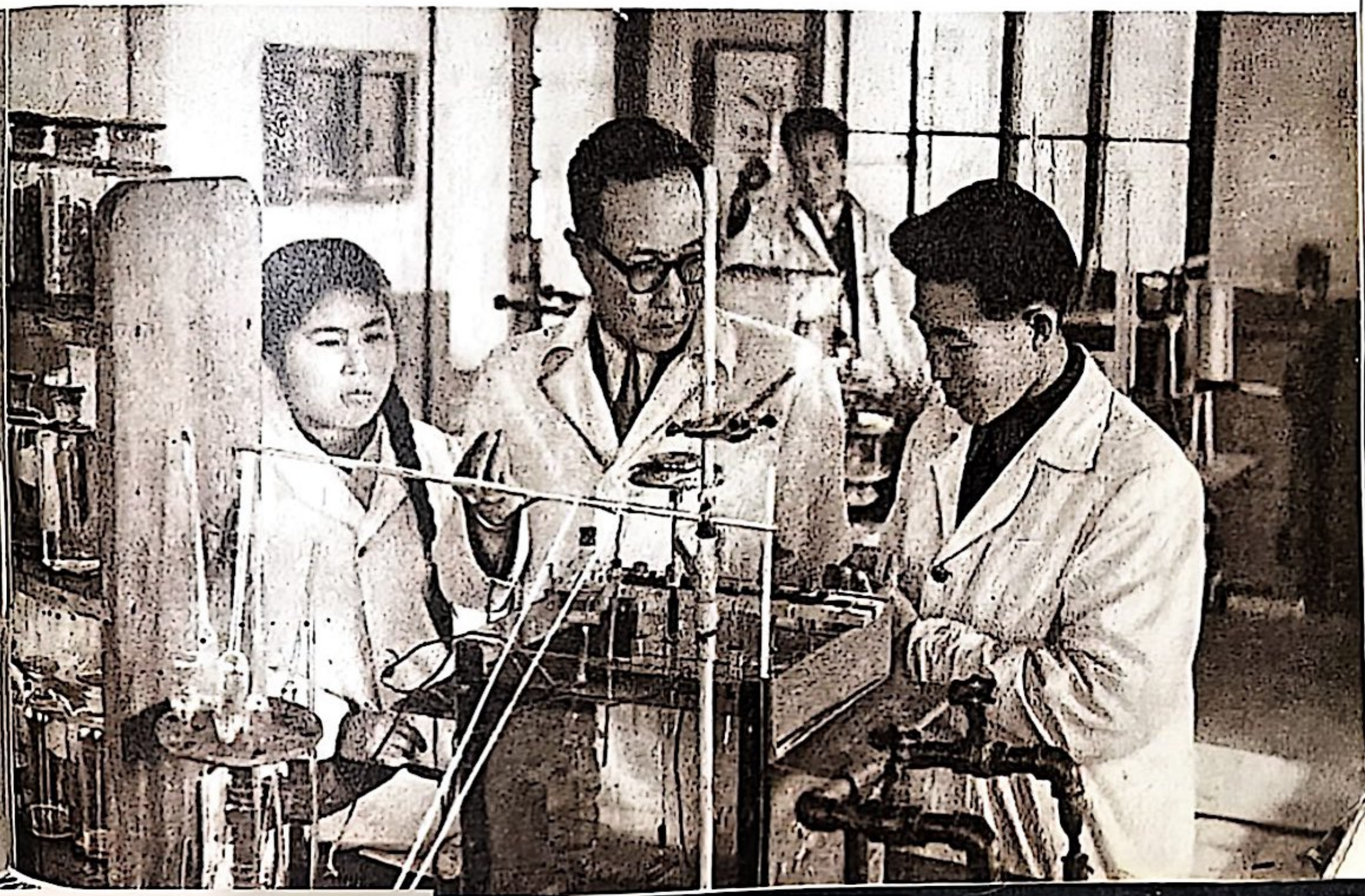
Members of the geological survey team

Hoonmin-jungeum
(Korean letters)



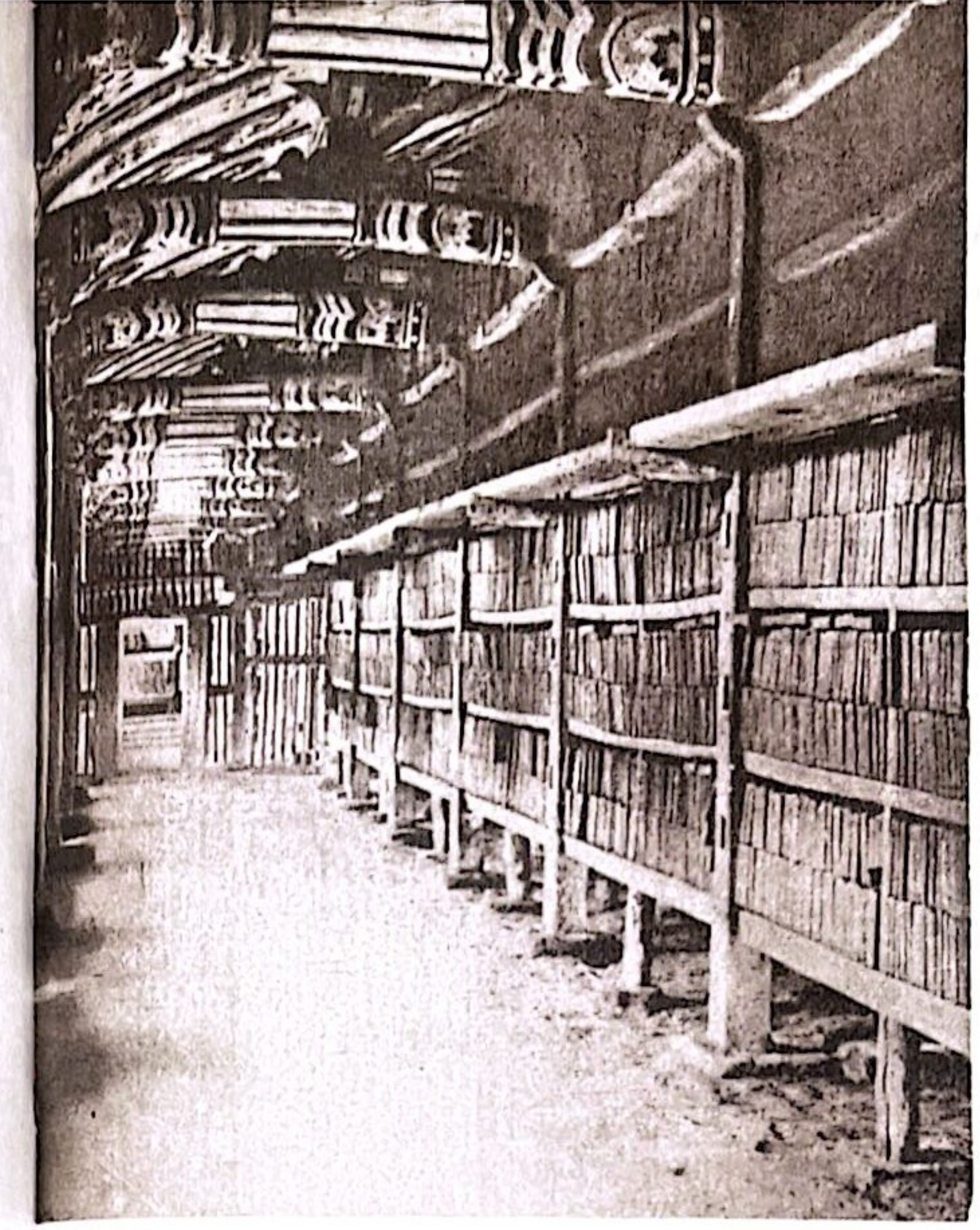
竝書如虯字初發聲
ㅋ。牙音如快字初發聲
ㆁ。牙音如業字初發聲
ㄷ。舌音如斗字初發聲
竝書如覃字初發聲
ㅌ。舌音如呑字初發聲
ㄴ。舌音如那字初發聲
ㅂ。脣音如彆字初發聲
竝書如步字初發聲
ㅍ。脣音如漂字初發聲

Dr. Li Seung Ki making a research of vinalon



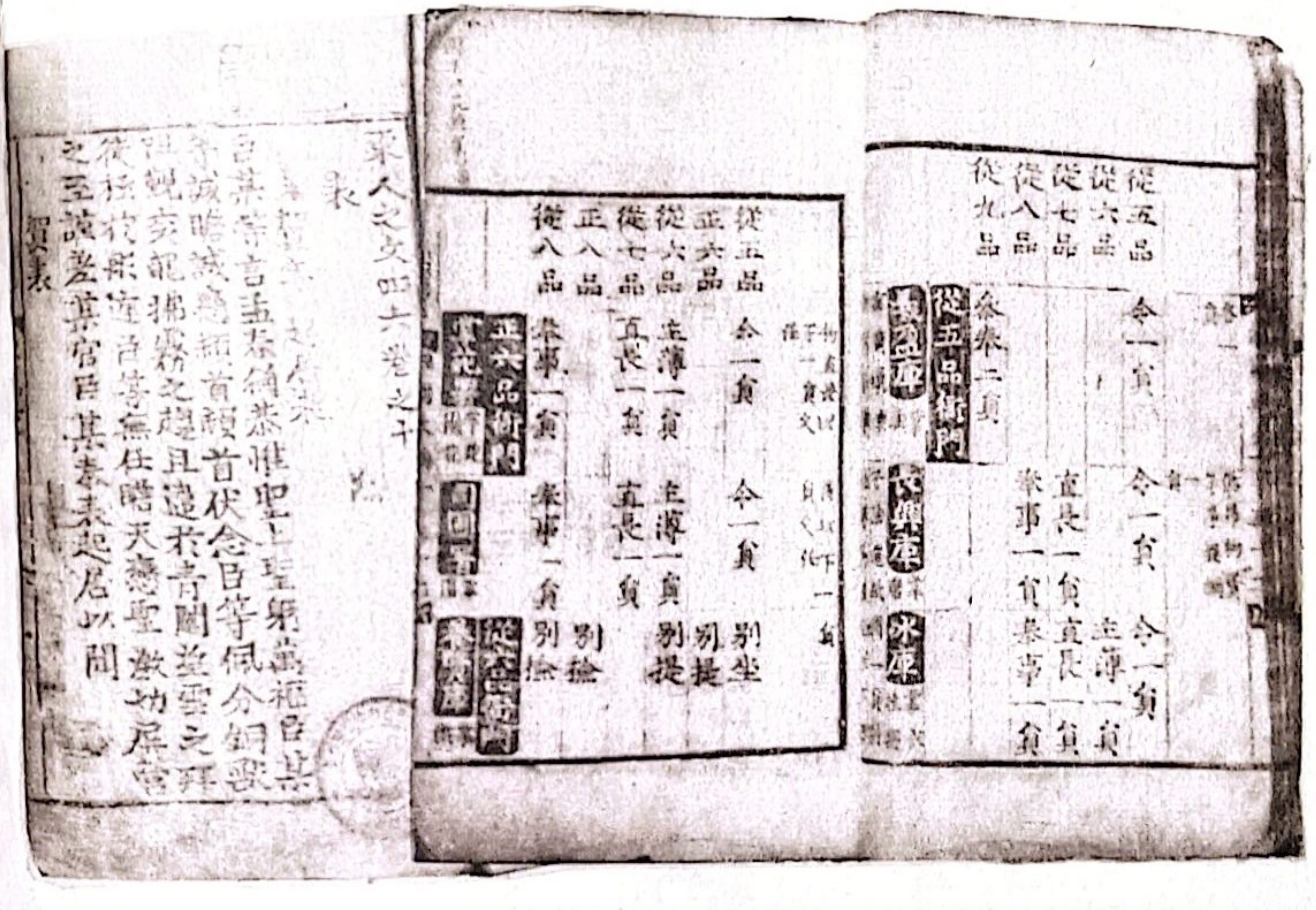
Pyongyang Observatory

Dr. Ke Eung Sang studying tussah silkworm raising



Printing blocks of Buddhist scripture are preserved in the Haein-sa Temple

Korean books printed by copper types in ancient times



민주조선
로동신문
조국전선
경제건설
근로자
KOREA
김일성선집
레닌
Karl Marx
자본론
소련 희곡집

Contemporary books published in our country

Current Korean literature published in our country

조선문학
청년문학
심청전
황혼
창작집
생명
귀향
두만강

gebra and geometry — but also with celestial observation, land survey, adjustment of tune, etc.

Another great scholar, Hong Kil Chu, wrote the book "New Geometry," in which the method of using astronomical and land-surveying instruments is elaborated. His geometry compares well with those of advanced foreign countries.

Mathematicians Kim Yung, Kim Dam, Li Sang Hyuk, Li Myung Chil made a great contribution to the practical application and popularization of mathematics.

Ship-building: Korea, surrounded by seas on three sides, had from ancient times frequent contacts with foreign countries by sea route as well as by the northern land route. In ancient times the people of Kokuryo and Pakche had the command of the South and West seas. Navigation and ship-building in our country reached a high level in ancient times.

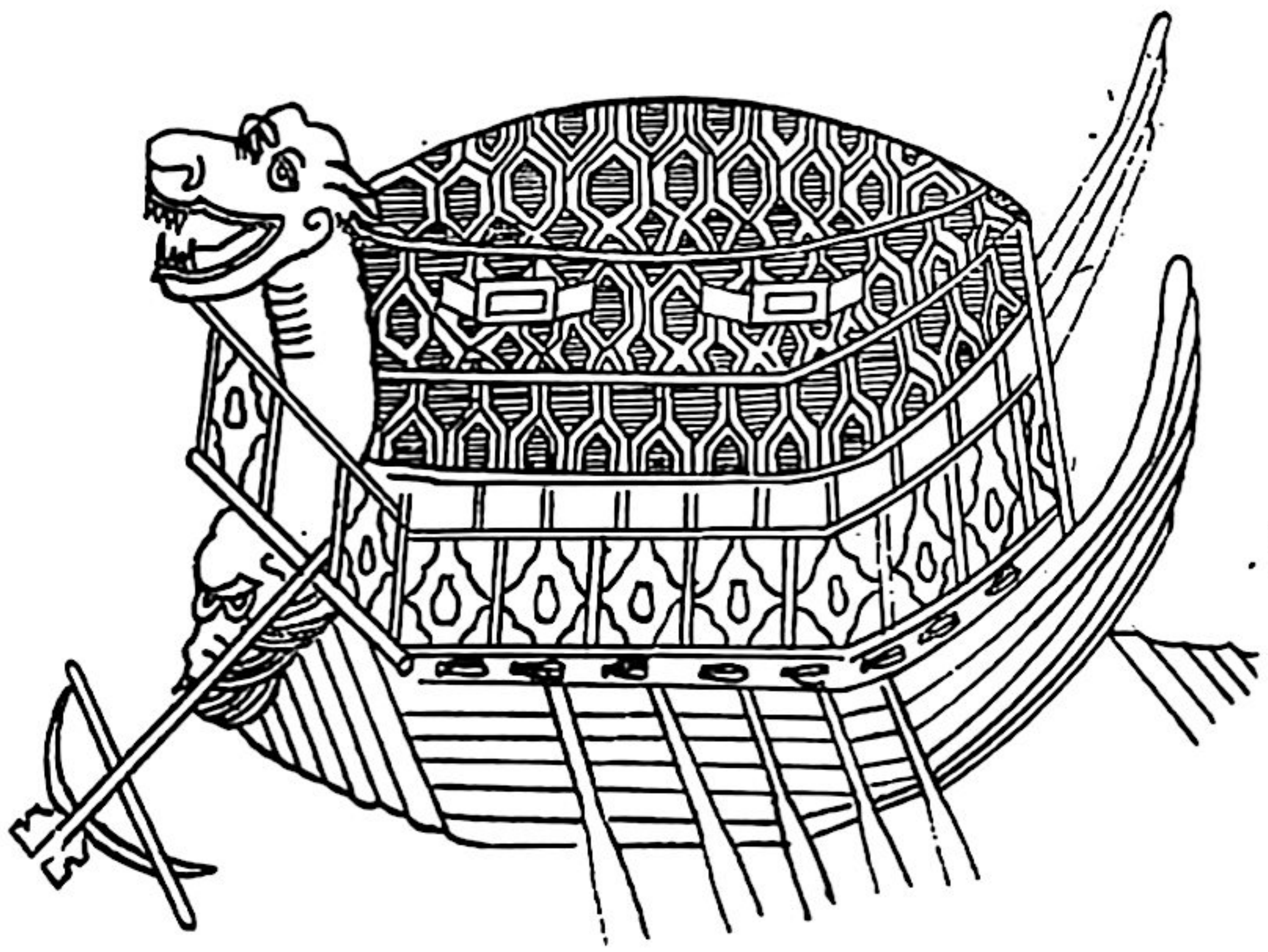
After the Silla unified all Korea, she continued the command of the seas. She had relations with China (Tang Dynasty) across the sea. Japan made frequent use of Silla's ships in her trade with Tang.

In the Koryu period there was trouble in relations with the states on the northern frontier. Therefore Koryu maintained relations with Sung mainly through sea route. In the same period merchant ships plied between Korea and Arabia.

Koryu showed a high level of development in the technique of ship-building. Suffice it to say that when Yuan planned to conquer Japan she ordered from Koryu 1,000 war-ships with a tonnage of three or four hundred suk.

In the period of the Li Dynasty ship-building made a further development. It showed originality in size and shape. Noteworthy is the building of a tortoise shaped ship. This ship was built in the early part of Li Dynasty. When the Imjin Patriotic War (1592-1598) broke out, it was built by Admiral Li Soon Shin. In the war the tortoise ship played a big rôle in annihilating the numerically superior Japanese navy.

This tortoise ship is probably the first iron-clad man-of-war in the world. In the latter part of the 18th century, with the rise of the Practical School, keen interest was directed to the relation with the outside world. In this connection valuable suggestions were made for improving ship-building technique.



Tortoise boat

Yun Yung, master of physical science, invented a kind of wheel ship and Jun Woun Sang invented a keeled ship. Despite the fact that the seclusionist policy enforced over a long period under feudalism impeded the development of technology, Koreans displayed great talent in technical improvement in shipbuilding.

Medicine: In Korea, the treatment of disease with medicine started by superstitious methods. Medical science gradually developed with accumulation of experience. In the period of the Three Kingdoms medicine was imported from China, which contributed to systematizing medical treatment and herb preparations on the basis of the traditional method.

In the period of Koryu popular medicinal herb treatment made progress. In the reign of King Sejong of Li Dynasty the "Systematic Medicinal Herb Preparations" was compiled. This was the first step toward putting Korean medical science on its own. In this connection it was necessary for Korean herb doctors to study and generalize the voluminous Chinese medical books. The culmination of it is the *Tong-E-Bo-Kam* (Guide to Oriental Medicine) by Huh Jun. It was published in 1610.

Along with Korean traditional herb medicine, Huh Jun made a close study of Korean climate, weather and physical constitution of the people, and then introduced advanced medical theories from foreign countries. In his "Guide to Oriental Medicine," Huh Jun quoted in detail passages from 83 copies concerning medical treatment which were published in China (from the time of Han down to Tang, Sung, Yuan and Ming), and expatiated his views on the various Chinese theories. He classified diseases and elucidated the outline of treatment, rejecting traditional superstition. He made much of experienced methods and set up his theoretical foundation by studying many cases of diseases and the treatment of them.

Of most importance is his advanced view on prophylaxis. In his book he laid stress on preventing diseases rather than clinical treatment. He dwelt upon the various methods of treatment in careful consideration of physical features and circumstances of each case.

Such a view was original in medical science at that time, and progressive in medical treatment. His book was reprinted in a number of foreign countries. Many people at home and abroad derived much benefit from his theoretical as well as practical views on medicine.

In this way Huh Jun's book constituted the foundation of Korean medical science.

In the 18th century Korean medical science developed under the influence of the advanced thinking group — the Practical School. One member of the group, Li Je Ma, produced his outstanding book *Sasang-Ehak* (Medicine Based on Four Features). He classified the human constitution into four categories —Taium (Great Negative), Taiyang (Great Positive), Soum (Small Negative) and Soyang (Small Positive). He dwelt upon diseases and medical treatment in accordance with such characteristics. Naturally, there were formalistic shortcomings as are evident by his oversimplifying the complicated human constitution. But his merits lie in his explanation of diseases and the method of curing them according to physical constitution.

His medical theory is contained in his *Tong-i-Soose-Bowon* (Oriental Medicine for Health and Longevity), which was further developed by his followers.

Agricultural science: We find in ancient chronicles of the Three Kingdoms that various measures were taken for improving farming technique and developing irrigation projects in order to raise agricultural productive forces. We can cite by way of illustration the building of reservoirs and dykes, big and small, including the famous Byukkol-ze; rice cultivation; farming on dry fields; tilling by draught cattle; wide use of water mill, etc.

In the Li Dynasty a high level of agricultural science was reached. In addition to the generalization of the traditional experiences Korean agricultural experts introduced the developed agro-technique from China and took systematic steps in consideration of Korean climate and farming technique.

In the book "On Farming" which was put out in 1429, farming methods are dealt with in detail on the basis of the study of geology, seeds, climate, custom, etc. It also illustrates the facts that farm produce can be increased by artificial means. The "Keumyang Notes" of Kang He Mang was published in 1491. This book dwelt upon farming methods including the improvement of seeds and sowing. It is also noteworthy that he stood for the reduction in various exacting taxes and levies on peasants

In the 18th century the Practical School representing progressive ideas of the times paid special attention to the policy on the technical improvement of farming. In fact, the administrative aspects constituted a major part of their ideological system. Typical of this are "Notes on Farming" by Pak Ji Won and "Sixteen Notes on Forestry Economy" by Suh Yu Koo.

In these writings they referred to the general achievements made in farming, and elaboration of the raising of grain and fruit, livestock farming, sericulture and horticulture along with discussion on weather and soil and the introduction of the agro-technique of Europe as well.

Special mention should be made of the fact that they laid stress on raising the farm household economy to such a level that agro-technique could be assimilated and agricultural productive forces promoted.

The common view of the scholars belonging to the Practical School was that agro-technique could not be advanced when the life of peasants was ruined.

They even dealt with the solution of the question of land as a first step for raising agricultural productive forces.

Geography: Korea made no small achievements in geography and drawing of charts.

From historical records we learn that not only in the Kokuryo Dynasty (628 A.D.) but also in Pakche and Silla charts were drawn, and in the period of Unified Silla down to Koryu and Li Dynasties geography constituted a part of history.

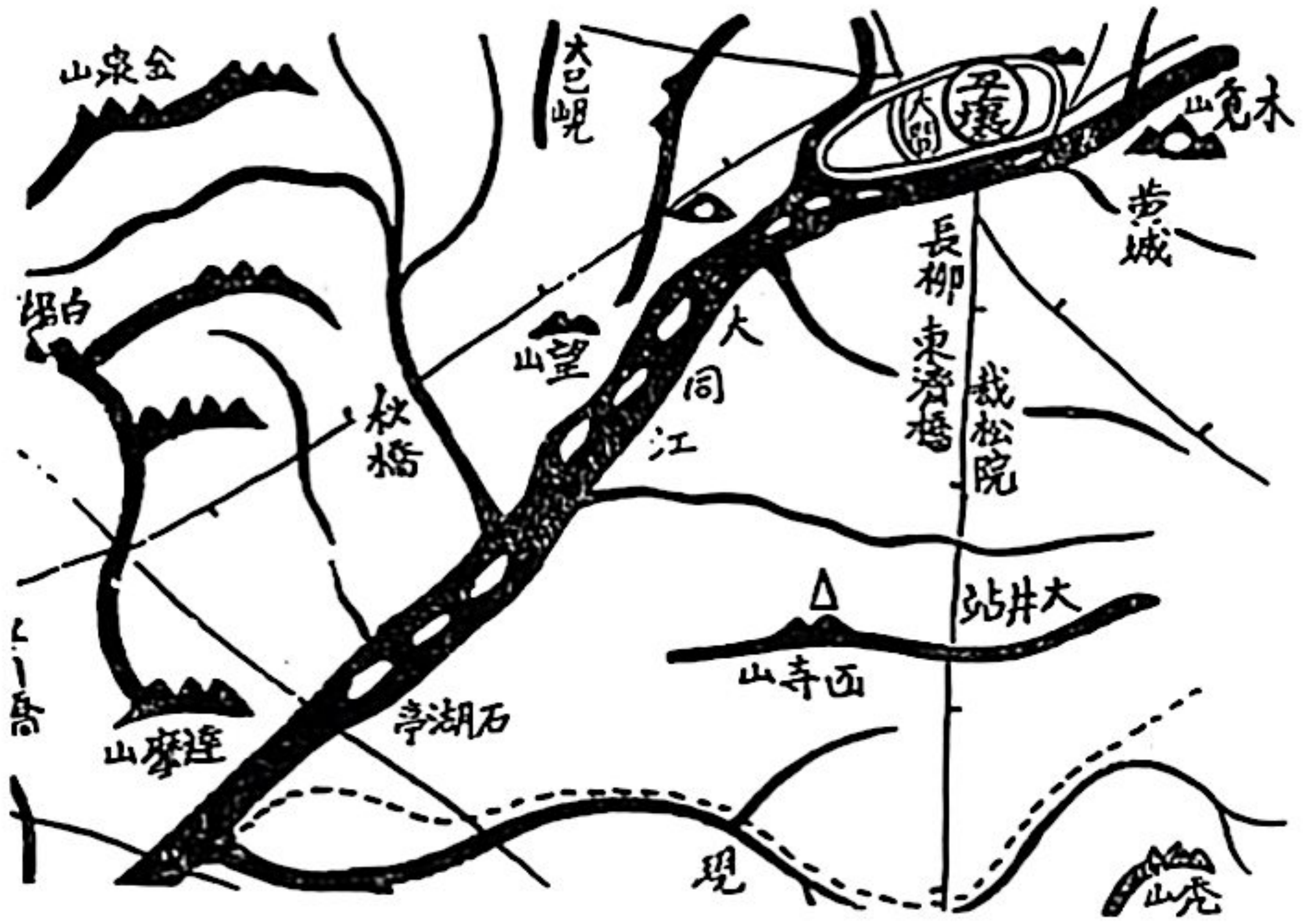
However, the first scientific documents of geography in the strickest sense of the word were compiled in the reign of King Sejong. Geographical notes included in Sejong's Chronology are voluminous, consisting of eight volumes in eight parts. In these documents we find a systematic description of the historical changes of each province and county, history of its name, rivers and mountains, villages, walls, government offices, classification of population according to family name, salt-fields, livestock farms, local products, kinds of handicrafts, fertility of land, area of landownership, taxes and tribute, transport, climate and distance, customs, etc.

In this way Korean geography went beyond the Confucian restriction and took the form of physical and political geography. At the same time local geographical data were compiled. In the 18th century Korean geography made spectacular progress along with the development of ideas advanced by the Practical School. It is also a reflection of the tendency towards studying closely natural and social affairs in the desire for the prosperity of the country and mirrors the real situation in which markets and commodity circulation were developing on a country-wide scale.

In the early part of the Li Dynasty there were charts such as "Chart of Eight Provinces," and "Chart of Mountains and Rivers in Eight Provinces." But in the 18th century Jung Sang Ke drew a chart according to modern form. It was the "Paldo (Eight Provinces) Chart."

The more perfect form is the "Taidong-yu Chart," which was drawn to a scale of 1:162,000 by Kim Jung Ho on the basis of the achievements of his predecessors and by making use of various measuring instruments.

This chart served as a model in making geographical documents, and was very beneficial to the people in geographical knowledge. In this way Korea made advance in geographical compilation prior to capitalism. This is to be explained by the fact that our feudal system was not based on decentralization of power but on strict centralism.



Taidong-yu Map

Science of history: There are annals of Korea from the period of Three Kingdoms. 100 volumes of Ryuki in Kokuryo, Kohung's Suki in Pakche and Kuchilboo's national history in Silla are annals of the successive Kings.

Notes on Tankun, Account of King Tongmyung, Old Records of Three Hans, Haitong Records, Special Notes on Silla, Kyerim Miscellaneous Notes, etc. are valuable historical documents. On the basis of these documents the History of the Three Kingdoms was compiled.

In 1145 Kim Boo Shik revised the History of the Three Kingdoms into 50 volumes by drawing on the remaining old records and Chinese historical documents.

Kim Boo Shik's History of the Three Kingdoms is composed of chronological description, historical narrative according to different sections, biographies of historical characters, etc.

His idea was that historical description was to convey facts as such. He did not insert his own views. The History of the Three Kingdoms is the oldest of the authoritative historical documents. One of the characteristics is that he did not follow the example of Chinese historians in chronological records. He made an account of events in the order of the reign of successive Kings. This was distinct from the Chinese style of "Spring and Autumn".

The objective attitude toward compiling history proceeded from the positive spirit, which is found in the Tongkook-Tongkam and Tongsa-Kangmok.

In contrast to the simplified description of the History of the Three Kingdoms, the Samkook Yusa (Complement of the History of Three Kingdoms) edited by Il Yun deals with many historical facts which were handed down from mouth to mouth.

In the Koryu period there were many historical documents. Up to the beginning of Li Dynasty the records of successive Kings' reign were compiled. Only 139 volumes of Koryu History by Jung Rin Je, which were put out in 1451, still exist. This narrative work is composed of successive family's annals, biographies and chronological lists.

In the period of Li Dynasty historical facts were recorded in connection with the reign of Kings. Authoritative history is the Lijo Shilrok (Records of Successive King Lis' Reign) covering 1,700 volumes.

In the compilation of historical records Korean historians, though the Confucian style was made much of, showed their originality in giving an historical outline such as Ryusa-Jekang in the 15th-17th centuries, Tongkook-Tongkam in the reign of Sejong and Tongkook-Tonkam-Jekang in the reign of Hyojong. All this was a forerunner of historical science in Korea.

Along with the aggravation of contradictions which foretold a new change in the feudal Korea of the 17th-18th centuries, the ideas advanced by the Practical School marked a great turn in science of history in Korea.

The Practical School laid stress on the deep analysis of historical development of society with the improvement of people's living and nation's prosperity in view.

The reformist ideas of the Practical School reflected a new spirit — positivism. An Jung Bok was the most outstanding historian. He produced 20 volumes of Tongsa-Kangmok. In his works he reviewed past achievements; made criticism of methodology on historical narration; expressed his positive views.

He delved into many historical problems through his writings — Koi (Confirmation), Kwoisul Byunzung (Explanation of Absurd Views), Investigation into Geography, Notes on Various Spheres, etc.

He elaborated on the essence of historical science. He narrated historical facts accurately; analysed the relations between facts; grasped the main trend running through the historical development. This signifies the precious gains and tremendous progress in the field of Korean history.

The articles or books written by Li Ik, Jung Yak Yong and Li Keung Ik who belonged to the Practical School made no small contribution to the development of history.

Their realistic method of description was taken over by the scholars standing for the enlightenment movement in the 19th-20th centuries.

Under the circumstances in which the Korean people were waging a struggle against foreign aggression, the historians made research into the instructive events in the past and disseminated sound, progressive knowledge with a view to inspiring the people to display creativeness and an indomitable patriotic spirit. Among them were Shin Tsai Ho and Pak Eun Shik. The former produced "New General History" and the latter, "Tragic History of Korea," which made a start of Korean history in the modern sense. From ancient times the Korean people had an excellent tradition of science and culture. But its full-scale development and free scientific research was impeded by the incompetent feudal ruling class and the stagnant economy.

After the Japanese imperialists occupied Korea, they pursued the policy of stamping out Korean national culture and of enforcing enslavement education. The Koreans were generally deprived of the opportunity to enjoy even common education.

AFTER LIBERATION

The August 15 Liberation by the Soviet Army brought the Korean people the possibility of engaging in free scientific research and creative cultural activity.

In the short space of time since liberation, Korean science and culture, true to their tradition, were enriched by assimilating the results of modern science.

After liberation the Workers' Party of Korea and the people's power brought a series of democratic reforms to a successful conclusion, and set up the system of popular democratic education. Before liberation there existed no university in North Korea. But in 1949, there were 15 higher educational establishments including Kim Il Sung University. And a number of scientific institutions were set up. Every year hundreds of working youth were sent to the Soviet Union and the other fraternal countries for acquiring modern science and technique.

On June 25, 1950 the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique provoked a fratricidal war, which caused untold disaster and loss in our scientific and cultural fields. At the first stage of the war scientists and cultural workers took part in restoring the institutions of education, culture and scientific research devastated by the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique in South Korea.

In the period of the temporary retreat they displayed an indomitable spirit in defiance of every difficulty. They took action side by side with the People's Army following the path shown by the Party and the government.

In the whole course of war our scientists were always faithful to the Party and the government of the Republic. They continued their research work, and multiplied their achievements.

Proof of this is the establishment of Academy of Sciences in the midst of the flames of war.

In the postwar period our educational and scientific institutions recovered from their war wounds in a short space of time. Now they have surpassed the prewar level in both quantity and quality.

In the postwar reconstruction period, the People's Economy Institute and the Songdo Political Economy Institute were newly established for training national cadres. Now there are 20 higher educational establishments.

Many scientific research institutes have been set up under the control of government ministries.

The state appropriated vast sums for furnishing the institutions with modern equipment. In this respect mention should be made of the sincere aid rendered by the Soviet Union and other fraternal countries.

After liberation 50,000 technical personnel were trained. In 1956 there were about 70,000 students in higher educational establishments and specialized schools. 800 students who had been sent abroad to study returned home. At present 3,000 students are studying in the Soviet Union and other People's Democracies.

The ranks of scientific workers are growing. Members and corresponding members of Academy of Sciences, doctors, bachelors of arts and science, professors and assistant professors number into the hundreds. Our scientists are arming themselves with Marxism-Leninism. They are the people's scientists who have always been loyal to the Party and the government throughout the period of democratic reforms and the Fatherland Liberation War.

We have numbers of old intellectuals who waged a positive struggle against Japanese imperialism. There are many intellectuals who fought heroically against the invasion of the U.S. imperialists. There are also hundreds of intellectuals who came over to the North from South Korea in opposition to the aggressive policy of the U.S. imperialists and the traitorous cultural policy and brutal oppression of the Syngman Rhee clique in the period of peaceful construction and during the war.

The unshakable attitude and the unity of ideology and will of our scientists who rallied closely around the Party and the government have been maintained in the course of opposing international revisionism and "National Communism", particularly in the struggle against the anti-Party sectarian elements exposed in the August (1956) Plenum of the C.C. of the Party. Our scientists, raising aloft the banner of proletarian internationalism, fought staunchly for strengthening close ties between the Party and the people. They were all mobilized to denounce the underhanded moves of the anti-Party sectarians who attempted to build a nest in the scientific world together with unstable elements.

Our scientists, standing firmly on their own, are achieving more brilliant results in their scientific research. They are acting up to the policy of the Workers' Party of Korea in relation to the systematic introduction of advanced science, especially the Soviet science, in keeping with the development of our scientific and cultural tradition, removal of doctrinarism and formulism and establishment of independent identity. In order to meet the urgent needs of reality, they are conducting collective research work in the spirit of co-operation and mutual criticism. By doing so, they have attained higher results.

Physics, Mathematics and Kinetics: In the pre-liberation period the sphere of theoretical physics, abstract mathematics and theoretical kinetics was limited in scope. But since liberation our scientists have developed experimental physics, spectrology, applied kinetics, with the result that new scientific achievements have been made in the sphere of electronics, ore analysis, structural kinetics, physical equation, etc. The spectral analysis of ore and steel has been introduced into production. A number of kinetic problems in relation to hydraulic power generation and industrial production have been solved.

In the Joint Nuclear Institute our scientists, in co-operation with foreign colleagues, are making a study of the latest subjects in physics.

Biology and Agronomics: The work of consolidating the theoretical foundation of biology on the basis of Michurin theory is being carried on. Definite success was made in the study of animal and plant life and in the introduction of scientific results into agricultural production. The work of investigating the distribution and conditions of birds and animals has long been conducted. The distribution of 80 families and 20,000 species of medicinal herbs and other plants was investigated. The work of classifying and growing them is successfully being carried on.

In agricultural field the selection of high quality and new variety of rice and wheat seeds, the transplanting of cold-bed or dry-bed rice seedlings; yarovization, close planting and other advanced farming methods have been introduced in conformity with our climatic and other natural conditions. Considerable results have been achieved in raising per hectare utility of land by the systematic cultivation of inter-row crops.

Dr. Kye Eung Sang has succeeded in raising new varieties of silkworms. Recently he raised such species in which the male silkworm can be distinguished from female by small specks on it.

In the veterinary work great success was made in serum treatment of hog pest and in producing effective vaccine injections.

Medicine and Pharmacy: On the basis of the theory of Pavlov, pathology, immunology and clinic have made progress. At the same time the research work of multiplying the results of oriental medicine has been pushed forward. Considerable achievements have been made in the pathological research, diagnosis and treatment of brain and lung distoma, and in laying the foundation for prophylaxis and bacteriology which were neglected in the past.

The work of exploring raw materials for manufacturing medicine has been conducted on a wide scale. Up to the present about 40 kinds of medicinal herbs and other raw materials have already been discovered. Extraction of essence from medicinal herbs and other useful plants and preparation of medicaments are being made on a wide scale. The experimental work of expanding ginseng plots is being carried on.

Technology: Technology has done much to draw up and carry out an accurate plan for reconstruction in the post-liberation period of peaceful construction and in the postwar period of economic reconstruction.

In coal mining, the wall-block hewing method was introduced, with the result that production increased three-fold. Recently the multiple simultaneous retreat hewing and ground-pressure hewing methods have been introduced.

In iron ore mining the separate extraction method has been introduced.

In the metallurgical sphere scientific and technological work is devoted to re-equip the outmoded production facilities with up-to-date technique so as to remove the lack of balance between the production of finished and semi-finished goods, and to raise productivity to the level of the developed countries.

For instance, the improvement of the wall of the blast furnace, and introduction of high-pressure blowing and new cooling method at the Kim Chaik Iron Works resulted in the production of 900 tons of steel a day instead of 500 tons in the period of Japanese imperialist rule.

The Sungjin Steel Works has succeeded in smelting home-produced granulated iron by electric convertors, with the result that the insufficiency of scrap iron has been made good.

The production of sheet silica steel was impossible in the period of Japanese domination, but now, thanks to technical improvement, it can be produced. Special mention should be made of the fact that in April, 1958, a new blast furnace and coke-oven were installed in the Hwanghai Iron Works. Their designing, making and installation were done by our workers and technicians.

Since liberation our machine-building industry has undergone a great change. It was very backward in the days of Japanese domination. But now its technique has made long strides. At present the plants for producing machine-tools, mining machinery, electric appliances, farm implements, textile machinery and tools have been established. Much improvement has been made in moulding. Consequently, the quality of mining machinery and machine tools has been much bettered. A variety of farm implements, motors, transformers and pumps are supplied in large quantities to farm villages. Technical improvement has been made in producing internal combustion engines for ships.

In the field of fuel and power successful research work has been conducted for replacing imported fuel with Korean fuel, economizing fuel and raising its combustibility. In the near future home-produced anthracite is expected to be used for locomotives, rotary kilns in cement mills, and heating furnaces in metallurgical plants. Automobile gas will be replaced by home-produced fuel.

The problem pertaining to the prevention of loss in the distribution of electricity is being tackled. Research work is being made on the repair of rectifiers and safety operation of large-size electric generators, which were to be tackled when Heungnam Fertilizer Factory was reconstructed after the truce.

In order to increase the traction power and freight haulage in the sphere of transport, technology contributed to improving the structure of locomotives; to building reinforced concrete bridges; to restoring the damaged bridges.

Scientific research on the laying of concrete sleepers has nearly been finished.

Since liberation the network of through-wire-radio-relay and wireless has been extended considerably. A broadcasting station with the capacity of 150 kilowatts has been newly built. Scientific and technical workers have exerted themselves to popularize through-wire-radio-relav.

In the sphere of construction scientific workers contributed greatly to building a number of underground factories, structures of hydro-power station and irrigation projects and public establishments, and to improving the quality of industrial products. In the field of building an assembly-line method has been introduced in conformity with our practical conditions so as to meet fully the requirements of the developing national economy.

In the chemical industry great success has been made since liberation in producing carbide and its by-products — alcohol, vinyl of chloride and vinyl of nitrate. Dr. Li Seung Ki has succeeded in experimental production of artificial silk from carbide. During the First Five-Year Plan large quantities of nylon will be turned out.

Considerable results have been gained in raising productivity of ammonium sulphate and nitric lime.

In the field of light industry scientific workers have done much to improve the quality of various textiles and to make pulp from grass.

Since liberation social science has made progress in the course of great social and economic reforms. True to Marxism-Leninism, it played its part in accelerating the development of our society and raising the ideological level of the people.

In the fields of economics and law many works have been published. They theorized the superiority of our social and economic system; expatiated on the correctness of the economic policy pursued by the Party; gave answer to the problems arising in the course of carrying out the policy. In addition, an active study was made of the distinct nature of the system of our state and law; of characteristic features of our economy in the transition period; of operation of economic laws; of socialist transformation of agriculture and private industry and commerce; of characteristics of the social and economic formation in the preliberation period.

In the field of historical research stress was laid on the history of the medieval as well as modern times, which had been neglected or distorted, especially on Anti-Japanese Righteous Army Struggle, anti-Japanese armed struggle; on democratic construction in the post-liberation period; on the history of Party's struggle.

Text and reference books on Korean history were compiled, The General History of Korea was published. Group research and discussions were made with good results on the social and economic structure of Three Kingdoms and on the national formation in Korea.

The book "A Short History of Korean Fine Arts" and "The History of Military System in Li Dynasty" were published. At present the reprinting and translation of ancient literature is under way.

In the domain of philosophy, Marxist-Leninist classics were translated. Great results were gained in popularizing the basic ideas of Marxism-Leninism among the people. A study of the super- and sub-structure of our society and the history of Korean philosophy is being made.

In the sphere of archaeology and ethnography, precious materials were obtained in the excavation of eight ancient sites and twenty old tombs after 1949. Various customs including masked play are under study.

In the field of philology, since liberation thorough study has been made of Korean national language and literature on the basis of their revolutionary tradition. The work of standardizing the Korean language has been briskly carried out.

A Korean Grammar. Korean Spelling Book and Pocket Korean Dictionary were put out.

In literature, strenuous efforts have been made to carry forward the tradition of literature based on realism; to expose and criticize the anti-Party and anti-revolutionary literature advocated by Lim Hwa, the U.S. spy, and Li Tai Joon and the decadent literature prevalent in South Korea. Definite results were gained in making an analysis of our classical works on the basis of Marxist-Leninist theory on literature and art.

In the sphere of education and psychology, results have been achieved in establishing a theoretical foundation for our national education, and in solving practical questions arising from the setting up of the system of compulsory primary schooling and technological education in particular. Study is being made of the history of Korean education.

Along with the scientific development since liberation, scientific publication has scored good results. Each scientific branch puts out its own academic publications. Organs of ministries including the journal "Economic Construction" help to throw theoretical light on the practical problems.

Many scientific works such as Illustration of Korean Medicinal Herbs, Illustration of Korean Mammals, Chronological List of Korean History, Explanation on Korean Hyanka (Native Poems), On the Distribution of Productive Forces in Relation to Industrial Development in Our Country and Agricultural Co-operative Movement in Our Country, and translations of Marxist-Leninist classics have come off the press. The colour illustration of Korean birds, the report on the excavation of ancient relics, etc. are expected to be published soon.

Since liberation our science has made long strides. This is attributable to the correct policy of the Party and the government on the development of science and technology. As all our scientists and technicians were enlisted in implementing the policy, great results were achieved. Today the entire scientists are doing their best to carry out the long-range tasks set forth by the Third Congress of the Party: "Attain the world level of advanced science in the not distant future."

For the implementation of the tasks, the Korean scientific groups should work out the correct stage-by-stage plan on the accurate calculation of their actual capability. In strict conformity with the scientific policy of the Party and the government and practical needs they are drawing up a 10-year plan.

The successful implementation of the plan will raise sharply the level of our science and help to catch up with the world advanced science.

The major scientific institutions in the D.P.R.K. on January 1, 1958 are as follows:

The D.P.R.K. Academy of Sciences: established on December 1, 1952. It has eight affiliated institutions: Physics and Mathematics, Chemistry, Engineering, Medicine, Economics and Law, History, Philology and Literature, and Archaeology and Ethnography. A biological research room is under the direct control of the Academy.

To the Academy of Sciences are attached the committees for compilation of technical terms, for compilation of classics, for language reform, etc.

Under the direct control of ministries come the institutions of the Central Electricity, Agricultural Science, Central Fuel, Central Mining, Central Chemistry, Central Construction and Building-Materials, Central Medicine Analysis, Central Sanitation, Central Bacteriology, State Veterinary; Central Institution under the Ministry of Light Industry, East Sea Fishery, West Sea Fishery, Freshwater Fishing Institution under the Ministry of Fishing Industry, Central Institution under the Ministry of Transport, Institution of communications, etc. Under the direct control of the Cabinet there are the Committee for Conferment of Degree and Committee for Authorization of Technical Qualifications.

KOREAN LANGUAGE

Korean language, the national language of the homogeneous Korean people, maintained its excellent tradition with invulnerability in the face of harsh trials under the 36-year rule of the Japanese imperialists who pursued the barbarous policy of obliterating the Korean language. Since we won freedom and independence and are building socialism in the northern half of the Republic, our proud mother tongue has been making an enormous contribution to the development of the new society in political, economic, and cultural fields.

Korean language has made steady progress through a long history. It is regarded as one of the most developed languages in the world with an excellent phonetic system, grammatical structure and its rich and varied vocabulary.

At present, the Korean language has 5 dialects—northeastern, northwestern, central, southeastern and southwestern. The dialect of the Cheju island in the South Sea is different from that of the southwest and may be regarded as an independent dialect.

While differences can be found in phonetics, lexicology and morphology between these dialects, the basic vocabulary and grammatical structure are substantially the same.

The language used in the central district constitutes the standard national language in Korea.

The phonetic structure of the Korean language is a highly systematic one. It has 10 monophthongs such as "a(ㅏ), ŏ(ㅓ), o(ㅗ), u(ㅜ), ŭ(ㅡ), i(ㅣ), æ(ㅐ), e(ㅔ), ö(ㅚ), ü(ㅟ), and one diphthong "ŭi(ㅢ)". Besides, there are vowels combined with semi-vowel j such as "ja(ㅑ), jŏ(ㅕ), jo(ㅛ), ju(ㅠ), jæ(ㅒ), je(ㅖ)" and vowels combined with semi-vowel w such as "wa(ㅘ), wŏ(ㅝ), wæ(ㅙ), we(ㅞ)".

Korean language has 21 consonants. "k(ㄱ), n(ㄴ), t(ㄷ), r(ㄹ), m(ㅁ), p(ㅂ), s(ㅅ), ng(ㆁ), ts(ㅈ), tsh(ㅊ), kh(ㅋ), th(ㅌ), ph(ㅍ), h(ㅎ), 'k(ㄲ), 't(ㄸ), 'p(ㅃ), 's(ㅆ), 'ts(ㅉ)". Out of them "tsh(ㅊ), kh(ㅋ), th(ㅌ), ph(ㅍ)" are spirants, with the stem of "ts(ㅈ), k(ㄱ), t(ㄷ), p(ㅂ)" combined with h(ㅎ)." 'k(ㄲ), 't(ㄸ), 'p(ㅃ), 's(ㅆ), 'ts(ㅉ)" combined with "k(ㄱ), t(ㄷ), p(ㅂ), s(ㅅ), ts(ㅈ)" are explosives. Compared with fricatives and explosives, "k(ㄱ), t(ㄷ), p(ㅂ), ts(ㅈ)" and "s(ㅅ)" are regular consonants.

The consonant system of the Korean language is characterized by the combination of spirants, explosives and regular consonants. The syllable composition of the Korean language is very precise, and the syllable has its distinct unit. Korean language has three kinds of syllables—vowel, consonant-vowel and consonant-vowel-consonant. It falls under the agglutinate languages from the grammatical viewpoint.

Therefore, parts expressive of various grammatical meanings and categories are distinguishable from parts indicative of substantial meanings. Their correlation is not so close. In this respect it is different from the inflective language such as English and Russian.

The words which indicate various kinds of grammatical meanings are called "connective words" in the Korean language.

The "connective words" constitute a basic feature of the grammatical structure of the Korean language.

Though there are some different views among linguists as regards the classification of parts of speech, Korean words generally fall into nine parts of speech—noun, numeral, pronoun, adjective, verb, article-adjective, connective words, adverb and interjection.

Adjective and adverb, particularly imitative-mimetic words and derivatives are rich in the Korean language and figures of speech and shades of meanings can be expressed easily by varied phonetic interchanges. Different expressions can be given to the same thing.

The expression of honorific words attract special attention in the grammatical structure of the Korean language. The same indicative mood has various expressions according to the different social status of speaker and listener. The development of the category expressing social relations between speaker and listener and honorific words provides possibilities for making the life of the Korean people in language very mild and realistic.

Korean language has an age-old history. But in 1443 Korean letters were created with the phonetic system and grammatical structure.

The Korean alphabet *Hoonmin Jungeum* in a Korean phrase which means "correct phones to educate the people," was instituted by linguists headed by King Sejong. Today, it is called *Hangeul.*

The Korean alphabet falls under the category of alphabetical letters similar to those of the English and Russian languages. Characteristic of the Korean alphabet is the syllabic spelling composed of a consonant and a vowel syllable after the fashion of the Chinese characters.

The Korean alphabet had the following 28 letters at the time when it was instituted:

ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㄷ, ㅌ, ㄴ, ㅂ, ㅍ, ㅁ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅅ, ㆆ, ㅎ, ㅇ, ㄹ, ㅿ, ㆍ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅗ, ㅏ, ㅜ, ㅓ, ㅛ, ㅑ, ㅠ, ㅕ.

As time went by, the letters ㆁ, ㆆ, ㅿ, and ㆍ dropped out of use with the change of phones. Today the alphabet of Korean language consists of the following 40 letters, the additional letters being explosives "ㄲ, ㄸ, ㅃ, ㅆ, ㅉ", monophthongs "ㅐ, ㅔ, ㅚ, ㅟ", diphthongs "ㅢ", semi-vowels "ㅒ, ㅖ, ㅘ, ㅝ, ㅙ" which bring the system of Korean alphabet closer to the phonetic system.

ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅇ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅎ, ㄲ, ㄸ, ㅃ, ㅆ, ㅉ, ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅒ, ㅔ, ㅖ, ㅚ, ㅟ, ㅢ, ㅘ, ㅝ, ㅙ, ㅞ.

The peculiarities of Korean alphabet can be found in the principles of forming an alphabet. The forms of Korean alphabet symbolize pronouncing organs and the shapes of the organs when words are pronounced. This shows that the development of the Korean linguistics was on a high level. The Korean people used their own letters even before the *Hoonmin Jungeum.* In ancient records we find mention of letters of "Samwannaemoon," "Shinjibisamoon," "Kokuryo" and "Pakche", but we cannot scientifically confirm the existence of such letters.

Before the institution of the *Hoonmin Jungeum*, the Korean people made use of the Chinese characters and writings. But, it was very difficult for them to depend upon the Chinese writings and characters which are alien to their own phonetic system and grammatical structure of the spoken language.

The Korean people used the method of expressing their language by making proper use of sounds and meanings of the Chinese characters. This was called "Ridoo" which started from the period of Silla. This method was used even in literary works in those days. The typical example is the *Hyangka* (Native Poems) of Silla.

However, with the Chinese ideograph and the "Ridoo" it was difficult to write complicated sentences and to attain a higher level of culture. Hence the *Hoonmin Jungeum* was instituted. It played an enormous part in the development of our national culture. However, the exclusive use of the Chinese characters and writings by the time-serving feudal rulers of the Li Dynasty impeded the development of the Korean language. The *Hoonmin Jungeum* was burried in obscurity for about four centuries.

With the rise of the progressive ideas and national awakening between the end of the 19th century and the early part of the 20th century, the Korean alphabet regained its popularity. And the national language movement, as a wing of the patriotic cultural enlightenment movement, began forging ahead.

Joo Si Kyung, a prominent pioneer in Korean philology, stood in the van of the national language movement. He devoted his

whole life to the study of Korean language and rendered immortal merits. He directed special attention to instituting the spelling most suitable for the grammatical structure of Korean language. He established the foundation of morphology in the Korean spelling and suggested that the Korean alphabet should be written horizontally so as to perform more satisfactorily their phonetic functions and to become a more efficient instrument for the service of the people.

Under the 36 years of Japanese rule from 1910 to August 15, 1945, the Korean language was put to a severe trial. The Japanese imperialists pursued the policy of stamping out the Korean language.

However, patriotic Korean linguists waged a stubborn struggle to preserve the proud Korean language. Special mention should be made of the Korean Philological Society, which registered great success in the study of Korean grammar, compilation of a Korean dictionary, standardization of spelling and language.

Since Korea was liberated by the great Soviet Army from Japanese colonial yoke in 1945, Korean language and letters have been provided for the first time in history an opportunity for a great leap forward.

In the northern part of the Republic where the people's democratic system was founded thanks to the correct policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the government headed by Comrade Kim Il Sung, the colonial enslavement educational system was liquidated; a new people's democratic educational system established; education in the mother tongue was conducted; newspapers, magazines and all other publications published in Korean script.

And large numbers of illiterates were eliminated in a very short space of time. Furthermore, the Chinese characters have become out of everyday use. At present almost all publications are using the method of writing horizontally. A deeper research is being made in linguistics.

Korean language has made a rapid advance with the new historical development of Korea. Thus, Korean language is being enriched with new words and expressions in keeping step with the fast progress in the fields of politics, economy, culture, science and technique. At the same time old words and expressions reflecting the old society have disappeared from vocabulary. Korean linguists who have a brilliant tradition of Joo Si Kyung, upholding the popular scientific policy of the Party, have scored great successes in the work of standardizing Korean language.

Valuable results have been attained in the study of spelling, standard grammar, and compilation of a Korean dictionary by the collective work of linguists.

Under the direct guidance of the Workers' Party of Korea the purification work of Korean language is being carried on on a nation-wide scale.

In view of the fact that the development of Korean language was obstructed by long-standing blind worship of Chinese characters and writings by the feudal ryangban (nobles) and by the oppression of Korean language by the Japanese imperialists in half a century, the language purification is a task of great significance set not only before linguists but also before the general public.

Today, the entire Korean people as well as our linguists are working hard to solve many theoretical and practical problems in order to bring their language and alphabet to a still higher level.

PRESS AND RADIO SERVICE

THE HISTORY OF KOREAN PRESS

The history of Korean press is long like that of other phases of culture. In the period of Three Kingdoms Korean culture made progress in the course of promoting cultural exchange with China and India. Doubtlessly, there were many documents and other materials, buried in obscurity by the successive wars.

From "Travel Notes on India" by the famous priest Hyecho, (in the first part of the 8th c.) which was discovered in the Tunhuang cave in China, we can derive some idea of the printing condition at that time.

The world-famous Korean printing and its technique made marked development in the Koryu Dynasty (918-1392). Koryu attained a high level of culture. In the Koryu period many books

printed in foreign countries were imported. And along with the books printed at home, foreign editions were reprinted and widely circulated. This also stimulated the development of printing.

The best known is the Great Buddhist Scripture. This was printed several times. The making of wooden blocks started in 1236, and took 16 years for their completion. They are preserved in the Haiinsa Temple. There are 86,686 blocks which put out 6,780 volumes altogether.

The Great Buddhist Scripture based on the Imperial Kaipo Edition of China (then Sung Dynasty) was revised and enlarged by the Koryu people. Compared with the same kind of scripture in foreign countries, it has a distinct feature in content as well as in printing.

The type-setting and paper making of Koryu was especially good. In China and Japan Koryu books were called "model books".

In the Koryu period the copper type was invented. The metal type was first used for printing 50 volumes of Sangjung Yemoon (Koryu Code) in 1221-1234. This was the first printing by movable type in the world, about two centuries earlier than Johann Gutenberg's.

Koryu's printing including casting of types and paper making made further development in the succeeding Li Dynasty, especially in the reign of King Sejong (1419-1450) when the feudal system was consolidated and literature and art effloresced.

The government established a type foundry in 1403 to make large numbers of types. At that time many books were printed in the capital as well as in local districts.

In this period Korean original letters were instituted. Publication of large volumes in Korean letters was a great leap forward in the history of the Korean press.

The Korean people, who distinguished themselves in inventing the world-known movable copper type, also produced lead type in 1436. In the use of lead type, Korea advanced far ahead of other countries. The improvement of types was continuously made until the latter part of the 19th century.

They took the model of letters for types from famous Korean and Chinese calligraphers. For manufacturing the types they used copper, iron, lead, alloy-metal and wood. In some localities they used ceramic or gourd types.

Along with the improvement of types, the printing technique made remarkable progress in the period of Li Dynasty.

In the reign of King Sejong the well-known printing master Li Chun invented a method of type setting which compares well with the method used in recent times.

In the period of the Li Dynasty, with the increasing demand for books, the publishing work made rapid progress. Besides the central government, local governments, temples, suwon (Institute of Learning) and individual persons undertook to put out their own books.

Noteworthy is it that the unknown hard working people and artisans whose social status was low displayed creativeness in developing the publishing work.

In olden times numberless Korean books suffered war damage or were plundered by alien aggressors including the Japanese imperialists.

Korean publication continued its progress. From 1905 the patriotic cultural enlightenment movement was carried on. Consequently, many copies of newspapers and magazines were put out. Publications in Korean letter were popular among the people. The newspaper "Hwangsung Shinmoon" (1898), the academic journal "Suwoo" (1906), and "Kiho" (1906) were well known. The Japanese authorities took measures for banning these modern publications as soon as the Japanese imperialists occupied Korea.

Korea's splendid tradition of publication met with reverses due to the repressive measures taken by the Japanese occupiers.

Nevertheless, the Korean people continued their struggle for pushing forward the publishing work with a view to enhancing their national honour and maintaining their proud tradition.

However, when the anti-Japanese struggle reached its height, the Japanese imperialists prohibited the publication of all Korean newspapers and magazines and pursued the savage policy of obscurantism.

"The Outline of Socialism" and "The Task of the Korean Communists" put out by the staunch Communists headed by Kim Il Sung were true Marxist-Leninist publications.

The monthly "March First" and "Mountain Peasants," the organs of the Fatherland Restoration Association, and other secret publications put out by the red trade unions and the red peasants' unions played a great role in inspiring the Korean people to the liberation struggle.

Since the people's power was established, the complete freedom of speech has been ensured and publication has witnessed a phenomenal development.

The circulation of publications increased and their quality improved. Our publication as an ideological weapon of the Workers' Party of Korea bases itself on Marxism-Leninism. It has faithfully served the purpose of enhancing socialist consciousness of the working people, eradicating the ideological evils left by Japanese imperialism and reactionary bourgeois ideas and promoting socialist patriotism and proletarian internationalism among the people.

Soon after liberation the colonial press organs were liquidated and new democratic press organs were born. In 1946 there was one news agency, 27 newspapers, 29 magazines and hundreds of thousands of books were published in the mother tongue in a free atmosphere.

In the pre-war period of peaceful construction, newspapers, magazines and books played their part in consolidating the people's power, in safeguarding and multiplying the results of democratic reforms, and in accelerating the peaceful unification of the country.

During the war, our publications made a great contribution to inspiring the entire people to a stubborn struggle for winning victory in the war. A great part of printing facilities were destroyed by the enemy. But our publication coped with the difficult situation under the deep care shown by the Party and the government, and performed satisfactorily its mission.

In the postwar period our publication has enhanced its educational role in elevating the socialist consciousness of the people who are waging a powerful struggle for reconstructing and developing the war-ravaged national economy, in making use of our own precious innovations and experiences, and at the same time in introducing and popularizing developed science, technology and culture of the Soviet Union and other fraternal countries, and in carrying forward our cultural heritages.

In the postwar period, printing made a considerable progress. Foreign languages publication attained good results.

As for the growth of publication since liberation, the circulation of newspapers in 1957 increased about 2.5 times that of 1946; magazines—about 5.7 times; books—about 12.9 times. In the Five-Year Plan period the circulation of newspapers must be expanded 1.6 times, magazines 1.8 times and books twice.

Such rapid growth of publication reflects the increasing cultural demands of the people covering a wide range of theory, current topics, literature, science, technology, classics, etc.

Among the leading papers in the capital and provinces are the Rodong Shinmoon (organ of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea), the Minju Chosun (organ of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly and the Cabinet), the Jokook Junsun (organ of the United Democratic Fatherland Front), the Chosun Minbo (organ of the C.C. of the North Korean Democratic Party), the Kaibyuk Shinmoon (organ of the C.C. of the Chundogyo Chungwoo Party), the Rodongja (Workers) Shinmoon, the Nongmin (Peasants) Shinmoon, the Minju Chungnyun (Democratic Youth), the Chosun Inmingoon (Korean People's Army), the Moonhak Shinmoon (Literary Gazette), the Choso Chinsun (Korean-Soviet Friendship), and Junwoo (Comrades-in-Arms) in Chinese language. In addition, factory papers, university and college papers and other office organ papers are published.

Among the leading magazines are the theoretical journal Keunroja (working people), academic, technical and scientific journals such as "Economic Construction", "Machine-building Industry", "Korean Medicine", "Korean Language", and "Historical Science", magazines such as "Korean Literature", "Korean Art", "Korean Cinema", "Fine Arts", and "Korean-Soviet Culture", popular magazines such as "Workers", "Youth Life", "Korean Women", "People's Korea", and "Arrow", juvenile journals such as "New Generation" and "Children's Literature", foreign languages magazines such as "New Korea" and pictorial "Korea" in Russian, Chinese, English and Japanese.

In our Republic large volumes of Marxist-Leninist classics have been published. Among them are the Selected Works of Marx and Engels, Completed Works of Lenin, the Capital, Dialectics of Nature, State and Revolution, etc.

Kim Il Sung's Selected Works and other Marxist-Leninist works dealing with Korean revolution and the works of the leaders of the foreign Communist and Workers' Parties and their Party documents are put out. At the end of 1957 their total circulation amounted to 5,500,000 and their specification 300.

Scientific publication is making headway with the growing requirements for scientific and technological books. As compared with 1954, the books on natural science increased 356 per cent in 1956 and books on technology, 399 per cent.

Publications of literature increased markedly. Among them are Han Sul Ya's "Mt. Sulbong", Li Ki Yung's "The Tuman River", Song Yung's "Mt. Baikdoo Is in Sight from All Directions", "Selected Contemporary Literature", the classical works such as "Selected Classical Literature", "The Tale of Choonhyang", "The Tale of Shim Chung", "Pak Yun Am's Selected Works," and translations of famous foreign classical and contemporary writers such as Shakespeare, Tolstoi, Gorky, Sholokhov, Tikhonov, and Aragon. Noteworthy is the translation publication of Soviet literature. The circulation of foreign languages publications such as the "Documents of the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea," "For the Peaceful Unification of the Country", "The Tale of Shim Chung", pictorial album "Cultural Relics of Korea" each in Russian, Chinese, English and Japanese is increasing year after year. Books on fine arts and music, juvenile literature, popular pictorials and popular editions were published in large volumes.

In our Republic publishers under the guidance of the Party and the government are carrying forward their proud tradition, assimilating the new and progressive, and enriching the content and form of publications.

Our publications serve to mobilize the people for the peaceful unification of the country and building of socialism in the northern part of the Republic. In view of the fact that the democratic freedom of speech and the press is arbitrarily suppressed by the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique in South Korea, our publishers as the true spokesmen of the entire Korean people are blazing the path to be followed by the Korean people, and performing their militant functions.

They are also inspiring the people to step up the struggle for peaceful unification.

RADIO SERVICE

When Korea was liberated on August 15, 1945, our radio service was of local character, and its facilities were quite backward. The broadcasting capacity was poor.

But in a short time our broadcasting system was equipped with medium and short wave broadcasting facilities thanks to the timely measures taken by the Party and the government. Our young radio service achieved no small results and gained much experience in the work of inspiring the people to the peaceful construction for consolidating our democratic base.

Our radio service was put to a serious test by the war provoked by the U.S. imperialists. But it continued its work in spite of all difficulties created by the war. Especially the war-time wireless service—we called it "news without papers"—demonstrated to the fullest extent its might.

Our wireless service fulfilled its task of conveying the voice of the Party and the government. It linked the front closely with the rear and thereby played a great role in inspiring the entire people to fight under the slogan "All for Victory in the War".

In the postwar period our wireless service made long strides, especially in its technical equipment. In April 1955, a new modern medium-wave broadcasting station, known throughout the East, was established with the material and technical assistance of the Soviet Union. This marked an epoch-making stage in the development of our wireless service, for it has covered a far wider scope.

The rapid expansion of radio service facilities has made it possible to improve our broadcasting toward South Korea which is of great significance in view of the territorial division into North and South Korea, and our foreign broadcasts.

Our wireless service has joined the international wireless organization and concluded agreements with the fraternal countries. Thus we have scored considerable results in exchanging experiences, technique and materials.

Recording was limited during the war but today it is being made full use of in all radio programs. And the work of exchanging tape recordings with foreign countries is briskly carried on.

In the postwar period our radio programs showed considerable progress in form and content. They include news, lectures, comments, on-the-spot-reports, answers to listeners' questions, mike-side accounts of drama and sports, introduction of cinemas and dramas, broadcasting of dramas and concerts and reading of novels in serials in compliance with listeners' requests, recitations, wit and humour, etc. It is noteworthy that the number of amateur art circle members who give radio performances is increasing.

The improvement in form and content of radio service has brought about good results in fulfilling its main task of explaining correctly and quickly the policy and line of the Party and the government, thereby stirring up the people to the successful implementation of the revolutionary tasks raised at each stage of our revolutionary development.

The great effectiveness of our radio service is seen in stimulating our compatriots in South Korea and Japan to rise up in the struggle for the peaceful unification, independence and democratic freedom of the country; in making wide publicity of the brilliant results scored in socialist construction in the North; and in condemning the enemies of peace and in promoting friendship and co-operation among the nations.

For the improvement of radio program, correct guidance of the Party as well as suggestions and criticism of listeners is of great significance.

In provinces, local radio-broadcasting committees are doing their work in close co-operation of the Korean Central Broadcasting Committee. They broadcast their own program three times a day — morning, noon and evening. The remaining hours are used for relaying the programs of the Central Broadcasting Station.

Radios with amplifiers are installed in factories and enterprises and in town and county seats.

Our wireless service broadcasts in Russian, Chinese, English and Japanese languages for the great cause of peace.

THE POLICY OF THE WORKERS' PARTY OF KOREA ON KOREAN LITERATURE AND ART

Since the August 15 Liberation, Korean literature and art have made rapid progress. With its lofty idea and artistic form, Korean literature has not only taken root among the broad masses of the people, but also has contributed to the treasure-house of world culture.

It is impossible to think of the development of the Korean literature apart from the literary and art policy of the Workers' Party of Korea, as its development sprang from the Party's correct policy and guidance. The correctness of the Party's literature and art policy lies in its strict adherence to the principles of Marxism-Leninism on aesthetics and in the creative application of these principles to the reality of Korea. Our Party, since liberation, has deemed that literary works constitute a powerful part of the revolution on the principle that they are not works of individuals but of the Party and the State. Therefore, the Workers' Party of Korea at every stage in the nation's revolutionary development has encouraged our writers with historically significant decisions and concrete measures. The principal aim was to struggle for socialist realism in literature with the noble ideology and artistic content which represent the interests of the country and people and reject the non-ideological and non-political literature and art. The division of the country created by the U.S. occupation of South Korea after liberation has presented numerous difficulties and complexities in the nation's political, economic and cultural fields. Especially, our literature and art that play a very important role on the ideological front have to cope with the bourgeois ideology spread in South Korea by the U.S. imperialists. Consequently, the Workers' Party of Korea has set the task of establishing in the northern part of the country a powerful democratic base—a material foundation for the unification of the country—and has set down the principle that literature and art must become a strong force in realizing the line and the tasks the Party has enunciated. The 29th Council of the Presidium of the Central Committee of the Party held in March 1947 adopted the decision on "Building of Democratic National Culture in North Korea," and the 43rd Council of the Presidium held in September 1947 indicated clearly the fundamental line and character of our literature and art. Under the leadership of the Party the North Korean Federation of Writers and Artists rallied the broad sections of literary and art workers.

In 1951, during the Fatherland Liberation War the North Korean Federation of Writers and Artists was reorganized into the All-Korea Federation of Writers and Artists embracing

other art organizations. However, in 1953, as literary and art groups grew, the Federation was divided into three new unions: Writers' Union, Artists' Union and Composers' Union. These organizations, under the guidance of the Korean Workers' Party, have played a glorious role in guaranteeing the creative activities of the nation's writers and artists.

Some of the important policies the Korean Workers' Party outlined for the development of Korean literature and art first of all are as follows:

First, the Party consistently held that literature and art must live up to the principles of Leninist Party, and educate the masses in the ideology of the working class.

The Party has always appealed that the nation's writers and artists should materialize the Party's great objective and cause, and carry out the policies and tasks set by the Party. Accordingly, the Party led our literature and art to educate the entire people in patriotism and proletarian internationalism, remould them into new socialist persons and, at the same time, to remove the remnants of capitalist ideas, to oppose the national traitors and class enemies, for the successful implementation of the Party's urgent task—the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution throughout the country—and for the building of a communist society.

Such Party line was shown more concretely at each stage of the nation's revolutionary development. The Party has always urged the writers and artists to be the executors of the Party's policies.

During the period of peaceful construction, the Party, appealing to the people for the effective fulfilment of the democratic reforms and the construction of a strong democratic base, indicated clearly the task facing literature and arts.

In May 1946, in his speech "Literature and Arts Must Serve the People," Kim Il Sung stressed that writers and artists should become courageous fighters for the establishment of a democratic country. And the 43rd Council of the Presidium of the C.C. of the Workers' Party, appealing to the nation's writers and artists to push ahead with creative work for the strengthening of the democratic base in North Korea—the source of democracy in the whole of Korea—adopted a decision which read in part:

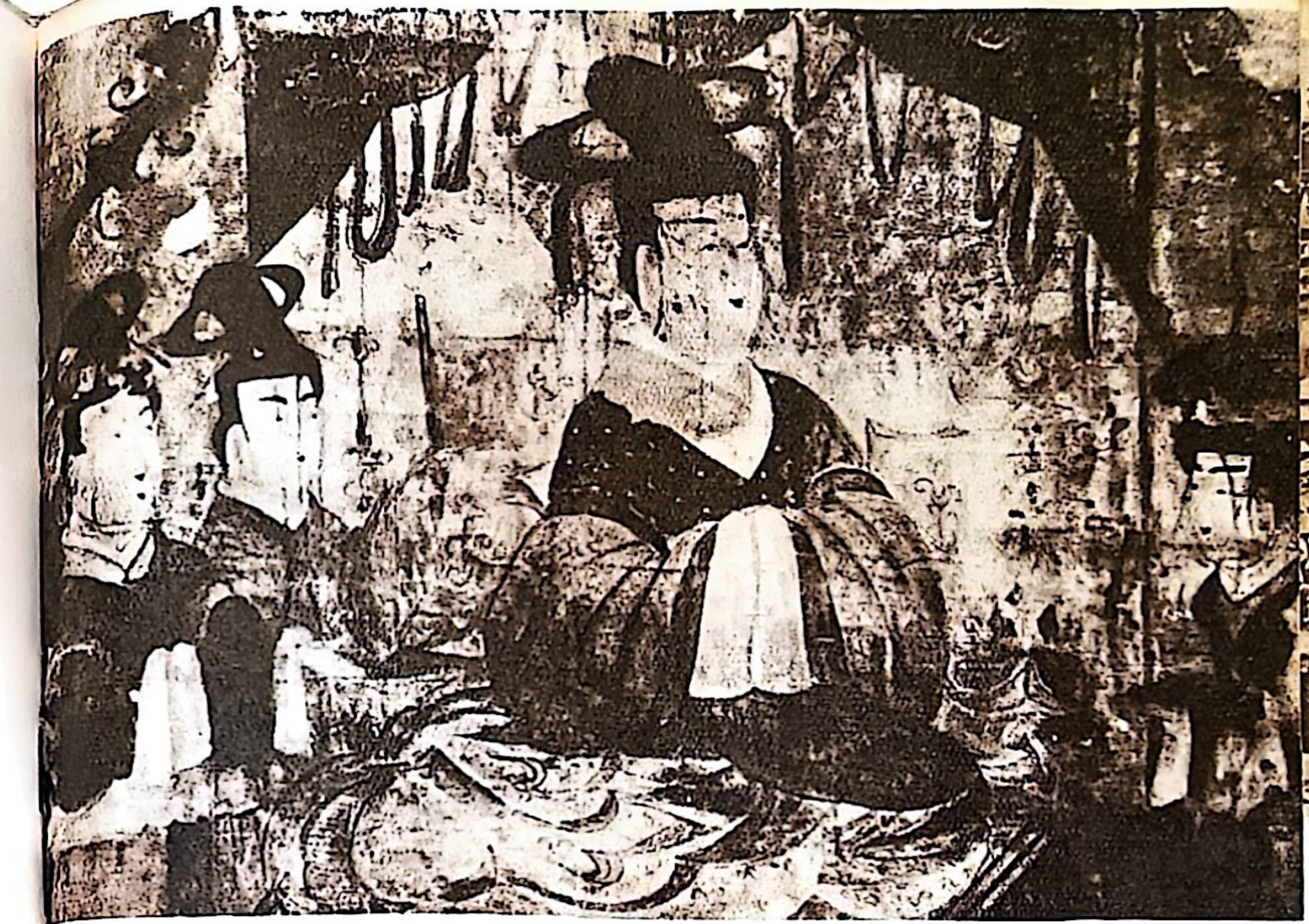
"The present stage in the development of our fatherland demands such creative works based on socialist realism as abhoring the miserable past, cultivating patriotism of the people for the great task of building the country and of carrying out democratic reforms, exposing the intrigues of the enemies betraying the country and the people and rousing the people's hatred against the enemies, giving a true portrait of the heroes and heroines who are overcoming difficulties and marching forward to build our nation and carry out the great democratic reforms, and depicting the future of the fatherland that we are to build".

Indeed the above was the true meaning of our Party principles and of the creative method of socialist realism, upon which Korean literature and arts in the post-liberation period must rely, and it was the Party's appeal to Korean writers and artists to march onward holding the Party's banner high. And Korean writers and artists resolved to develop their creative activities along the road shown by the Party. Then, came the war provoked by the U.S. imperialists. Though it was only a short period of five years from liberation to the outbreak of the war, Korean writers and artists who grew to a trained force faithful to the idea and will of the Party rose as one with the entire people to fight in the just war.

The Party's call "All for Victory in the War!" became the call of the entire writers and artists. Comrade Kim Il Sung issued a programmatic statement, "To All Writers and Artists", setting forth a militant role that literature and art must play in the war with problems involved in turning out creative works.

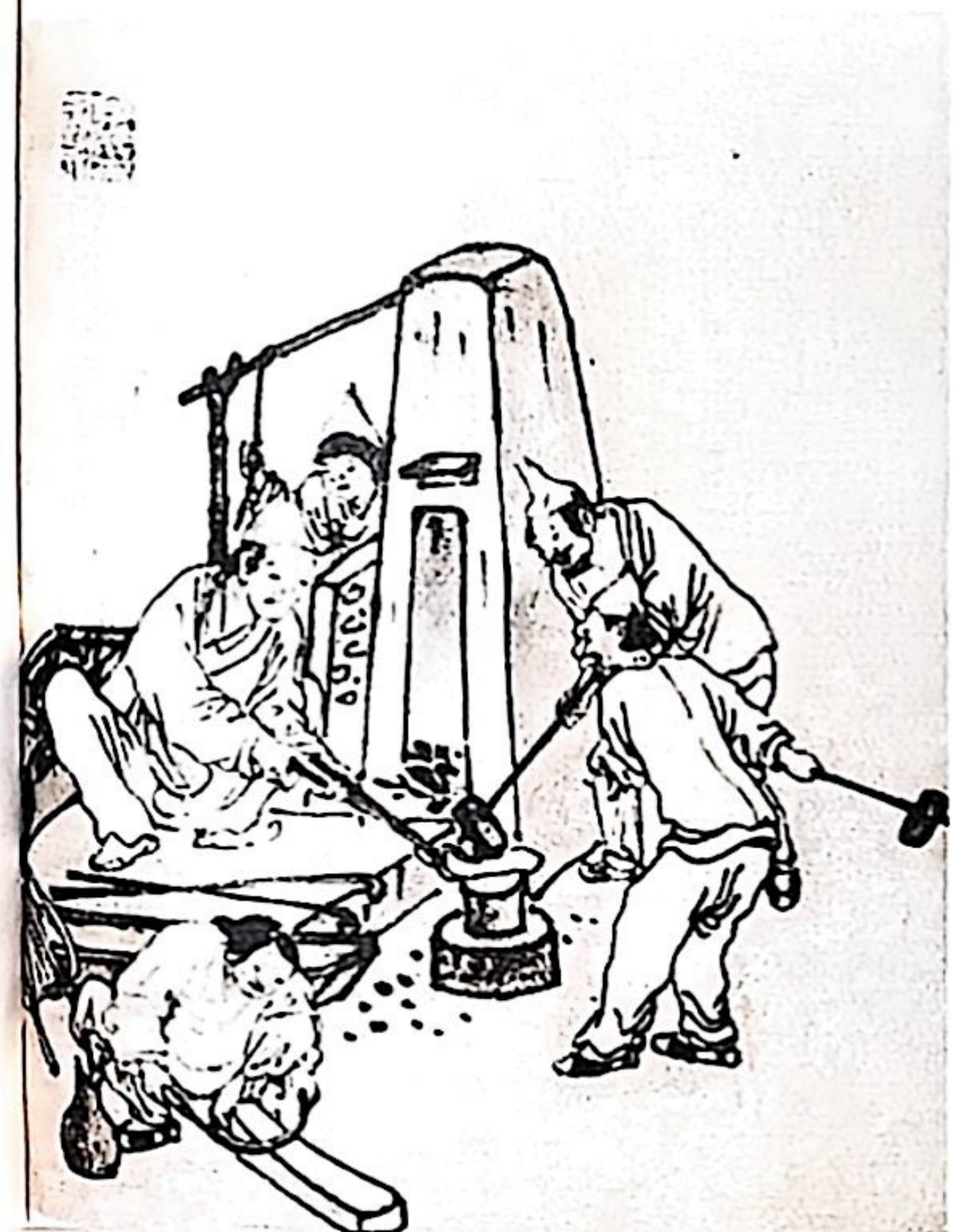
Comrade Kim Il Sung, explaining once more the Party's policy on literature and arts, stated that our literature and arts must show our people's noble patriotism, past and present, not by abstract slogans but through concrete and true feelings, episodes, characters and ideas, and that our national pride and confidence must be expressed not in the vein of anti-foreign superiority but in noble internationalism. And the bravery and indomitable spirit of our People's Army must be represented not as individual heroism of legendary nature, separated from the masses, but as collective heroism, and literary and art works must inspire and encourage the people and the soldiers with conviction of victory. Then he touched upon the point of overcoming the naturalist tendency in describing the enemy atrocities. Comrade Kim Il Sung thus concluded:

"You are the creators of literature and arts — the great arms

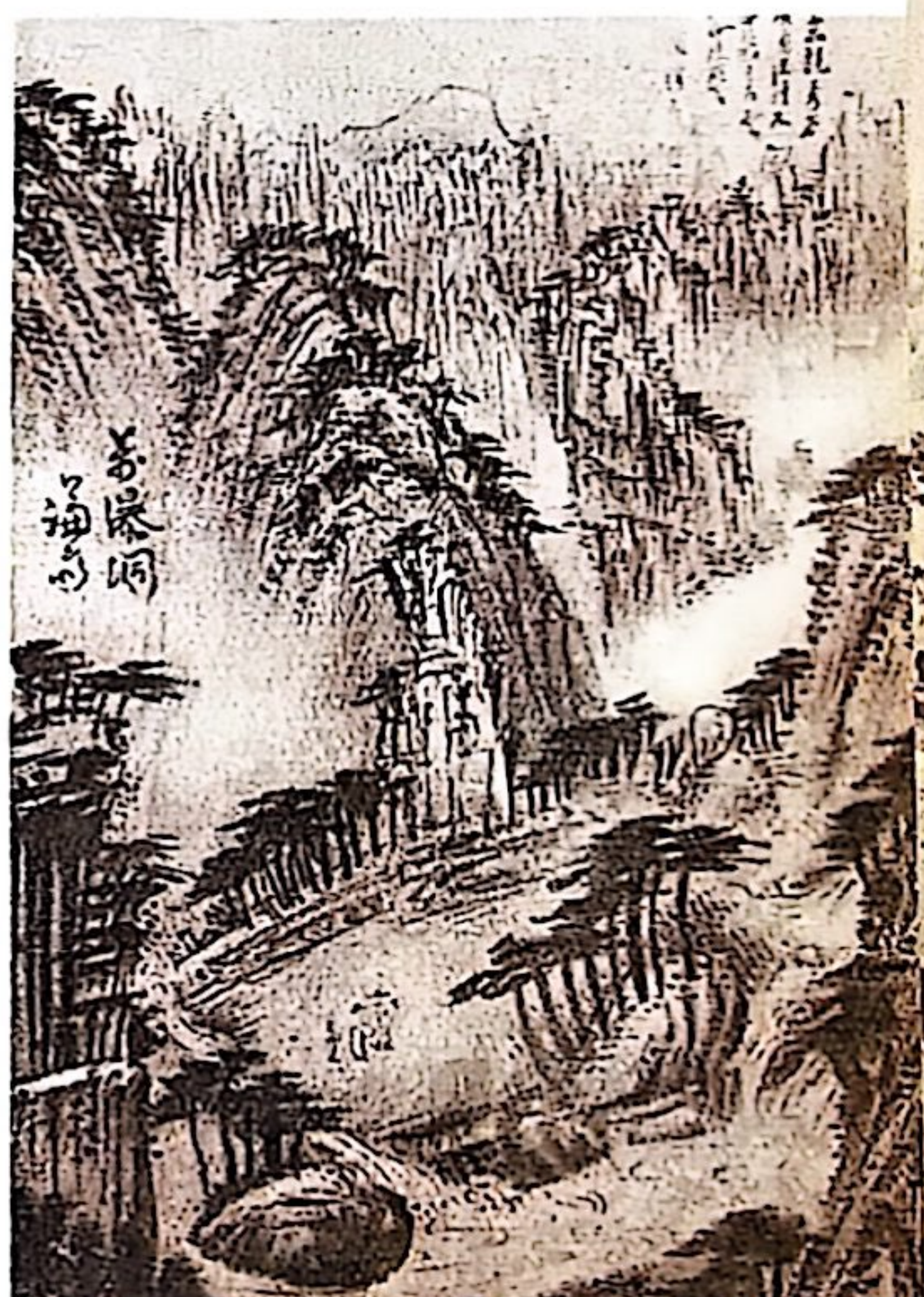


Murals in the west chamber of Anak Tomb No. 3

Blacksmith
by *Kim Hong Do* or pseudonym
Dan won



Manpok Valley
by *Jangsun* or pseudonym
Kyumje



The sitting Great Buddha in Sukkool-am (stone grotto)

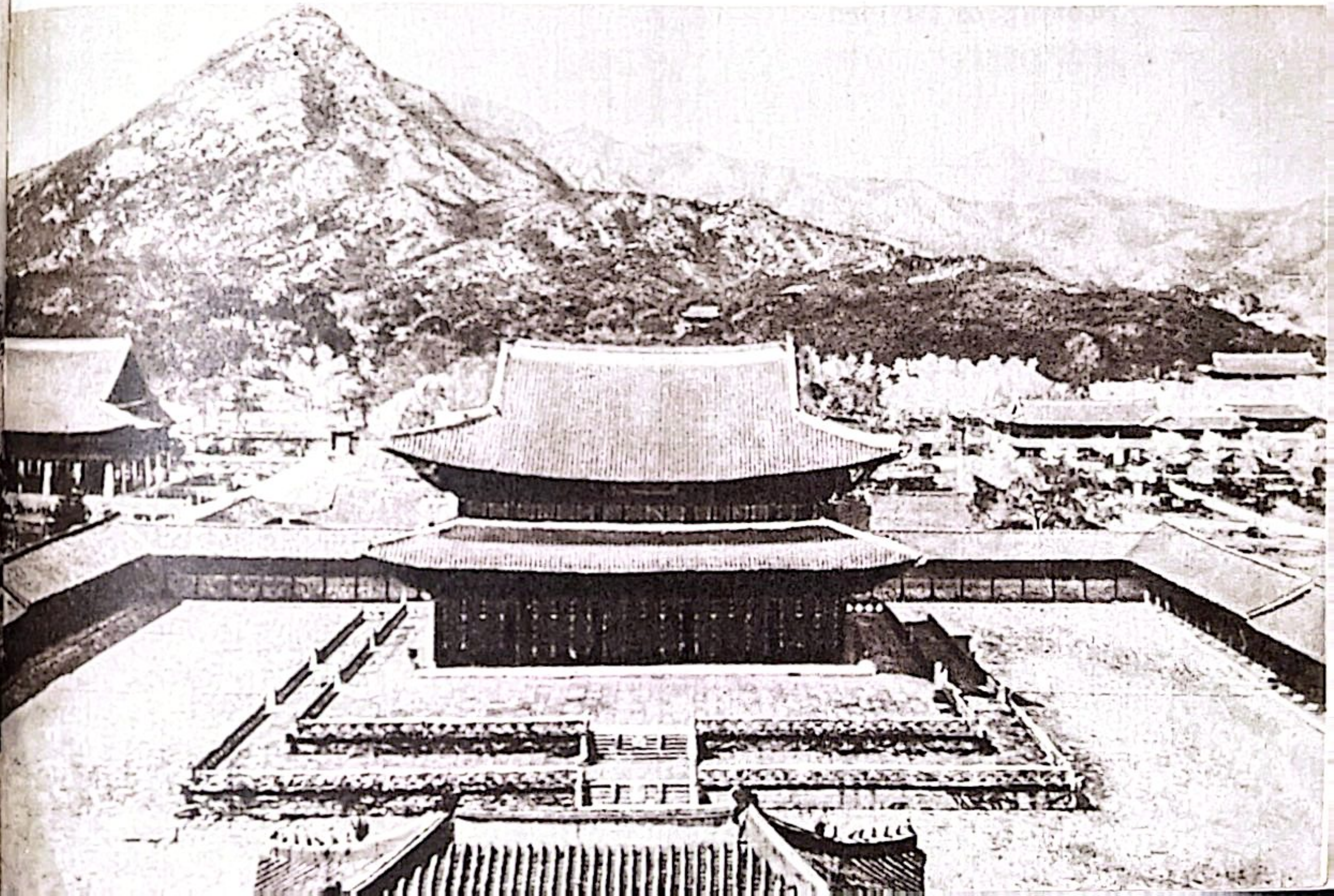
A gilt bronze image of Mireuk

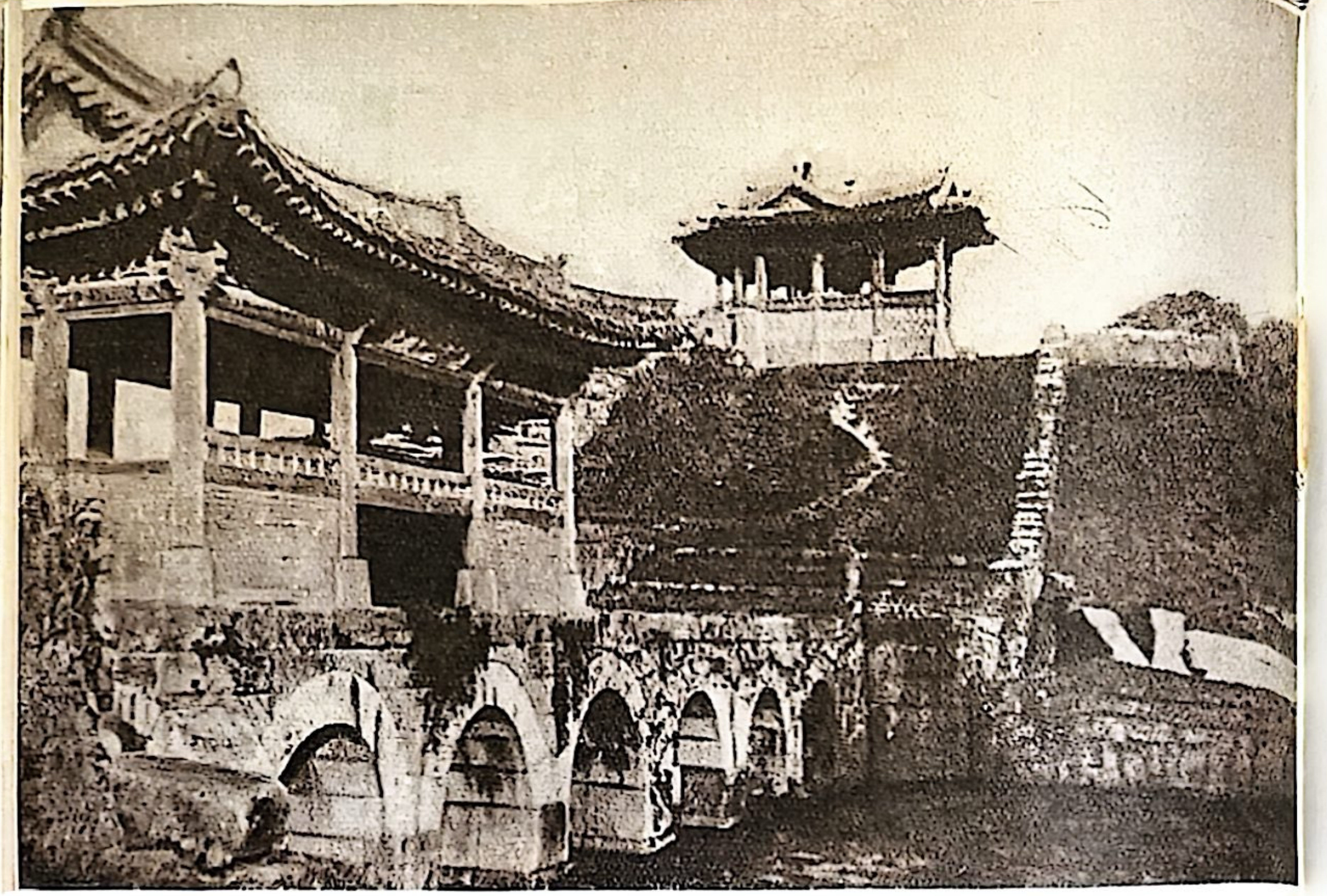
Sakya Pagoda at the Boolkook-sa Temple

Nine-storied Octagonal Marble Pagoda at the Woljung-sa Temple

The Boolkook-sa Temple

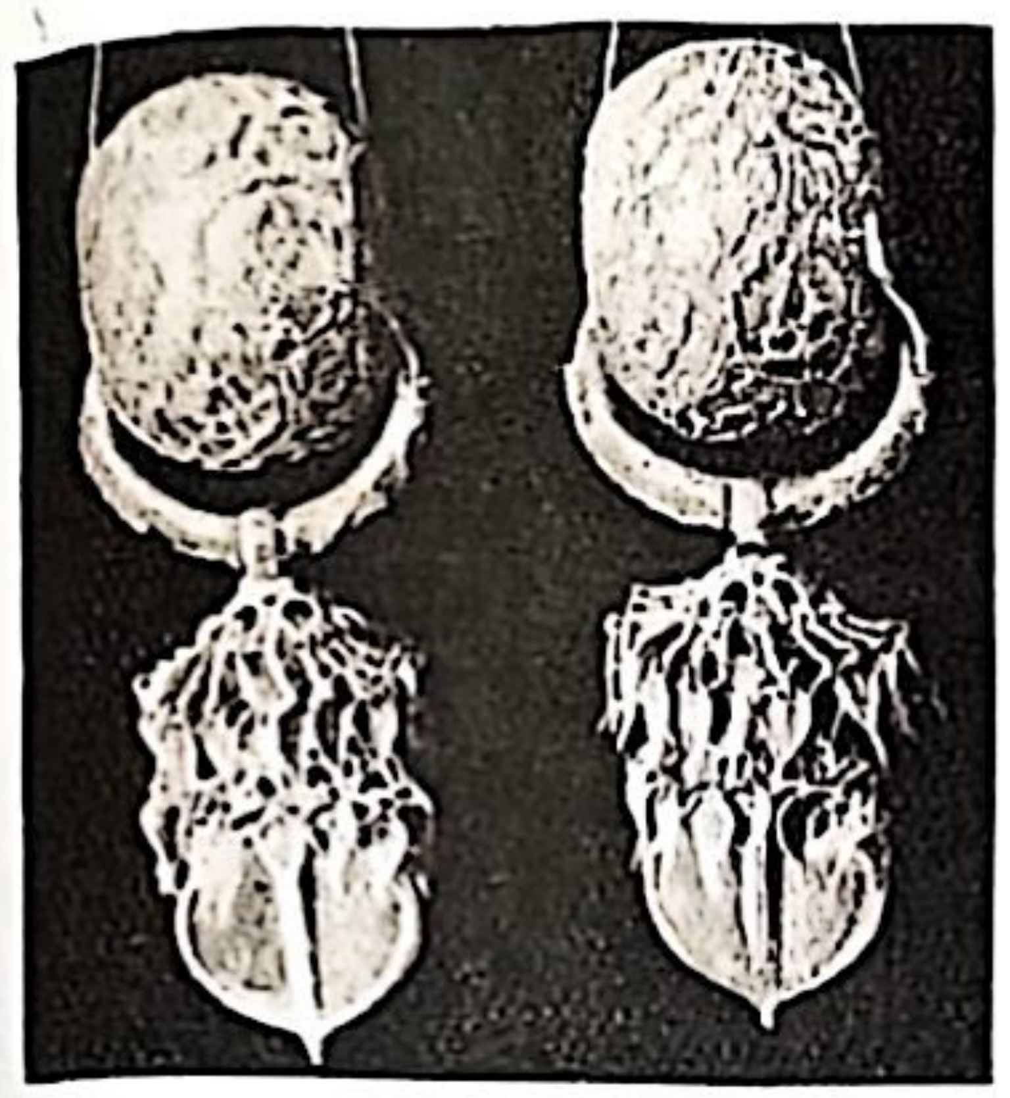
The Keunjung-jun Hall in the Kyungbok-goong Palace



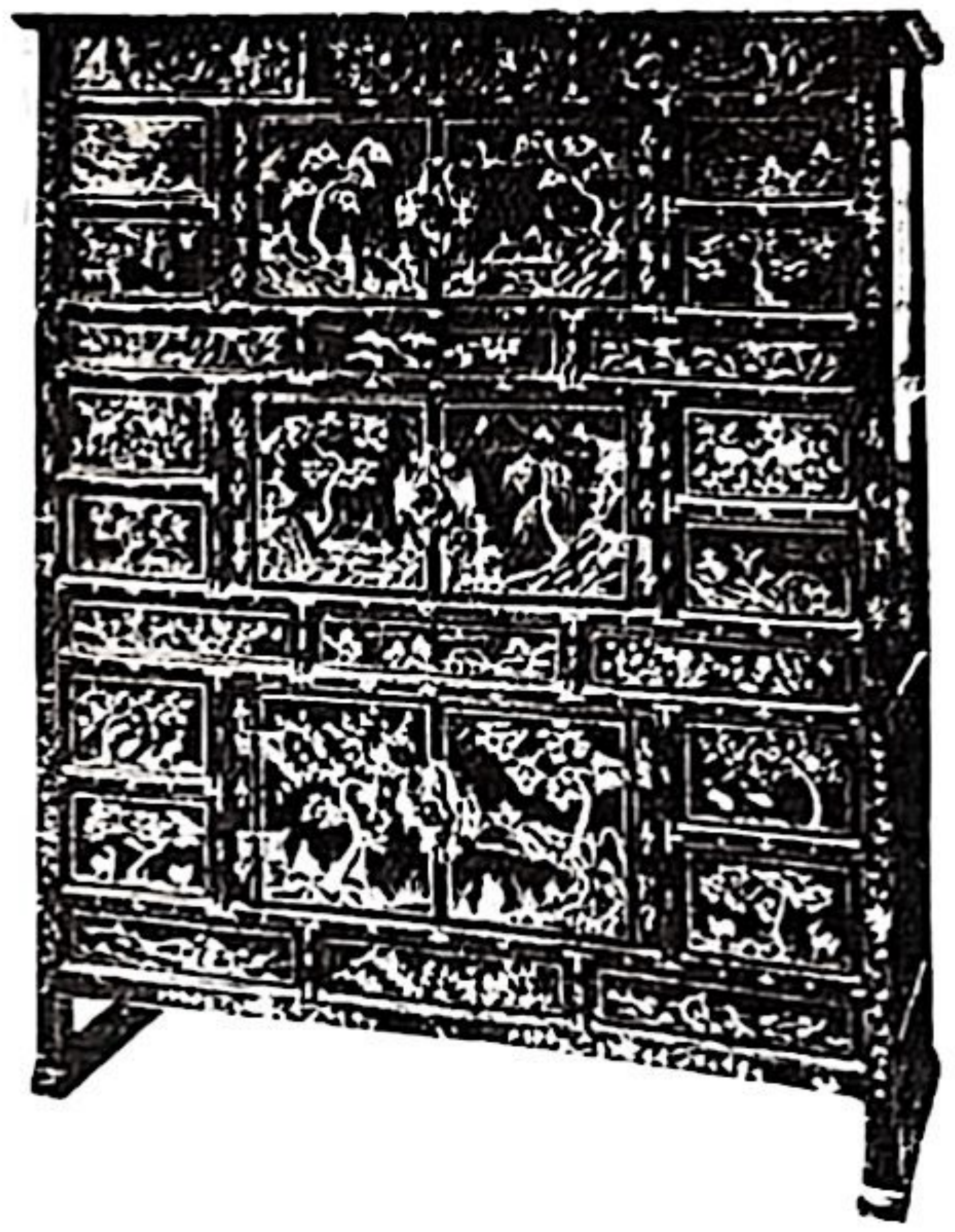


Banghwa Sooryoojung Pavilion in Suwon

Boobyuk-roo Pavilion

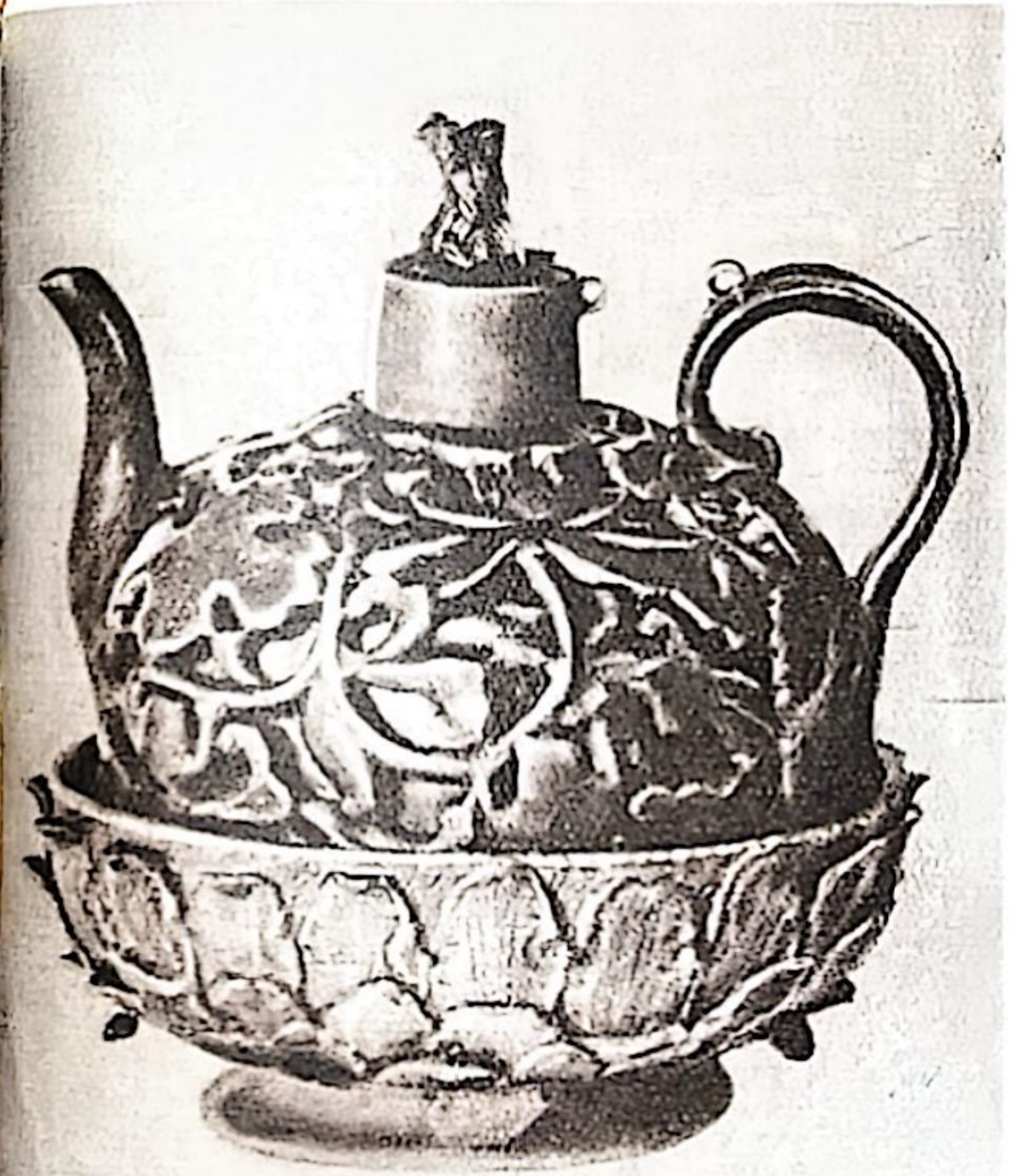


Gold earrings

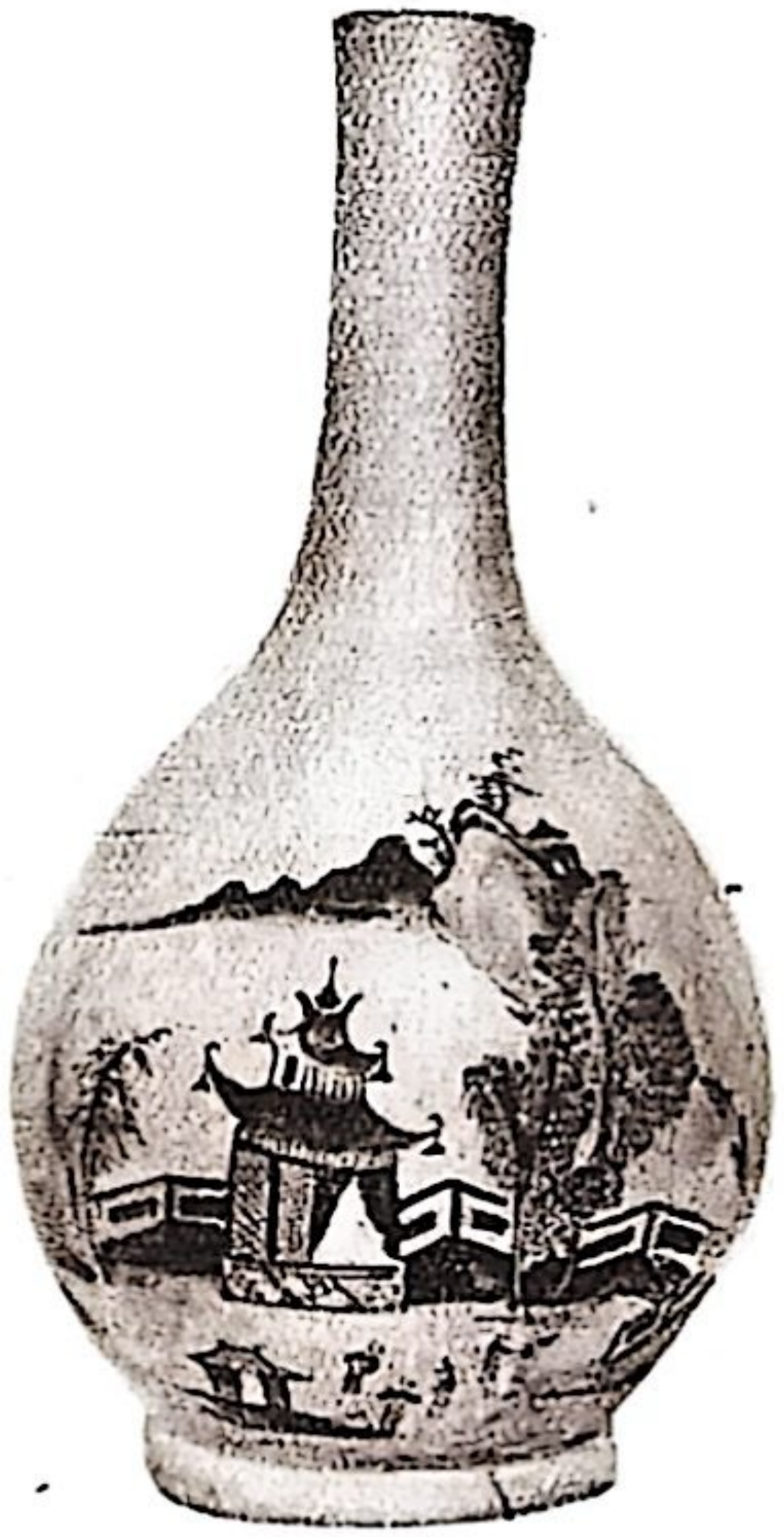


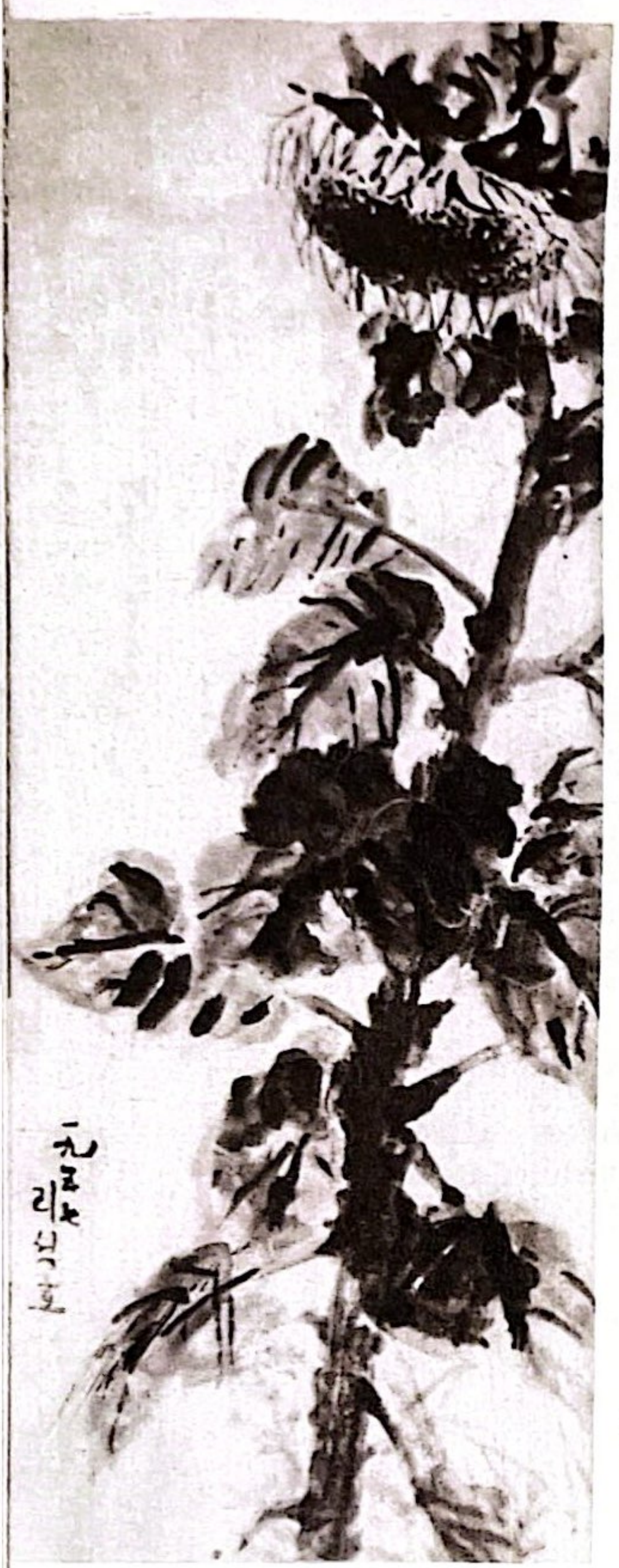
Black lacquered chest with blue mother-of-pearl inlay

Pitcher, openwork celadon (Koryu porcelain)

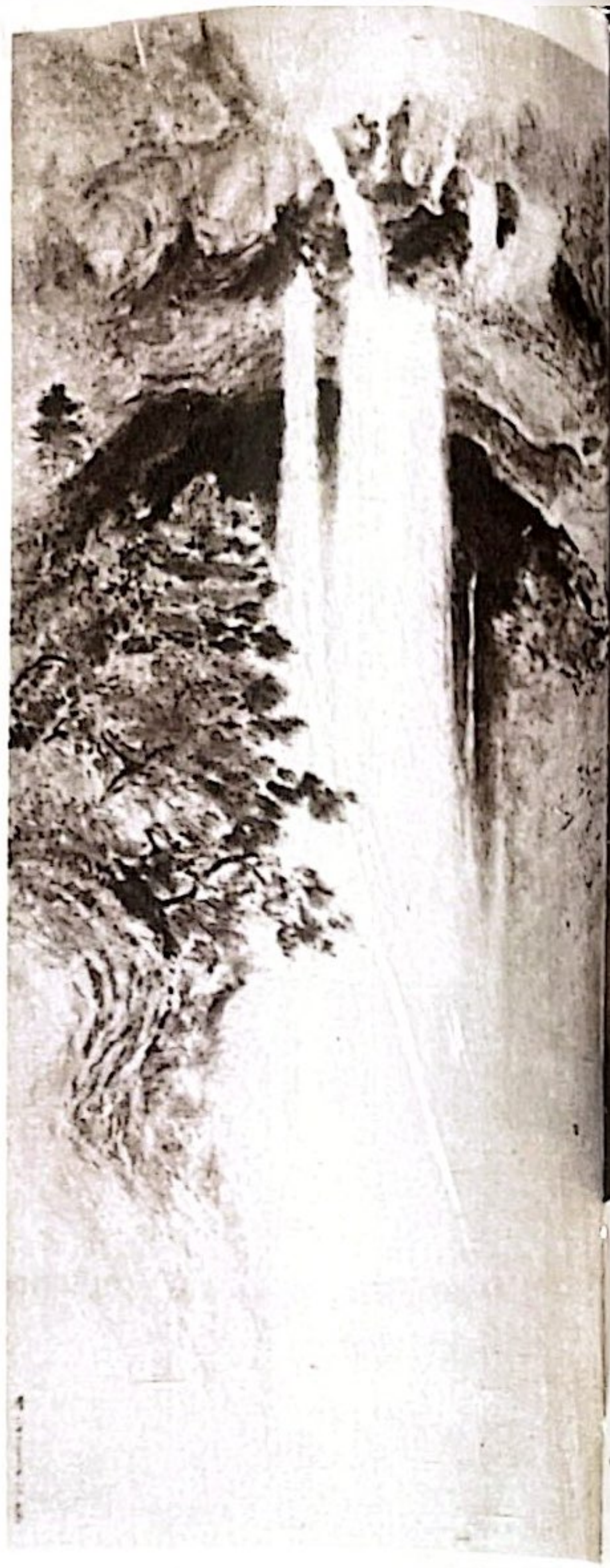


White glazed porcelain produced in the Li dynasty



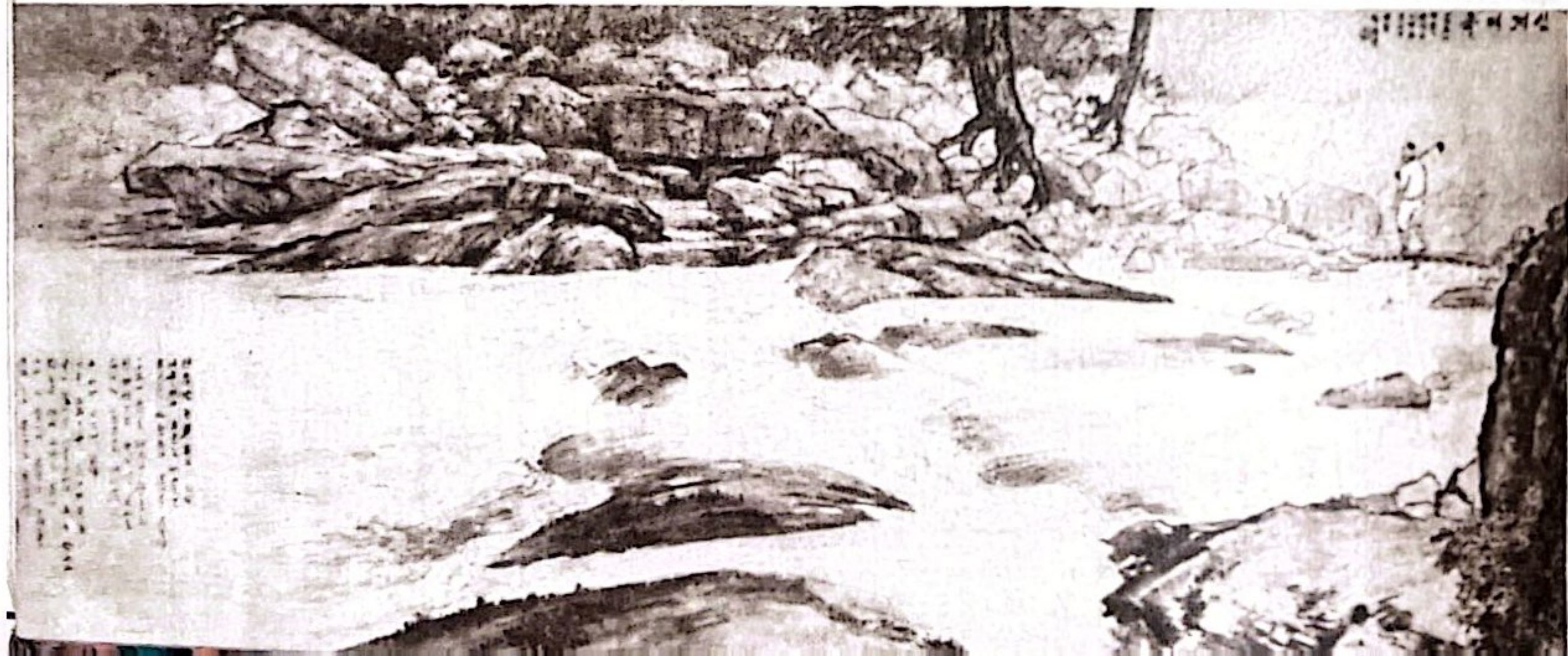


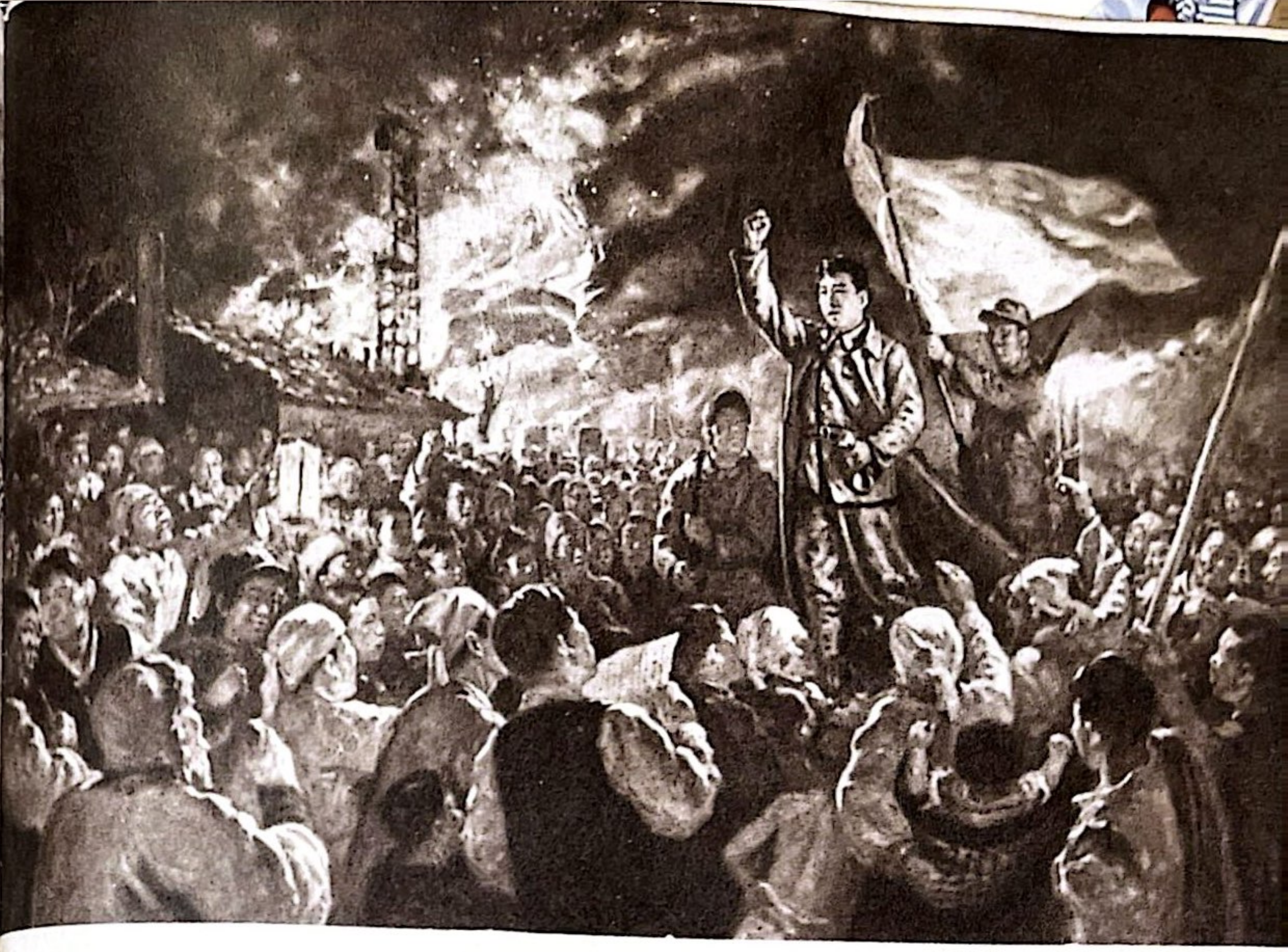
Sunflower
by *Ri Suk Ho*



Brother Waterfall
by *Rim Ja Yun*

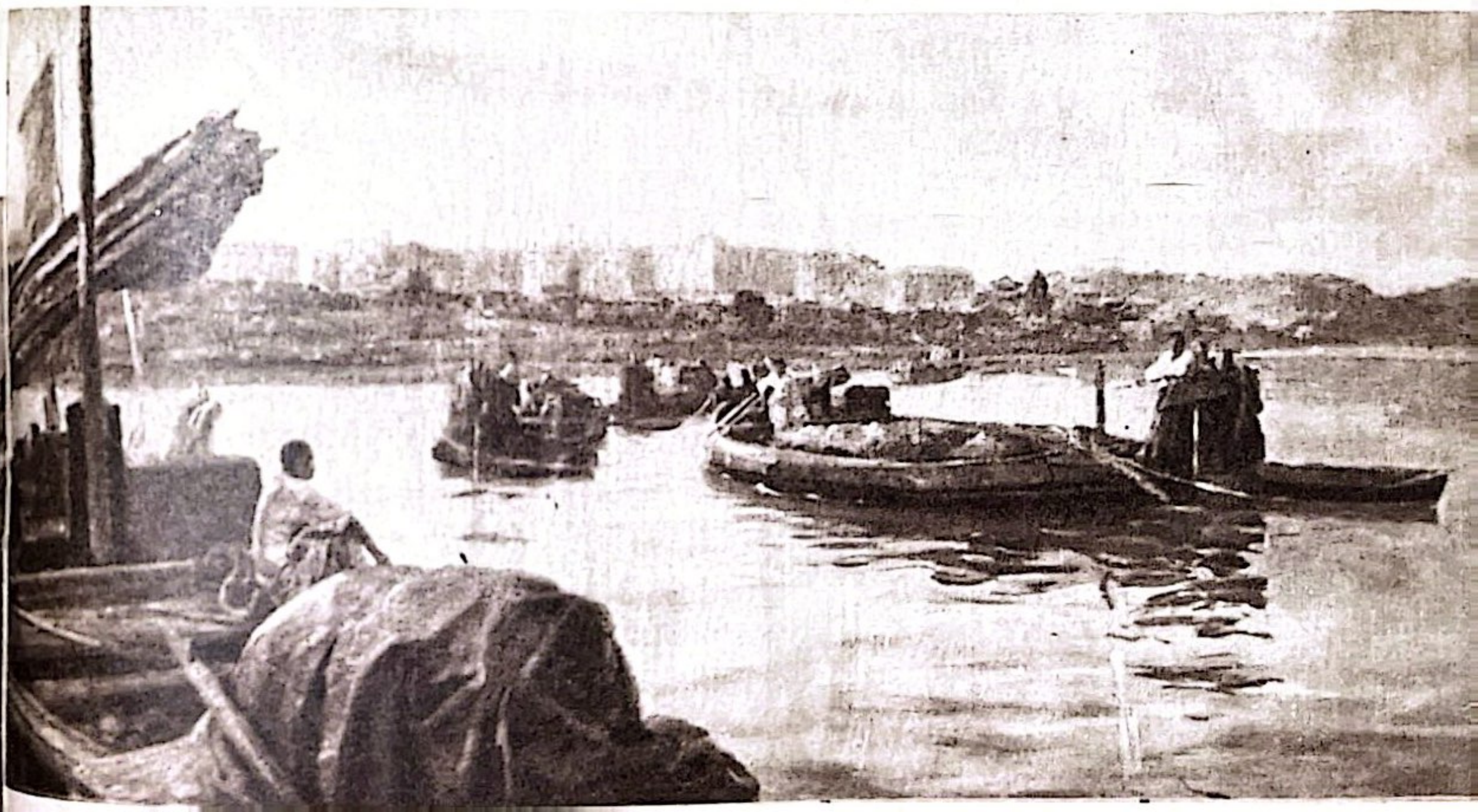
Shinkye Rapids by *Kim Yong Joon*

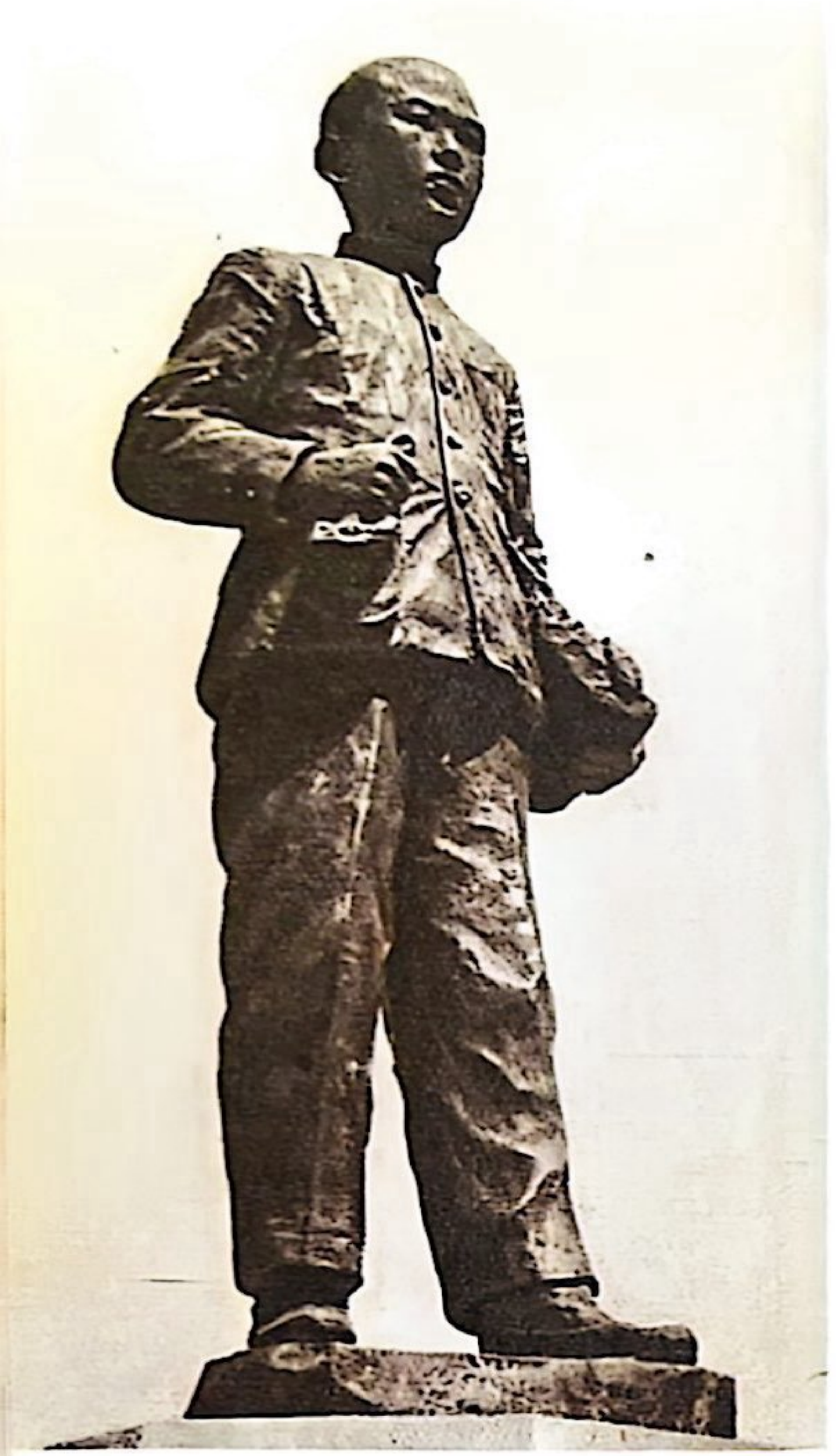




Flame of Bochunbo by *Jung 'Kwan Chul*

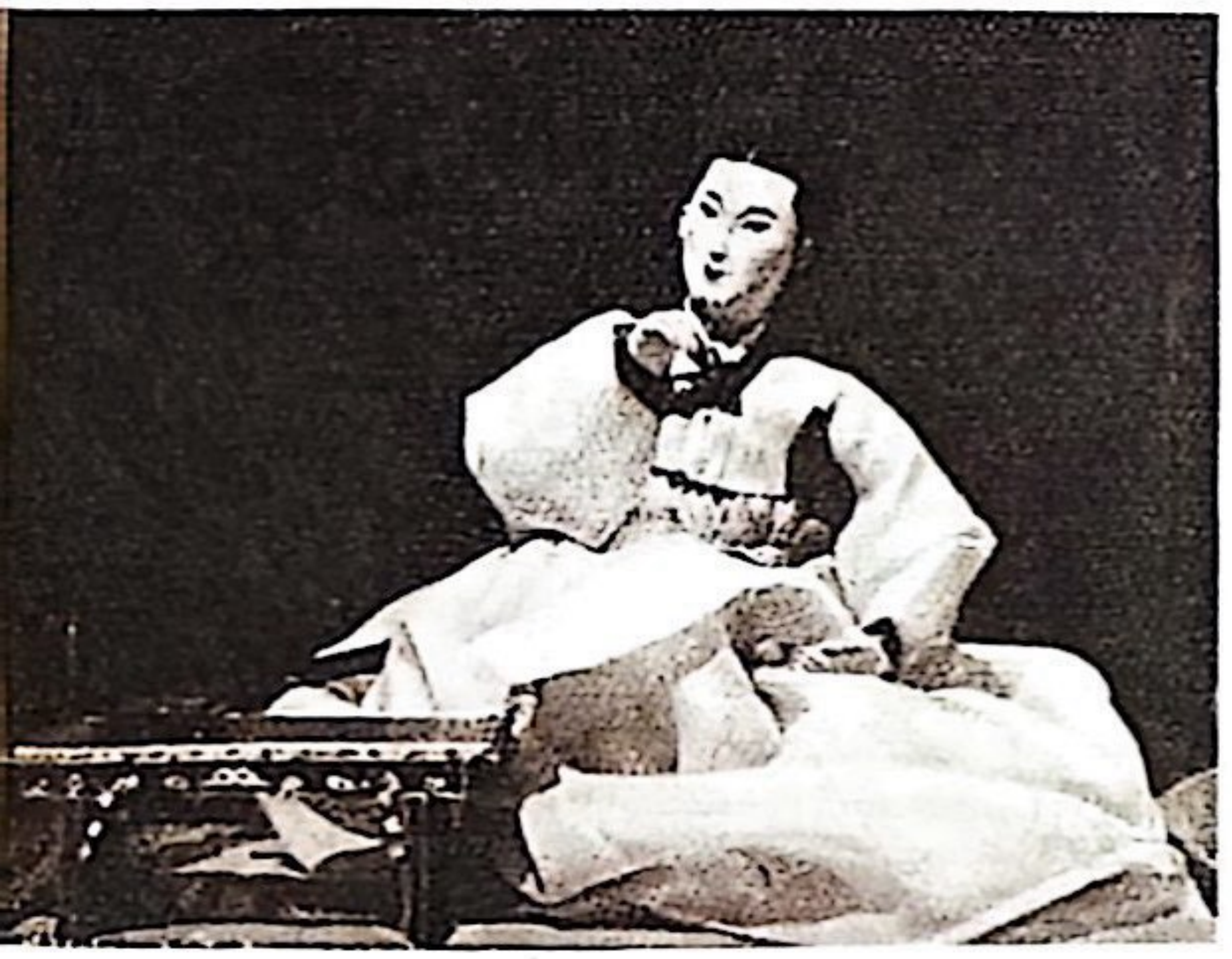
An evening on the Taidong River by *Sunoo Dam*

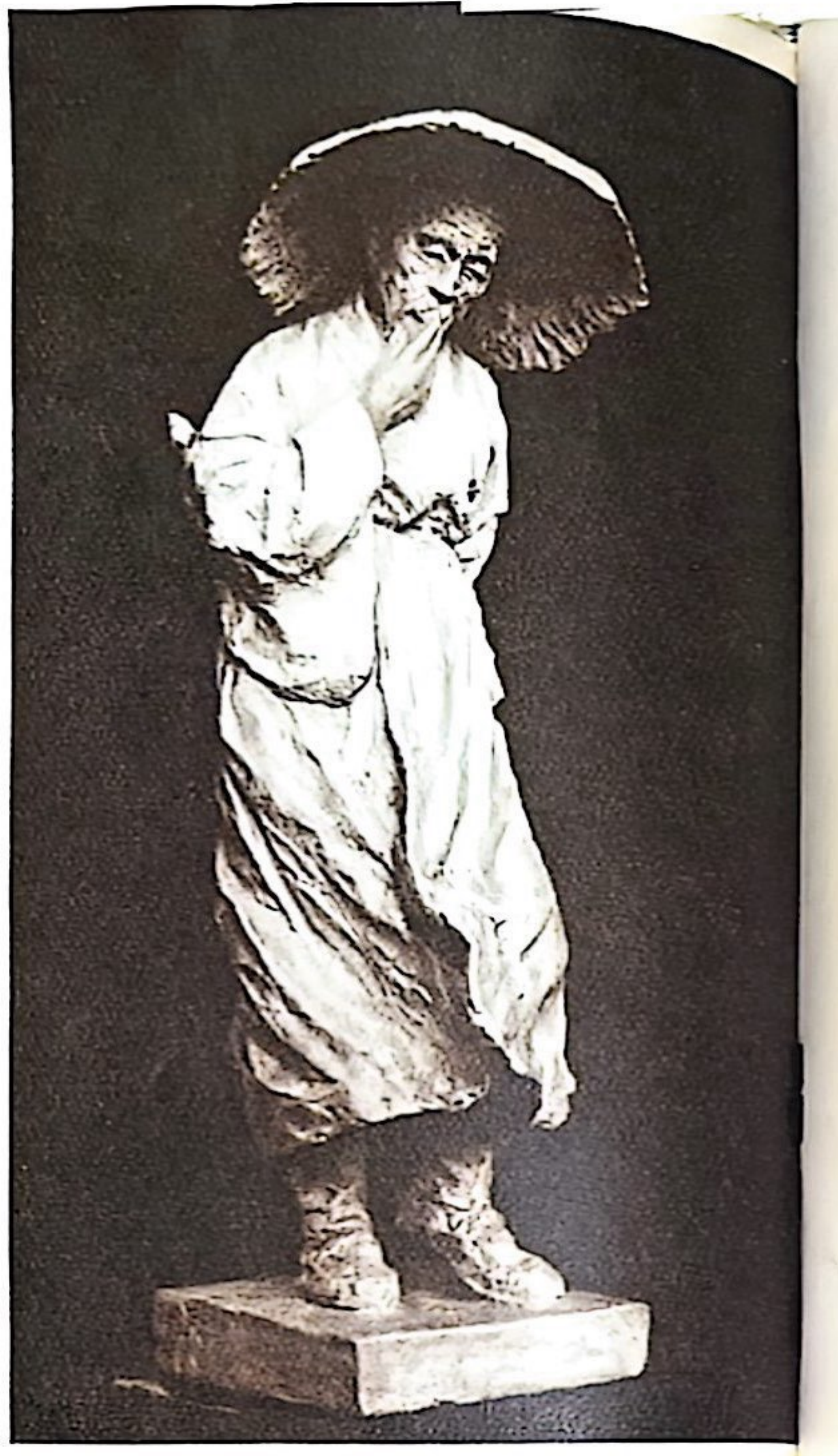




Marshal Kim Il Sung in his boyhood by *Moon Suk O*

Hwang Jin Yi, a doll by *Kang Jung Nim*





Kim Sat Kat by *Han Yung Shik*

Lacquer ware by *Jung Sung Jo*

our fighting people are demanding. Therefore you are also fighters. How can a writer with no ardent patriotism turn out patriotic works, and how can an artist who has no love of people turn out a work to serve the people?" (Selected Works of Kim Il Sung, Vol. III, pp. 301-302)

Suffice it to say that our writers and artists could achieve the glorious creative results during the war because they so faithfully followed the Party's instructions.

In the post-war era Korean writers and artists took part in the nation-wide reconstruction, showing the heightened zeal. Being encouraged by the Party's appeal, Korean writers and artists devoted their creative energy in reflecting the ever changing phases of the new life and the true aspect of socialist construction. And the guidance of the Party was directed to creating works that might contribute to the strengthening of patriotic, class consciousness of the people. The changing and complicated life of today demands of the writers diverse works of different subjects and themes; the personality and taste of individual writers may claim different styles and forms. Therefore, particular attention was given by the Party to this point in order to guarantee unlimited development of literature and arts based on socialist realism. But regardless of the subject matter or themes, the basic principles applied to every work were to instruct the people in the socialist teachings, which is an urgent realistic demand. For unless the people are liberated from the remnants of the old conceptions derived from the long Japanese colonialist rule over Korea, our people are incapable of carrying out the people's democratic revolution. Therefore, the decisions of the 14th Council of the Presidium of the C.C. of the Party, "The Struggle for the Reform of Ideology" (Dec. 1946), the report presented to the Plenum of the C.C. of the Party "On the Further Strengthening of the Party Members' Class Education" (Apr. 1955) and other various documents of the Party were the guide to the writers and artists.

Secondly, the Workers' Party of Korea has paid great attention to arming the writers and artists with the world outlook of Marxism-Leninism. And the Party led them to make a profound study of the people's life, maintaining a close link with the people.

The Workers' Party of Korea, following faithfully the true principles of Marxist-Leninist aesthetics which asserts that no true art can be expected unless it is rooted in the life of popular masses, encouraged the writers and artists to study and live with the people. Hence, the Party guided every writer and artist to study real life during the peaceful construction period. Many writers and artists were dispatched to factories, mines, railways, rural and fishing villages. When the Fatherland Liberation War came, numbers of them were mobilized as war correspondents. Particularly in the post-war period, more effective measures were taken for the writers and artists to study life. It follows from the consistent policy of the Party which encourages the writers and artists to maintain a close contact with the people, to establish a mass point of view and to study the people's life.

The writers and artists, who are faithful to life and study it profoundly, will grasp the truth free from their narrow views and be able to show the process of its development. However, it must be pointed out that arming the writers and artists with an advanced world outlook is the principal condition for making them capable of studying life more profoundly and grasping more clearly the prevailing truth of the times. Therefore the Workers' Party of Korea continuously stressed the arming of the writers and artists with Marxism-Leninism for making a study of life. The Party asked them to reflect correctly the truth of life in their works. Accordingly, any concealment or embellishment of contradictions of life is not to be tolerated and no exaggeration or distortion is to be permitted. The report presented to the Third Congress of the Party warned sternly the writers and artists not to be separate from, or observe superficially, life, restressing the urgency of arming them with Marxism-Leninism.

Thirdly, the Workers' Party of Korea, presenting the problem of inheriting the literary and art traditions of Korea, instructed the writers and artists to develop further the traditions of our national culture, and at the same time introduce broadly cultures of the Soviet Union and other advanced countries. The Party, however, warned against the reckless revival of anti-democratic elements in inheriting the national culture on the one hand and the danger of narrow-minded dogmatic tendency against the traditions of the past on the other.

Another important point the Party presented in inheriting national traditions was to further carry forward proletarian literature, which developed under the cruel Japanese suppression, and to correctly appraise the Korean Proletarian Literature

and Arts Association (KAP) that had carried out its role as the general staff of proletarian literature.

The KAP, which was formed in 1925, played an epoch-making role in the development of socialist realism in Korea. Consequently, the Presidium of the C.C. of the Party, held in January 1956, adopted the decisions which referred to the KAP as "the progressive anti-Japanese organization of literature that contributed to the struggle of national liberation against the Japanese with the literary activities based on the creative method of socialist realism," delivering a blow to the national nihilists who slandered the KAP.

On the question of introducing the literature and arts of the Soviet Union and other advanced countries and world classics, the Party denounced two extreme tendencies. The Party rejected, on the one hand, the anti-foreign tendency under the pretext of upholding the national classics, and the blind worship of cultures of the advanced countries neglecting our traditions on the other. The correctness of the Party guidance on the question of inheriting our national traditions and introducing the world classics is amply proved by the fact that recently our literature and arts attracted much attention in the world.

Fourthly, the Workers' Party of Korea has inspired all writers and artists to the uncompromising struggle against the reactionary bourgeois ideology. And it must be pointed out that this question has been particularly a pressing one inasmuch as the southern half of the country is occupied by the U.S. imperialists, who paralyze the people in South Korea with the poisonous American bourgeois literature and arts. And they even attempt to pollute the northern half as well. From the first days of liberation, the Party has consistently defended our literature and arts from the attack of various bourgeois reactionary currents —nihilism, cosmopolitanism, naturalism, formalism, man-hatred or pornography—which are hostile to our revolutionary literary and art traditions. And the Party resolutely rejected every tendency of factional or sectarian liberalism that contaminates the purity and disturbs the ideological unity in the field of literature and arts.

In the decision of the 29th meeting of Presidium, the Party sharply criticized the reactionary character of the poems "Eumhyang" and "Models of Literature", which showed a trend of bourgeois literature in the post-liberation days. It also unmasked the false theory of "art for art's sake" and stressed that our publications had no room for the bourgeois reactionary ideology.

However, the bourgeois reactionary elements did not abandon their scheme. Particularly, mention should be made of Lim Hwa, the leading member of the gang of the U.S. spies led by Pak Hun Yung, who wormed into the ranks of our writers and artists, and his followers Lee Tai Joon and Kim Nam Chun. But, since the 5th Plenum of the C.C. of the Party, the true colour of the Pak Hun Yung clique was thoroughly exposed in the entire Party's struggle against the anti-revolutionary and sectarian elements. And those who made their way into our literature and arts too were liquidated from the ranks. Then the Party, urging an ideological fight for uprooting the poisonous ideas disseminated by the Lim Hwa clique, sharply criticized the sectarians led by Pak Chang Ok who tried to undermine the just fight. The Party stressed the necessity of continuing the fight against all the evil anti-Party tendencies including sectarianism and all the reactionary ideas, which the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique were trying to implant among the people.

It is not accidental then that the Korean writers and artists, faithful to the Party's call, should grow into a revolutionary, militant force with a firmer unity of the ideology and will of the Party.

All the achievements of Korean literature and arts attained since liberation came from such Party policies and guidance. Therefore, Korean writers and artists are firmly upholding the banner of socialist realism; basing their creative activities on the idea and will of the Party; rejecting the bourgeois "freedom of creation". The idea of the Party is the symbol of the people's welfare, happiness and future. We can say proudly that Korean literature and arts encouraged by the ideology of the Party are growing truly forceful and beautiful.

LITERATURE

Korean literature has a long history and tradition. The cultural and artistic life of Korean people goes back as far as ancient times. Rich oral literature, and especially legends about the founding of the country were handed down. Stories about the founding of ancient kingdoms deeply impress the Korean people with the time-honoured history and tradition of their country.

Between the first and second centuries A.D. Chinese characters were introduced, which contributed to the development of the written literature. The existing lyrical poems of Chinese style such as the Song of Yellow Bird, and Kong Hoo In show the inner life of Korean people and their humanistic aspects.

Shortly after the introduction of Chinese characters, Korean letters called Hyangchal or Ridoo were invented by making use of pronunciation of Chinese characters, thereby developing the Korean written language.

From ancient times many popular songs were handed down. In the 6th century a number of noted poets including Yungchun who wrote the Song of Comet came from among monks and other learned people. These songs are called "Hyangka", which represents the characteristic form of ancient poetic songs. In the 9th century the collection of Hyangka, "Samdaimok", was compiled.

All documents but 14 cantos of Hyangka are extinct. The remaining ones help us to understand the spiritual life of ancient Koreans. Moreover, they serve as a valuable material to study the forms peculiar to ancient Korean poems.

Along with the widespread literature, prose literature in the form of annals, biographies and travel notes made progress. The stories about the Founding of the Three Kingdoms and Heroes are of special note. The life of Pak Jae Sang, Ondal, Ulchi Moon Duck, and Kim Yu Shin full of bravery, self-sacrifice and patriotism is well represented. These biographic stories may well be said to be epics demonstrating the historic tradition of the people of this country.

In the 8th century many famous books were published: Kim Dai Moon's Hwarang-do (warriors), Notes of Hwarang and Abbots' Life written by unknown monks, Travel Notes on India by the famous monk Hyecho, who made a tour of India, Persia, the Central Asia, etc.

With the appearance of the noted scholars Sulchong and Choi Chi Won Chinese literature made an epoch-making progress. Choi Chi Won, who took an active part in the literary world in the latter part of the 9th century, had once studied in China, where he won fame. He left behind a number of masterworks including *Kyewon-Pilkyong*. Particularly his *Hyangak-Jap-yung* deals with the masked dance prevalent in the period of the Three Kingdoms. It serves as a valuable source-book on the people's art at that time.

In the period of Koryu (10th-14th cen.) lyric songs made progress still further. Most of the authors of the available Koryu songs are unknown. The rich, humanistic expression of their lyricism in combination with a high degree of artistry fascinates the readers.

Take the Sukyung Byulkok for instance. This song expresses the sorrowful separation of a young couple on the bank of the Taidong River. It represents fine sentiments of Korean women. The song reads in part;

Beads may break off the string,
But the string will never break.
Even if you go away for a thousand years,
I will forever be loyal to you, my love.

Chungsun Byulkok begins with a beautiful melody, but its main theme is the feeling of the people who were averse to the putrid, corrupt society.

In the 13th century the characteristic form of syllabic poem such as "Hanrim Byulkok" and "Sijo" appeared. Above all, "Sijo" developed as a predominant form of Korean poem and song in the mediaeval Korea.

In the field of prose, too, marked progress was registered. Special note should be made of the "History of Three Kingdoms" compiled by Kim Bu Shik in the 12th century, and the "Complement of the History of Three Kingdoms" compiled by the priest Il Yun in the 13th century. These are valuable books not only as historical documents, but also as the biographical and narrative literature.

The poems written by Koryu's noted poets Lee Kyu Bo (1168-1241) and Lee Jei Hyun (1288-1367) are characterized by their deep interest in the life of people, and expressive of patriotic sentiments.

Lee Kyu Bo's novel "White Clouds" and Lee Jei Hyun's "Ryukong Paisul" deal with things of historic interest, manners of people, anecdotes, essays on poetry, humour, etc., thus creating a peculiar genre called Paisul literature in the field of prose.

As the feudal society under the Li Dynasty (founded in the 14th century) began to develop, science and culture made a marked advance. In 1443 Korean written language was instituted, which gave a great stimulus to the progress of national culture and literature. Oral literature gradually gave way to the written literature. Scholars and literati who had valued only Chinese literature came to be interested in literature written in Korean language.

The writer and poet Kim Shi Sup (1435-1493) made a tour of all parts of the country, and composed a great number of excellent poems. In addition, he wrote "Kim O Shin-Wha" which was the first short story in Korea.

Sung Hyun (1439-1504), who is one of compilers of "Akhak-Kwaebum" (Music Standard Book), added his "Yongje-Chongwha" to the best tradition of the above-mentioned Paisul literature.

Lim Je (1549-1587), who died young, is noted for many lyrical poems. He also wrote novelettes such as "Rats on Trial" and "The History of Flowers". Through his works he exposed and criticized the contradictions and evils of the time. He made a free use of allegory.

The collection of poems by Jung Chul (1536-1593) which was written in Korean language, opened a new phase in poetic creation. His "Poems of Songkang" is a monumental work. This poem made contribution to develop a style of song in the form of long poem that came to the fore toward the close of the 15th century. In his collection of poems are included the "Kwantong Parting Song" that sings the beauty of Mt. Keumkang (Diamond), the "Yearning after a Beauty" that sings the love of a young couple, the second volume of "Yearning after a Beauty", etc. These poems are still widely recited among the people.

During the Imjin Patriotic War (1592-1598) there appeared a number of works depicting heroism and self-sacrifice of the patriots who staunchly defended the fatherland against the Japanese invaders.

The patriotic poet Pak In Lo (1561-1642) took part in the naval battle. His "Great Peace" and "Grief on the Ship" served to arouse the people to stand up for defending the fatherland. It also manifested the traditional spirit of Koreans as peace-lovers.

"Imjin Annals"—the author is unknown—is an epic dealing with the Imjin Patriotic War and heroes. It has been widely read among the people until quite recently. It gave an inspiring strength to the people who were struggling for liberation from Japanese imperialism.

After the war the stories of biographical style, for instance, "Tale of Hong Kil Tong" or "Tale of Jun Woo Chi", which reflected the acute social contradictions incidental to the postwar society, were produced.

Huh Kyun (1569-1618), the author of "Tale of Hong Kil Tong", was opposed to the feudal tyranny. Later he was executed on charge of "treason."

In his work, Huh Kyun depicted realistically the struggle of peasants led by the Hwalbin Party in opposition to the feudal hierarchy and merciless exploitation of landlords and bureaucrats. Of course, his "utopia" could not go beyond the bounds of historical development.

In the 16th century the aggravation of social contradictions gave rise to a tendency toward writing idyls. Yun Sun Do (1587-1671) displayed his profundity in this field. Especially his representation of nature is not so much a form of poem as the vividly portrayed landscape. The following is one passage in his "Song of Five Friends":

Flowers in full bloom
Must pass away.
Grass clothed with green
Must turn yellow.
Invariable is only the rock.

"Fishermen in Four Seasons" and "New Tune in the Mountains" are his masterpieces.

Generally speaking, the 17th century witnessed remarkable progress of Korean literature and rapid popularization of novels. Kim Man Joong (1637-1692) cut figure in writing novels. He was a noted learned man, and valued, above all, literary work. With a profound knowledge of novel's function in literature, he delved deeply into the literature written in Korean language. Through his "Sasi Namjung Ki" (Notes on Mr. Sa's Expedition to the South) and "Koowoon-Mong" (Nine-Cloud Dream) he mastered his artistry in depicting the internal contradictions among the upper class and the emancipation of individuality from tyrannical bondage.

In the 18th century the reformist ideas of the Practical School hardened its foundation in all fields—political, economic, and cultural—in opposition to the dogmatic Confucianism and the incompetence of the ruling class, nobility. They stood for the "practical truth" and "public welfare". They also exerted influence on literature.

As the people's struggle against feudal oppression was at high tide, on the one hand, and on the other the ideas of the Practical School were spreading, the popular literature came to flower as never seen before. "Chungkoo Yung-un" compiled by Kim Chun Taik and "Haitong Songs" compiled by Kim Soo Jang are noteworthy products of the time. The compilers preserved in good order the valuable heritages of Korean songs and poems. Aside from this, a goodly number of classical novels were produced on the basis of people's oral creations.

In this respect, special mention must be made of the immortal exploits of Pak Yun Am (his real name is Pak Ji Won), advocate of advanced practical ideas and representative of literature belonging to the Practical School.

Pak Yun Am (1737-1805) was an enlightenment scholar with encyclopedic knowledge. He is a great man who propagated politico-social as well as aesthetic ideas based on materialistic world outlook.

His representative works are "Loho Diary", a short story "Notes on Bangkyung-kak", and so forth. And in his "The Story of Huh Saing", "Tiger's Reproof" and "Nobles" he trenchantly satirized all hues of depravity and corruption of nobles and Confucian scholars, and at the same time manifested his lofty humanism and ardent patriotism.

Another great encyclopedic representative of the Practical School is Jung Yak Yong (1762-1836) or pseudonym Da San. He is an outstanding scholar, specialized in economics and politics, and was a talented technician. He was also versed in poetic creation. He wrote a number of poems. Among them are "The Poems of Hungry People" and "Drinking in a Summer Day". In these poems he dealt with the most essential and urgent problems confronting the society. Readers will feel the pulse of his patriotic heart.

The classical works based on oral narrations came into flower between the 18th century and the 19th century. The most popular ones are "Tale of Rabbit", "Tale of Pheasants", "Tale of Shim Chung", "Tale of Choonhyang", "Tale of Heungbo", etc. These works represent the aspirations of the people for liberation from the fetters of feudalism, and are characterized by their fine national form.

The immortal masterpiece "Tale of Choonhyang" represents realistically the actual condition of the feudal society toward the close of Li Dynasty. Its main theme is the love of a young couple, and an active attitude of the people aspiring after liberation is portrayed with an exquisitely artistic skill.

In the 19th century the peasant uprisings and invasion of foreign capital shook the feudal system of Li Dynasty to the foundation. Under the circumstances the feudal lords did all in their power to maintain their reactionary rule and suppress all progressive things.

Nevertheless, the literature and art movement took place among the lesser class. Novels and poems assumed a popular character. At the same time the dramatic art came to the fore. Its contents are characterized by anti-feudalism and enlightenment.

The wandering poet Kim Lip (1807-1863) produced outstanding works of humour and irony, which got popularity among the people.

The noted poet and artist Shin Jai Hyo (1812-1884) created many poems and songs. And at the same time his "pan sori" paved the way for "Chank Keuk" that was the prototype of the national opera.

With the introduction of the Western civilization from the 19th century, the mediaeval literature ended its days, and a new epoch was marked. The new literature was born of the New Cultural Movement which took place from the end of the 19th century to the beginning of the 20th century in opposition to foreign aggression and outlived feudalism. This movement and the Righteous Soldiers' Anti-Japanese Struggle constituted both wings of the patriotic independence movement of the Korean people.

In the literary world biographical stories about the great patriots such as General Ulchi Moon Duk, General Kang Kam Chan, Admiral Li Soon Shin, etc., were published. A number of biographies of the great men in foreign countries were translated. All this served to inspire the patriotism of the people.

In this period a modern style and form of novels and songs were in vogue. In a strict sense of the word they were a transitional literature. Almost all works are run through by patriotic ideas opposing aggression and by progressive ideas against feudalism.

Now prevails the struggle for existence.
Depends upon us rise or fall of the country.
Think of the attitude of the great powers,
Who impose slavery, sacrifice and insult upon us.
Oh, fellow countrymen of twenty million,
What is this time? What is this day?
See the actual situation facing the six continents.
The strong preys upon the weak, the fittest survives.
On our shoulders falls the duty
Of preserving sovereignty and saving compatriots.

The above is a passage of the Song of Learning. Generally, the literature of the time has a strong tint of politics.

After the Japanese imperialists occupied Korea, they set up a military rule and pursued the policy of stamping out national culture. This impeded greatly the development of Korean literature.

They took outrageous measures for repressing freedom of the speech, and tried hard to strangle the popular, anti-Japanese patriotic literature. On the other hand, they encouraged the reactionary bourgeois literature serving their purpose.

On March 1, 1919, the nation-wide uprising under the influence of the great October Socialist Revolution swept Korea. From this time the Korean national liberation movement entered a new stage of revolution under the leadership of the working class. The revolutionary advance of the working class and spread of Marxism brought a new reform and upsurge to the literary world.

In the early twenties the labour movement showed an upward swing. At this time proletarian literature made appearance as a wing of the national liberation struggle under the leadership of the working class.

In 1925 the Korean Proletarian Literature and Arts Association (KAP) was organized. At first our proletarian literature assumed a new trend. (We call it a "new trend literature.") Choi Su Hai's "Escape" and Li Sang Hwa's poem "Spring on the Lost Land" expressed the ideas and sentiments of the people who struggled against the oppression and exploitation of Japanese imperialism.

Proletarian writers took over the tradition of realistic literature and worked their way for socialist-realist literature. They energetically fought all reactionary bourgeois trends of literature such as naturalism and decadence.

In 1927 the KAP was reorganized and adopted a new Marxist program. Cho Myung Hui, Han Sul Ya, Li Ki Yung, Song Yung and other progressive writers developed socialist-realist literature. Triumphant gains of socialist realism in literature in the 20's are Cho Myung Hui's short story "The Rakdong River", Han Sul Ya's short story "The Transition Period" and "Wrestling", Li Ki Yung's short story "Wonbo" and "The Paper-Mill Village", Song Yung's drama "Refuse All Interview!" and poems written by Kim Chang Sool, Pak Pal Yang and Pak Se Yung.

In the 30's the KAP literature gained great results. However, the Japanese imperialists intensified their fascist rule in Korea. Many progressive writers were arrested and put into jail. In 1935 the KAP was dissolved by force. Nevertheless, the workers' and peasants' anti-Japanese movement was at high tide. Inspired by the movement, the KAP writers held fast to socialist realism and continued their struggle.

Particularly, the anti-Japanese armed struggle led by Marshal Kim Il Sung fortified the conviction of the Korean people in national liberation from the grim fascist rule of the Japanese imperialists. The writers were also greatly inspired to more creative work. In this period Li Ki Yung's novel "The Native Village", Han Sul Ya's novel "The Twilight" and "Tower" and many other classical works were produced.

"The Native Village" depicted in an epic-poem style the predicament of peasants and their revolutionary advance under the occupation of the Japanese imperialists. In "The Twilight" the indefatigable struggle of the revolutionary working class is represented with exquisite artistry. These works inspired the Korean people to wage more vigorously the anti-Japanese liberation struggle. Today they are still a favorite of the wide reading public.

In the areas where the anti-Japanese armed struggle was waged under the leadership of Marshal Kim Il Sung, the cultural work was carried out briskly and many militant and inspiring poems were created.

Just as the Japanese imperialists could not break the unflagging liberation struggle by any amount of suppression, so they failed to destroy the revolutionary tradition formed by the proletarian literary groups. The literature based on socialist realism stood on its firm footing until the last days of Japanese imperialism.

The historic liberation on August 15, 1945 by the great Soviet Army provided sufficient possibility for ensuring freedom, independence and democratic development of our fatherland. And a wide horizon was opened before the free development of our genuinely national literature and art.

Under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea, the guiding force of the Korean people, a series of democratic reforms were successfully carried out in the North, and the people's democratic system was instituted. At the same time a grand cultural revolution was pushed forward. New construction of the national culture was forging ahead.

Flowering of literature under the conditions created after liberation is distinct from pre-liberation literature.

Of course, the post-liberation literature took over the excellent tradition and the revolutionary tradition of the KAP in particular. The KAP members played a leading role.

The difference of the post-liberation literature from the pre-liberation one is found, above all, in the fact that since liberation literature has enjoyed the guidance of the Marxist-Leninist Party. It served well as an ideological weapon and enhanced its educational role in reforming the society and fulfilled its mission in close connection with the task raised at each stage of revolution.

Since liberation our literature has formed a wing of the struggle for the revolutionary cause under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea. Its historical development represents a grand canvas depicting the struggle of the Korean people for peaceful unification and socialist construction under the consolidated people's democratic system.

In the period of democratic construction our literature dealt with historic gains of democratic reforms and various aspects of positive characters in our era who transformed themselves in the course of creating a new life. Special attention was devoted to the historic revolutionary struggle of the Korean people for freedom, liberation, and independence, especially the anti-Japanese armed struggle led by the prominent patriot Marshal Kim Il Sung. And the heroic struggle of North and South Korean people, inspired by the idea of peaceful unification, was portrayed in grandeur. Internationalist friendship with the great Soviet Union, our liberator, and the People's Democracies occupied a brilliant page of our literature.

In this period were produced Han Sul Ya's novelettes "The Growing Village" and "The Mining District", Li Ki Yung's novel "The Land", Li Book Myung's "A Worker's Family", Cho Ki Chun's epic "Mt. Baikdoo". All these works depicted vividly the life of the working people who rose up for building a prosperous, democratic state and gave a powerful expression to the lofty partriotic and internationalist ideas of the people who rendered labour exploits in establishing a democratic base under the leadership of the Party and the government and with the disinterested help of the great Soviet Union.

"The Land" dealt with the new life in a farm village after the peasants' long-cherished desire — land reform — was realised. The writer Li Ki Yung depicted how the hero Kwak Ba Wi who had been a hire-hand became the master of the land and the people's power under the solicitous guidance of the Party and the People's Government.

In June 1950, the U.S. imperialists who occupied South Korea and the Syngman Rhee clique launched an aggressive war against North Korea. The war put our people's democratic system and the destiny of the Korean people to a serious test. It left an indelible vestige on our literature.

With the outbreak of war numbers of writers went to the front. Their works linked the front with the rear. They served as a militant agitator for victory in the war and an inspirer of patriotism and heroism. The unexcelled heroism displayed by the Korean people on the front as well as in the rear induced the war-time literature to enhance its ideological and educational role.

"Encouraging Remarks to All Writers and Artists" by Marshal Kim Il Sung in June 1951 served as a great source of inspiration to our literary workers.

Marshal Kim Il Sung set the tasks in detail before the writers facing a grim trial of the war. His remarks gave a deeper aesthetic explanation of socialist realism for the further onward movement of Korean literature.

All writers considered his remarks as a programatic guide to their creative work. They made sincere efforts to represent realistically mass heroism of the Korean people, and enrich the militant character of literature.

The new situation created by the war induced our writers to deal with new themes such as disclosure of the U.S. atrocities, kindred ties between the Korean and Chinese peoples, and internationalist friendship and assistance.

Han Sul Ya's short story "Tank No. 214" portrayed the heroism of the People's Army which saved the South Korean people from the hell of the U.S. imperialists. His "Wolves" laid bare the true nature of the barbarous U.S. imperialists with furious hatred and hostility. Kim Sa Ryang's essay "The Sea Is in Sight", Yun Se Jung's short story "New Recruits and Veterans" and Pak Eung Kul's short story "The Ferry" depicted the spiritual world of the People's Army which is immensely loyal to the country and the people and full of vengeance on the enemy.

Chun Se Bong's novelette "The Fighting Villagers", Min Byung Kyun's epic "The Uhruri Fields", Kim Soon Suk's poem "The Hero's Land" represented the indomitability of the people in the rear.

Han Sul Ya's "The History" depicted vividly the arduous anti-Japanese armed struggle led by Marshal Kim Il Sung. It fortified the conviction of the Koreans in victory in the sacred struggle for defending their fatherland.

Song Yung's drama "The Kangwha Island" portrayed the heroic struggle of the Korean people who repulsed the U.S. fleet which attacked the Kangwha island in 1870-71. This drama inspired the Korean people who were again waging a determined struggle against the U.S. imperialists.

With the victory in the Fatherland Liberation War a new forward movement took place in our literature.

After the truce was signed, writers returned, together with the heroes appeared in their works, from the front to another front — the labour front of reconstruction. The writers found the source of creation in the sparkling struggle of the entire people for the postwar reconstruction in response to the Party's call, "All for the Postwar Reconstruction and Development of the National Economy." The nation-wide struggle for the peaceful unification of the country and socialist construction in the North provided main themes for writers, and characterized our literature.

In the postwar literature are represented colourful aspects of the heroic struggle and rewarding life of the Korean people. Numbers of works produced in the postwar period took up such themes as the heroism and patriotism displayed by the Korean people during the Fatherland Liberation War, the enhancement of socialist consciousness and labour exploits of the working people in the postwar reconstruction and agricultural cooperative movement, the ardent desire of the entire Korean people for the peaceful unification of the fatherland, the arduous struggle of the South Korean people, the maintenance of world peace and internationalist friendship among the nations.

In the first and second parts of the Tuman River, Li Ki Yung depicted in a grand epic style the historical course taken by Korea from the end of the 19th century to the March I Uprising in 1919.

Through the heroes Komson and Sidong, father and son, he described the history of the indefatigable struggle of the Korean people for independence and freedom.

In his novel "Mt. Sulbong" Han Sul Ya portrayed the revolutionary advance of the peasants in North Hamkyung Province in the 30's. He gave a concrete expression, on the basis of historical facts, to the powerful struggle of the members of the red peasants' union, who were inspired by the anti-Japanese struggle led by Kim Il Sung.

Song Yung wrote his ocherk "Mt. Baikdoo Is in Sight from All Directions" after he made a tour of the places where Kim Il Sung's anti-Japanese partisan units took action. He described vividly the burning patriotism of our glorious anti-Japanese partisans who maintained inseparable relations with the people.

Choi Myong Ik's historical novel "Abbot Suhsan" deals with the heroic struggle of Abbot Suhsan and Pyongyang citizens who repulsed the Japanese invaders in the Imjin Patriotic War.

In the "Fatherland", Pak Woong Kul represented impressively the brave battles of the partisans formed by the Kowon miners during the Fatherland Liberation War.

In this period many other works were produced, showing a creative uptrend of literature in the post-war period.

In the field of poem many epic poems were produced. Among them are Min Byung Kyun's "The Song of Korea", Kim Hak Yun's "Boy Partisan Suh Kam Ryung", Shin Sang Oh's "The Regiment Standardbearer", etc. dealing with the scenes of the Fatherland Liberation War.

Pak Pal Yang and Pak Se Yung and many other poets produced their selected collections of poems, which added lustre to the poetic world.

In the dramatic world noteworthy plays were produced: "We can No Longer Live in That Way" by Li Jong Soon and Choi Keun, "We Always Fought Together" by Pak Tai Yung and Li Su Yung, "The Story of That Night" by Oh Woon Sun, "The Story of Ryangban (Noble)" adapted by Jo Ryung Chool, "The Son of Partisans" adapted by Han Tai Chun won the admiration of theatregoers. Many scenarios were also produced to meet the rapidly growing demands of our film production.

In the field of children's literature were produced many good works such as Li Won Woo's "General Ax", Kang Hyo Soon's "A New Teacher in Charge" and Hwang Min's "Father."

A new feature of the post-war literature is found in the theme of labour exploits in socialist industrialization and agricultural co-operation. Illustrative of this is Li Keun Yung's story "The First Harvest," Li Yong Ak's "Poem on Pyongnam Irrigation Projects", all of which deal with agricultural co-operation and labour exploits of the peasants who transformed themselves.

In many short stories such as Yu Hang Lim's "A Link Organizer of Trade Union", Pak Tai Min's "It Must Not Be Allowed To Take Its Own Course", Yun Shi Chul's "The Path Chosen by a Youth" are represented the heroes of today who overcame a host of difficulties and obstacles in industrial construction and rendered outstanding services.

In this way literature is blossoming in more beautiful colours. And it is performing with credit its role of a socialist educator.

It is also noteworthy that our postwar literature is raising louder the voice of peace in support of the correct policy and measures outlined by the Workers' Party of Korea for converting the armistice into lasting peace and achieving the great cause of peaceful unification. Numerous works condemning U.S. atrocities came out.

Ardent desire and furious indignation are voiced in Cho Byuk Am's poem "Mt. Samkak Is in Sight," the joint poetic work "U.S. Imperialists, Go Home!" and many other verses, proses and dramas.

Thanks to the correct literature and art policy of the Party, the post-liberation literature gained tremendous results. Of course, it was not an easy sailing, and conditions were not always favourable. It has waged a bitter struggle with the class enemy at home and abroad and stuck to Leninist principles on the building of the Party's literature. The Party spared no efforts to assist writers in fighting the hostile ideology of all manifestations which tried to obstruct the advance of our literature. All our creative achievements could be attained in the course of winning through difficulties.

The U.S. imperialists who occupied South Korea and the Syngman Rhee clique have forced the "American way of life" and the "Yankee civilization" upon the South Korean people. They are trying hard to foist the reactionary bourgeois literature based upon naturalism, decadence, or "art for art's sake" upon the South Korean people. Furthermore, they have been frenziedly scheming to exert their evil influence on North Korea. The U.S. spy Lim Hwa and his followers such as the reactionary writers Li Tai Joon and Kim Nam Chun advocated their infamous "super-class nature of literature" and "separation of creation from politics," thus taking a hostile action against our Party's literature.

They used literary work for slandering our democratic reforms. And they attempted in a crafty way to instil the venoms of defeatism into the people who waged a heroic struggle during the just Fatherland Liberation War.

Under the grim war conditions our Party's literature exposed and gave a deadly blow to their reactionary and treacherous literature. In the postwar period Ki Suk Bok and Jung Ryul in ideological collusion with the Lim Hwa clique were laid bare. They defended openly the reactionary literature of the Lim Hwa clique. Even after those traitors were brought to light, they denied the revolutionary tradition of our literature and tried to bury in obscurity the precious heritage of our national culture, following the path of national nihilism. We continued to exert vigorous efforts to liquidate the evil consequences in the literary world left by the enemy of the people.

Along with this, we conducted successfully the work of carrying forward valuable classical heritage and the tradition of the KAP which developed in the 1920's our literature on the basis of socialist realism.

Many masterworks done in the days of the KAP and classics written by Pak Yun Am and other prominent realist writers were widely circulated.

Adhering to the literature and art policy of the Workers' Party of Korea, our literature under the banner of socialist realism has always been faithful to Leninist principles in the struggle against the currents of international reaction and revisionism in particular.

The Second Congress of the Korean Writers' Union was held in 1956 for materializing the spirit of the decisions of the historic Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea. It was of great significance not only in giving a greater impetus to creative literary work in the post-liberation period, but also in upholding Leninist principles in literature.

The historic decisions of the 20th Congress of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union have made a tremendous contribution to liberating the consciousness of the people from the fetters of dognatism, so as to display to the fullest extent the inexhaustible creative virility of Marxism-Leninism.

However, revisionists raised their heads in certain countries. They expressed their distrust in socialist realism and struck a noisy chorus in slandering the Soviet literature.

The Second Congress of the Korean Writers' Union raised higher the banner of socialist realism, and expressed its firm position with one voice in defence of Leninist principles and in opposition to revisionism.

At the Congress were discussed the important problems on eliminating schematism which is incompatible with the creative method of socialist realism and the vulgar sociological trend.

The Congress greatly contributed to further consolidating the unity of ideology and will of writers, and to bringing about creative upsurge of literature in the post-war period.

In the struggle against the anti-revolutionary, anti-Party factionists such as Choi Chang Ik and Pak Chang Ok our writers' ranks fortified their unity of will and solidarity. They won great victory in the struggle for ensuring the purity of their ranks by liquidating adventurers, and sectarians such as Hong Soon Chul.

In view of the fact that the U.S. imperialists are entrenched in South Korea and the reactionary trend of literature under their patronage persists there, we cannot stop the ideological struggle on the literary front.

Under the fascist rule of the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique all progressive literature is being ruthlessly suppressed; national heritage is trodden underfoot. All hues of reactionary ideas—extentialism, cosmopolitism and modernism — are rampant. Thus the South Korean literature has fallen into the quagmire of naturalism and decadence.

Along with the struggle for peaceful unification, our Korean literature is confronted with the pressing task of exposing and shattering the South Korean reactionary literature and fostering a healthy, patriotic literature.

Today our writers are putting their creative energy into the further strengthening of the democratic base in the North and the fulfilment of the First Five-Year Plan for accelerating socialist construction in the North with the object of turning the base into a decisive force for attaining the peaceful unification of the country. At the same time, inspired by the idea of peaceful unification, they are doing their best to effect mutual contacts and cultural exchange with South Korean writers.

In order to carry out its tasks, our literature, following the literature and art policy of the Party and under the guidance of the Party, is marching forward toward attaining more creative results.

PAINTING AND SCULPTURE

The tradition of fine arts of Korea comes down from the prehistoric age.

The cultural relics of the neolithic age unearthed in Korea include earthenware with various decorative designs and primitive sculptural pieces as well as stone implements, bone and horn objects and shell vessels. These show that our ancestors had developed an aesthetic sense already in the course of their primitive labour.

The fine arts of Korea registered signal development in the age of the Three Kingdoms after the middle part of the 1st century B.C. Of the specimens of art of the Kingdom of Kokuryo which have come down to our time, the murals in ancient tombs are widely known to the world. Besides, there are roof-tiles and bricks with beautiful designs and tiny Buddhist images, which were found at ancient building sites and tombs.

Most of the Kokuryo tomb murals reflect the attempt to demonstrate the power and dignity of the ruling class as well as the primitive religious belief of the immortality of the soul. For protecting the dead soul they painted the four "divine guardians" on the walls of the burial chamber.

The animistic conception of the Kokuryo people finds expression in their tomb murals—in the mystic or spiritual treatment of natural phenomena and in the depiction of the life of the dead in the other world. The Kokuryo people believed that the future life was the extension of the life in this world and, proceeding from this belief, painted in tomb murals the family members and attendants of the dead person, musicians and wrestlers to entertain them, cooks and maids and even wells, meat storages, carriages and household utensils so as to ensure the dead person all that is necessary for a comfortable life in the other world.

These murals attributed to the 4-7th centuries are still as vivid and fresh as ever.

These pictures are real and true to life. The animals drawn, whether they are real ones or imaginary, are wonderfully lifelike. These reflect the mentality of the active, optimistic and staunch Kokuryo people, who had an animistic conception.

The characteristics of the Kokuryo mural paintings — the terseness of expression, unity of variety, realness and truthfulness — formed a singular tradition which was carried forward to the pictorial art of Silla, Koryu and Li Dynasties.

Fewer cultural relics of Pakche have survived than those of

Kokuryo. This is because the territory of Pakche was devastated by repeated wars and, to crown all, the tombs were looted and cultural monuments destroyed by the enemy soldiers at the time of the fall of the Kingdom.

As for the remaining relics so far known, there are the five-storey pagoda of Puyu, the multi-storey pagoda of the Maitreya temple, a few Buddha images of small sizes, a number of bricks and roof tiles, fragments of crown ornaments and a piece of a mural painting discovered in an old tomb in Puyu, and no more.

However, as old documents prove, Pakche played the role of a direct leader for the development of ancient culture of Japan. It sent to Japan many works of fine arts and applied arts, some of which have come down to our time, thus providing valuable material for the study of the arts of Pakche.

The designs engraved on the antefixes and bricks of Pakche are of peculiar artistic character. In contrast to those of Kokuryo which consist mainly of stiff, straight lines and to those of Silla which are often over-refined and too complicated, the designs of bricks and antefixes of Pakche consist of simple but beautiful curved-lines, are well-proportioned and filled with tender feeling. Quite a few specimens of arts of Silla before the unification of the Three Kingdoms have survived to this day. They include burial articles of tombs, antefixes, bricks, Buddhist images and such architectural monuments as the Chumsung-dai (astronomical observatory) and a pagoda of the Boonwhang-sa Temple, built in the latter part of the Age of the Three Kingdoms.

According to old documents, there was a gifted painter named Solguh in Silla. Unfortunately, however, none of the works of Solguh has come down to us.

A momentum was given for the development of the plastic and architectural arts of the Three Kingdoms by Buddhism, which was introduced during the period from the 4th century to the early 6th century.

Among the existing works of sculpture of ancient Silla, the Deva King carved in high relief at the entrance of the first storey of Boonwhang-sa Temple pagoda is remarkable for power and strength. What is regarded as the best among the sculptural pieces of the last period of ancient Silla is the gilded bronze image of Maitreya.

The fine arts of Silla, which assimilated advanced art and

created their own realistic tradition of extraordinary splendour, developed to a higher stage in the period of United Silla.

In this golden age the applied arts as well as the plastic and architectural arts reached the climax. Quite a few remarkable works have been preserved to this day, including sculptural works in royal tombs, temples and stupas as well as Buddhist images.

One of the most typical masterpieces of the arts of Silla of this period is Sukkool-am (stone cave), which was built in the middle of the 8th century, according to records.

In China, from the time of Northern Wei to the time of Sui and Tang, it was much in fashion to build caves in mountains and carve rocks into Buddhist images. In Silla there was no rocky mountain suitable for making such a stone cave. So, Silla built an artificial grotto of granite and enshrined an image of Buddha and carved his disciples in relief on the wall around it. Sukkool-am, a stone cave built in this way, is no match for the Chinese caves in scale, but it holds a place of its own in the history of arts of the world, for the unique and excellent craftsmanship with which the granite blocks were handled in building the cave, for the high artistic value of the Buddhist images enshrined in it and for their harmonious composition.

Koryu, which succeeded Silla, developed its own culture by inheriting the culture of the previous dynasty and introducing that of the Sung Dynasty of China.

The art of pottery of Koryu is widely known to the world. But owing to frequent wars no other art products worth mentioning have come down to us. The sculpture of Koryu is represented by the Buddhist image in the famous Boosuk-sa Temple, the oldest wooden building of Korea.

Old records have much to say about the brilliant development of pictorial art in Koryu and about gifted painters of Koryu including Li Nyung who won fame abroad. But only a few paintings of that period have been preserved. One of them, "A Big Hunt in Chunsan" which is attributed to King Kongmin, a monarch of the closing period of the Koryu Dynasty, is exquisite and of high artistic value.

In 1392 Koryu was replaced by the Li Dynasty.

The middle part of the 15th century, after the change of the Koryu Dynasty, witnessed a brilliant efflorescence of culture, including painting and other genres of arts.

A considerable number of paintings of the Li Dynasty have been preserved, and new findings from private collections are being added to the list of treasures.

That is distinctive of the paintings of the Li Dynasty is the excellent depiction of the essence of the object through the characteristic combination of lines and the subtle nuance of Chinese ink.

Of the outstanding painters of the early part of the Li Dynasty we can cite such illustrious names as An Kyun, and Kang Hi An, the two landscapists of the early 15th century, as well as Li Sang Zwa of the 16th century.

The latter part of the 17th century, when the practical trend of thinking began to be formed gradually, witnessed the appearance of a number of realistic painters who strove to present true pictures of the Korean scenery and depict the life and sentiments of the people. The greatest among them was Jung Sun, pseudonym Kyumjai, who opened up a new phase for the landscape painting of the Li period by depicting the beautiful hills and brooks of his homeland with deep affection and remarkable technique.

In the latter part of the 18th century, there appeared the great master of painting Kim Hong Do, who styled himself as Tanwon. He saw the life of the working people of his time with eyes of love and sympathy and depicted it with simple but powerful lines. At the same time he mercilessly exposed and directed poignant satire at corruption of the ruling ryangbans and monks. This realistic painter still commands the great love and respect of the Korean people today.

Shin Yoon Bok, pseudonym Hewon, is another outstanding painter of this period. His scrolls are filled with hatred toward and contempt for the ruling class. Some of his pictures are devoted to the life and sentiments of women at that time.

A figure-painting made noteworthy development in the Li Dynasty. Representative painters were Li Sang Zwa, Li Jung, Kim Myung Kook, etc.

The closing period of the Li Dynasty in the history of fine arts culminated with the illustrious name of Chang Seung Up. His works, which bear imprints of a close observer, show that he commanded excellent technique and was a man of genius.

The Japanese imperialists, who occupied Korea and turned it into their colony in 1910, tried not only to write off the brilliant history and cultural tradition of Korea but also to paralyse the Korean people mentally by implanting decadent bourgeois culture on Korea.

In those dark days the artists of the KAP (Korean Proletarian Literature and Arts Association), inspired by the great October Socialist Revolution in Russia, came out to play an active part through art in the combatant movement for arming the Korean people with revolutionary spirit and for overthrowing the Japanese imperialists.

Kim Bok Jin, art critic and trail blazer for our sculpture, who was one of the founders of the KAP, energetically fought through his creative and theoretical activities against the so-called "pure art" and the reactionary theory on the "super-class character" of bourgeois art. He faithfully depicted reality from the point of Marxist-Leninist aesthetic view.

A number of KAP artists including Kim Bok Jin, Li Sang Choon, Chung Ha Bo, Kang Ho, Kim Il Yung and Yoon Sang Ryul carried on brisk artistic activities, closely linking their work with the struggle for the national freedom of the Korean people and the emancipation of the Korean working class. They established a revolutionary tradition in fine arts based on socialist realism. And all other conscientious painters put all their energy into their creative work for national liberation. Great achievements were made particularly in the fields of sculpture, stage decor, woodcuts, graphic art and cartoons.

Following the liberation of the Korean people by the great Soviet armed forces from the yoke of the Japanese imperialist colonial rule, a broad avenue was opened up before the fine arts of our country.

The artists, who were now looking toward a bright future with boundless joy and hope, rallied in March 1946 in their single organization—the North Korean Artists' Union under the Federation of Literary and Art Unions of North Korea.

The realistic art of Korea, which sprouted in the twenties and thirties, came to full blossom thanks to the guidance and solicitude of the Korean Workers' Party, the leading and guiding force of the Korean people. It carried forward the realistic tradition of classical arts and assimilated advanced experiences of the Soviet Union and the rest of the world.

Thus in the period of peaceful construction our fine arts, which became more popular and militant than at any other period in the history of Korea, began to present portrayals of the working people, the master of the society, and to reflect the life they were creating.

We can cite as the best fruit of this period (1946-50) "The Strength Defending the Country" by Merited Artist Sunwoo Dam, which portrayed the review of the newly founded People's Army, "Returning Fishing Boats" by Kim Ik Sung, which depicted a good haul, "On the Eve of Harvest Day" by Han Sang Ik, "Voice of the People" by Oh Taik Kyung, which represented the demonstration of the working class desiring the unification of the country, "Farewell to the Soviet Army" by Tak Won Kil and "Transplanting" by Merited Artist Chung Kwan Chul in the field of oil painting; the "Reclamation" by Choi Do Ryul, "Officials' Train" by Yu Jun Soo in the traditional Korean style painting; the "Flames of Patriotism" by Merited Artist Moon Suk Oh which depicted a South Korean woman who has an ardent desire for the peaceful unification and "General Kim Il Sung" by Cho Kyoo Bong in sculpture; and "Korea-Soviet Friendship Poster" by Lim Hong Eun in graphic.

These results were attained only through the struggle against the reactionary bourgeois artistic trend.

When the great Fatherland Liberation War against the armed invasion of the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique broke out in June 1950, our artists reorganized their work on war footing, upholding the call of the Party. No small number of artists went to the front with weapons in their hands. Numerous posters, cartoons and oil paintings created under the hail of bombs and bullets poured down by enemy planes were put on display on the front and in the rear, thus arousing the people and People's Army men toward the battle for routing the enemy, and confirming their conviction of victory.

The strained war-time life filled the creative work of artists with patriotism and militant fervour and endowed it with strong power of propaganda and agitation.

The flames of the stern war helped the fine arts of Korea make further development, far from barring its advance. During the war the Korean art further enhanced its artistic level as well as its Party spirit and popular character. This was so, particularly in the realm of posters and cartoons. Numbers of excellent posters were produced by Chung Kwan Chul, Lim Hong Eun, Tak Won Kil, Oh Taik Kyung and others, and cartoons by Li Kap Ki.

One of the events of momentous significance for the development of fine arts that took place during the war was the Fatherland Liberation War Art Exhibition of 1952 which showed the creative results the artists had attained in response to the message of encouragement of Marshal Kim Il Sung addressed to the writers and artists.

The works displayed at this exhibition—paintings in the Korean traditional style, oil paintings, posters, cartoons, sculptural pieces and works of applied arts—won the hearts of the Korean people who were fighting for final victory, shattering the myth of the "mightiness" of the U.S. imperialists. Among the best of them were: "The Sea Is in Sight" by Chung Jong Yuh, "Repair of a Bridge" by Rim Ja Yun which depicted the fight of the people in defiance of the enemy's bombing, "Peasants Greeting CPVs" by Li Suk Ho and other paintings in the traditional style; "Cho Ok Hi, the Heroine" by Moon Hak Soo, "A Battle on a Stone Bridge" by Sunwoo Dam, "Mercenary Soldiers of Wall Street" by Merited Artist Chung Kwan Chul, "The Taipyungri Battle" by Kim Chin Hang, "Kowon Partisans" by Jun Soon Yong and other oil painting; sculpture "The Joy of Increased Production" by Moon Suk Oh, Merited Artist, and other sculptural pieces.

Mention must be made also of the works of arts created by men and officers of the People's Army on the front where fierce battles were going on.

The Second Exhibition of Servicemen's Works of Art showed over 600 items, which won the approval and admiration of the people. This served as proof of the correctness of the literary policy of the Korean Workers' Party of turning the arts into the possession of the people and of developing them and making them effloresce among the people. Most of the young soldier-artists who took part in this exhibition are now working in the world of art.

Following the signing of the Armistice Agreement in 1953 the Party put forward a spectacular program for the post-war rehabilitation and development of the national economy and mustered the entire people toward peaceful labour, toward the fulfilment of the immediate tasks. In response to the call of the Party, the artists concentrated all their energy on the great work of educating the popular masses in the idea of socialism and inspiring them toward labour exploits by vividly conveying the historical changes taking place in the life of the people and depicting the labour struggle and the typical portrayal of the working people.

The results attained by our fine arts in the four years since the armistice have been displayed on over ten occasions at national-scale exhibitions including the National Art Festival in honour of the 10th anniversary of the August 15 Liberation, the National Art Exhibition in honour of the elections to the Supreme People's Assembly, the National Amateur Art Circle Exhibition and the Arts Exhibition in honour of the Third Congress of the Korean Workers' Party, and the National Arts Exhibition in celebration of the 40th anniversary of the October Revolution.

What is characteristic of the development of fine arts in the post-war period is that diverse genres have developed their own spheres, and that quantitative increase has been accompanied by qualitative improvement.

The above-mentioned exhibitions demonstrated the epochal achievements made by the Korean art of socialist realism since the liberation under the guidance of the Korean Workers' Party. The exhibitions once again brought home to the spectators the superiority of the people's democratic system; enhanced their pride in the gigantic achievements made by the Korean people under the guidance of the Korean Workers' Party; and broadened their prospect for the bright future.

It is worthy of special mention that at the 6th World Youth and Student Festival held in Moscow, the "Dance" by Kim Yong Joon, a painting in the traditional Korean style, was awarded a gold medal and many other works by Korean artists won prizes. This demonstrated the epochal development of our art which has inherited the tradition of national art and has been absorbing experiences of advanced art of the Soviet Union, and served as proof of the correctness of the policy of our Party on literature and art.

To cite some of the typical works of the post-war period: "Dance" by Kim Yong Joon depicting the Korean classical dance and "The Shinkye Rapids" by the same painter depicting Korea's landscape, "The Brother Fall" by Rim Ja Yun, "Plum" by Cha Dai Do, "Farm Village in May" by Chung Jong Yuh, "Sunflower" and "Azalea" by Li Suk Ho, "Peasant Music" and "Pyongyang Rises Up" by Li Pal Chan in the field of traditional Korean painting; "An Evening in Moranbong Hill" by Kim Kwan Bo, "Flames of Bochunbo" depicting the advance of the Kim Il Sung anti-Japanese partisans toward the homeland and "The Revolutionary Fighter Pak Dal" by Merited Artist Chung Kwan Chul, "Looking out over the Sea off Ongjin Island" by Kil Chin Sup, "Regret of Father" by Rim Byung Sam, "An Evening on the Taidong River" and "The Son Back Home" by Merited Artist Sunwoo Dam depicting the demobbed son's coming home, "The Wonsan General Strike" and "Twilight at Poogam" by Oh Taik Kyung and "Peasant Music" by Li Kwai Dai, "Story about Life before Liberation" by Kim Suk Yong, "First Birthday" by Moon Hak Soo, "Early Summer in the Valley" by Kim Man Hyung in oil painting; and Chung Hyun Woong's graphic "Tale of Rabbit," Pak Sung Hi's cartoon "Conscription under Syngman Rhee's Rule", Yu Hwan Ke's poster "U.S. Army, Go Home!" and Bai Woon Sung's woodcut "A Visiting" are outstanding works.

In the field of sculpture excellent works are Jo Won Shik's "A South Korean Boy Distributing Handbills", Han Yung Shik's "Kim Sat Kat," Cho Kyu Bong's "Portrait of a Young Sculptor", Kim Jung Soo's "First Snow", Merited Artist Moon Suk Oh's "Marshal Kim Il Sung in Boyhood", etc. Kim Il Yung's "Our Village" and Tsai Nam In's "The Tale of Shim Chung" are masterpieces of stage art and Kang Ho's "Mt. Baikdoo Is in Sight from All Directions" and Yun Sang Ryul's "Tale of Sado Fortress" are excellent works of film art. Our artists achieved great success under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea. Guided by the spirit of the Third Congress and the First Conference of the Workers' Party of Korea, they are striving to establish their independent identity, to go deeper into reality, and to create valuable works full of the spirit of socialist patriotism.

ARCHITECTURE

Architecture in the Kokuryo Kingdom had made noteworthy progress already around the beginning of the first century, which played a pioneer role in the development of architecture in ancient Korea.

There remain very few buildings in their original appearance built during the Kokuryo Kingdom. But from the stone buildings found in underground tombs and from fragmental relics standing here and there, the general features of architecture in the Kokuryo period can be learned.

Among the many remains uncovered so far the outstanding ones are those of the Anak Palace and the Keumkangsa Temple in Pyongyang. Besides these, remains of palaces, gates, temples and fortresses have been also found including the circular marble foundation stones of more than one metre in diametre. Also, big red-coloured tiles and other building materials have been found. Ancient Tomb No. 3 in Anak, Hwanghai Province, Twin Pillar Tomb in Ryonggang and the Big Tomb in Sammyori, Kangsu, speak well of the developed stone architecture of the Kokuryo days. Big scale and grandeur are the characteristics of the styles of buildings in the Kokuryo days.

In the Kingdom of Pakche, development of architecture began comparatively later. But from the sixth century, excellent architects of Pakche were often invited to the neighbouring countries.

In the middle of the sixth century, a Pakche architect named Abiji designed and built the nine-storey pagoda in the Temple of Hwangryongsa in Kyungjoo, the biggest temple in the Silla Dynasty. In the early part of the seventh century, an architect called Taimalyang was invited to Japan, where he worked out the design for the Horyuji temple, the oldest in Japan, and directed the construction. The nine-storey pagoda and the Horyuji temple were the best architectural achievements in the respective periods.

Remnants of buildings erected during the Pakche period are scattered in and around Puyu, its last capital. In the course of some 1,300 years, however, most of the Pakche buildings were ruined or burnt down. Today, there are only a few stone pagodas which retain their original forms.

However, many fragmental relics are to be found, from which one can learn the excellent features of Pakche architecture —the hard but beautifully engraved tiles unearthed from the sites of ancient buildings and the distribution of buildings peculiar to Pakche.

Pakche architects initiated the Korean style of stone pagoda in order to build enduring pagodas — monumental structures. In the early part of the 6th century, they built for the first time in Korea stone pagodas replacing the old wooden ones with marble which is produced everywhere in Korea. The multi-storey pagoda built in the Mirooksa in Iksan was the one of them. In the middle of the 6th century, another fine, five-storey pagoda was built in Puyu.

Of the Three Kingdoms Silla's architecture developed latest. But the talented people of Silla boldly adopted the developed cultures of Kokuryo and Pakche, displayed unparalleled creativeness. And her architecture advanced apace. With the swift growth of the national economy from the middle of the sixth century, in Silla bigger buildings were erected than those in the other two kingdoms.

Hwangryongsa temple, built in 553, was the biggest of the ancient Korean buildings. Its main hall covered some 880 square metres. The nine-storey wooden pagoda in the temple was over 80 metres high.

A pagoda in the Boonhwangsa temple, a big cathedral built in 634, was the most characteristic pagoda in Korea. The pagoda, it is said, was nine-stories originally. But the extant pagoda is three-stories. It was built with bluish stone cut in the shape of bricks.

The developed architecture of Silla is also manifested in the scientific establishments.

Chumsung-dai (Astronomical Observatory), built in Kyongju in the middle of the 7th century, is the oldest astronomical observatory in Asia. The observatory is built of granite, lamp chimney in shape, and 9.5 metres high. Gracefulness of the whole structure shows the high standard of Silla architecture.

Silla's architecture made further progress after 668 when she unified the peninsula. For the next 300 years Silla's fine arts enjoyed a golden age.

Almost all the wooden buildings of Silla ruined or were burnt down, and extant relics are, for the most part, stone buildings.

Boolkuksa temple built around the middle of the 8th century in Kyongju is renowned as typical architecture of Silla.

Disposition of buildings in conformity with the terrain features, excellent designing, the two staircases called Chungwoonkyo and Baikwoonkyo, and the wall connecting the two stairs, and the excellent artistic harmony of Sakya and Tabo pagodas —all these demonstrate a high degree of artistic talent and creativeness of the Korean nation.

The Sukkoolam Grotto in Mt. Toham, which was built around the same period as the Boolkuksa temple, is famous for its architecture and sculpture. The sculpture in the Sukkoolam Grotto is rated as the best Korean sculptural work.

Prominent architects of Silla took over the stone pagoda architecture of the Pakche period, developing it to perfection. A three-storey Sakya Pagoda in the Boolkuksa temple, a three-storey stone pagoda in the Kalhangsa temple, and twin three-storey pagodas in Chunkunri are typical stone pagodas built in the Silla period.

Korea's architecture made further progress and showed originality during the Koryu period. In the wooden construction, traditional styles were rearranged by developing Po and Ikkong in conformity with the purpose, relative importance and scale of the building. The two styles were carried over to the Li Dynasty as the leading styles.

Furthermore, in the stone pagoda building new novel and complicated styles came into being instead of the typical monotonous style of the Silla period. Consequently, many stone pagodas built during the Koryu period were of the combined style of Silla and Pakche. Sometimes the height of pagoda was raised by adding more stories (they were generally seven, nine or thirteen stories), or the traditional square body gave way to polygonal body—sexangular or octagonal—which gave the pagodas both novelty and sublimity.

In the Koryu period, Buddhist monasteries took the most important position in architecture.

Today, numerous sites of temples of the Koryu period are to be found in and around Kaesong. The sites of the Hyunhwasa, Boolilsa, Ryongtongsa, and Kaikooksa temples are impressive in size. Besides, many stone monuments, stone pagodas, and flag pole supports, etc., are to be found.

Altogether twelve wooden buildings of the Koryu period have been preserved, five of which are in the northern part of the country. They were all built after the 13th century. The Mooryangsoo Hall in the Boosuksa temple in Yongjoo, the Daiwoong Hall in the Sooduksa temple, the Eungjin and Keukrak Halls in the Sungboolsa temple in North Hwanghai Province are typical of Ikkong style of those days. These buildings are elegant and the designing is subtle and at the same time elaborate.

The Bokwang Hall in the Shimwoonsa temple, North Hwanghai Province, the Soong-in Hall in Pyongyang, and the Eungjin Hall in the Sukwangsa temple in Kangwon Province, are typical buildings of Po style.

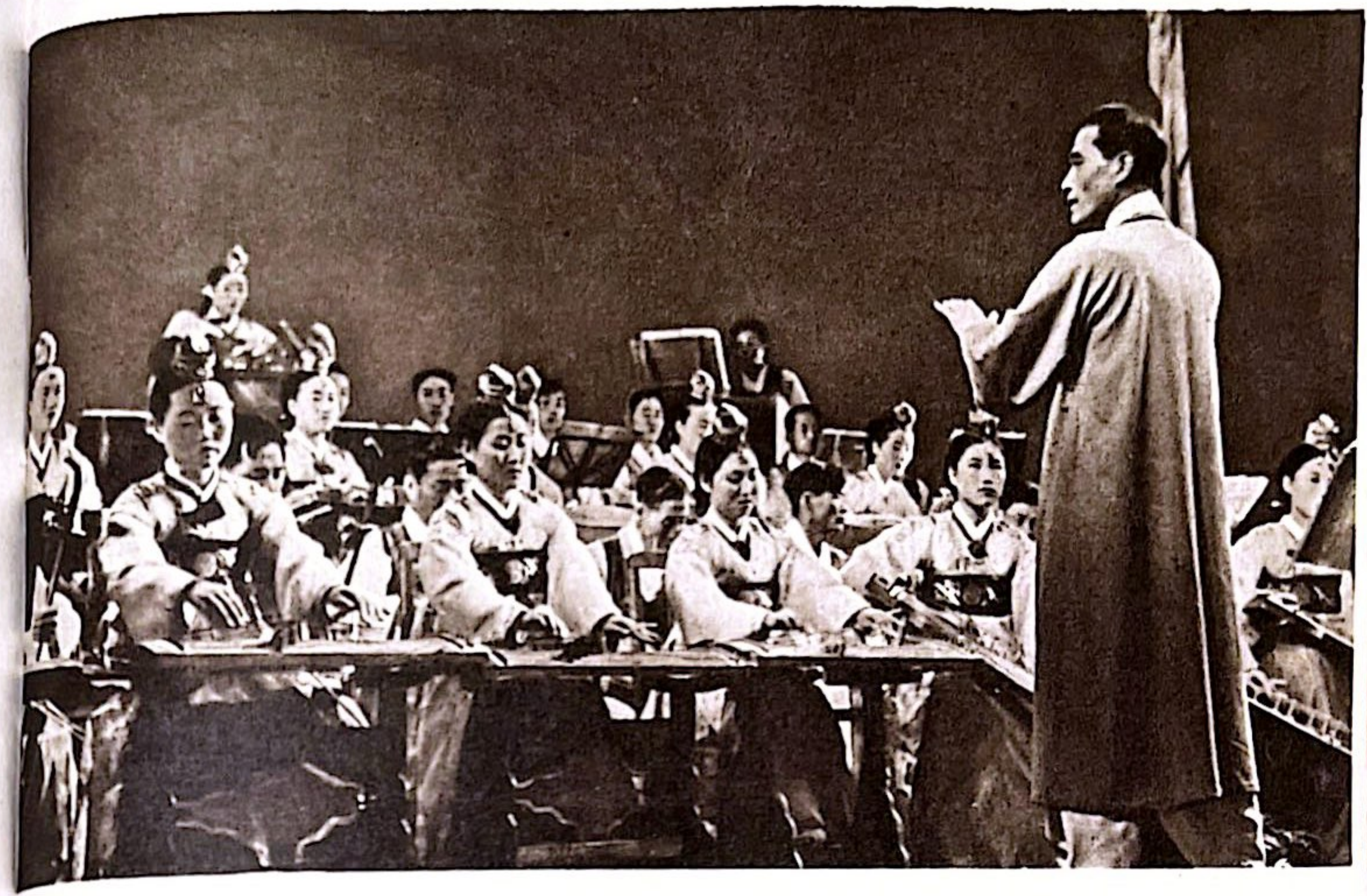
Drama "Tale of Ryangban (nobility)" staged at the State Drama Theatre

A puppet show, "Tale of Heungbo" is performed at the Pyongyang City Theatre

A feature film, "How can we live separated?"

A feature film, "Tale of Shim Chung"

A feature film, "The Uhrang River"



National instrument ensemble performed by the National Art Theatre members

The State Symphony Orchestra

A classical opera, "Tale of Choonhyang"

Opera "Solkai Village Folks"

"Drum Dance" by People's Artist Choi Seung Hi

Dance to the peasant music

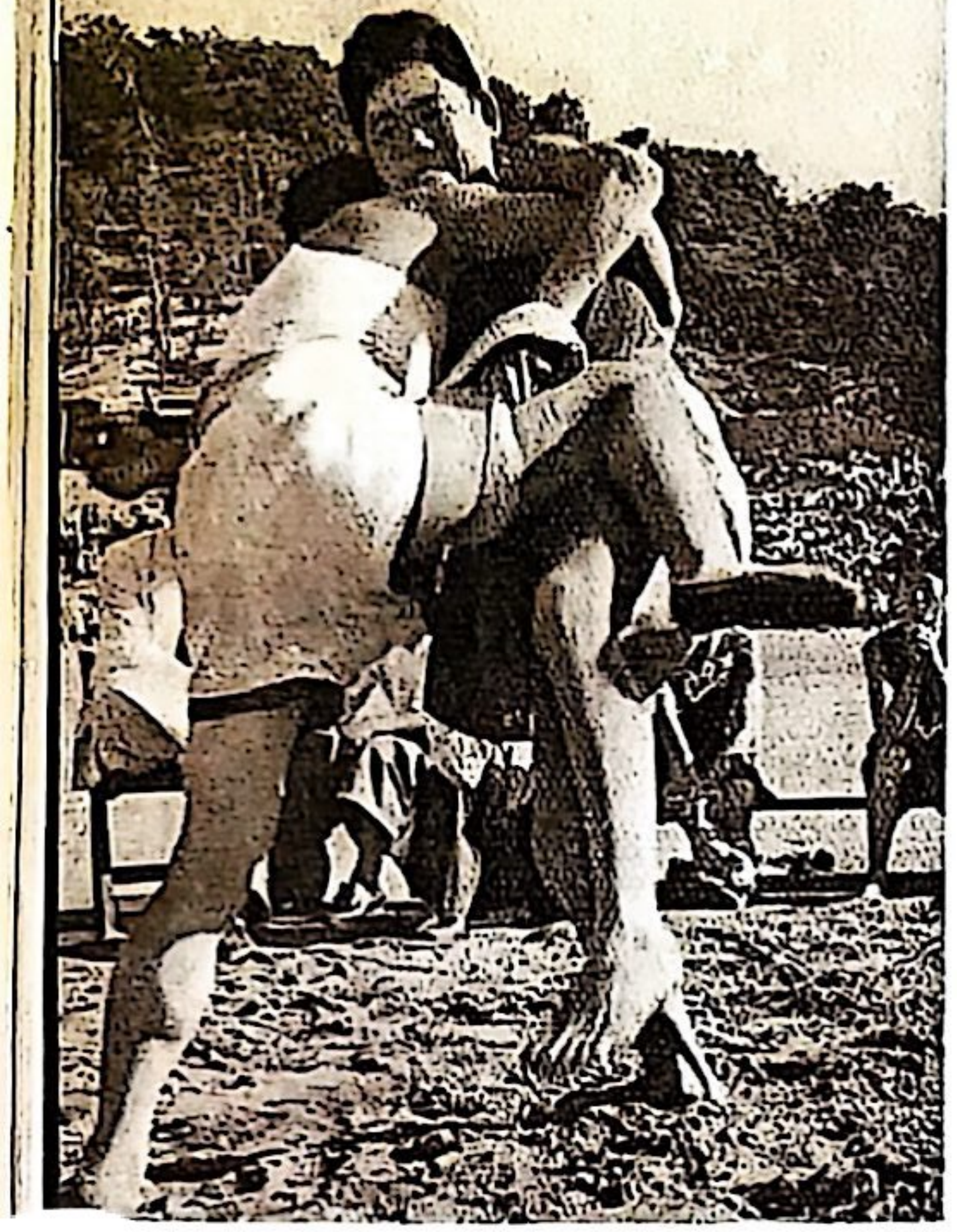
"Under the Serene Sky" performed by the State Choi Seung Hi Dance Theatre

At the State Central Historical Museum

The Moranbong Theatre

The Workers' Club of the Heungnam Fertilizer Factory

Adult education in the democratic publicity hall of the Pyongchun Agricultural Co-op, Shinchun County, South Hwanghai Province



Korean traditional game, wrestling

Korean traditional game "Seesawing"

A friendly football match between Pyongyang city team and Minsk Spartak team in Pyongyang

Characteristic features of these buildings are simplicity of structure and durability, the reverse of the buildings of Ikkong style.

In the Li Dynasty, Korea's architecture made progress not only in the building of temples and palaces but also in the building of fortresses, walls, private educational establishments, schools attached to Confucian shrines, hotels, private shrines, pavilions, pavilions for archery, and other big scale buildings.

Fortresses and walls made up a greater proportion in architectural work. Inasmuch as Confucianism was prominent at that time, the construction of schools attached to Confucian shrines, private educational establishments and private shrines also took an important portion under the influence of Confucianism.

Namdaimoon Gate in Seoul (built in 1448), Namdaimoon Gate in Kaesong (built in 1394), Botongmoon Gate and Taidongmoon Gate (built in 1635) in Pyongyang, Nammoon Gate in Uijoo (built in 1520) are very stately, typical structures of the Li Dynasty. Especially, the fortress built in Suwon in 1796 shows the high level attained in this field.

Among the many pavilions, some of the outstanding ones are Baiksangroo Pavilion in Anjoo (built in 1754), Boobyukroo Pavilion in Pyongyang (built in 1616), Ryunkwangjung Pavilion in Pyongyang (built in 1606), Tongkunjung Pavilion in Uijoo, Choksukroo Pavilion in Jinjoo, and Ryongnamroo Pavilion in Milyang.

For its scale and architectural value, the Tongmyongkwan House in Sungchon (built in 1770) was rated as one of the best architectural achievements in the latter part of the Li Dynasty. But it was burnt down by the U.S. bombing during the Korean war.

Kyungbokkoong Palace in Seoul (built in 1870), Changdukkoong Palace, Changkyungkoong Palace, and Duksookoong Palace are the best architectural achievements in the Li Dynasty period. Especially, Kyungbokkoong Palace, Duksookoong Palace, and Poongkyungkoong Palace (a detached palace) in Pyongyang are typical of the latter part of the Li Dynasty.

As for Buddhist monasteries. Kakhwangjun Hall in the Hwaumsa temple in Koore(built in 1703), and the halls in the temples of Haiinsa, Jangansa, Sukwangsa and Bohyunsa are fine relics for their scale and architectural value.

Speaking of the Korean architecture, one cannot overlook the traditional Korean houses. Suffice it to say they are richer in national features than any other form of architecture mentioned so far.

Most characteristic of the Korean house is the underfloor heating system, which was devised by the Kokuryo people in the days of the Three Kingdoms. It was first employed in the northern part of the country, but during the Li dynasty it was adopted by people throughout the country.

Evils of feudalism were reflected in the building of dwelling houses. Small peasants, who made up the greater part of the population, lived in shabby huts while mansions of the men of nobility consisted of scores of buildings enclosed within high walls. The big family system and the conception of predominance of man over woman in the feudal days were represented in the architecture of mansion-houses.

Precious architectural relics from the period of Three Kingdoms to recent times were handed down. What characteristic features have our ancient buildings?

Firstly, they show elegantly curved lines. Beams, eaves, pent-roof, row between the ranks of roof-tile and all other parts of roof as well as pillars are softly curved to subtle elegance.

Secondly, they show a balance and steadiness of structure suited to the scale and purpose (particularly of wooden buildings).

In the first half of the 20th century, in other words, during about half a century of Japanese imperialist rule, towns and buildings in Korea made deformed development. In towns, for example, the old feudalistic elements and the new ones built by the Japanese imperialists were so disproportioned, and towns were built haphazardly. And the styles of buildings are too varied — Korean, Japanese and European. Typical example of this could be found in Pyongyang, Seoul and in ports.

Dwelling houses were all one-storey wooden structures with walls made of mud, some 10 cm. thick. Such mud walls were unsuitable for the temperature of Korea. Especially, residential areas were congested. Little consideration was given to laying out squares or green belts in towns which are necessary for public health.

Only buildings of colonial government authorities, banks, enterprises, restaurants, and department stores stood imposingly in cities.

However, the liberation of the Korean nation from the Japanese imperialist rule in 1945 by the Soviet Army, and the establishment of the people's power in the northern part of the country provided conditions for briging about renovation in city planning and architecture.

After the liberation, the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the D.P.R.K. laid down the tasks of reconstructing at an early date the cities and villages which the Japanese imperialists had destroyed, so as to provide better public health, hygienic and all other necessary facilities for the working people. And plans had to be drawn up to build cities, towns and villages with recreational and resting facilities. Moreover, the Party and the government called for introducing a socialist realistic method into architecture. Also plans were made to immediately investigate, repair and preserve the nation's historic and cultural relics which the Japanese vandals ruined.

From 1946, the construction of new styled workers' halls, theatres, schools, hospitals and dwelling houses started in Pyongyang, the democratic capital, and in many local towns and villages, and the construction progressed briskly. Preservation of valuable heritages of national architecture was also undertaken.

Moranbong Theatre, Kim Il Sung University, Central Hospital, Rodong Shinmoon Press and many multistoried apartment houses in Pyongyang, House of Culture in Shinuiju, and Workers' Hall in Wonsan were typical buildings constructed during the peaceful construction before the Korean War. Noteworthy in our architecture in the early days after the liberation was the building of liberation monuments in Pyongyang and in many towns.

Buildings constructed in the early days after the liberation served as a sort of prelude to modern architecture in our country.

Many architectural relics which had been in bad repair during the days of Japanese rule were restored to their original form. They include the Boobyukroo Pavilion in Pyongyang, Tongmyongkwan House in Sungchun, Baiksangroo Pavilion in Anjoo, and Sukwangsa, Bohyongsa and Yujumsa temples.

But, during the three-year long war unleashed by the American imperialists, the American brutes bombed barbarously and indiscriminately our cities, towns and villages, levelling and destroying wantonly all the buildings, houses and valuable relics of our national culture.

But the entire architects and building workers, confident of victory in the war under the correct guidance of the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the D.P.R.K. overcoming the difficult war-conditions, started to work out a grand programme of post-war reconstruction. General reconstruction programmes of Pyongyang and other major cities and towns were drawn up during the war time.

With the victorious termination of the war, unprecedented grand construction and technical reform were felt necessary.

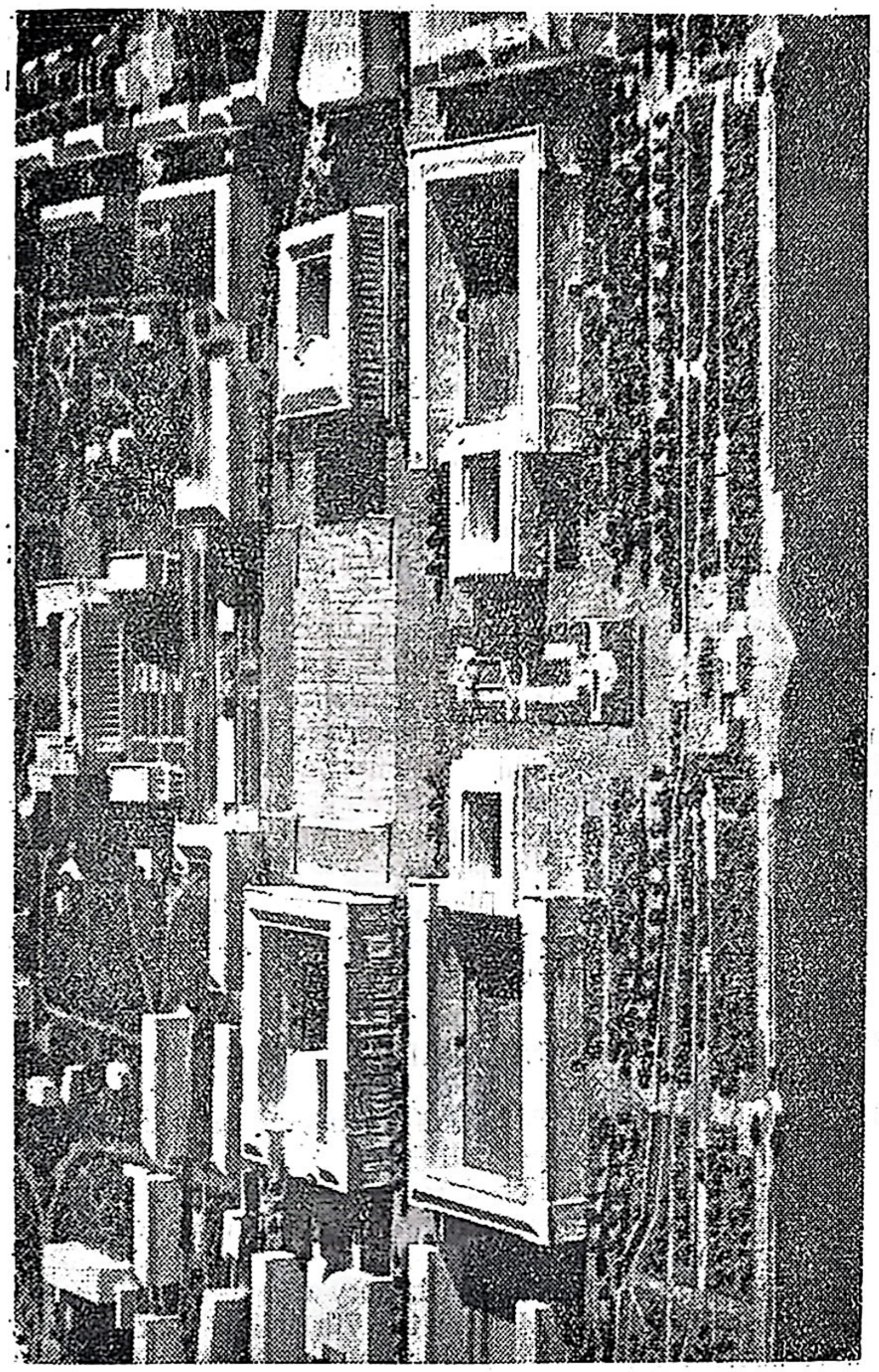
Under the personal guidance of Premier Kim Il Sung, reconstruction and building of Pyongyang, the democratic capital, proceeded apace in accordance with the general programme. In the days following the armistice the Party and the government saw to it that in construction priority was given to dwelling houses and schools in Pyongyang and in other places.

During the Three-Year Plan period (1954-1956), construction work proceeded more briskly. Many buildings were constructed in accordance with socialist realistic architecture. Among them were the Moranbong Theatre, Cabinet Buildings No. 1 and No. 2, Office of the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly, Workers' Apartment House in Pyongyang and Workers' Hall in Heungnam. Architectural relics such as the Soonginjun Hall in Pyongyang and Namdaimoon Gate in Kaesong were repaired and reconstructed.

Construction work has become more brisk with the start of the First Five-Year Plan (1957-1961). Many modern buildings have already gone up. They include Pyongyang Railway Station, Workers' Apartment House under the control of the Ministry of Light Industry in Pyongyang, Youth Hall in Hamheung, and an astronomical observatory. And, at the same time, many ancient buildings have been reconstructed. Among them are the Sungboolsa temple in Mt. Jungbang and the Boobyukroo Pavilion in Pyongyang. Rebuilding is in full swing in celebration of the 15th anniversary of the August 15 Liberation. A Workers' Palace, a Youth Palace, a Children's Palace, a Grand Opera Theatre, a Circus Theatre, a big department store, etc. will be built.

What are the main features of our architecture in the days after liberation, especially since cease-fire?

First, our building workers endeavoured to achieve a new



Plan of construction of the Kim Il Sung Square in the centre of Pyongyang (Labour Palace—the central building—is now under design) national style of architecture. To this end, our architects are tirelessly working to carry forward the relics of national architecture, rejecting every manifestation of bourgeois formalism and doctrinairism, and to create socialist realistic architecture suited to the life and taste of the Korean people today and to the weather and topography of Korea.

Secondly, the movement took place for industrializing construction with the aim of building prefabricated houses. To this end, strenuous efforts are being made to speed up construction by standardizing designs and precast parts, industrializing the production of precast parts and by mechanizing the processes of construction. And, at the same time, construction workers are vigorously striving to check unnecessary decorations and waste.

Thirdly, for the successful carrying out of the vast construction in the post-war days, a nation-wide movement is under way. Factory and office workers, armymen, students, and city dwellers have taken part in construction work since the armistice displaying unprecedented patriotic devotion, and have scored tremendous successes.

As a result, in the short space of time since the war, in Pyongyang, Hamheung and other cities, groundwork for grand modern cities have been laid in accordance with a new programme, and new blocks of flats have sprung up.

In workers' settlements and rural villages, too, many modern dwelling houses are being built according to standardized designs. The scale of construction is extending and its speed increasing.

During the First Five-Year Plan period, our cities, towns and villages will take on a splendid look with many new buildings, and socialist culture will effloresce.

HANDICRAFTS

Our Korea's handicrafts hold a distinctive place in the history of arts.

Not only have they enriched and beautified the life of the Korean people but they have made a great contribution to the arts and handicrafts of the world.

Our handicrafts enjoy a long history of several thousand years. Already in the period from the 7th to the 12th century they were flourishing.

The range of Korea's handicrafts is wide: ceramics, wood and bamboo crafts, dyeing and weaving, and works of mother-of-pearl inlay, straw and horse-hair, metal work, etc.

Korean pottery and porcelain were already famous at the time of the Three Kingdoms.

However, during the Koryu Dynasty, our ceramic ware reached a new high level based on the old tradition. Particularly, famous were the blue green celadon ware and the inlaid porcelain produced in the 12th century. Even the people of the Sung Dynasty of China praised the Koryu celadon porcelain as the "finest in the world." And the porcelain inlaid with coloured clay is without parallel in the history of world ceramics in the harmony of colour, gracefulness, and creative designs. Moreover, the elegant figures and graceful shapes adopted from nature are greatly admired today.

During the Li Dynasty which followed Koryu, Korean ceramics made a further development. The white porcelain of the 15th century, plain or with designs in blue, also enjoyed world-wide fame. It is graceful and elegant.

The Korean lacquer ware inlaid with mother-of-pearl were famous both at home and abroad already in the Koryu Dynasty. The pearl inlay work of Koryu is known for its delicate designs and that of the Li Dynasty for its simplicity.

Inlaid works are our typical handicrafts: ceramic ware, decorated with incised coloured clays, lacquer ware inlaid with mother-of-pearl, and inlaid metal works, to name a few.

The art of dyeing and weaving was highly developed already in the era of Kokuryo Dynasty. Korean brocade and thin silks called Sa and Ra were known for the beautiful patterns and colours.

Besides ceramics and lacquer ware, the following can be named as some of the outstanding Korean handicrafts: metal, jade and other semi-precious stones, wooden, bamboo, horn-sheet-covering, horse-hair works and embroideries.

From the 13th century, the development of our handicrafts was greatly hampered by the successive wars caused by foreign invaders, maltreatment of handicraftsmen by the feudal ruling circles and, above all, by the Japanese colonialists. Under Japanese imperialist rule the Korean handicraft works were driven out of the market. Only the stubborn effort of our handicraftsmen kept the traditions alive until liberation.

But the story is entirely different after the liberation of Korea. Korea's handicrafts began to make headway again.

Inspired by the correct policy of the Party and government on literature and arts, our handicraftsmen, as proud artists, have been devoting themselves to the development of national handicrafts. Today there exist many institutions and enterprises which are furthering the development of our craft and art works— Art Research Institute, Handicrafts Workshop, Embroidery Institute, etc. A number of china and porcelain factories have been built. Mention should be made of the rapid progress our handicrafts have made in the post-war days based firmly on socialist realism in creation. Our handicraftsmen have waged a stubborn struggle against the anti-realistic tendency.

It must also be mentioned that the traditions which have been laid in oblivion are being gradually restored with new content in old forms.

Lastly, our handicrafts are covering a wider range, as the rich source of materials is fully utilized and stress is laid on manufacturing items of everyday use.

Recently many beautiful lacquer and mother-of-pearl works have come out. Among these are a lacquer tray by Yoon Se Woong, a folding screen made of mother-of-pearl, the combined work of Jung Sung Jo, An Ki Nong, Kim Hong Kyoo and Choi Shi Hyup and a chest inlaid with mother-of-pearl by Choi Shi Hyup, etc., which restored the old tradition.

Horn-sheet-covering work, a special art of Korea, has also shown remarkable development. Jung Tai Yoon's mirror box, Li Chul Hoon's small chest may be named as some of the best recent works.

Among the wooden and bamboo works, Kim Joo Sun's wooden fruit-tray, Baik Moon Kyoo's wooden candy-box inlaid with bamboo, and Byun Sang Keun's bamboo bowl are some of the recent outstanding pieces.

Embroidery and doll-making have also made considerable progress. In the field of embroidery a new style of realistic description has been introduced into the traditional technique. In particular, portrait and landscape embroideries which newly emerged in the post-liberation period reached a new high level. Doll-making also has made spectacular progress in displaying national sentiment. Choi Hak Soon's "Wakonghoo" (Korean music instrument) and Kang Jung Nim's "Fruit-picking Girl" take first place among recent dolls. Among the famous embroidery works are Jun Sook Ja's "Portrait of Lenin," Kim Soon Yi's "Plum-tree" and Li Wun In's "Chicken."

The ceramics, which had been gradually deteriorating since the end of the Li Dynasty, has not yet reached the high level of the blue-green celadon ware of the Koryu Dynasty or the white porcelain of the Li Dynasty. However, thanks to the untiring effort of the pottery and porcelain workers, substantial development has been recorded.

Horse-hair work, rare in other countries of the world, and thread work have a long tradition; straw crafts, jade and semi-precious stones and other crafts which are rich in local colour, have been neglected long since. They are being restored. Choi Chi Bum's cloud-dragon ink-stone, made of stone produced in Wuiwun, and Kim Jung Sam's marble dove are a few examples of fine pieces in these fields.

Our handicrafts have gone through a harsh trial of history. Especially they suffered from the war unleashed by the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique. However, in a short space of time, only four years after the war, our handicrafts have made rapid development and enjoy again world-wide fame.

Lastly it must be mentioned that the decisions of the Cabinet in March 1958 on the further development of handicrafts provided several concrete measures to extend and strengthen state enterprises and producers' co-ops in this branch. Soon more works will be produced and much will be exported.

MUSIC

Korean music goes back to the remote era. It has built up a solid foundation through a long historical course of development.

From the old records we learn that Korean primitive tribes enjoyed dancing and singing, which were closely linked with labour and rites.

Korean music took shape and made marked progress in the period of Three Kingdoms—Kokuryo, Silla and Pakche (formed around the first century).

According to the History of Three Kingdoms and the Complementary Notes on the History of Three Kingdoms, Wang Sanak of Kokuryo invented the stringed instrument "Kumoonko" and composed about 170 pieces, and Ok Bo Ko composed 30 pieces.

The Pakche Dynasty had its own music tradition. It is recorded in the old chronology of Japan that Pakche musicians played a major role in developing Japanese music. According to available records, about 1,400 years ago Woorok, an outstanding musician of Silla, invented the stringed instrument "Kayakeum" and composed 12 pieces for the instrument. The "Daiak", invented by the great musician Paikkyul, which is an embryo of today's "Banga Taryung," is believed to have made its appearance in the same period.

From the fact that a music administration was instituted in the court of Silla we can know that music became professional and specialized at that time.

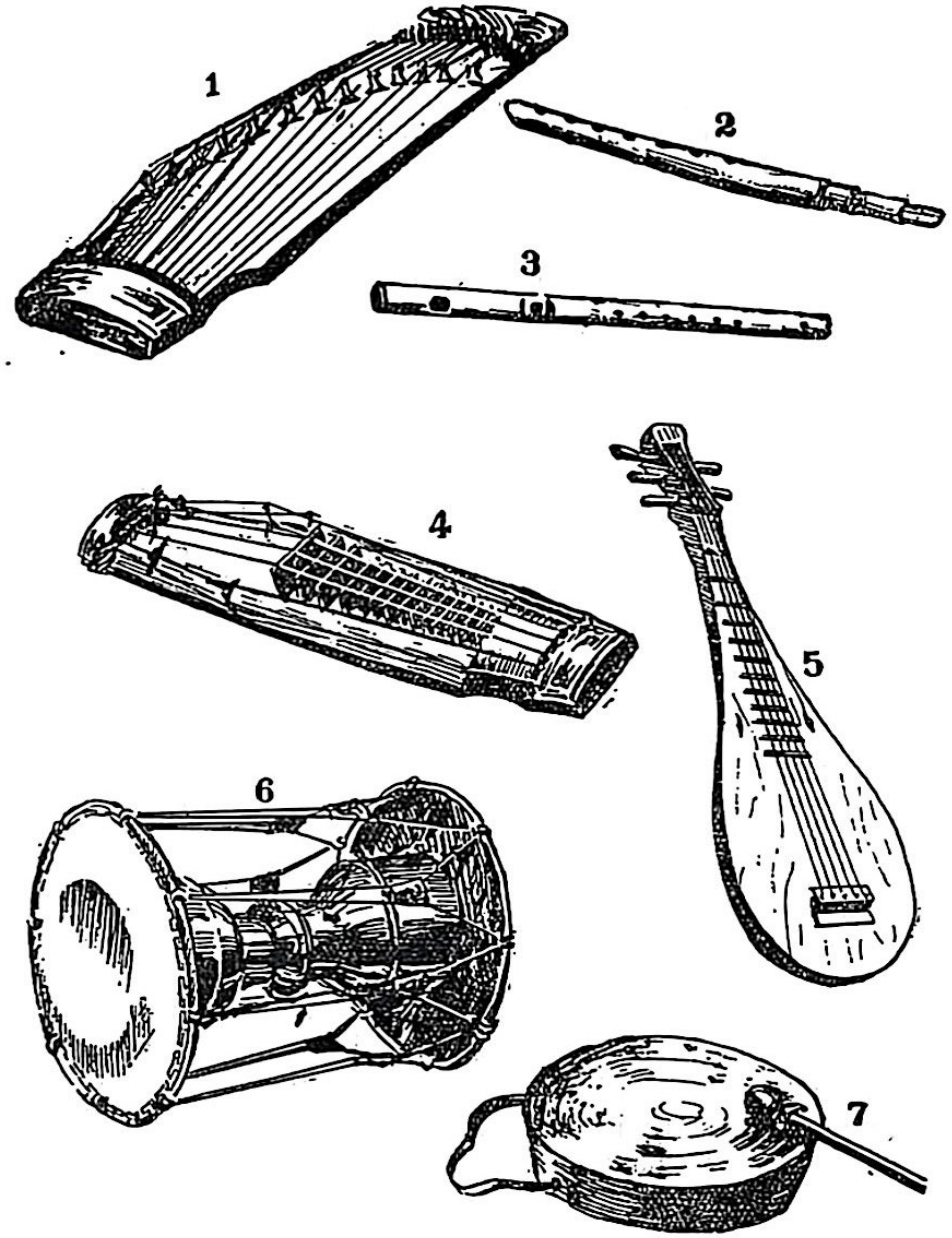
In the period of Koryu Buddhist music for Buddhist festivals such as Yundeung Party or Palkwan Party flourished.

In the Koryu court a music administration called Kyobang was instituted. In the middle part of the 12th century court music was introduced from China (Sung Dynasty), which was different from the traditional Buddhist music. At that time the music administration was rearranged in connection with the rites in the court.

However, court music, in the true sense of the word, made its greatest development in the period of the Li Dynasty.

It is of special note that in the reign of King Sejong the famous musician Pak Yun, under the sponsorship of King himself, carried out some reform in music. Pak Yun and his followers invented or revised several scores of musical instruments. They also refined court music handed down from the Koryu Dynasty and perfected the score. The score of these compositions, the oldest in Korea, is recorded in the existing chronology of King Sejong. Later, in the reign of King Sejo the method of scoring was improved.

The professional music in the period of the Li Dynasty made advance chiefly under the favour of the court. It constituted an ensemble of poetry, song and dance. And the level of its technique was high. In 1493 "Akhak Kwoebum" (Standard Book on Music), the acme of the court music, was published. This book was compiled by collective labour of Sung Hyun and other musicologists. The book may well be called an encyclopaedia of



Specific musical instruments of Korea

1. Kayakeum *2. Piri* *3. Juttai* *4. Kumoonko*
5. Hyangbipa *6. Jangko* *7. Kwainggwari*

music. This book, together with Sejong and Sejo score books, furnishes rich materials for studying Korean music.

Representative scholars of the Practical School such as Pak Ji Won, pseudonym Yun Am (1737-1805), and Jung Yak Yong, pseudonym Da San (1762-1836), published works on music. They elucidated the educational role played by music in social life and its aesthetic aspects.

Apart from the highly developed court music, steady progress was registered in the popular music.

Creation of popular music and folk song, in particular, are of great significance in our Korean music heritage.

According to the historical records, Silla Hyangka includes many folk songs. Even the Koryu court music was sometimes rendered in the form of popular music. In the reign of King Sejong in the Li Dynasty the work of collecting folk songs was briskly conducted. However, no materials showing the rhythmical characteristics of those folk songs are available.

Rich, varied folk songs have been handed down orally among the common people, telling different aspects of life in the past. We have a wealth of labour songs such as the Song of Peasants, the Song of Fishermen and the Song of Weavers, and lyrical songs reflecting the rich spiritual life of the Korean people.

Yangsando and Arirang with their lyrical beauty represent the sensibility of Koreans to reality as well as their romantic inclination. Characteristic of lyrical songs is their organic combination with the rhythm of dancing.

There are quite a few folk songs singing the protests against social and national oppression.

Korean folk song characterized by truthfulness, fluency, rhythmical effects and refinement is chiefly based on pentatonic scale (G-A-C-D-E-G or A-C-D-E-G-A). Of course, they have many exceptions—some have variations of conjunct degrees and others have chromatic scale, thus going beyond the pentatonic scale.

Korean folk song is characterized by its time and rhythm. Most of folk songs have compound time, that is, three, six, nine or twelve beats in a measure. Simple common time is rare.

Korean folk song has its characteristic form. The form is generally divided into two parts—one is the refrain and the other is a solo part. Noteworthy is it that the refrain is placed first in the song. Some folk songs have variations and rondo, and others have quite a free form.

Along with folk songs, peasant music has a long history and holds a very important place in Korean music. It is based on the combination of dance and instrumental music showing distinct aspects of Korean national instrumental music and folk dance.

The Korean peasant music is rich in joviality, melody and lively rhythm.

Pansori and Changkeuk have played a conspicuous role in developing Korean national music.

At first the pansori took intonation from the folk song which was popular in the southern districts of Korea. It was toward the close of the 18th century that the style of pansori was perfected by Kwangdai (a sort of minstrel bards) who were at the bottom of the social scale. It flourished in the 19th century and around the beginning of the 20th century. Pansori is a dramatic epic song. Many pieces of folk lore including the Tale of Choonhyang and the Tale of Shim Chung were first given in the form of pansori.

From the end of the 19th century to the beginning of the 20th century Changkeuk, Korean classical opera, developed on the basis of pansori.

The Hyup-ryool-sa Society with the outstanding actors Song Man Kap, Kim Chang Hwan, Li Dong Baik and Jung Jung Ryul as the leading core did their performance in Seoul, the capital.

After the Japanese imperialists occupied Korea in 1910 a number of Korean classical operas including the Tale of Choonhyang and the Tale of Shim Chung, played a part in enhancing the national consciousness of the Korean people. In face of many difficulties caused by the policy of the Japanese imperialists on obliterating Korean national culture, they displayed staunchly their vitality.

During the Japanese occupation of Korea (from 1910 to 1945) Korean music was confronted with great obstacles to its development. Nevertheless, some outstanding creative results were achieved. The Korean Proletarian Music Union, born in 1927, affiliated to the KAP which formed a wing of the Korean revolutionary movement, was keen to the class character of music and waged a struggle against all hues of reactionary bourgeois music, thus contributing to the awakening of national consciousness and revolutionary spirit of the Korean people.

In the 1930's the anti-Japanese armed struggle ushered in a new era for the liberation struggle of the Korean people. A brisk musical activity was carried on in the Korean People's Revolutionary Army led by Kim Il Sung and in the liberated areas, thus forming the revolutionary tradition of Korean music.

The partisans created many songs such as the "March of the Partisans" and the "Song of All-Out Mobilization". These songs spread widely among the people in the liberated areas. International revolutionary songs including the "International" were also popular. A style of revolutionary popular songs was created in the course of armed struggle in the 30's.

The liberation of Korean people by the great Soviet Army opened up wide prospects in the life of Koreans. It provided great possibility for the efflorescence of Korea's national culture. Korean music had for the first time in her history full scope for its development under the people's power.

The patriotic composers were embraced in the North Korean Musicians' Union organized right after liberation. In carrying on their creative work they implemented the literature and art policy of the Party and the government. And they took positive part in securing historic gains of our people.

An important and militant genre of music after liberation is a patriotic popular song. The characteristic of this popular song is the intonation of march song representing the militant spirit and sentiments of the people who started a new life under the people's democratic system.

It is quite natural that after liberation the popular song took patriotic themes, such as the "Bright Homeland" by the Merited Artiste Li Myun Sang, and the "Patriotic Song" and "The Song of General Kim Il Sung" by Kim Won Kyun, which sings the outstanding services rendered by the national hero Kim Il Sung.

Many popular songs were composed in praise of the Soviet Army and Soviet people, in the hope for strengthening the friendship and solidarity with the Soviet Union. There were also popular songs singing the democratic reforms and inspiring the people to carry through the reforms.

In this period the "Song of Ploughing the Fields" was composed by Ham Hong Koon, "The Song of Struggle" by Kim Won Kyun and "The Song of National Salvation Struggle" by Pak Han Kyu reflected the ardent desire of the Korean people for the peaceful unification of the country.

Speaking of the post-liberation development of Korean music, it must not be forgotten that cantatas, oratorios, works for symphony orchestra and operas have shown a marked progress.

The most successful was the cantata "The Yalu River" by Kim Ok Sung. It was dedicated to the brilliant services by the Kim Il Sung Anti-Japanese Partisans in the grim period of Japanese oppression.

The operas "The Tale of Choonhyang" and "Kongjui and Patjui" by Li Myun Sang, and the opera "Ondal" by Hwang Hak Keun based upon the legendary themes, marked a milestone in the path of Korean classical opera. The champions of Changkeuk such as Merited Artists An Ki Ok, Pak Moon Il and Jung Nam Hui kept up the tradition of Korea's national music in defiance of every description of hardships caused by the Japanese policy of wiping out Korea's national culture. Since liberation Changkeuk has made a surprising development. The artists of classical opera pushed ahead with their creation under the deep solicitude of the Party and the government. They succeeded in putting on the stage a number of their creations such as "Tale of Choonhyang", "Tale of Heungbo" and "Tale of Janghwa Hongryun", etc.

The themes of peace and construction were replaced by those of patriotism and annihilation of enemy during the Fatherland Liberation War. In this period the duet form came to the fore, and played a great role in inspiring the people to victory in the war. It was a music genre suitable for small circle art performance. Through this form, Korean music manifested its excellent characteristics. Typical of it is "The Song of Scouts" composed by Kim Ok Sung, Merited Artiste. This song expresses the confidence of the soldiers of the People's Army in their just cause, their optimism, militant spirit, romanticism and humorous mood. We can cite many examples. To name a few, the very popular duet, Choi Soo Dong's "Footpath in the Deep Valley" depicting the life on the front, Jung Jin Ok's "Cheerful Drivers" as well as Yun Sung Jin's "At the Well" and Kim Yung Kyu's "The Spinning Wheel", all of which portrayed the life of the people who devoted themselves to serving the front and the rear. These songs still retain their vitality to this date.

In this period, many lyrical songs—romance—were created. Among them are Li Myun Sang's "The Moonkyong Hill" and "The 2,000 ri Yalu River", Kim Ok Song's "My Song in the Trench", and Kim Jin Myung's "Hurry up, Dapple Cow". These songs are alive with realism and the level of their artistic technique is high. This is a merit of Korean music in the field of lyrical song.

The development of Korean music after the war is spectacular. The ranks of composers and performers have grown. Their unity of ideology and artistic action has been strengthened still further. In this connection, mention should be made of a signal achievement in the field of symphony orchestra.

Shin Do Sun's "Symphony No. 1," Cho Kil Suk's "Symphonic Poem", "For the Fatherland" and "Orchestral Suite for Korean Folk Song," all of which won awards at the Sixth World Youth and Students Festival, Moon Kyung Ok's "Victory", Kim Il Hak's symphonic poem "The Story of Soldiers" and others made no small contribution to developing the style of Korean national symphony.

In the field of chamber music creative work has been vigorously carried on, and a number of pieces of excellent instrumental music created. Among them are Shin Do Sun's "Violin Sonata", Kim Kil Hak's "Violin Sketch", Hong Soo Pyo and Cho Kil Suk's "Quartet" (all these pieces won prizes at the World Youth and Students Festivals, Shin Do Sun's winning first). In the field of opera considerable success has been registered. Particularly, successful were recompositions of "Kongjui and Patjui" based on a Korean legend by Li Myun Sang, "Eight Fairies in Mt. Keumkang" by Li Myun Sang, "Ondal and the Princess" by Hwang Hak Keun, and new pieces "Moon over Keumran" by Ham Hong Keun and "The People of Solkai Village" by Moon Kyung Ok which represents the struggle of the anti-Japanese partisans led by Kim Il Sung.

Alongside the opera, Changkeuk, Korean classical opera, has made spectacular progress. The "Tale of Choonhyang," and the "Tale of Shim Chung" were epoch-making presentations. Particularly, the latter was highly praised in the Soviet Union and China.

In the same period were created orchestral works such as Moon Kyung Ok's cantata "The Song of Peace", Kim Kil Hak's choral suite "Yuldoo-Samchun-ri Fields", Li Myun Sang's "The Taidong River", etc.

In the field of song many excellent works were produced. Among them are Kim Kil Hak's "The Song of Construction", and Pak Kyu Chul's "Cheerful Carrying-on-the-pole Work", which all treat the post-war reconstruction. Li Myun Sang's "Bochonbo, My Native Village", La Hwa Il's "My Hometown", Li Jun Un's "Let Us Sing of the Yalu River" won the prize at the Sixth World Youth and Students Festival.

At present we have a number of professional musical organizations: the State Art Theatre, the National Art Theatre, the Popular Art Theatre, the State Synmphony Orchestra, the State Choir, the People's Army Ensemble, the Transport Ministry Art Theatre in Pyongyang; the provincial art theatre in every province. Young musicians are trained in a four-year conservatoire, a three-year musical institute attached to the conservatoire and a middle grade music school.

A popular musical movement is carried on through musical circles organized in enterprises, offices, farm and fishing villages, schools and the units of the People's Army. From among these circles young talented artists are emerging.

DANCE

Korean dancing art has been developed in close link with the life of people down through the ages.

According to old records, for instance, Late Han Chronology, Chin-soo's Chronology of the Three Kingdoms, Biographical Documents, etc., the Korean dance combined with singing appeared three thousand years ago.

It was performed when annual rituals or festivals were observed. Examples of this dance are Chun-goon in Mahan, Moochun in Ye, Yongko in Pooyu. In the period of the Three Kingdoms (57 B.C.-668 A.D.) the simple, ritual forms of the Korean dance gradually became rich in content and diversified in form.

In Silla Dynasty (57 B.C.-935 A.D.) Chuyong Dance appeared, and was handed down to the period of the Li Dynasty (1392-1910), and became a favorite of the court. In the 7th century the masked sword dance called Kwangchang-moo representing patriotism was popular among official circles.

In Kokuryo (37 B.C.-668 A.D.) and Pakche (18 B.C.-660 A.D.), too, dancing and music made progress. In the reign of King Muwang of Pakche (612 A.D.) the musician Maimaji went over to Japan and settled down in Sakurai village. He established a sort of music and dance institute. The masks which he took with him are preserved in the Horyuji temple in Nara.

Historically, Korean dances can be classified into court, ritual and folk dances.

The court dance served to hold ceremonies in the king's court and satisfy the pleasure of the nobles. It had a characteristic rhythm, more formalistic than theatrical. Usually dancers moved only the upper part of their body, expressing refined, gentle and lyrical beauty. Typical of this dance are the Botaipyong, Jyungdaiup, Sooyunjang, Pokoorak and Mooko.

As for the ritual dance, there are Monk, Jakup, Bupko, and Bara dances, which originated from Buddhism and the sword and bell dances of a military character. Particularly, the monk dance is characterized by its refined movement which expresses human emotions—mental agony, resentment, joy, etc.

The Korean folk dance has a long history. It was created through the life of labour. Each locality has its own dance. The Korean folk dance is characterized by emotional, active and rich movement. Examples are the Talchoom (masked dance) and peasant music dance.

The masked dance, which reflects a long period of hunting life, developed dramatic and characteristic aspect. In various districts the people expressed through dance their hatred of the feudal rulers, nobles and monks and satirized their hypocrisy. The people of the lower class enjoyed out-of-door dances around a bonfire at night.

The peasant music dance—a combined form of folk song and dance—has its origin in the primitive clan system and common labour in ancient times. Its rhythm is varied, and the tone is strong with a peculiar accent. It is also expressive of a militant spirit and powerful emotion.

Mention must be made of the "Kangkang-soowolrai", group dance of southern localities which was traditionally performed by women, and the "Dondolrari dance" expressing patriotism, which originated in Hamkyung Province.

The Korean national dance declined under the cruel rule of the incompetent feudal lords in the closing years of Li Dynasty. Things went from bad to worse after the Japanese imperialists occupied Korea. The Korean patriotic artists, however, upheld the national tradition of art.

The famous dancer Choi Seung Hi made every effort, under the influence of the KAP, to carry forward the tradition of national dance. Despite the Japanese oppression she created a number of dances expressing the spirit of patriotism. Moreover, she played a great part in establishing the Korean national dance.

Quite a few Korean artists devoted themselves to the development of folk dance. However, due to the Japanese colonial policy of obliterating Korean national culture the normal development of Korean dance was greatly hampered.

The August 15 Liberation opened the way for its free and rapid progress. After liberation, Korean dancers deeply inspired by the correct literature and art policy and measures set forth by the Workers' Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, made strenuous efforts to discover and develop the Korean traditional dances which had long been trampled upon, and to create popular dances reflecting the new reality. Choi Seung Hi, People's Artiste, and the Dancing Company under her direction produced a great number of young dancers, contributing greatly to the systematic development of Korean folk dance. She also introduced modern technique into Korean folk dance and created a national ballet.

Her excellent works are the ballet "Tale of Sado Fortress" and "Under the Serene Sky," which have reached the world level. She also created "The Dance Dedicated to General Kim Il Sung," "Over the Raging Waves," "Time and Dancing", "A Korean Mother", "Song of Peace," etc.

Jung Ji Soo and other choreographers of the State Art Theatre have done much to train young dancers since liberation.

The State Art Theatre produced for the first time in Korea the Russian ballet Tchaikowsky's "Swan Lake," and "Kongjui and Patjui," "Moon over Keumran" and "The Colours are Flying on the Height" were put on the stage.

The young talented dancer An Sung Hi, Merited Artiste, improved her excellent technique in dancing while she was in the Soviet Union.

After she returned home she staged "Gypsy Dance," "Pledge", "Sword Dance", etc., which won wide popularity. She was awarded three gold medals at the World Youth and Students Festival held in Moscow in 1957.

Jo Sung Chan and Kim Jong Hwa, who returned from study in the Soviet Union, are playing an active part in the theatre.

Jung Duck Won, Kang Ok Tsai, Kim Zai Hung, Cho Hang Koo, Cha Ye Jin and many other promising young dancers have made their appearance in public. "Water Jar Dance" choreographed by Kang Ok Tsai, "Hand-clapping Dance" by Jun Han Ryool, "Rose" by Li Suk Ye, "A Cowherd and a Maid" by An Sung Hi, "Big Basket" by Lo Do Hyun, "The Song of Peace" by Hwang Jung Sam, won the praise of spectators. These dances depict the struggle of the Korean people in the pre-liberation days; their happy life in the post-liberation period, the unity and friendship with the Soviet Union, the People's Republic of China and other fraternal countries, the heroic fight and optimistic life at the front and in the rear during the severe Fatherland Liberation War, the ardent desire for the peaceful unification of the fatherland, the labour endeavour to build socialism in the northern part of the country, etc.

At present Korean dancers are carrying forward the splendid tradition of dancing on the basis of socialist realism. They attach importance to assimilating the technique achieved by the Soviet Union and the other fraternal countries. They pay deep attention to portraying faithfully real life. They are always keen to explore and modernize various hidden folk dances in the rural areas. In recent years they have developed the "Dondolrari", "Hand-clapping" and "Hemp Carding" dances which are enjoying popularity among the working people. Many Korean dancers have been abroad for performances and many performers of the fraternal countries have visited Korea. Such cultural interchange has strengthened the friendly ties between the peoples.

Since liberation the Korean dance has made development and assumed a mass character unknown before in our history.

Right after liberation there were only a few dancers worthy of the name. But soon the ranks of competent dancers were growing at a fast rate. At present the Choi Seung Hi Dancing Theatre which made a great contribution to systematizing Korean national dance, the State Art Theatre, the National Art Theatre and other provincial art organizations have 600 dancers in all! In addition, the 10-year State Dancing School is turning out 30 dancers annually. Their life is not limited to the performance on the stage. They are sent to factories and villages to give guidance to various art circles there.

Based upon the achievements made in the past, and following the correct guidance of the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the Republic, Korean dancers are marching with firm steps toward the efflorescence of our dancing art.

DRAMA

The initial form of Korean drama was a combination of the primitive song, dance and masked dance. According to old records, in the primitive community song and dance was performed on the occasion of various ceremonies. These were closely connected with farming. In the Silla period appeared the masked dance such as Ogi (five arts) and religious Chuyong Dance. They have a long tradition. Toward the end of Koryu Dynasty they took the form of drama called the "Sandai" play. At that time actors made their first appearance on the stage.

In the Li Dynasty the "Sandai" play developed into "Sandai Togam" play, "Bongsan Tal Choom" (masked dance), "O Kwangdai" play, etc. The "Sandai Togam" play was popular in the central part around Kyonggi Province; "Bongsan Tal Choom" in the western part around Hwanghai Province; and the "O Kwangdai" play in the southern part around Kyungsang Province. This kind of masked dance was created by the common people and developed by them over a long period. The dances were characteristic of the people's protest against feudal oppressors (Ryangbans and officials), abuse of Buddhism and corrupt monks at the close of Koryu Dynasty and in the middle part of the Li Dynasty.

Parallel with masked dance, the puppet show appeared and developed. They were called "Kokdukakshi" or "Pak Chum Ji" after the name of heroes in the plot.

The puppet show was very popular among the people. The plot was similar to that of masked dance. It was brimming with satire or protests of the people against oppressors.

Under the political and economic conditions of the feudal society the masked dance did not develop into drama.

In speaking of Korean drama before the modern age mention should be made of the pansori.

Pansori maintained its vitality and around the beginning of the 20th century developed into Changkeuk, a form of national opera.

Permanent theatres were built and a modern drama took shape on the basis of dramatic heritage.

Though the drama was generally formalistic and limited in scope, it enjoyed the support of the broad masses of the people and played a definitely progressive role, because its form and content were closely linked with the enlightenment movement which inspired a patriotic spirit against feudalism.

The first professional theatre was the "Hyukshindan" (Reformist Group) which was organized in 1911. Subsequently many theatres appeared, but gradually degraded into commercialism, divorced from the idea of enlightenment.

The Shinkeuk (New Drama) movement started with the object of reforming the drama that was poor in artistic content. But in many cases it followed the road of the old drama and degraded into petty bourgeois drama.

The true Shinkeuk (New Drama) made its appearance as a wing of the progressive literature and art movement along with the dissemination of Marxism and Leninism and the growth of the labour movement in the early twenties.

In 1921 the Theatre Association under the leadership of Jo Myung Hui, in 1922 the Hyungsul Society with Kim Yung Pal as its head and the Touwol Society with Kim Bok Jin as the centre were organized. They followed the line of realism, opposing commercialism and formalism. In 1924 these theatrical groups merged into the theatrical department of Yumkoonsa set up in 1924, which tended to cater to the proletarian class.

In 1925 the Korean Proletarian Literature and Arts Association (KAP) was organized. Its theatrical department represented the realist drama movement, and drama began to be based on socialist realism.

From this time up to the day of liberation two different trends conflicted with each other. The KAP drama based on socialist realism, written for the benefit of the popular masses; and the anti-popular, pro-Japanese and petty-bourgeois drama.

The KAP drama department organized the first proletarian "Red-Ant Theatre" comprising former members of the Yumkoonsa Society as well as progressive drama artists. But the Japanese police at once suppressed and dissolved it.

After the KAP adopted its militant program in 1927, the Korean proletarian drama movement began forging ahead. The KAP devoted itself to the task of fostering the class consciousness of the workers and peasants and rousing them to the struggle for liberation.

The KAP members and other progressive drama artists organized a number of theatres in Seoul and other local districts. The Kadu (Street) Theatre was organized in Taegu in 1930; Taijoong (Masses) Theatre in Kaesong in 1931; Yunkeuk Kongjang (Drama Factory) in Haiju in 1931; Chungbok (Blue Suite) Theatre in Seoul in 1931; Our Theatre in Seoul in 1931; Travelling Theatre in Seoul in 1931; Northeast Theatre in Hamheung in 1932; Tomorrow's Theatre in Pyongyang in 1932. These theatres put on the stage the realist dramas written by the revolutionary KAP members such as Han Sul Ya, Li Ki Yung, Song Yung and Kim Yung Pal. But they were suppressed and dissolved. Some members were arrested.

In defiance of every repressive measure taken by the Japanese imperialists, the New Construction Theatre under the direct leadership of KAP, which was organized in 1932, continued its performances. The performance in 1933 of the drama "All Quiet on the Western Front" by Remarque left a brilliant page in the history of Korean drama.

In the pre-liberation period the drama took on new life among the anti-Japanese partisan units led by Comrade Kim Il Sung.

The partisans staged "A Sea of Blood," "The Celebration Rally," "The Sungwhangdang" (native religious worship), etc., which enriched their cultural life and served as a medium of fostering the revolutionary spirit of the people.

Only these theatrical groups raised aloft the banner of the drama of socialist realism. They waged the struggle for national independence and class liberation against the turbid current of the corrupt capitalist culture and in defiance of the brutal suppression of the Japanese imperialists who tried to stamp out the Korean national culture.

The August 15 Liberation by the great Soviet Army opened up a new prospect for the development of the drama of socialist realism. Our artistes of the theatrical world tasted all the bitterness of oppression under the vicious colonial domination of the Japanese imperialists for nearly half a century. Every road to artistic creation was blocked.

Thanks to the correct policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the people's power with regard to literature and art, the theatrical workers have become for the first time in history the masters of theatres, and are provided every opportunity for artistic activity in the interest of the people.

Various theatres, which had been set up spontaneously after liberation, were rearranged in 1947. All of them came under the control of the organs of the state or public organizations.

In Pyongyang were set up the State Drama Theatre, City Theatre, People's Army Theatre, Youth Theatre, Transport Ministry Theatre, Peasant Theatre and Home Ministry Theatre. In all the provinces there were provincial theatres and travelling theatres. All theatrical workers were striving for a high degree of ideological and artistic creation.

Plays such as "Growth" by Paik Moon Hwan, "Bonfire" by Han Tai Chun, "Peasants of Biryong Village" by Pak Yung Ho, and "The Land" by Li Ki Yung portrayed the land reform and the struggle of the peasants. "The People Defending the Fatherland" by Song Yung, "Motive Power" by Ryu Ki Hong, "Flames" by Shin Ko Song, "Coalpit" by Pak Tai Yung describe the building of a society by the working class who has become the master of the country.

Other noteworthy plays of this period were: "The People Await the Sun Rise" by Pak Ryung Bo, "Mt. Baikdoo" by Han Tai Chun which deals with the anti-Japanese partisan warfare under the leadership of Comrade Kim Il Sung and "Admiral Li Soon Shin" by Kim Tai Jin which portrays a historical patriot. These dramas played a great part in educating the people in the spirit of patriotism.

Among the national classics appearing at the same time were: "Tale of Shim Chung" and "Tale of Choonhyang." And historical plays "General Ulchi Moonduck" and "The Rebel of Hong Kyung Rai" were produced.

Translations of the Soviet dramas of socialist realism were staged. Among them were "Lubovi Yarovaya", "Armoured Train 14-69", "The Russians," "Platon Krechet", "An Onslaught", etc.

The Korean War provoked by the U.S. imperialists brought a great change to our theatrical life. Under the grim war conditions all theatrical activity had to be turned toward victory in the war. Almost all the theatres were destroyed by the savage bombing of the U.S. imperialists. The theatres had to reorganize their work with the outbreak of the war. Every theatre organized small groups to give performances at the front and in the rear. They inspired the soldiers and people to victory in the war.

Throughout the war they continued their performances. In underground theatres in various parts of the country, long and short plays were staged. Outstanding long plays were "Height 1211" (A Height of the Fatherland) by Hong Kun, "The Front" by Korneichuk, "The Youth of Our Country" by Pak Tai Yung, "The Sea in the Offing" by Han Sung, "The Kangwha Island" by Song Yung.

After the war, an arduous yet glorious task of reconstruction was set before the entire people. The Workers' Party and the government of the Republic took measures to provide conditions for the creative performance of theatrical workers. The destroyed theatres were reconstructed or newly built in a short space of time. By 1954 all theatres had their own buildings to perform in.

In the postwar period the main themes of the drama are the heroic workers who are devoting themselves to reconstruction of the war-ravaged national economy and socialist construction; the peasants who are drawn into agricultural co-operation; the soldiers of the People's Army who displayed unexampled heroism in the Fatherland Liberation War; the people of all strata who are struggling for peaceful unification.

"The Memorable Place" by Ryu Ki Hong, "The Story of That Night" by O Woun Suk, etc., portrayed the working class which is displaying heroism in the postwar reconstruction.

"A New Path" by Li Tong Choon and "Our Village" by Shin Ko Song depicted the peasants who are pushing ahead with socialist transformation of agriculture. "The Son of Partisans" written by Han Sul Ya and adapted by Han Tai Chun deals with the patriotic spirit of the people in the period of the anti-Japanese armed struggle led by Kim Il Sung.

"Wait for Us!" and "The Uhrang River" by Han Sung and "For the Life" by Kim Jai Hoi deal with the soldiers of the People's Army who made heroic exploits in the Fatherland Liberation War. "No More of Such Life" by Li Jong Soon and

Choi Keun portrayed the life of the people in the newly liberated districts.

In the postwar period classical works such as Pak Yun Am's "The Ryangban" (Nobles) adapted by Cho Ryung Chool were put on the stage. The Soviet story "Three Fighters" and the Chinese story "Facing the New Reality" were also dramatized. The old puppet show, "Kokdukakshi", is modified into a modern one. The classical story "Heungbo and Nolbo" has been adapted for the popular puppet show.

Special mention should be made of the fact that the theatrical circles organized in factories, farm co-ops and schools provide the basis for our theatrical development.

On the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the great October Socialist Revolution "The Kremlin Chimes" was jointly produced by the Soviet producer V. Brasov and the Korean producer Kim Duck In; the great Lenin was portrayed by the Korean artistes. This was a great achievement in the history of Korean drama.

Korean theatrical workers are well aware that all the results achieved in the dramatic world are attributable to the correct literature and art policy of the Workers' Party of Korea. They are dedicating all their creative ability and wisdom and are tempering themselves into artistes loyal to the Party and the people and are forging ahead under the banner of Socialist realism.

In the 13 years since liberation they have achieved what they could not have gained for half a century before liberation.

Noteworthy is the creative work of People's Artiste Hwang Chul, producer and actor, the Merited Artistes Bai Yong, Pak Yung Shin, Shim Yung, Li Dan and other young artistes.

The dramatic ranks are swelling with the young artistes who graduated from the higher dramatic school and talented members of theatrical circles. They are producing new, admirable works that contribute to socialist construction and peaceful unification.

CINEMA

Films were first introduced into Korea in the early 20th century. In the 1920's Korea started producing films. But the films in the interests of the people appeared by the efforts of

film workers belonging to the KAP—Korean Proletarian Literature and Arts Association which was organized in 1925.

They included "A Wandering Life" and "The Dark Path" depicting the wretched life of the peasants who were deprived of their land and left their native country, "A Dark Street" portraying the miserable life of the petty townfolk and intellectuals, and "The Underground Village" and "A Fire Ring" dealing the life and struggle of workers. These productions contributed a great deal to inspire the people to the national liberation struggle.

However, it was very difficult to screen Korean films because of the severe, repressive measures of the Japanese authorities, not to mention the strict censorship. The "Underground Village" was banned from the screen.

The KAP film workers published their organ "Film Corps" and carried on the literary movement by producing playwrights. Around this time, the talented scenarist, producer and actor Ra Wun Kyu, under the influence of the KAP, produced "Arirang" and other good films. "Arirang" deals with the social misery of the Korean people who were deprived of freedom and independence under the barbarous oppression and exploitation of the Japanese imperialists.

Talkies were produced from 1935. But in those days Korea had no worthy kinetograph and production facilities. Most film studios after their first production or on the way of production went bankrupt because of the severe repression of the Japanese imperialists and financial difficulties.

The Korean film world survived by primitive means. Toward the closing years of Japanese imperialism, the production of films was subjected to the more savage suppression of the Japanese imperialists.

The August 15 Liberation opened up wide prospects for the development of cinema art. Film artists took over the tradition of the KAP and stepped up film production following faithfully the literature and art policy of the Workers' Party of Korea. From 1946 news reels and documentary films were produced. In 1947 a state film studio was established with modern facilities. From this time up to the outbreak of war they produced feature films such as "Furnace", "The People Standing on Sentry," and documentary films "The 38th Parallel" and "The Song of Friendship".

In the period of peaceful construction the Korean film was put on a sound basis for developing the national cinema art in line with socialist realism.

The Fatherland Liberation War put our young cinema art to a serious test. Throughout the war the cameramen continued their creative work on the front as well as in the rear in defiance of the rain of bullets and bombs. In autumn 1950, the U.S. air pirates ruthlessly destroyed the film studio. In the difficult war conditions all film workers displayed their initiative in film production.

During the war they produced the feature films "Again to the Front," "Scouts", and "Aircraft Hunters", and documentary films "The Just War", "The Bacteriological Atrocities" and "The Master of Land."

The films produced during the war represented the burning patriotism, invincible fighting spirit and lofty moral nature of the Korean people and the Korean People's Army men who under the leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea waged heroically a victorious war against the U.S. imperialist aggressors. And they did much to awaken the hostile sentiments of the entire people against the enemy by exposing the true nature of U.S. aggression and crimes.

A number of films produced during the war were awarded the Struggle for Freedom and War Reportage Prizes at the International Film Festivals held in Czechoslovakia in 1951 and 1952.

Noteworthy is it that despite all difficulties created by the war our film workers produced more films than in the preceding peace-time and raised the level of cinema art.

After the end of the war, our film production, like all other branches, made spectacular progress. During the Three-Year Plan the film production facilities not only recovered from the serious war wounds, but also was expanded with up-to-date technique, and new additions are being made. The films attained a higher level in ideological content and artistry. And their genres became varied and the number of films increased markedly.

Among the successful films are "The Uhrang River" which depicts the heroic struggle of the People's Army and the people in the rear during the war; "The Call of the Sea," "Azaleas", "Sanmae" (Hawk), and "The Bloom of Youth", all of which portrayed labour exploits in socialist construction; "No More of Such Life" depicting the life of the people in the liberated area; "Remember Pajoo!" and "How Can We Live Separated?" laying bare the atrocities of the aggressive U.S. army and the Syngman Rhee clique and reflecting the desire of the South Korean people for peaceful unification; "The Unfinished Battle" disclosing the U.S. spies; and the art film "The Beautiful Songs."

After the war the production of colour films started. Among them are the choreographic film "The Tale of Sado Fortress" based on a folk tale; the Korean classical opera "The Tale of Shim Chung"; and the documentary films "The 10th Anniversary of the August 15 Liberation" and "Mt. Keumkang (Diamond)."

Since the war our documentary and news films cover a wide range. Noteworthy is the production of scientific films and foreign versions.

In the postwar period our film production was not only put on a higher qualitative plane, but also increased greatly in number. In the period 1956-57 the number of feature, documentary and news films was two-thirds of the total films produced after liberation altogether. Their ideological content and artistry attained a higher level. "The Unfinished Battle" and "The Uhrang River" are excellent productions based on the creative method of socialist realism. "The Uhrang River" was appreciated at the first international meeting of film workers of the socialist countries held in Czechoslovakia in December 1957. It showed a diversity of socialist realist style and represented the national character.

We cannot think of the development of our film production apart from the consistent leadership and constant care of the Party and the government. Our film workers, adhering to the literature and art policy of the Party, put all their energy into the creation of cinema art to a higher level. And material and technical aid from the fraternal countries headed by the Soviet Union made a great contribution to the forward movement of our film production. Among the well-known film workers are Merited Artiste Yun Ryong Kyu and other many producers; actress Moon Ye Bong, Merited Artiste, and well-known actors Kang Hong Shik, Kim Tong Kyu, Kim Ryun Shil and other young actors Kim Hyun Sook, Jo Hyo Kyung and Won Jung Hui. The ranks of creative film workers are growing.

Among the film production establishments are the Korean State Film Studio, the Korean Documentary Film Studio and the State Scenario Writing Society.

Our cinema art showed a phenomenal development in the period 1956-57. A more radical change is taking place as all the film workers are pushing ahead with their creation in accordance with the decision on the further development of film production adopted at the Presidium of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea in February 1958.

In 1961 about 200 feature, documentary, news, and scientific films will be produced. Wide-screen film will be produced. And colour and cartoon films will be put on a firm footing. In the same period the existing studio will be expanded, and preparatory work carried on for establishing new studios. It is anticipated that more and more films will be exported. Our film workers, inspired by the active measures taken by the Party, are looking forward to wide horizons, and advancing with the banner of socialist realism raised aloft.

POPULAR CULTURE

In Korea popular culture has a time-honoured tradition. In ancient times it was related to collective labour and rituals. However, its free development was restricted due to the all shapes of feudal fetters and the colonial domination of the Japanese imperialists.

Not until liberation on August 15, 1945 was the flowering of popular and national culture possible.

With the establishment of tha people's power in the North, enforcement of democratic reforms and planned development of the national economy, the material and cultural standards of the working people have improved radically. The cultural requirements of the working people are growing. Thanks to the policy of developing popular culture pursued by the Party and the government popular culture in the North has made a great leap forward.

Parallel with popular political work among the broad masses

of the people, the scientific, cultural enlightenment and activities of cultural circles are becoming more brisk. Noteworthy is the work done by democratic publicity halls.

DEMOCRATIC PUBLICITY HALL AND CLUB

After liberation democratic publicity halls, the stronghold of mass political and cultural work, were extensively established in factories and offices and according to administrative divisions. They increased from 959 in 1947 to 4,239 in June 1949.

But during the war almost all of them were destroyed. After the war they were rebuilt on a larger scale. At the end of 1957 there were 4,313 in towns and villages, and 11,680 branches in the farm co-ops and remote places. These democratic publicity halls have a collection of 2,300,000 books, some 4,500 radio sets and radios with loudspeakers, and various cultural and sport facilities. Clubs are set up in factories and mills. As compared with 1953, their number increased by 181 per cent in 1957.

Democratic publicity halls and clubs undertake to explain the policy of the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of our Republic to the people; to raise the level of general knowledge of the people; and to disseminate scientific information by means of lectures or visual aid. Special attention is devoted to adult education. The important task set before the democratic publicity halls and clubs is to raise the knowledge of the general public to the level of middle school graduates.

In these halls and clubs various art circles are organized. They meet the cultural requirements of the population. Lectures are given on literature, hygiene, sewing, and cooking. They organize evening gatherings, review of films, sports meets, etc. They carry on practical courses for the benefit of mothers. In the farm villages democratic publicity halls hold lectures, forums, experience-exchange-meetings and agricultural exhibits for the purpose of strengthening the farm co-ops ideologically and organizationally and popularizing modern agro-technique.

THEATRES AND CINEMAS

After liberation large numbers of theatres and cinemas were set up. During the war most of them were destroyed or burnt.

In order to satisfy the cultural requirements of the people the Monranbong Theatre and many other cinema halls were built underground. After the war the government allocated a large sum of money for construction of theatres and cinemas. During the Three-Year Plan many theatres and cinemas were newly built, reconstructed or enlarged. As a result, in 1957 the number of theatres had increased by 18 per cent and cinemas by 125 per cent as compared with 1949.

Some 350 mobile projection teams have been organized for the population in farm villages and employees of factories and mills. They are playing an important role in satisfying the cultural needs of the population.

LIBRARIES AND MUSEUMS

After the liberation libraries and museums as organs of social education and culture were expanded on a bigger scale. There were only seven libraries right after liberation, but in August 1949 the state, provincial, town and county libraries increased to 102. The war caused great damage in this field, too. But in the postwar period libraries were rapidly restored and expanded. The Central Library was established in Pyongyang and other libraries set up in provincial towns, county administration units and attached to colleges. In 1957 their number had increased by 75 per cent and the number of books 15.4 times as compared with 1949.

Before liberation there was only one museum in North Korea, but now ten. In the postwar period museums have been recovered from war damage, and five museums newly established. We have 14 museums including the Central Historical Museum, the National Liberation Struggle Museum, the Fine Arts Museum, and Ethnographic Museum in Pyongyang, and in the provinces and higher educational institutions. About 50,000 precious articles are preserved.

CULTURAL CIRCLES

The brisk activities of various cultural circles testify to the rapid development of popular culture in the North after liberation. Under the Japanese militarist domination the activities of cultural circles were ruthlessly suppressed.

In June 1949, over 7,000 literary, drama, music, dance, art, and photo circles were organized with a membership of 96,000.

Amidst the flames of war they continued their cultural activities. Since the war their cultural work has made headway at an unprecedented pace. With the reconstruction of the war-devastated national economy and the improvement of the people's living, the circles of fine arts, peasant music, handicraft, etc. in factories, mines, industrial enterprises, farm and fishing villages, schools and the People's Army units increased. In 1957 they numbered about 73,000 with a membership of over 1,580,000. The circles created numbers of works representing joyous labour and the prosperous life of the working people. They are also registering good results in discovering and developing classical arts that have lain hidden in our country.

The National Art Contest held every year in celebration of the August 15 Liberation provides a golden chance for circle members to display their talents. Out of 238 numbers presented in the 1956 National Art Contest, 79 were produced by circle members. Out of over 2,000 participants over 1,500 were circle members.

Large numbers of circle members take part in the national exhibitions or literary prize contests. In 1957 they produced 72 pieces for the National Art Exhibition.

PHYSICAL CULTURE AND SPORTS

Physical culture and sports in our country constitute a major aspect of the daily life of the working people. The entire people are encouraged to take part in sports and physical culture. The object is to educate and train the working people and youth to be builders of socialism who have active and optimistic character. After liberation our sports and physical culture assumed a mass character following the positive policy of the Party and the government.

Physical culture and sports have made great strides especially since the war. In June 1958 sports associations and sports commissions in provinces, cities, places of work, farm villages and schools numbered about 9,000 altogether. They embraced over 600,000 working people, youth and students. In addition to sports society of militiamen, transport ministry and builders, seven industrial sports societies including the metal and coal industries have been organized.

In 1954, soon after the truce was concluded, the new Moranbong Stadium with an accommodation of 20,000 people was reconstructed. 4,500 playgrounds and 10,000 basketball and volleyball courts were rebuilt in factory yards and at schools in rural villages. In Pyongyang and all provinces institutes of physical culture have been established. And instructors are posted at major industrial establishments.

For training cadres in the field of physical culture, the Physical Culture Institute, sections of physical culture in some higher educational establishments and the Physical Culture Cadres' School under the Cabinet Physical Culture Guidance Committee have been set up.

Since 1948 popular physical tests have been carried out on a country-wide scale. In 1956 alone hundreds of thousands of youth in almost all schools and factories showed the good result of exceeding the 1st, 2nd, and juvenile standards.

In 1955 a system of awarding the title and grade of champions and qualifications for referees was instituted.

As of the end of 1955, there were seven Masters of Sport. In June 1958 the number increased to 17 and the first and second grade of sportsmen numbered over 1,000.

Amateur championship meets have been held on a mass scale especially from 1956 on.

Especially the National Sports Festivals on the occasion of August 15 Liberation and May Day and inter-association sports contests in summer and autumn are colourful events.

Korean traditional games were in a state of stagnation due to the Japanese policy of obliterating national culture.

Since liberation in the northern part of the country the Korean people have been able to enjoy and develop their traditional games. Especially in the post-war period Korean traditional games assumed mass character. In autumn every year Korean national games—wrestling, archery, swinging, seesawing, etc.—are held.

In this way large numbers of sportsmen are trained, and their skill improved.

In 1955, 32 new records were set up; in 1956, 80 champions beat records in about 30 events in the national championship; in 1957, new records were set in 32 events.

Excellent results were scored in athletics, weight-lifting, and cycling. Skating and skiing also showed higher records.

Men's and women's skill in basketball and volleyball has been markedly improved.

Our sportsmen achieved good results on the international arena. Especially the number of our champions participating in the World Youth and Students Festival for peace and friendship and their games are increasing year after year. Through such sports games their internationalist solidarity with the sportsmen of the Soviet Union, China and other People's Democracies has been further consolidated.

Ninetynine champions demonstrated their excellent skill in the Third International Youth Games and Sixth Sports Festival held in Moscow in August 1957. Our champions also showed individual fine skill in gymnastics, wrestling, boxing and weight lift. The arena of our sports is becoming wider and wider, and the future is very promising. Our volleyball, basketball, boxing, table-tennis, soccer, skating, shooting associations are members of their respective international leagues.

More and more international games are held in our country. The four-country (Korea, China, Mongolia and Vietnam) volleyball tournament was held in October 1957. Besides, mutual contacts through sports between Korea and the Soviet Union, China and other fraternal countries not only give great impetus to our athletic development, but also promote cooperation and friendship among the peoples.

During the First Five-Year Plan over 400 Masters of Sport and 3,000 sportsmen of first grade will be trained.

CHAPTER VII

THE STRUGGLE OF THE KOREAN PEOPLE FOR THE PEACEFUL UNIFICATION OF THE COUNTRY

On August 15, 1945, our country was liberated by the heroic Soviet Army from Japanese imperialist rule. However, our country is as yet split into north and south due to the colonial policy of U.S. imperialists toward South Korea and the treacherous policy of the Syngman Rhee clique.

The Korean people have a long history. They have lived in the same territory as homogeneous. However, owing to the artificial division of the territory, the people are experiencing untold distress in the political, economic and cultural fields.

It is impossible to make full use of rich natural resources, various industrial facilities and legacy of national culture of North and South Korea. Wisdom and talent of North and South Koreans cannot be pooled together.

Fathers and mothers, sons and daughters, brothers, husbands and wives, and friends are separated from each other. Short as the distance is, they are not permitted to correspond with each other, let alone meet each other. An abnormal life is thus forced upon them.

The Korean people cannot tolerate such situation. Therefore, they have been waging the unflagging struggle for the accomplishment of the peaceful unification of the country as the supreme national task.

The Korean people maintain that Korea should be united in accordance with the will of the Korean people and along democratic lines. Adhering to this principle, they advanced at appropriate times practical and concrete proposals for the peaceful unification of the country. And they have put all their energy into the realization of the proposals.

A democratic base was created by the Workers' Party of Korea in the northern part of the country after liberation. And the base has developed into a mighty material force for attaining the peaceful unification of the country. Relying on this base, the Korean people have been waging a stubborn struggle for their great cause.

They have linked the struggle for the peaceful unification of the country with the all-round reinforcement of the democratic base in the northern part of the country.

The people throughout North and South Korea warmly supported the Moscow Decisions (December 1945) which provided an international guarantee for the peaceful unification of the country. They made strenuous efforts to realize the age-long desire of the Korean people by making clear the conditions and means necessary for regenerating Korea as a democratic, sovereign and independent country. However, the U.S. imperialists scrapped the Decisions. From the very start they aimed at converting Korea into a military base for attacking the Soviet Union and invading the Asian mainland, and bringing her under colonial subjugation.

The U.S. imperialists deliberately wrecked the work of the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S. Commission. At last they concocted the so-called "U.N. Temporary Commission on Korea" by means of their voting-machine in the U.N.O. to impede the peaceful unification of Korea.

In April 1948 when the United States schemed to hold separate elections in South Korea with the help of the "U.N. Temporary Commission on Korea", the joint conference of representatives of North and South Korean political parties and public organizations was held in Pyongyang. At the meeting all representatives unanimously agreed that the May 10 (1948) elections in South Korea should be boycotted; all foreign troops withdrawn; a united independent state founded by Koreans themselves. Under the unified leadership of "National Committee for Struggling against South Korean Separate Elections" organized in accordance with the decision of the said joint conference, the Korean people rose up to wage the national salvation struggle against the U.S. scheme to hold separate elections and establish a separate government.

Despite the strong opposition of the entire Korean people, the South Korean puppet government was concocted with the help of U.S. tanks and guns and by terror and trickery of the Syngman Rhee clique.

Facing such grave situation, the entire Korean people had

no choice but to take national salvation measures to counter the divide-and-rule policy of the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique by establishing a genuinely supreme representative organ through all-Korea elections. 99.97 per cent of voters in North Korea and 77.52 per cent of voters in South Korea took part in the 1948 elections to the Supreme People's Assembly.

Under conditions in which the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique were resorting to brutal oppression and massacre, the elections in South Korea were held by indirect ballot.

The elections throughout North and South Korea were crowned with historic victory. The newly founded Democratic People's Republic of Korea signified a marked advance in the struggle of the Korean people for the peaceful unification of the country, freedom and independence. And it served as a banner of the struggle for integrating the territory.

In this way real possibilities were provided for rallying all the patriotic forces under the banner of the D.P.R.K. for the peaceful unification of the country. The Workers' Party of Korea pushed forward the work of forming the United Democratic Fatherland Front embracing all patriotic political parties and public organizations in North and South Korea.

The inauguration meeting of the U.D.F.F. was held in Pyongyang on June 25, 1949. The meeting was attended by the representatives of 72 democratic political parties and public organizations in North and South Korea.

The formation of U.D.F.F. under the sponsorship of the Workers' Party of Korea is another great success in promoting the unity and solidarity of all patriotic democratic forces in North and South Korea and in isolating the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique from the masses.

In the declaration of the inauguration meeting proposals were made for the peaceful unification of the country, in a more concrete and realistic manner.

In view of the fact that a strong democratic base was created and the alignment of forces changed in favor of the forces of peaceful unification, the declaration made it clear that the U.S. army and the "UN Commission on Korea" should be immediately withdrawn and all-Korea elections be held. At the same time relevant measures were elucidated.

However, the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique frenziedly attempted to provoke a fratricidal war in answer to our proposal.

The more provocative their scheme for a fratricidal war and the more serious the situation became, the more actively the Korean people waged their struggle for the attainment of the peaceful unification of the country.

In view of the prevailing situation, the C.C. of the U.D.F.F. made an appeal on June 7, 1950 for the holding of general elections throughout North and South Korea to form a united supreme legislative organ. Later, on June 19, the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly of the D.P.R.K. made a proposal for the coalition of the Supreme People's Assembly of the D.P.R.K. and the "National Assembly" of South Korea and adoption of a new Constitution.

As is mentioned above, in the prewar period the Workers' Party of Korea and the people's power, exposing and frustrating the disruptive move of the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique, made consistent efforts to attain the peaceful unification of the country. But the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique deliberately rejected all our initiative for peaceful unification. At last they made an armed invasion on North Korea with a view to overthrowing our people's democratic system and converting Korea into their colony and military base.

The Korean people made ceaseless efforts to put an end to the war, and settle the Korean question by peaceful means. The government exerted efforts to bring about a ceasefire so as to create prerequisites to a peaceful settlement of the Korean question and the relaxation of international tension. The U.S. scheme to wreck the truce talks was frustrated at every step. The United States suffered defeat after defeat. At last the U.S. side had no choice but to sign the armistice agreement on the very spot where they started the aggressive war.

The truce provided opportunities for settling the Korean question by peaceful means.

In the postwar period the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the Republic did all in their power to turn the truce into a lasting peace and realize peaceful unification. A series of reasonable proposals has been made.

At the Geneva Conference held in April 1954 our principled attitude was explicitly shown and sincere efforts were made for the peaceful settlement of the Korean question.

At the outset of the Geneva Conference our government delegation made the proposal "On the Re-establishment of National Unity of Korea and Holding of All-Korea Free Elections". It stated that all-Korea elections should be held in accordance with the free expression of the will of the Korean people; all foreign troops be withdrawn from the territory of Korea; Korea's peaceful development be guaranteed by the countries concerned. Additional proposals were made by our government delegation for ensuring peace in Korea.

On the other hand, the delegations of the United States and its satellite countries rejected all our reasonable proposals without any just ground. They tried in vain to gain at the conference what they could not gain on the front. They attempted to extend the reactionary rule of the South Korean puppet government to North Korea. Consequently, they deadlocked the conference on the settlement of the Korean question.

The work of the government delegation to the Geneva Conference was discussed at the Eighth Session of the Supreme People's Assembly (October 1954). Proceeding from the stand that there were no disputed issues that could not be settled by means of talks and negotiation, the Session sent the appeal to members of the South Korean "National Assembly", political parties, public organizations, and personages of all social strata; proposed the holding of negotiation between the North and South and put forward detailed relevant measures.

The proposal called for the holding of a joint conference of various political parties and public organizations of North and South Korea, the joint session of the Supreme People's Assembly of the D.P.R.K. and South Korean "National Assembly", economic and cultural exchange, postal communications and free travel between the North and South.

In its declaration the Supreme People's Assembly held in March 1955 strongly denounced the various U.S.-South Korean military pacts; demanded the immediate withdrawal of all foreign troops from the Korean territory; proposed to reduce the number of the armed forces of North and South Korea to 100,000 respectively.

What we aimed at was to relax gradually tension between the North and South in view of the then prevailing conditions; to open up the way for negotiation; and to create some internal and external prerequisites for settling the Korean question by peaceful means.

In his report at the Pyongyang rally on the occasion of the 10th anniversary of the August 15 Liberation, Premier Kim Il Sung called for the creation of conditions for rapprochement between North and South Korea. And he made it clear that efforts should be made to hold an international conference with the wide participation of Asian countries concerned for the purpose of settling the Korean question by peaceful means, to reduce the armed forces of North and South Korea to the minimum, and to hold a meeting in which the North and South Korean government delegations would participate.

Notwithstanding the fact that proposals representing the just desire of the Korean people were repeatedly made, the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique, who rejected from the beginning the peaceful unification of Korea, failed to produce any worthy proposals but only clamoured for the already bankrupt "unification by northward march".

On the contrary, the struggle of the Korean people for the peaceful unification of the country gained in strength.

The Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea convened in April 1956 adopted the historic declaration on the promotion of the peaceful unification of the country. The declaration, reflecting fully the unanimous desire of the Korean people, elucidated once again the basic principles in relation to the acceleration of the peaceful unification of the country and at the same time put forward more practical measures.

The Declaration of the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea states:

First. The Korean question must be finally settled on the basis of a democratic expression of the will of the Korean people themselves, and a united government of Korea must be established through general elections by the entire Korean people.

Second. The armistice attained in Korea should be converted into lasting peace so as to bring about the peaceful unification of the country.

Third. In order to induce the broad popular masses to take part in the struggle for the peaceful unification of the country and fully display their patriotic enthusiasm and positiveness, democratic principles must be materialized in all spheres of social

and political life in South Korea and the livelihood of the popular masses must be stabilized and improved.

Fourth: For the acceleration of the peaceful unification of the country, artificial barriers existing between North and South Korea must be removed, and mutual contacts and negotiations between the people of both parts realized.

Fifth. The unity and solidarity of the whole nation opposing American imperialism must be strengthened and the common struggle against the enemy of peaceful unification intensified by uniting the patriotic forces of North and South Korea.

Sixth. An international agreement should be reached for the preservation of peace in Korea and for a peaceful settlement of the Korean question.

In line with these basic principles the most reasonable and practical measures are set forth in the declaration.

The declaration states that all foreign troops should be withdrawn from Korea; neither North Korea nor South Korea should be drawn into any military alliance with foreign countries; all unequal treaties concluded by South Korea with the United States should be annulled; no outside intervention should be tolerated; the North and South Korean authorities should declare before the Korean and world peoples that they would never use armed force against each other; armed forces should be reduced to the minimum.

The declaration proposes to ease tension between North and South Korea; to create an atmosphere of mutual understanding and trust and pave the way to mutual contacts and negotiations; to promote economic and cultural exchange between North and South Korea in order to comprehensively develop economy and carry forward fine and integrate traditions; to form a permanent committee composed of representatives of both North and South Korean parliaments, governments, political parties and public organizations.

The declaration also states that every possible measure should be taken for uniting the various political parties and public organizations to act as one for peaceful unification. The declaration manifested its stand that though one may have committed no small crimes against the country and the people in the past, if he repents his mistakes and sincerely strives for attaining the peaceful unification of the fatherland, we would welcome him, negotiate with him and guarantee his social status according to his merits and talent.

The said permanent committee is to discuss open-mindedly all questions, ranging from the question of promoting contacts between North and South Korea to that of unifying the country, and take effective measures to this end.

The coalition government with the participation of the people representing all social strata—workers, peasants, medium and small industrialists and traders and national bourgeoisie—will administer the affairs of state along democratic lines, and guarantee the rights and interests of the broad masses of the people.

The proposals for the peaceful unification of the country, as is set forth in the declaration of the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea, are most proper and reasonable. They serve as the program of action for the Korean people, and enjoy the support of all foreigners who are concerned about the peaceful unification of Korea.

The proposals are just, for they proceed from the basic principle that the Korean question should be settled by Koreans themselves, and they are made on the basis of scientific analysis of the international position and internal situation created in North and South Korea.

The declaration put forward the measures for providing more favourable internal and external conditions for attaining the peaceful unification of Korea.

The important internal factor lies in relaxing tension between North and South Korea, in removing distrust and in paving the way to mutual contacts and negotiations. In this respect, the Workers' Party of Korea and the government of the Republic have always taken the initiative.

The government of the Republic made sincere and vigorous efforts to ease internal tension and accelerate peaceful unification by reducing the numerical strength of its armed forces by 80,000 by the end of August 1956. At the same time, it declared solemnly that so long as the South Korean authorities do not provoke war against North Korea, the D.P.R.K. will not first resort to armed force against the South Korean authorities. This is an expression of firm belief in the consolidation of the Korean armistice and the powerful will of the Korean people who are desirous of peaceful unification.

Mention should also be made of the fact that the D.P.R.K. government spared no efforts to promote business-like relations—economic and cultural—between North and South Korea. Proof of this is the letter of the Minister of Communications in 1954 regarding the opening of postal communications between North and South Korea; the statement of Ministers of Interior and Fishing Industry in 1955 for the purpose of ensuring fishing conditions for South Korean fishermen in the territorial waters of the D.P.R.K.; the statement of the Minister of Electricity in 1955 expressing readiness to supply electric power to the South Korean people who were suffering from a shortage of power; the proposal made by the C.C. of the Red Cross Society of the D.P.R.K. in 1956 on the free offer of relief goods for the flood-victims in South Korea; the Decision of the Cabinet of the D.P.R.K. government in 1957 on free offer of food for the South Korean peasants who ran short of provisions; the letter of the 12th Session of the D.P.R.K. Supreme People's Assembly (November 1956) expressing its desire to meet at a designated place the representatives of the South Korean "National Assembly" or individual personages with the object of discussing the issues of the withdrawal of all foreign troops, reduction of armaments of North and South Korea, support of negotiation, consolidation of the armistice, etc; the statement of Minister of Home and Foreign Trade in 1957 on the establishment of trade relations between North and South Korea.

Another important factor for creating favorable conditions for the acceleration of peaceful unification lies in democratizing the political and social life of the South Korean people. It is possible to settle the Korean question by Koreans themselves only when the South Korean people can enjoy freedom of speech, the press, assembly, association and belief and take an active part in the affairs of state, and the patriotic democratic political parties, public organizations, and individual personages can freely conduct political activities.

In view of the fact that the Korean question is of an international nature, it is necessary to create external conditions for accelerating peaceful unification.

The main obstacle in the way to the peaceful unification of the country is the intervention of the U.S. imperialists and the occupation of South Korea by the U.S. army.

In order to prevent the resumption of war, all foreign troops should be withdrawn from Korea; all military bases established in South Korea removed; neither North nor South Korea should be inveigled into a military pact.

At the same time, the preservation of peace in Korea must be guaranteed by international agreement. Thus the peaceful settlement of the Korean question will be promoted and peace will be ensured not only in Korea but also in Asia.

The D.P.R.K. government proposed on April 9, 1956 through the government of the People's Republic of China to the British government and through it to the governments of all countries whose troops are participating in the "UN forces" that an international conference of the countries concerned be convened to discuss problems regarding the withdrawal of all foreign troops and the peaceful unification of Korea. On May 28, 1956, the British government gave a reply defending the unreasonable stand of the United States and other countries under the "UN Command". Presenting a unilateral condition that the Korean and Chinese side should accept their unreasonable proposals that had been made at the Geneva Conference held in 1954, it rejected the sincere initiative of the Korean and Chinese side.

In this connection, the D.P.R.K. government made a statement on June 2, 1956 to the effect that the Korean and Chinese side could not accept the unilateral condition put forward by the United States and other countries under the "UN Command". The statement also made it clear that they refused to withdraw their troops from Korea and obstructed the peaceful unification of Korea.

In gross violation of the Korean Armistice Agreement, the U.S. imperialists are converting South Korea into an atomic war base. They try to cover up their aggressive policy toward Korea under the signboard of "U.N." They are obstructing the peaceful settlement of the Korean question, and intensifying international tension.

The hard facts show clearly that the U.S. imperialists have been not interested at all in the peaceful settlement of the Korean question, and are the vicious enemy of the Korean people who earnestly desire the national unification.

The sincere and consistent efforts of the Korean people for peaceful unification are vividly expressed in the reports made by Premier Kim Il Sung at the First Session of the Second Supreme People's Assembly (September 1957) and at the December (1957) Enlarged Plenum of the C.C. of the Workers' Party of Korea, which discussed the work of the Party and government delegation participated in the meetings of representatives of the Communist and Workers' Parties of various countries. Premier Kim Il Sung stressed repeatedly that all foreign troops should be withdrawn from Korea and the numerical strength of the armed forces of North and South Korea reduced to 100,000 or less respectively.

Proposing the rapprochement between North and South Korea, he stated that conditions would be provided for freedom of action in North Korea for any South Korean political parties, public organizations and individual personages. At the same time he proposed that freedom of action in South Korea should be ensured for any political parties and public organizations.

In his report Premier Kim Il Sung expressed the firm conviction that the Korean people can achieve the peaceful unification of the country by themselves. The internal and international situation is turning in favor of our cause. In other words, the socialist forces are growing in strength in the North, while the policy of the U.S. imperialists toward South Korea is confronted with a more acute crisis. In the international sphere the forces of peace and socialism are decisively predominant over the forces of war and imperialism.

This conviction in peaceful unification is vividly manifested in the statement of the D.P.R.K. government made on February 5, 1958.

The statement proposes:

1. For easing the tense situation in Korea and solving the Korean question peacefully the U.S. army and all other foreign troops including the Chinese People's Volunteers should be simultaneously withdrawn from North and South Korea.

2. Within a definite period after the complete withdrawal of all foreign troops from North and South Korea, all-Korea free elections should be held. (These elections may be conducted under the observation of a neutral nations organization.)

3. For the discussion of questions pertaining to economic and cultural exchange between the North and South and to the all-Korea elections, negotiations between the North and South based on equality should be realized at an early date.

4. The armies of North and South Korea should be respectively reduced to the minimum in the near future.

This statement shows the only correct path to the peaceful settlement of the Korean question. Furthermore, it provides realistic possibility for easing tension in the Far East.

On February 7, 1958 the government of the People's Republic of China made a statement expressing full support for the D.P.R.K. government statement, and readiness to hold consultations with the D.P.R.K. government on the withdrawal of the Chinese People's Volunteers from Korea.

This statement strongly demanded that the governments of the United States and other countries participating in the "U.N. forces" should take measures to withdraw all their troops from South Korea.

The joint statement of the D.P.R.K. and C.P.R. governments made on February 19, 1958 demonstrated their unswerving will and sincerity for removing the obstacle in the way of the settlement of the Korean question and for maintaining and consolidating peace in the Far East and the world.

At the talks between the governments of the D.P.R.K. and C.P.R. a decision was adopted on the withdrawal of the Chinese People's Volunteers by the end of 1958. This is the initiative taken by the Korean and Chinese side for the peaceful settlement of the Korean question.

Under the present condition the withdrawal of all foreign troops from Korea is a prerequisite to the peaceful settlement of the Korean question. The root cause of all misfortunes and hardships of the Korean people, and the main obstacle to the peaceful settlement of the Korean question are solely the occupation of South Korea by the aggressive U.S. army. Now that the Chinese People's Volunteers are withdrawing, there should be no excuse for the aggressive U.S. army to remain in South Korea. Not only the Koreans but also the people of the whole world are watching the move of the United States with keen interest.

The joint statement of the D.P.R.K. and C.P.R. governments declares as follows:

"The United States and the other countries participating in the United Nations forces are now faced with a serious test. If they have any sincerity for the peaceful settlement of the Korean question, they should likewise withdraw all their forces from Korea."

Premier Kim Il Sung, head of the delegation of our government, who arrived at Vnukovo airport, Moscow (September 1953)

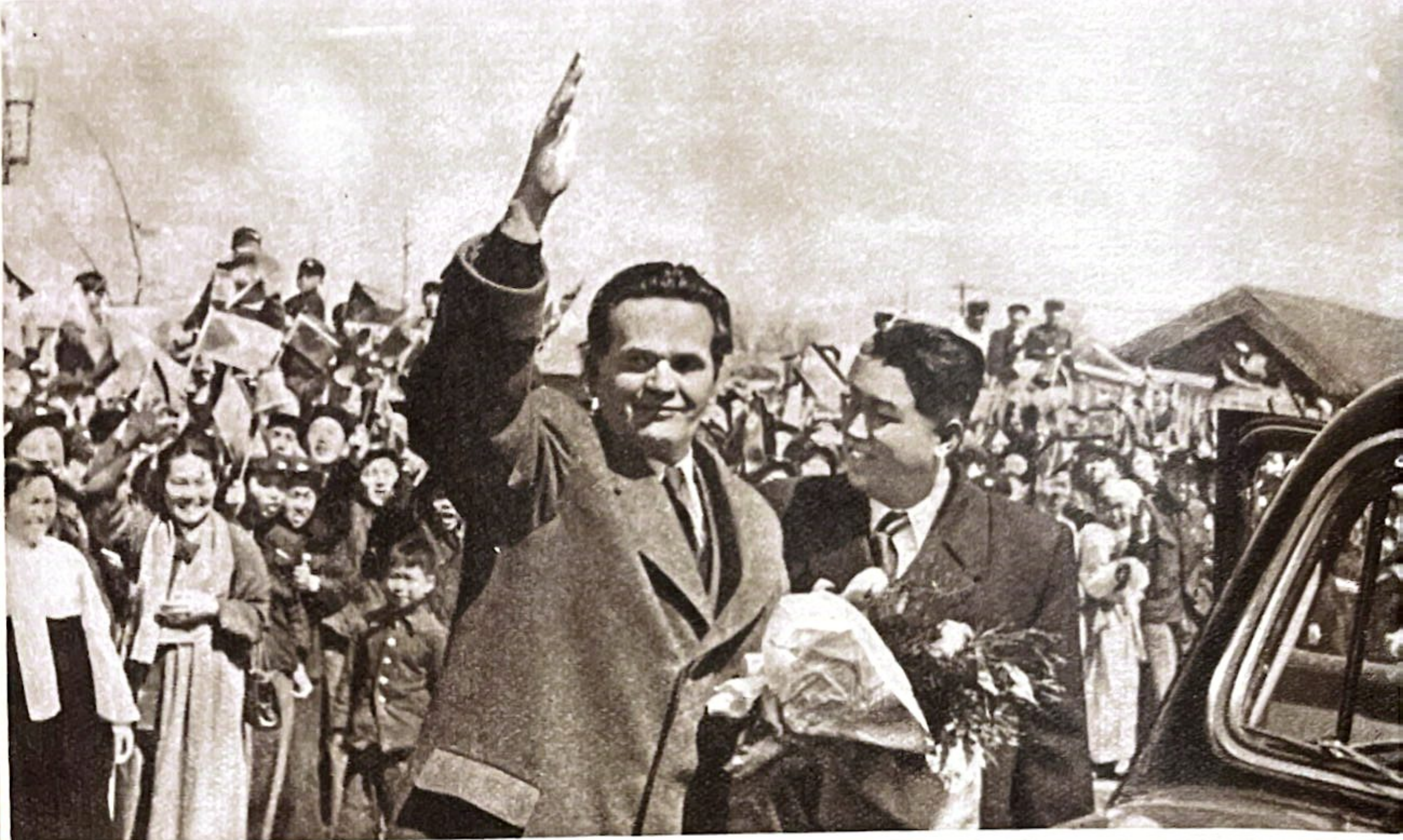
Warm handshake of Premier Kim Il Sung and Chairman Mao Tse-tung at Peking

Comrade Premier Kim Il Sung receives Otto Grotewohl, Prime Minister of the G.D.R., at the Pyongyang Station

Premier Kim Il Sung and Chairman Georgi Damianov inspecting the guard of honour at Sofia airfield

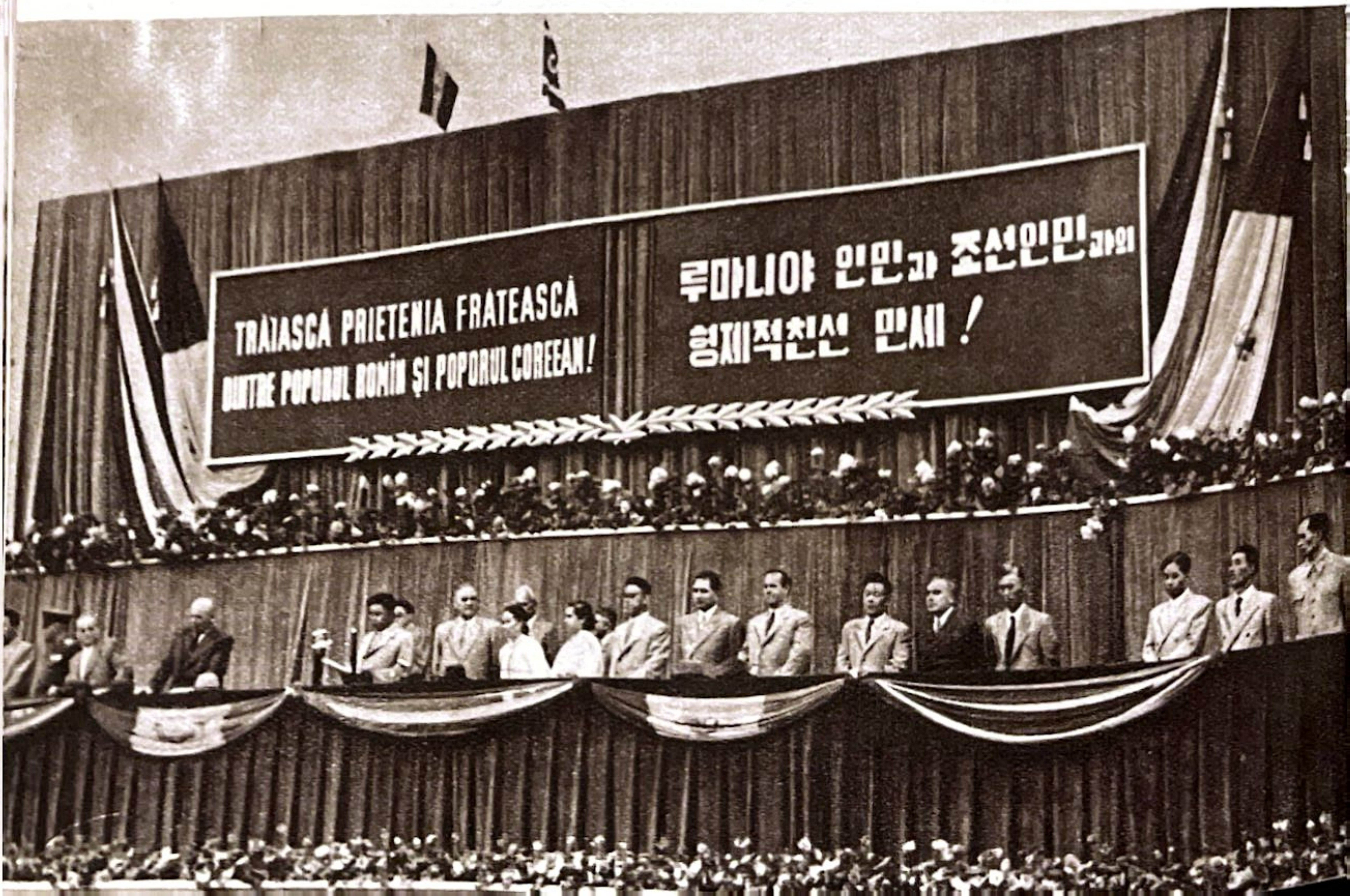
Premier Kim Il Sung receiving Cyrankiewicz, Chairman of the Council of Ministers of the Polish People's Republic, who came to Korea

The peasants of Aldeniza village treated our government delegation with their oranges, Albanian special fruits



Premier Kim Il Sung receiving Viliam Siroky, Prime Minister of the Czechoslovak Republic, who came to Korea

Premier Kim Il Sung delivering a speech at a mass rally in Bucharest held in honour of the Government Delegation of the D.P.R.K.

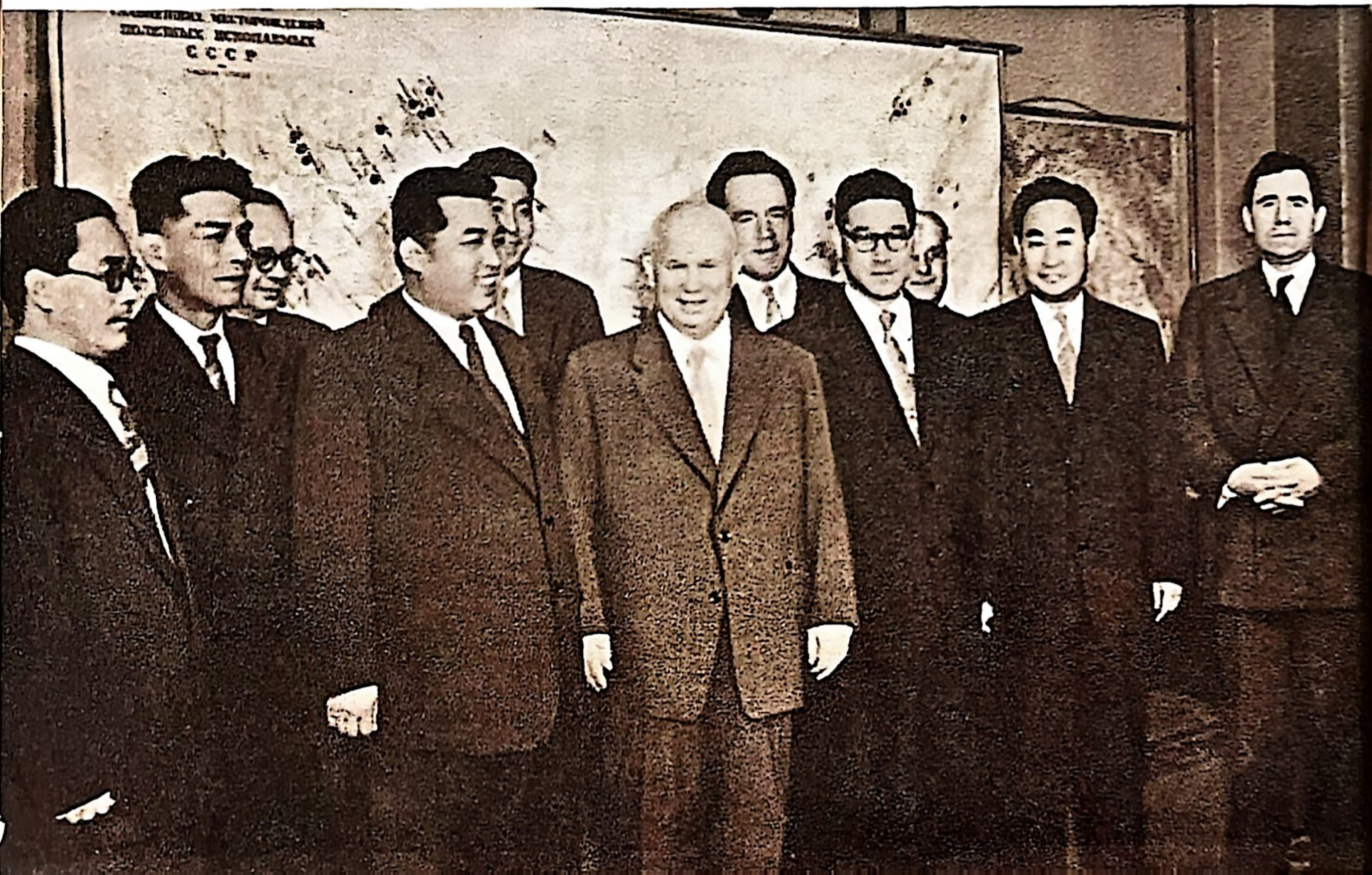

TRĂIASCĂ PRIETENIA FRĂŢEASCĂ
DINTRE POPORUL ROMÎN ŞI POPORUL COREEAN!
루마니아 인민과 조선인민과의
형제적친선 만세!

Premier Kim Il Sung exchanging greetings with the leaders of the Mongolian people at Ulan-Bator

Premier Kim Il Sung and Ho Chi-minh, President of the Democratic Republic of Viet-Nam, on a visit to the Pyongyang Textile Mill

· **Premier Kim Il Sung delivering a speech before the crowd welcoming the Government Delegation of our country at Perihigi Airport, Budapest**

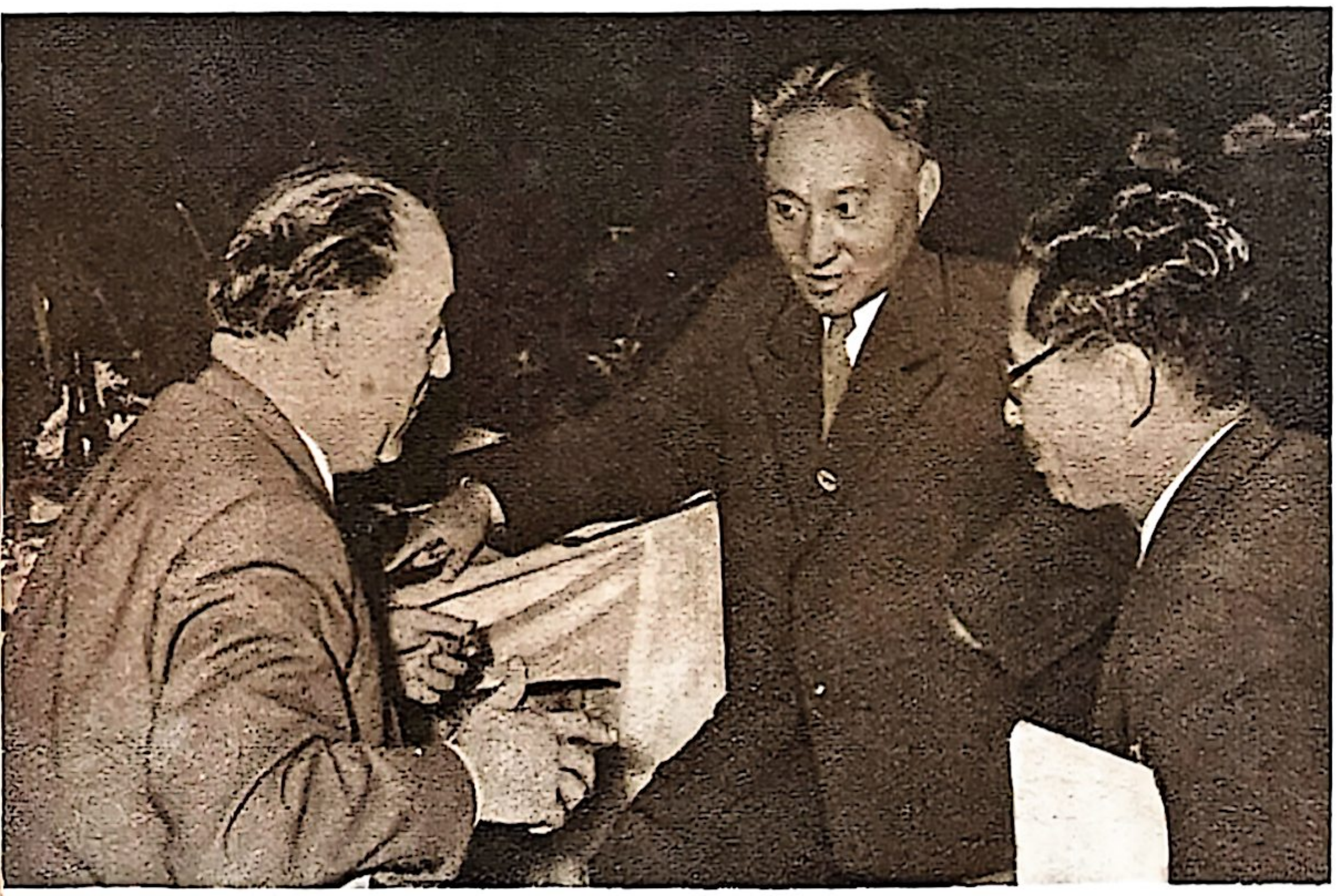
N. S. Khrushchov, Chairman of the Council of Ministers of the U.S.S.R., and the Government Delegation of the D.P.R.K. headed by Premier Kim Il Sung (November 1957)



Premier Kim Il Sung receiving the delegation of the French Communist Party who came to Korea

Talks between the delegation of the Indonesian Communist Party who visited Korea and the delegation of the Workers' Party of Korea headed by Comrade Kim Il Sung

Comrade Pak Jung Ai being warmly welcomed at the World Peace Council



Comrade Han Sang Doo, head of the delegation of our trade union, who participated in the Fourth Congress of the World Federation of Trade Unions, talking with Louis Saillant

Korean delegation who participated in Afro-Asian Solidarity Conference

Foreign women's delegation who came to Korea to participate in the National Women's Congress

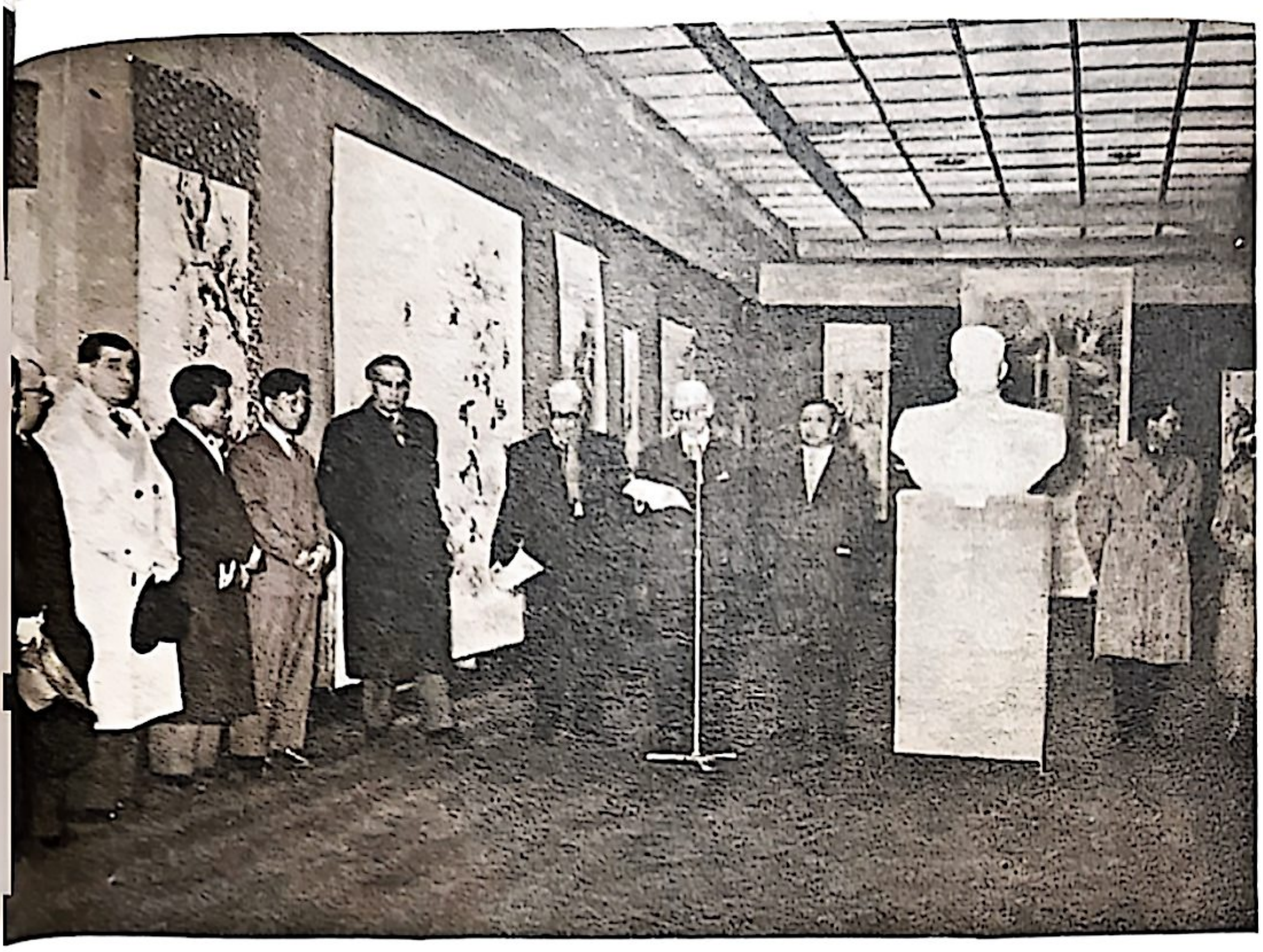
Foreign youth delegates who took part in the Fourth Congress of the Korean Democratic Youth League

The delegates of the Thai National Trade Union and the Central United Council of Workers and Working People of Iran who visited our country

The delegation of the Indian people in Korea

The delegates of the Japanese Diet in Korea

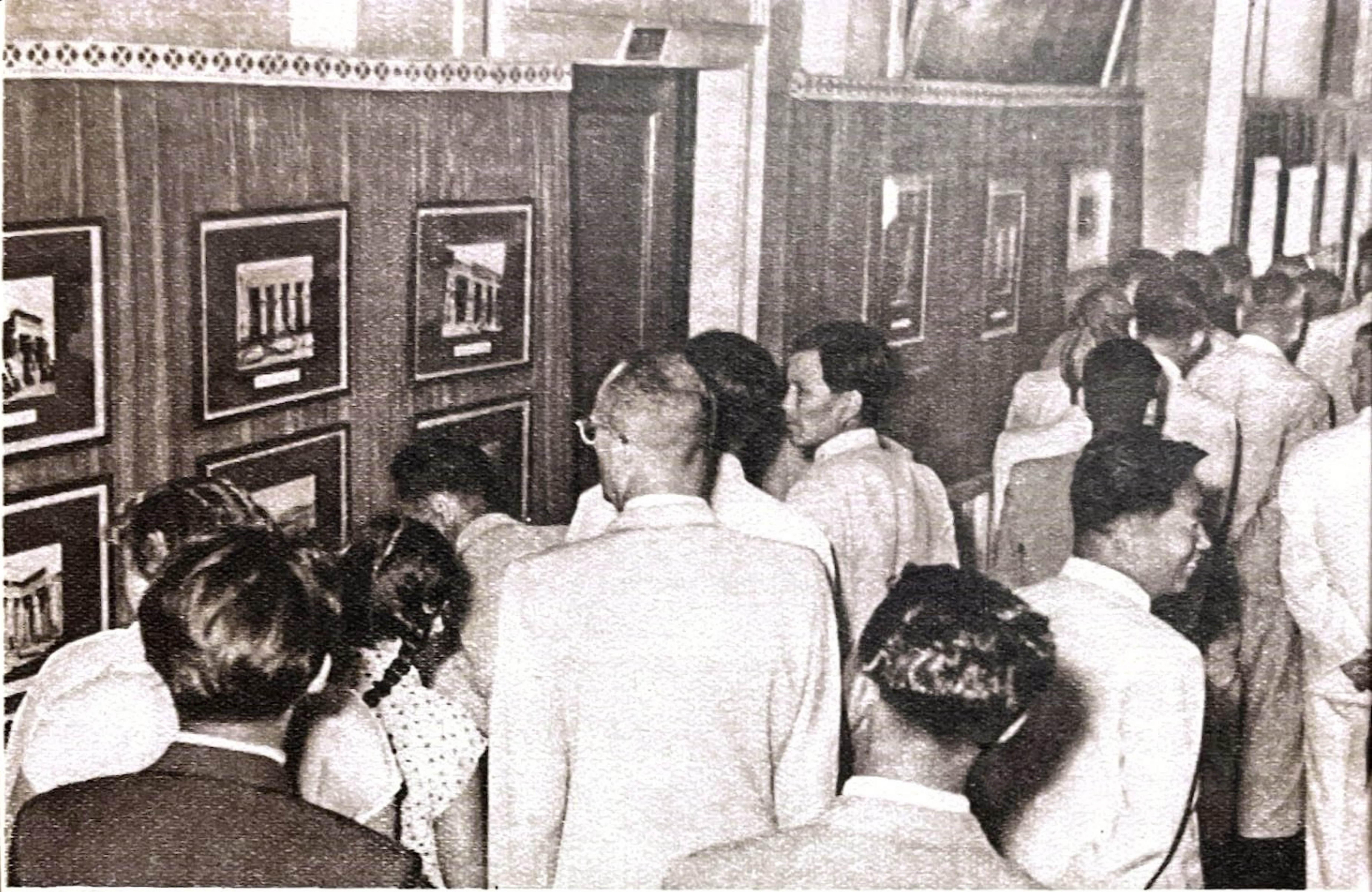
The Indonesian youth delegation and the delegation of Argentina met on Mt. Balryong in Hamheung



Opening ceremony of the Korean Fine Arts Exhibition in Budapest

The representatives of our country who participated in the Sixth World Youth and Students Festival are welcomed

The members of the State Choi Seung Hi Dance Theatre are welcomed in Czechoslovakia



An Egyptian photo exhibition opened in Pyongyang

A performance by the Pashkir dance troupe of the U.S.S.R. in Korea

If they do not do so, they will expose themselves as being consistently opposed to the peaceful settlement of the Korean question. And they will incur a stronger denunciation for their insincerity.

In disregard of the unanimous desire of the Korean people and the good-will of the world people, the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique are still entertaining the wild idea of settling the Korean question by means of war.

In flagrant violation of the Armistice Agreement, the U.S. imperialists concluded the "Joint Defence Pact" with the Syngman Rhee clique right after the truce was signed. They did everything to expand their military bases and reinforce their armed forces and military equipment. In June 1957 they abrogated unilaterally Paragraph 13-d of the Armistice Agreement that forbids the introduction of war supplies. And in July of the same year, they moved to Seoul the "UN Command", the Headquarters of the U.S. army of aggression against Korea.

In October the U.S. army in South Korea was reorganized into an "Atomic Division". In January 1958 they held provocative "atomic manoeuvres" near the military demarcation line. They openly announced to the public that 280 mm. atomic guns had been shipped into South Korea. This is graphic evidence that the U.S. imperialists have no interest in the peaceful settlement of the Korean question and are trying to convert South Korea into a base for guided missile. However, their adventurous acts will, as in the past, be doomed to failure.

Whatever desperate means the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique may resort to, the Korean people will continue their unflagging struggle for peaceful unification taking advantage of all favourable conditions.

In the alignment of forces, the international situation is turning in favor of our revolution. In the present situation the forces of peace and socialism are overwhelmingly predominant over the imperialist forces of war. The imperialists can no longer provoke war at will and at any place in the world. This is all the more so in Korea, as she is a member of the great family of socialism.

The Korean people will shatter to smithereens the scheme of the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique to provoke war, and defend peace in Korea to the last.

The socialist forces are rapidly growing in the northern part of the Republic—the democratic base—which constitutes a main force for attaining peaceful unification.

The brilliant results achieved in the democratic base are a source of strength for the South Korean people under the misrule of the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique, encouraging them to wage a more stubborn struggle for peaceful unification.

As the political and economic crisis facing the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique becomes more acute, and the South Korean people are reduced to a more wretched condition, the anti-American and anti-Syngman Rhee sentiments are mounting; the patriotic forces are gaining in strength; and the voices demanding the peaceful unification of the homeland are becoming louder and louder.

In support of the policy worked out by the Workers' Party of Korea on the basis of scientific analysis of internal situation, the Korean people are marching ahead looking forward to the day of peaceful unification.

CHAPTER VIII

KOREAN PEOPLE'S STRUGGLE FOR WORLD PEACE AND FOR FRIENDSHIP AND SOLIDARITY AMONG THE NATIONS

Since its founding, the Democratic People's Republic of Korea has been promoting steadily international ties, stubbornly struggling for the strengthening of world peace and for the promotion of friendship and solidarity among the nations.

The Korean people are opposed to war and cherish peace, not only because they love peace but because our country is a people's democracy, and there are no exploiting classes that rake in profits from war, nor any circles interested in war.

We know only a peace-loving foreign policy will enable us to safeguard the independence and freedom we have won, consolidate and develop all the democratic achievements, and carry out successfully the peaceful unification of the country and socialist economic construction in the northern half of the Republic.

Therefore, in the early days of the founding the government of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea formulated the principles of its foreign policy as follows: "Our nation will endeavour to be one of the freedom-loving nations of the world as an equal member, and to maintain the sound friendly relations with the freedom-loving democratic countries and people that respect the equal status and freedom of our nation."

Premier Kim Il Sung reiterated the principles of our foreign policy at the First Session of the Second Supreme People's Assembly held on September 20, 1957, when he said: "The most important task in the sphere of our foreign policy is to further strengthen international friendship and solidarity with the Soviet Union, People's Republic of China and other People's Democracies." And he stressed that we must be vigilant against the machinations of the imperialists who are trying to destroy the unity of the socialist countries, and we must shatter thoroughly their reactionary propaganda.

Premier Kim Il Sung continued: "The Democratic People's Republic of Korea, upholding the Leninist principle of peaceful co-existence of nations with different social systems, will make efforts to establish friendly relations with all the countries that wish to be on good terms with us." He declared that our Republic will strive to consolidate solidarity and promote the economic and cultural relations, on the basis of mutual benefit, with such Afro-Asian countries as India, Indonesia, Burma, Egypt, etc. that are fighting against colonialism and to establish normal relations with Japan.

Premier Kim Il Sung made clear our peaceful policy once again by saying, "The Korean people stand always for peace and against war."

On the basis of such principles of our foreign policy, our country established diplomatic relations with the U.S.S.R. (October 12, 1948), People's Republic of China (October 6, 1949), Mongolian People's Republic (October 15, 1948), Polish People's Republic (October 16, 1948), Czechoslovak Republic (October 22, 1948), Rumanian People's Republic (November 3, 1948), Hungarian People's Republic (November 11, 1948), Bulgarian People's Republic (November 29, 1948), People's Republic of Albania (April 28, 1949), German Democratic Republic (November 7, 1949), Democratic Republic of Viet-Nam (January 31, 1950), exchanging Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary Ambassadors.

Freedom and independence which our people so cherish could be brought about only by the army of the first world socialist state.

The great Soviet Union, not only the liberator of the Korean people but their true ally, rendered every support to accomplish the democratic revolution in North Korea and has always helped Korea to develop as an independent and democratic state so that they may achieve the peaceful unification of the country.

The Democratic People's Republic of Korea, a member of a big family of socialism, adhering to proletarian internationalism, has fought for the peaceful unification of the country and socialist construction. Since liberation our country has gone through difficulties and grown to be an invincible power in Asia together with its powerful neighbours, the Soviet Union and the People's Republic of China, in preventing imperialist aggression.

The Korean war proved that there is nothing to break this power.

The fraternal countries headed by the Soviet Union supported the righteous struggle of the Korean people and spared no effort in their endeavour for the peaceful solution of the Korean question, exposing the aggressive schemes of Anglo-American imperialists in the U.N. and other international conferences or through individual statements.

In particular, the entry into the Korean war of the Chinese People's Volunteers, which set a new example of internationalist assistance, along with the fraternal material and moral aid given by the countries of the socialist camp headed by the Soviet Union, was one of the important factors in gaining victory by the Korean people in their just Fatherland Liberation War against the U.S. armed aggression.

The Korean people will never forget the enormous amount of aid rendered by the fraternal countries for our post-war rehabilitation and reconstruction of the national economy. In 1953, the Soviet Union rendered free aid of one billion rubles, the People's Republic of China eight thousand billion yuan (in the old Chinese currency), the People's Democracies in Europe about nine hundred million rubles, and the Mongolian People's Republic sent tens of thousands of head of livestock.

And again in 1956, our fraternal countries gave us a huge amount of aid gratis. Moreover, they rendered us technical assistance and helped us in the form of credit and trade on the basis of mutual benefit.

The correct guidance of the Party and heroic labour endeavour of the people, together with the fraternal assistance, were the main factors in recovering fundamentally from the heavy war wounds in a short span of three years and in building the economic foundation for developing a self-sufficient national economy.

Thus, Korean people, firmly convinced of the power of proletarian internationalism through their own experiences since liberation, particularly during the trying days of the war, deem it their sacred duty to strengthen further friendship and solidarity with the socialist countries with the Soviet Union as the leader.

Today the ties of friendship between our country and other socialist countries have become ever stronger. Visits of the heads of government, delegations of parliaments, political and social organizations and cultural groups are serving to strengthen further mutual contacts.

During the post-war period alone the government delegation of our Republic headed by Premier Kim Il Sung visited the fraternal countries: the Soviet Union, the People's Republic of China, Germany, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Hungary, Rumania, Bulgaria, Albania and Mongolia.

And the U.S.S.R. government and Supreme Soviet delegations, President Ho Chi-minh of the Democratic Republic of Viet-Nam, and the government delegations of the People's Republic of China, Democratic Republic of Germany, Poland, Bulgaria Albania, Mongolia, Czechoslovakia, and Rumania, each headed by the Premier, visited our country.

These mutual visits of the heads of government and delegations have contributed greatly to strengthening fraternal relations, friendship and solidarity within the great family of socialism. The unity and solidarity with the brother Communist and Workers' Parties are also further strengthened.

In particular, at the meeting of the representatives of the Communist and Workers' Parties of the socialist countries held in November 1957, in Moscow on the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the Great October Socialist Revolution, the Workers' Party of Korea, which has applied Marxism-Leninism creatively to Korea's actual conditions and ensured the purity of its ranks by striking a blow at the trends of opportunists and revisionists, and vicious sectarians in particular, once again made clear its stand on the strengthening of unity and solidarity among the brother Parties.

The Korean people will be ever true to the spirit of the Declaration to which the Korean Workers' Party attached its signature.

The relations between our country and other socialist countries are established on the basis of mutual respect for sovereignty, non-interference in each other's internal affairs, complete equality of nations, big and small, and assistance and cooperation in the spirit of proletarian internationalism. Agreement on the Economic and Cultural Co-operation with the Soviet Union, Agreement on Economic and Cultural Co-operation with the People's Republic of China and many other economic, technical and cultural agreements were concluded. Besides, many protocols

have been signed. In accordance with these agreements the cultural exchange programmes with other socialist countries are very active. With no regard with geographical distance, exchange of science, technology, literature, arts and physical culture is being carried out.

There have been frequent visits to Korea of the art troupes from the Soviet Union, the People's Republic of China and other fraternal countries, while the visit to the brother countries of our performance groups is increasing. Exchange of art exhibitions and photo shows and mutual visits of writers, reporters, scientists, technicians, educational and medical workers are increasing.

In particular, the joint study and work in the sphere of science and culture are of great significance in utilising the successful results and experiences of the fraternal peoples for the common cause of building socialism. Illustrative of this are The Research Institute on the International Atomic Energy in which Korean scientists participate, the Agreement on the Fishery in the Western Pacific and on Co-operation in Research on Oceanology and Tidal Waves signed by Korea, the Soviet Union, China and Viet-Nam, the records of the Publishing Workers' Conference, of the socialist countries, the film "Brothers", a joint work of Korea and the Soviet Union, etc.

Besides, the exchange of films and translations of various literary works are included in cultural exchange between the fraternal countries along with the regular exchange of periodicals, books, articles, photographs, records and recorded radio programmes, etc.

In strengthening further political, economic and cultural relations with the countries of the socialist camp, the Korean people have consistently maintained that we must learn from the Soviet Union and that socialist forces should unite around the Soviet Union.

This is not only because the Soviet Union is the liberator and supporter of our country but because she is the first socialist state in the world—the authorized center of the communist movement—and because the experiences the Soviet Union gained have become a guide to action for the entire workers of the world.

The Korean people, promoting constantly friendly relations with the socialist countries with the Soviet Union as the leader, are always vigilant in safeguarding the socialist achievements against every possible scheme of the imperialists in cooperation with the fraternal countries.

At the time of the Hungarian incident in 1956, the Korean people supported firmly the heroic struggle of the Hungarian people in defending their socialist achievements against the world reactionaries and sent a considerable amount of relief materials including cement, sheet glass, tobacco and other things to the Hungarian people who crushed the reactionaries and rose up to rebuild their country.

When the world reactionaries were assuming the offensive, the U.S. imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique, clamouring louder than ever for a "March North," levelled vicious slander against us.

It was at this time that within the Korean Workers' Party the anti-revolutionary sectarians headed by Choi Chang Ik and Pak Chang Ok launched a challenge against the Party.

However, the Korean people rallying more firmly around the Korean Workers' Party and government safeguarded the eastern outpost of socialism, delivering a decisive blow to the anti-Party and anti-revolutionary group that was riding the waves of revisionism.

Under the banner of proletarian internationalism, the Korean people, in cooperation with the fraternal people of the socialist countries, shattered to smithereens the scheme of the world reactionaries.

For the Korean people who in alliance with the socialist states have crushed the aggressive designs of the imperialists, it is one of their noble duties to support the countries fighting for the national independence and development, peace and freedom, and to consolidate friendly relations with them.

The Korean people fully support the five principles of coexistence which was made public jointly by Premier Chou En-lai of China and Prime Minister Nehru of India, and the declarations adopted at the Bandung conference, because they coincide with the desire of the Korean people who are willing to safeguard peace both in Asia and the whole world against colonialists.

When Egypt nationalized the Suez Canal in 1956, the government of our Republic issued an official statement in support

of the righteous execution of sovereignty by Egypt and when Britain and France committed military aggression against Egypt, our government made public another statement condemning the unwarrant use of force by Britain and France.

Supporting the government statements the Korean people held rallies to denounce the imperialist aggressors, assuring the Egyptian people that the Korean people were with them in their heroic fight.

When the U.S. imperialists tried to intervene in the internal affairs of Syria under the slogan of the so-called "Dulles-Eisenhower Doctrine," the government of our Republic on behalf of all the Korean people released a statement in support of the just struggle of the Syrian people against the common enemy, the U.S. imperialists.

The economic and cultural relations between the Democratic People's Republic of Korea and Afro-Asian countries have become stronger. Trade agreements have been concluded with India, Indonesia, Burma, and Egypt.

Numerous influential individuals of different countries visited our country. Among them were the delegation of the Indonesian Communist Party headed by General Secretary Aidit and other guests from Indonesia. We welcomed guests from India, Ceylon, Nepal, United Arab Republic, Iraq, Tunisia, Sudan, Algeria, etc. Then various representatives of our country visited the United Arab Republic, India, Indonesia, Burma, Ceylon, etc. It goes without saying that such mutual visits served to expand contacts between the peoples of Korea and the Afro-Asian countries.

For the further development of mutual contacts and fraternal relationship, in India the Indian-Korean Cultural Society has been established while the Korean-Indian Cultural Society in Korea, and in Nepal the Nepal-Korean Friendship Society was formed.

Mention should be made of the relation with Japan. Normalization of the relation with Japan on the basis of peaceful coexistence will serve to promote peace in Asia and accord with the interests of the peoples of the two countries.

The statement released on February 25, 1955 by the D.P.R.K. Foreign Minister on relations with Japan received warm support from the peoples of both countries. In accordance with its consistent policy the government of our Republic repatriated those

Japanese nationals in Korea who wished to return to Japan under the agreement with the representatives of the Japanese Red Gross who visited our country. Moreover, our government released unconditionally the Japanese fishermen who had intruded deep into our territorial waters. It has maintained a constant and sincere attitude by concluding a series of commercial agreements with the non-official Japanese business representatives.

Many members of the Japanese Diet, trade and cultural representatives, peace delegations, representatives of Japanese-Korean Society, and representatives of trade unions, youth and women's organizations, all stated publicly in favour of the peace-loving policy of our government towards Japan, when they visited our country.

Now, the Japanese people are demanding their government to enter into commercial and cultural relations with the Democratic People's Republic of Korea on the basis of equality and mutual benefit.

Nevertheless, the Japanese government maintains an unfriendly attitude towards our country.

Particularly, the question of Korean nationals in Japan is a very important one in the relation with Japan. The Japanese government has persecuted unlawfully the Korean nationals in Japan in violation of international laws and conventions regarding foreign residents.

The government of the D.P.R.K. repeatedly requested the Japanese government to give the Korean nationals in Japan freedom to study in Korea, freedom to return to Korea at their own free will, and freedom of movement. Furthermore, our government sent funds for the Korean students in Japan.

However, recently the Japanese government went so far as to deport Korean nationals detained in the Omura Camp forcibly to South Korea.

But the government of our Republic, still motivated by the principles of peaceful co-existence, is endeavouring to consolidate friendly relations with the Japanese people, with the conviction that the fair and just policy of our country will gain further support of the Japanese people.

Particular mention should be made of friendly relations with the Afro-Asian countries and their peoples, established in the course of peace struggle.

At the Asian and Pacific Trade Unions Congress in 1949, Women's Congress of Asian Countries of the same year, Conference of Asian Countries in 1955, Asian Writers' Conference in 1956, Afro-Asian Students' Conference of the same year, our country's delegations, together with the representatives from the Afro-Asian countries, had opportunities to make militant resolutions to safeguard peace.

Particularly, the Afro-Asian Solidarity Conference held in Cairo in 1957, served to consolidate and develop the solidarity between the peoples of our country and the Afro-Asian countries.

Korean people regard such solidarity with the peoples of the Afro-Asian countries as an important link in their struggle to strengthen world peace.

The peace-loving Korean people have energetically taken part in the international movement for world peace since liberation. And various social organizations of our country are affiliated with the corresponding democratic international organizations for safeguarding peace. Our representatives expressed repeatedly our determination to safeguard peace at various international meetings such as the World Peace Congress, the Congress of the World Federation of Trade Unions, the Conferences of the World Federation of Democratic Youth and the International Union of Students, International Women's Congress, International Journalists' Congress, etc.

When the U.S. imperialists invaded our country, the peace-loving peoples of the world, united in common desire with the Korean people for peace, demanded resolutely a truce in Korea, shouting "U.S. imperialists, take your blood stained hands off Korea!"

The World Federation of Trade Unions appealed to all its affiliated organizations and workers to observe the "Week of Positive Solidarity with the Korean People" from July 10, 1950, and "Day of International Positive Solidarity with the Heroic Korean People, and Day of Safeguarding Peace" on June 25, 1952.

Launching various kinds of movements, the World Peace Council, the World Federation of Democratic Youth, and the Women's International Democratic Federation urged the peace-loving people of the world to wage a struggle for supporting positively the Korean people against the U.S. aggression.

Furthermore, peoples of France, Austria, Norway, Switzerland, etc. sent relief goods to our country.

For investigating germ warfare launched by the U.S. aggressors in Korea and China the Women's International Democratic Federation and the International Democratic Lawyers' Association in 1951 and 1952 respectively dispatched their representatives, and in 1952 the International Scientists' Investigation Commission was sent to Korea. And the result of these investigations proved beyond doubt to the world the criminal actions of the U.S. imperialists.

The Korean people will remember always with deep gratitude the heartfelt support extended to us by the honest-minded people of the world, which was a great source of encouragement in the fight for victory in the bitter Fatherland Liberation War against the U.S. armed aggressors and their lackeys, treacherous Syngman Rhee clique.

The Korean people, as one of the peoples who fully understand the cruelties of war and value of peace, will wage an unflagging struggle for peace and against war.

Recently, on February 19, 1958, the Supreme People's Assembly made clear our position once more by adopting the decision relating to "the Resolution of the Supreme Soviet of the U.S.S.R. and the Proposals of the Soviet Government for the Alleviation of International Tension and Preservation and Consolidation of World Peace".

The government statement of our Republic of February 5, 1958 for the promotion of peaceful unification of the country and the joint statement of the governments of Korea and China of February 19, 1958, again exhibited the peaceful nature of our foreign policy to the world.

The Korean people, being fully aware of the fact that the achievement of the peaceful unification of our country is closely connected with the alleviation of international tension, will never spare their effort to realize the decision of the Supreme People's Assembly and the government statements.

The Korean people consistently stand for strengthening friendship and solidarity with the peace-loving peoples and expanding mutual contacts.

In the past years, in addition to the guests from the Afro-Asian countries, many guests visited our country from France, Britain, Italy, West Germany, Austria, Holland, Denmark, Belgium, the United States, Canada, Chile, Argentina, Brazil, Cuba,

Mexico, Australia, New Zealand including the Delegation of the French Communist Party.

During the same period the Koreans, too, visited such countries as France, Austria, Denmark, Canada, Switzerland, Norway, Finland and had friendly contacts with the peoples of those countries.

It goes without saying that the various international conferences and festivals greatly serve this end. Particularly, the Korean youth demonstrated the desire of the peace-loving Korean people before the whole world through the excellent national arts and sports at the World Youth and Students' Festivals.

The Korean people, together with the people of the whole world, have always stood for promotion of mutual contacts, demonstrated the international solidarity with the working class and the oppressed people all over the world, and opposed the fascist persecution of the peace movement and peace fighters.

In the signature campaign, for example, 6,150,000 Koreans put their signatures to the Vienna Appeal against atomic war adopted by the World Peace Council in 1955, and 6,450,000 people joined in the signature campaign proposed at the end of 1957 by U.D.F.F. which demanded the immediate suspension of the atomic and hydrogen weapon tests and unconditional ban of these weapons, opposed the attempt of the U.S. imperialists to turn South Korea into an atomic base, and demanded the withdrawal of the U.S. aggressive forces from Korea.

And it is also the demand of the Korean people that the U.N. should be faithful to its Charter and be a true organization of international co-operation. The Korean people cannot overlook how the U.N. under the manipulation of the United States has acted toward our country.

The U.S. imperialists have established the puppet regime in South Korea by using their voting machine in the U.N., and are scheming to perpetuate the division of Korea. They tried to cover up their aggressive action against Korea under the name of the U.N. The U.S. imperialists illegally used the name of the U.N. in signing the armistice agreement in Korea.

The matter does not end there. The U.N. is used as a tool for intervening in the internal affairs of Korea by organizing the "United Nations Commission on Korea" and "United Nations Korean Unification and Rehabilitation Commission."

Moreover, the U.S. imperialists are frantically trying to throw another obstacle in the way of the peaceful settlement of the Korean question by their unsavory scheme to admit the puppet South Korean clique into membership of the United Nations.

The United Nations under the pressure of the U.S. imperialists has continuously refused to cooperate with the Democratic People's Republic of Korea and assumed an arbitrary attitude disregarding national equality.

At the Geneva Conference of 1954 the U.S. imperialists had the impudence to propose general elections under the supervision of the U.N. to "unify" Korea. The U.S. proposed supervision of Korea by the opposing belligerent party that was shamefully defeated by the Korean people. Thus, they exposed their absurd position to the world. What they wanted was to accomplish their aggressive aims which they could not gain by war and to wreck the conference.

Such schemes of the U.S. imperialists were resolutely rejected by the Korean people, and the world's honest-minded people condemned the U.S. imperialists.

The D.P.R.K. government has repeatedly made strong protests against the illegal measures taken by the U.N. to interfere in the internal affairs of our country in violation of the U.N. Charter.

The Korean problem should be settled according to the will of the Korean people. Nevertheless, it was discussed at the U.N. General Assembly under the pressure of the U.S. imperialists. Our government demanded that the representatives of our side should take part in the discussions, and declared that any resolution adopted without the participation of our representatives should be annuled.

Nevertheless, the United States and its followers in the U.N. were clinging to their one-sided position which caused criticism and rejection from various member states of the U.N.

Representatives of most of the Afro-Asian countries, not to speak of the Soviet Union and the People's Democracies, came out against the U.S. position on the Korean question.

Even the representative of Canada—the country which took part in the aggressive war in Korea—proposed a new approach toward the Korean question saying that the unification of Korea is only possible by means of talks between North and South Korea and that the U.N. should co-operate with them.

The Korean people never refused international co-operation in the peaceful settlement of the Korean question. On the contrary, they are firmly convinced that the co-operation of the states concerned will promote the peaceful unification of Korea.

Therefore, the D.P.R.K. government has always been in favour of convoking an international conference of the states concerned about the Korean question.

In particular, the government statement of our Republic of February 5, 1958, clearly stated that the general elections for the unification of Korea may be held under the neutral nations supervision, if necessary.

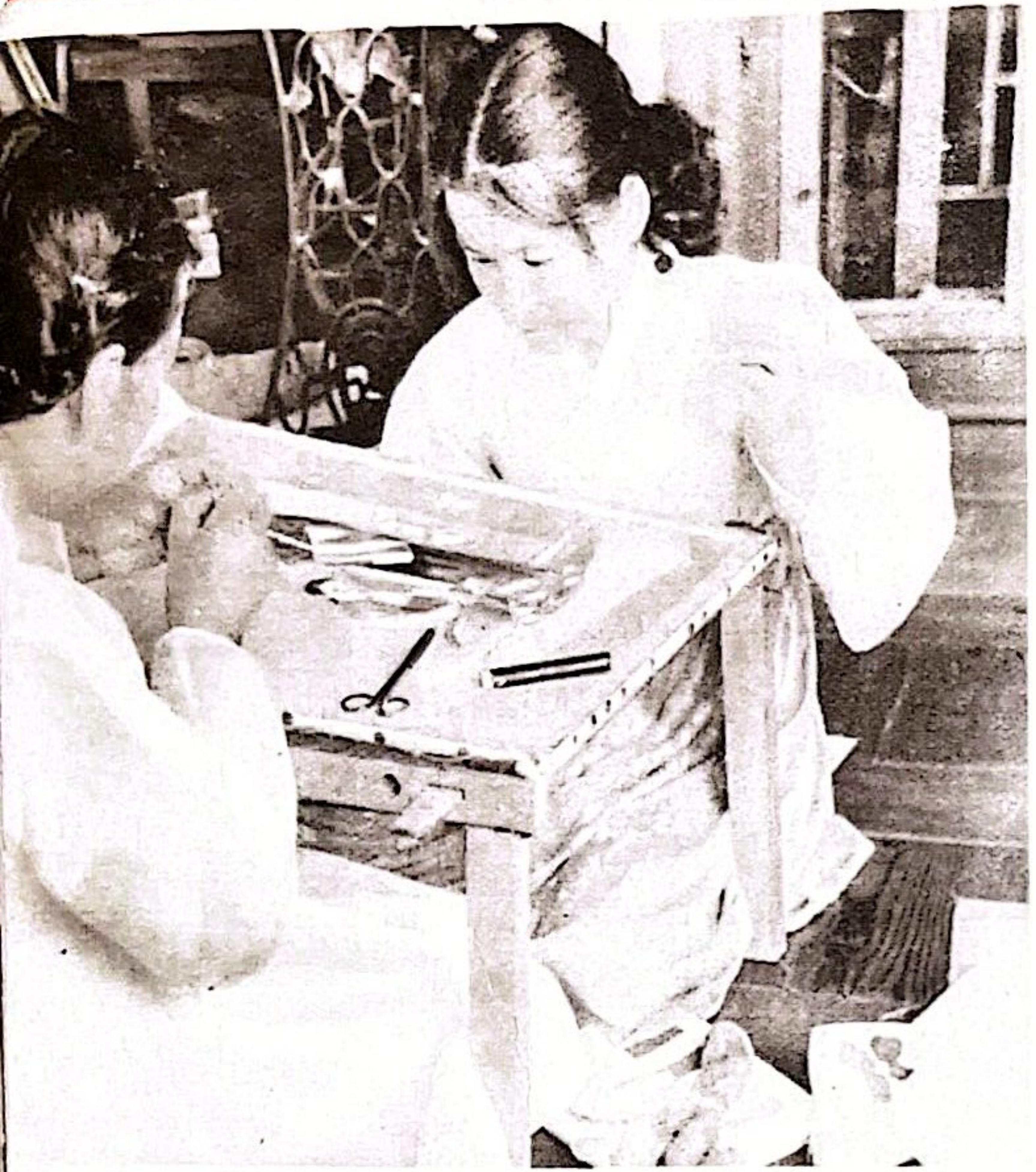
The government statement is the most just and reasonable proposals for the peaceful settlement of the Korean question and meets with the warm support of the people all over the world.

Today—the turning-point in history—when the peace forces are far superior and socialism is gaining a decisive victory, the Korean people with the powerful democratic base in the northern half of the Republic are resolutely determined to unify their country peacefully by their united power and the international co-operation.

At the same time, the Korean people are convinced that the achievement of the national cause will make a great contribution to promoting peace in Asia and to alleviating international tension. Therefore, they will wage ever stronger the struggle for the strengthening of world peace.

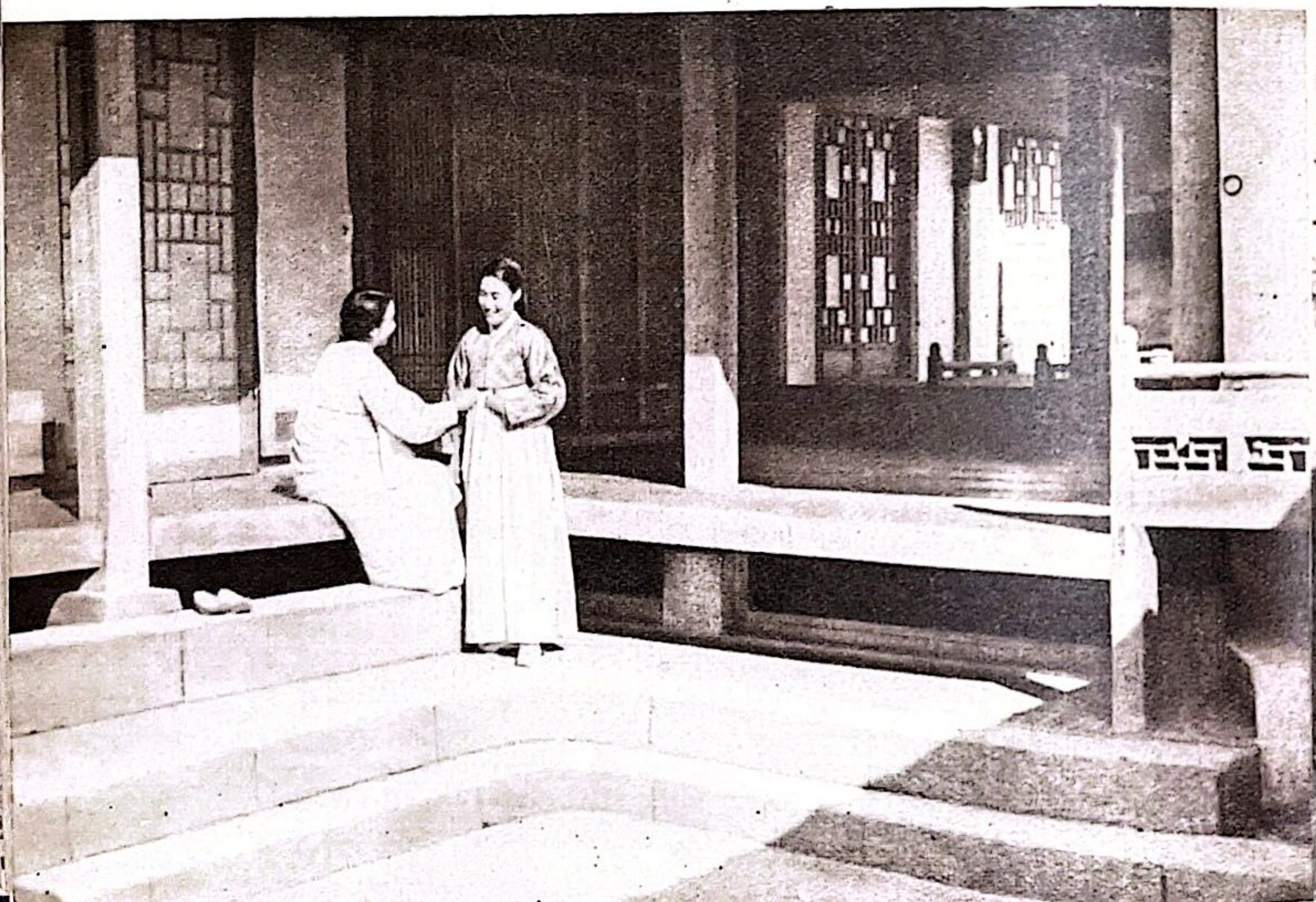
Wedding-day

At the well



Embroidery

At the verandah

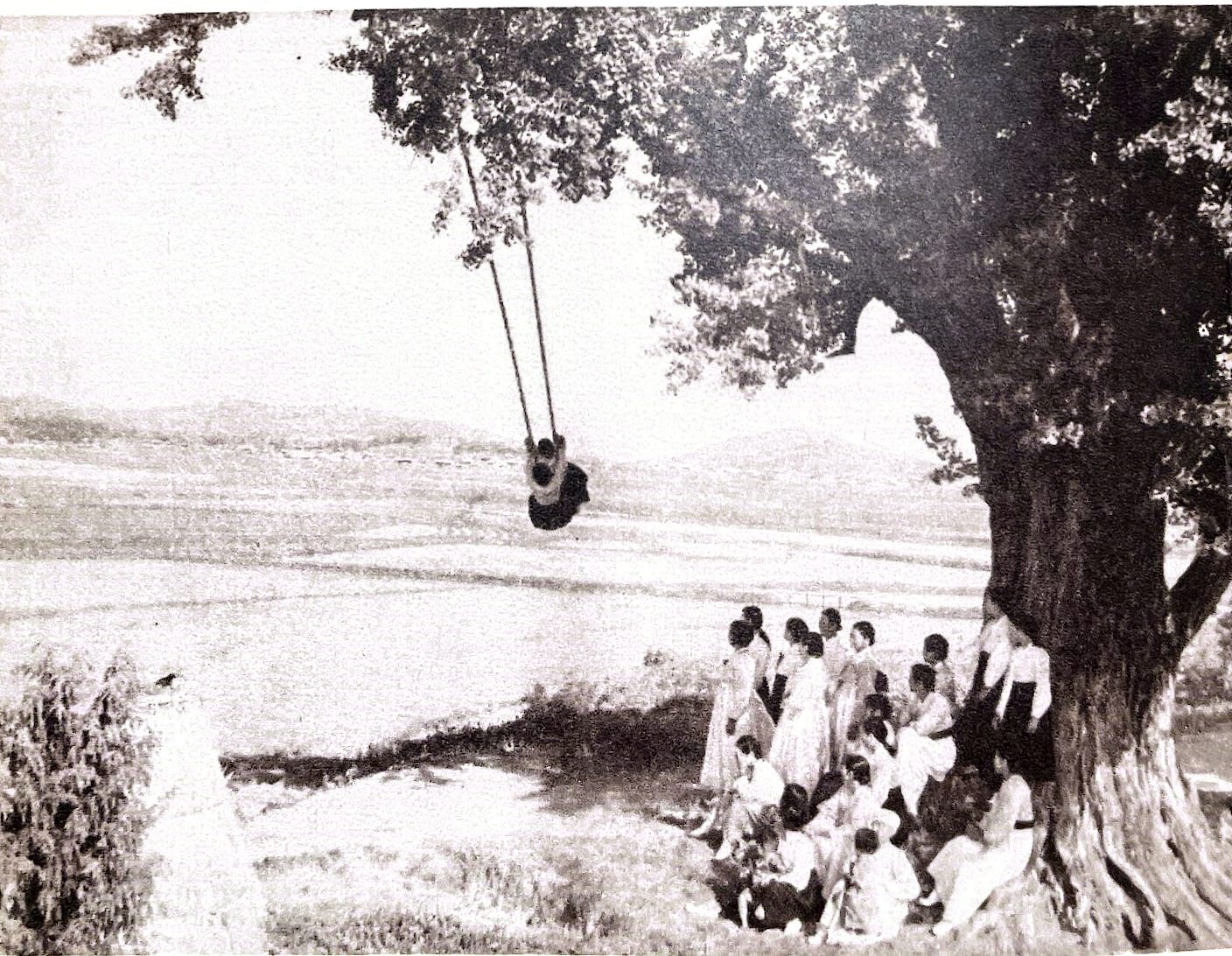


Playing on Kayakeum

Room for the elder

Korean game
"Yootnori"

Swinging



CHRONOLOGY

12th c. B. C.- 1st c. B. C.	Ancient tribe states established.
57 B.C.	Establishment of Silla Kingdom.
37 B.C.	Establishment of Kokuryo Kingdom.
18 B.C.	Establishment of Pakche Kingdom.
611 -614	Kokuryo forces under the command of Eulji Moon Duk repulsed the Chinese Sui-yang-ti's invasion.
660	Fall of Pakche Kingdom.
668	Fall of Kokuryo Kingdom. Silla unified Korea.
896	Red Trousers Peasants' Uprising in the southwest region.
918	Establishment of Koryu Dynasty.
935	Silla surrendered to Koryu.
1018 -1019	Koryu's army under General Kang Kam Chan repulsed the invasion of Kitan army.
1176	The peasants' uprising of Mangi and Mangsoi.
1231	Mongolian army's invasion of Koryu.
1270	Sambyulcho army's resistance against Koryu's pro-Yuan policy.
1369	Attack on Tungningpu of Yuan and severance of diplomatic relations with Yuan.
1380	The navy of Koryu destroyed 500 vessels of the Japanese pirates off Jinpo.
1392	Downfall of Koryu Dynasty and the establishment of Li Dynasty by Li Sung Kye.
1443	Creation and enactment of 28 letters of Hoonmin-jungeum (Korean letters).
1467	The peasants' war broke out in Hamkyung Province under the leadership of Li Shi Ai.
1592	The Japanese aggressive army landed at Pusan and Admiral Li Soon Shin's fleet crushed the Japanese naval aggressors.

1593	The Japanese forces were driven back by the Korea-Ming allied forces from Pyongyang and Seoul.
1598	Admiral Li Soon Shin, under the joint operations of Ming Dynasty's navy, intercepted the Japanese aggressive forces' retreat and swept the enemy remnants and won a great victory.
1636-37	Second invasion of Ching.
1811-12	The peasants' war led by Hong Kyung Rai broke out in Pyongan Province.
1832	English merchant ship invaded Korea and forced her to open trade.
1846	The invasion of French warships.
1862	The peasants' uprising took place in all parts of Korea.
1866	The Korean people sent to the bottom American armed merchant ship Sherman which invaded the Taidong River.
	The French forces were repulsed at Jungjoksan wall.
1871	The invasion of the U.S. Asian fleet into the Kanghwa island was repulsed.
1876	Japan forced Korea to conclude the Kanghwa Treaty.
1882	The "Korea-U.S. Treaty of Amity and Commerce," the "Anglo-Korean Treaty of Amity and Commerce," the "Korea-Germany Treaty of Amity and Commerce" were concluded by compulsion of the United States, Britain and Germany.
	Korean soldiers' mutiny against suppression of foreign aggressors and treachery of the government officials (Imo Army's Mutiny).
1884	With the Japanese support, Kim Ok Kyoon's coup d'etat took place, but ended in failure.
1888	The prohibition of propagation of Christianity as a tool of Korean invasion.
1894	The peasants' war under the leadership of Jung Bong Joon broke out in the Koboo district and spread to the three southern provinces. The uprising peasants occupied Junjoo and threatened Seoul.
	The Japanese army landed in Korea on the plea of suppressing the peasants' war and was stepping up their aggression of Korea.

1895	Righteous Army Movement against the Japanese aggression spread all over the country and continued for a long period.
1904	Russo-Japanese war broke out and "Korea-Japan protocol" was signed.
1905	Japan forced Korea to conclude "Eulsa Five-point Treaty," which deprived Korea's independence and sovereignty.
1906	"Suwoo Academic Society" was organized and patriotic cultural enlightenment movement started.
1907	Japan forced Korea to sign the "Jungmi Seven-point Treaty" and dissolved Korea's army, depriving the Korean people of their military power.
1909	Strike of tram car workers in Seoul.
1910	Korea was forced to sign the "Annexation Treaty", which legalized the occupation of Korea by the Japanese imperialists. It was officially announced on August 29.
	The Japanese imperialists announced "the Corporation Law" aiming at strangling Korea's national industry.
1912	The Japanese imperialists made public the "Land Survey Law" in order to seize the land of Korea. In various parts of the country the peasants waged on a wide scale the struggle against the "land survey" by the Japanese imperialists.
1917	The widespread news of victory of the great October Socialist Revolution inspired the patriotic anti-Japanese struggle waged by the broad masses of the people.
1919	March 1 People's Uprising broke out. For three months the popular masses who participated in the anti-Japanese uprising throughout all counties (except 7 counties) numbered over 2,000,000.
1920	The Korean partisan battalion in the Soviet Maritime Province, in cooperation with the Soviet people, dealt a severe blow to the invading Japanese army.
1921	5,000 transport workers in Pusan called a general strike demanding better treatment.
	The tenants in the service of the Japanese imperialists' "Oriental Development Company" organized unions in vari-

	ous parts of Hwanghai Province and waged the struggle to refuse payment of farm rent.
1923	Large scale struggle for celebrating May Day was waged in all parts of the country. When the big earthquake in the Kanto district, Japan, the Japanese imperialists killed over 30,000 Koreans.
1924	All-Korea Workers' and Peasants' Federation and All-Korea Youth Union were organized.
1925	April 17. The Korean Communist Party was founded on the basis of the growing labour movement. In November, the Japanese imperialists arrested and imprisoned large numbers of the members of the Korean Communist Party and related persons.
1926	"June 10 *Manse* Movement" broke out in Seoul.
1928	Owing to the criminal disruptive acts of the sectarian elements, the Korean Communist Party was dissolved. The December Thesis of the Commintern on Korea's revolution was made public.
1929	January. Workers of the Rising Sun Company in Moonpyung called strike, which caused the Wonsan general strike (some 3,000 workers went on strike for 82 days). It was a turning point of Korea's labour movement. Anti-Japanese students' incident which took place in Kwangjoo on November 3, led the students and youth all over the country to unfold anti-Japanese movement for six months. Some 2,000 peasants of the Japanese-owned "Hazama Farm" caused tenancy trouble in Kimhai County.
1930	Workers of the Shinheung Mine in South Hamkyung Province called strike, which turned into an uprising. The mass uprising of Korean people in northeast China broke out. Over 3,000 peasants in Tanchun County, South Hamkyung Province attacked the county office and the police station. 2,000 workers of the Pyongyang Rubber Shoes Factory called a general strike. Over 2,000 peasants of Kowun "Oriental Development Company" caused tenancy trouble.

1931	Over 2,000 peasants in Hongwun, South Hamkyung Province started a mass anti-Japanese uprising. The Japanese imperialist army occupied the northeast China (September 18 Incident). The Japanese imperialists' fascist rule over Korea became intensified. In Yungheung, South Hamkyung Province, over 3,000 peasants waged anti-Japanese uprising. In Samchuk County, Kangwon Province, over 2,000 peasants waged anti-Japanese uprising. With the Japanese imperialist occupation of northeast China, the Korean and Chinese peoples waged anti-Japanese armed struggle in all parts of northeast China. The Korean Communists led by Kim Il Sung organized, on the basis of the growing revolutionary movement, the anti-Japanese partisan units in east Manchurian area, and started ideological and organizational preparations for raising the national liberation struggle to the stage of a more vigorous struggle and for founding a Marxist-Leninist Party of a new type.
1932	Partisan units that had waged struggle in east Manchuria merged into the "East Manchurian Anti-Japanese People's Partisan Unit" headed by Kim Il Sung. The anti-Japanese partisan bases were established in north-eastern part of Korea-China border and in all parts of northeast China. Uprising of over 1,500 fisherwomen in Cheju Island.
1933	Some 4,000 enemies attacked the Shiaowangts'ing region but were repulsed by the East Manchurian Anti-Japanese People's Partisan Unit. In the partisan base in east Manchuria the revolutionary people's power was set up and democratic reforms were enforced.
1934	Korean People's Revolutionary Army was organized (anti-Japanese partisan units in various districts rallied around the East Manchurian Anti-Japanese People's Partisan Units). The units of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army, in cooperation with the Chinese anti-Japanese units, attacked Lotzukou, Wangts'inghsien.
1935	The Fatherland Restoration Association headed by Kim Il

Sung was established. (It was the first anti-Japanese united national front in Korea). 10-point program was announced. It was a Marxist-Leninist revolutionary program drawn up for the first time in Korea.

Several thousands of workers of all factories in Inchun districts called a general strike.

The peasants in Kiljoo and Chungjin, North Hamkyung Province, waged the struggle for organizing peasants' unions.

The units of the People's Revolutionary Army established a base in the Changpei area near Korea-China frontier.

1936 The Korean People's Revolutionary Army continued large-scale offensive operations.

Some 2,500 workers of Kanebo Spinning Mill in Kwangjoo, South Chulla Province, called a general strike.

In Wando Island, scores of hundreds of fishermen attacked the county office and the fishermen's association and conflicted with the Japanese police.

The units of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army crushed the enemy's "winter punitive operations" from November 1936 to February 1937.

1937 Under the guidance of Comrade Kim Il Sung, the Korean National Liberation Union was organized in Kapsan, South Hamkyung Province.

The organizations affiliated with the Fatherland Restoration Association were set up in North and South Hamkyung Provinces and other areas, and further expanded and strengthened their network.

The units of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army started a daring attack on the Japanese forces on the border between Korea and China on the upper reaches of the Yalu River during May and June and made march forward toward the fatherland.

On June 4-5, the units of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army attacked Bochunbo, South Hamkyung Province and made a surprise attack on the Japanese organs and annihilated the enemy. And they made an enveloping attack on and wiped out the pursuing enemy.

The Japanese imperialists forced the Korean people to chant "Loyalty to Japanese Emperor".

1938 Between April and September, the units of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army unfolded daring military operations in the Linjang district.

In various parts of the country the Japanese imperialists made a wholesale arrest of the members of the left trade unions and peasants' unions and imprisoned them.

The Japanese imperialists enacted the so-called "The Law on Korean Volunteers."

1939 The units of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army carried on daring military operations on the upper reaches of the Yalu River and in the areas along the Tuman River, continuing advance to the native land.

The Korean People's Revolutionary Army continuously sent numbers of political workers to the main areas in the country and expanded and strengthened the organizations of the Fatherland Restoration Association.

The Japanese imperialists forced the Korean people to change their names into Japanese names.

1940 The units of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army continued their military operations. Under the guidance of Kim Il Sung, the plenum of the Party Committee of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army was held. The immediate task relating to the armed struggle was discussed and a decision was adopted on turning the struggle into the action of small units. The Japanese imperialists organized a fascist organization—the "All-out National Mobilization League."

All Korean newspapers were forcibly banned by the Japanese imperialists and the Korean people were forced to use the Japanese language as a common language in Korea.

1941 The surprise attack teams and the political workers' circles belonging to the Korean People's Revolutionary Army continuously carried out actively the circle's work until liberation.

The Japanese imperialists enacted "The Security Law for National Defence," and the "Amended Law on Public Order", etc. for oppressing the Korean people.

1943 The Japanese imperialists established a "detention camp for the preliminary restraint of political convicts". Large numbers of patriots and revolutionaries were arrested and gaoled.

1944 The Japanese imperialists instituted the "conscription system" in Korea.

1945 The Korean youth continued the struggle against "the students' military service," "forced labour" and "conscription". The military service dodgers increased.

On August 9, the Soviet government declared war upon Japan.

The Korean People's Revolutionary Army led by Kim Il Sung participated in the war against Japan in co-operation with the Soviet Army.

The Soviet Army liberated Woonggi and Rajin, and landed in Chungjin.

On August 15, the Japanese imperialists unconditionally surrendered.

The Korean people were liberated by the virtue of the Soviet Army from the colonial rule of the Japanese imperialists.

The commander of the 25th Army of the Soviet Union in North Korea issued a proclamation on ensurance of sovereign independence and democratic development of Korea.

On August 26, the Soviet Army made a triumphal entry into Pyongyang.

The Korean People's Revolutionary Army led by Kim Il Sung returned in triumph to the homeland.

The People's Committees were organized in all parts of Korea.

On September 7, Commander-in-Chief of the U.S. Pacific Army issued a proclamation on the occupation of South Korea and enforced colonial rule. The U.S. imperialists reorganized the "Government-General of Korea" into the "U.S. Military Government," and began to suppress the People's Committees.

The U.S. Military Government plundered 80 per cent of South Korea's economy under the name of "custodian property".

On October 13, the Organizing Committee of North Korea of the Korean Communist Party was organized, a new type of Marxist-Leninist Party, which was formed for the first time in Korea.

On November 19, ten administrations were organized with the aim of guiding comprehensively administration in North Korea.

On December 29, the Moscow Conference of Three Foreign Ministers announced the decision on the Korean question.

1946 Demonstrations and mass meetings in support of the Moscow Decision were held all over the country.

The reactionaries in South Korea, under the U.S. direction, declared their opposition to the Moscow Decision, and started subversive activities.

On February 8, the North Korean Provisional People's Committee headed by Kim Il Sung was established.

On March 5, the Law on Land Reform in North Korea was promulgated.

On March 20, the first session of the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S. Commission for the formation of a united provisional government opened.

On May 8, it was indefinitely postponed by the subversive activities of the U.S. imperialists and the national traitors.

On June 24, the North Korean Provisional People's Committee proclaimed "The Labour Law Concerning Workers and Office Employees in North Korea."

On July 22, the Central Committee of the North Korean Democratic National Front was formed.

On July 30, the North Korean Provisional People's Committee proclaimed "The Law on Equality of Sexes in North Korea."

On August 10, the North Korean Provisional People's Committee proclaimed "The Law on Nationalization of Industry, Communications, Transport, Banks, etc."

On August 28-30, the meeting was held for forming the North Korean Workers' Party, in which the Communist Party and Shin-Min (New Democratic) Party merged.

On September 24, some 40,000 railway workers in South Korea called the September General Strike.

The October People's Uprising broke out in all parts of South Korea.

On November 3, elections to the people's committees in provinces, cities, counties in North Korea were held.

On November 23, the South Korean Workers' Party was organized.

1947 On February 21-22, the first session of the North Korean People's Assembly proceeded. Election to the Presidium of the North Korean People's Assembly was held. The North Korean People's Committee was set up.

On February 24, elections to Ri or Dong (village or city block) people's committees were held;

On March 5, elections to Myun (sub-county) people's committees.

On March 22, the 24-hour general strike of the South Korean workers was called.

On May 20, the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S. Commission was resumed.

In August, under the instigation of the U.S. imperialists, the South Korean reactionaries schemed to establish a "South Korean separate government." The police suppression and terror were rampant in South Korea.

On September 26, the Soviet delegate of the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S. Commission proposed the simultaneous withdrawal from Korea of both U.S.S.R. and U.S. armed forces at the beginning of 1948.

On October 17, the U.S. delegate wrecked the Joint U.S.S.R.-U.S. Commission. The U.S. government unlawfully introduced the Korean question into the U.N.

On November 5, the U.N. Political Committee railroaded the draft on the establishment of the "U.N. Temporary Commission on Korea."

1948 On February 7, the national salvation struggle of the South Korean people started.

On February 8, the Korean People's Army was founded.

On March 5, the commander of the U.S. army in South Korea issued "the proclamation on holding separate elections" in South Korea. A nation-wide national salvation struggle against "separate elections" and "separate government" in South Korea was unfolded.

On March 27-30, the Second Congress of the North Korean Workers' Party was held.

On April 3, in Cheju Island, South Korea, the armed uprising against "separate elections" broke out.

On April 19, the Joint Conference of Representatives of North and South Korean Political Parties and Social Organizations was held in Pyongyang.

In May, the struggle against the U.S. imperialists' "separate elections" became more active in all parts of the country.

On May 10, the U.S. imperialists and their watch-dog, Syngman Rhee clique, concocted "South Korean separate elections" under the suppression of the U.S. army and police terror.

On June 29, the Consultative Conference of the Leaders of North and South Korean Political Parties and Social Organizations was held again. The conference adopted a decision on "The political situation in our fatherland in connection with the South Korean separate elections and the measures for struggling for the peaceful unification of the fatherland."

On August 25, elections to the Supreme People's Assembly were victoriously conducted.

On September 2-10, the first session of the Supreme People's Assembly was held. (The Constitution of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea was adopted. The founding of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea was proclaimed.)

The South Korean puppet regime signed the "ROK-U.S. Agreement" which legalized the U.S. imperialists' colonial rule.

On October 12, the diplomatic relation between Korea and the Soviet Union was established.

On November 24, the puppet "National Assembly" of South Korea passed the "Resolution on the Prolonged Stationing of the U.S. Troops in South Korea."

On December 10, the puppet "government" of South Korea concluded with the U.S. imperialists the treacherous "ROK-U.S. Agreement on Economic Aid."

On December 26, the Soviet Army completed its withdrawal from the whole territory of North Korea.

1949 On March 17, the Korean-Soviet Agreement on Economic and Cultural Co-operation was signed.

In June, the Workers' Parties of North and South Korea merged into the Workers' Party of Korea.

On June 25-28, the United Democratic Fatherland Front was organized. It issued a declaration on the peaceful unification of the country.

In October, diplomatic relation was established between Korea and China.

On December 25, Korea and China signed the Communications Agreement.

1950 In May, the puppet Syngman Rhee's army and police, in their frenzied attempt to unleash a fratricidal conflict, continued provocative acts against the area to the north of 38th parallel.

On June 7, the U.D.F.F. held an enlarged session; an "appeal on the promotion of the peaceful unification of the fatherland" was adopted.

The U.S. imperialists instructed their agents in South Korea to provoke a fratricidal war.

On June 19, the Presidium of the D.P.R.K. Supreme People's Assembly adopted a decision concerning the attainment of national unification by means of merging the Supreme People's Assembly and the South Korean "National Assembly" into a single legislative body, and proposed it to the South Korean "National Assembly."

On June 25, the puppet army of South Korea, under the instigation of the U.S. imperialists, started a surprise attack on the North all along the 38th parallel.

The D.P.R.K. security units and the People's Army made decisive counter-attack. The Fatherland Liberation War started.

On June 27, the U.S. imperialists made open armed intervention in the Korean War. Under the pressure of the United States, representatives of the Western Powers in the U.N. Security Council unilaterally adopted an illegal decision to legalize the U.S. imperialists' armed invasion against Korea.

On June 28, the Korean People's Army liberated Seoul.

The progressive organizations and personages throughout the world condemned the U.S. armed aggression against Korea. A movement was launched under the slogan, "U.S. Imperialists, Hands Off Korea!"

On July 20, the units of the Korean People's Army dealt crushing blows to the U.S. 24th Infantry Division, and liberated Taejon.

In August, the units of the Korean People's Army liberated over 90 per cent of the area of South Korea, and 92 per cent of the population of South Korea, and pushed the enemy down to the narrow strip on the lower reaches of the Rakdong River.

On September 13, the Korean People's Army put up gallant defensive fights against the enemy of over 40,000 strong that landed in Inchun under the cover of several hundred warships and over 1,000 planes.

In October, units of the Korean People's Army conducted operations of their strategic retreat.

On October 25, the Chinese People's Volunteers participated in the Korean War under the banner of "Resist U.S. Aggression, Aid Korea, Protect the Homes and Defend the Country."

The Korean People's Army, in close co-operation with the Chinese People's Volunteers, went over to counterattack on all fronts.

From the latter part of October to November 8, Korean and Chinese forces carried out the first stage of campaign. They frustrated completely the enemy's so-called Xmas offensive.

From the early part to the latter part of December, the Korean and Chinese forces carried out their second stage of campaign.

On December 6, the Korean-Chinese combined forces liberated Pyongyang.

From the latter part of December to January 7, 1951, the Korean and Chinese forces undertook their third stage of campaign. They liberated the area along the 38th parallel, and some areas to the south of the 38th parallel.

1951 On January 4, Seoul was again liberated.

From the latter part of January to the latter part of May, the fourth and fifth stages of campaigns were carried out. The Korean and Chinese forces inflicted a heavy blow upon the enemy's forces and frustrated the enemy's plan of landing operations.

From June 11, the Korean-Chinese combined forces went over to the active defence along the 38th parallel.

On June 23, Malik, Soviet delegate to the U.N., made a speech on the peaceful settlement of the Korean question over the radio.

On July 10, Korean armistice negotiations began. The Korean-Chinese combined forces smashed the enemy's "Summer Offensive" and "Autumn Offensive."

1952 In February, the American imperialists employed a brutal bacteriological warfare in all parts of the Republic.

In October, the Korean-Chinese combined forces frustrated the big offensive of the enemy, killing, wounding, and capturing over 94,000 of the enemy manpower.

1953 On February 7, the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly awarded the title of Marshal to Kim Il Sung, Supreme Commander of the Korean People's Army.

On July 27, the Korean armistice agreement was formally signed.

Marshal Kim Il Sung and General Peng Teh-huai issued the order of stopping hostilities.

On August 5, the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea held the 6th Plenum at which the basic line of the post-war rehabilitation and development of the national economy was laid down on the basis of the report made by Marshal Kim Il Sung.

On August 8, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique signed "ROK-U.S. Mutual Defence Pact" with the U.S. imperialists.

On September 1, the government delegation of the D.P.R.K. headed by Marshal Kim Il Sung left for Moscow.

On November 10, the government delegation of the D.P.R.K. headed by Marshal Kim Il Sung left for Peking.

1954 The Three-Year Plan for the post-war rehabilitation and development of the national economy started.

From April 27 to June 15, the Korean question was discussed at the Geneva Conference. No agreement was reached due to obstruction on the part of the U.S. imperialists and Syngman Rhee clique.

1955 During the period from the armistice to August 1955, in violation of the armistice agreement, 1,036 U.S. military planes in total intruded on 487 occasions into the territorial air of our side.

In October, the third withdrawal of the C.P.V.s from Korea was carried out. (Altogether 19 divisions withdrew from Korea since the armistice)

1956 In April, the Third Congress of the Workers' Party of Korea was convened. The Congress laid down the general line of the First Five-Year Plan and adopted a declaration on the peaceful unification of the country.

In May, mass demonstrations took place in Seoul and Pusan against the puppet Syngman Rhee regime.

In June, the Government of the D.P.R.K. issued a statement on the reduction of the numerical strength of the Korean People's Army.

Between June and July, the D.P.R.K. government delegation headed by Premier Kim Il Sung visited the fraternal countries—the U.S.S.R., the G.D.R., Poland, Czechoslovakia, Hungary, Rumania, Bulgaria, Albania and Mongolia.

On November 27, elections to the people's assembly of

	provinces, cities, counties (or districts), ri (townships) and workers' settlements were conducted.
	On November 28, the Syngman Rhee clique concluded with the U.S. imperialists the treacherous "ROK-U.S. Treaty of Friendship, Trade and Navigation."
1957	The First Five-Year Plan started.
	On August 27, elections of deputies to the Second Supreme People's Assembly took place.
	In November, the delegation of the Workers' Party and the Government of the D.P.R.K. headed by Premier Kim Il Sung attended the celebrations of the 40th anniversary of the great October Socialist Revolution in Moscow and took part in the Conference of the representatives of the Communist and Workers' Parties of various countries.
1958	In March, the First Conference of the Workers' Party of Korea was held.
	In April, the Chinese People's Volunteers completed the first stage withdrawal from Korea.
	In June, Law on the First Five-Year Plan (1957-1961) for the Development of the D.P.R.K. National Economy was adopted at the Third Session of the Second Supreme People's Assembly.